

# TEACHING Secondary School MATHEMATICS

Research and practice for the 21st century

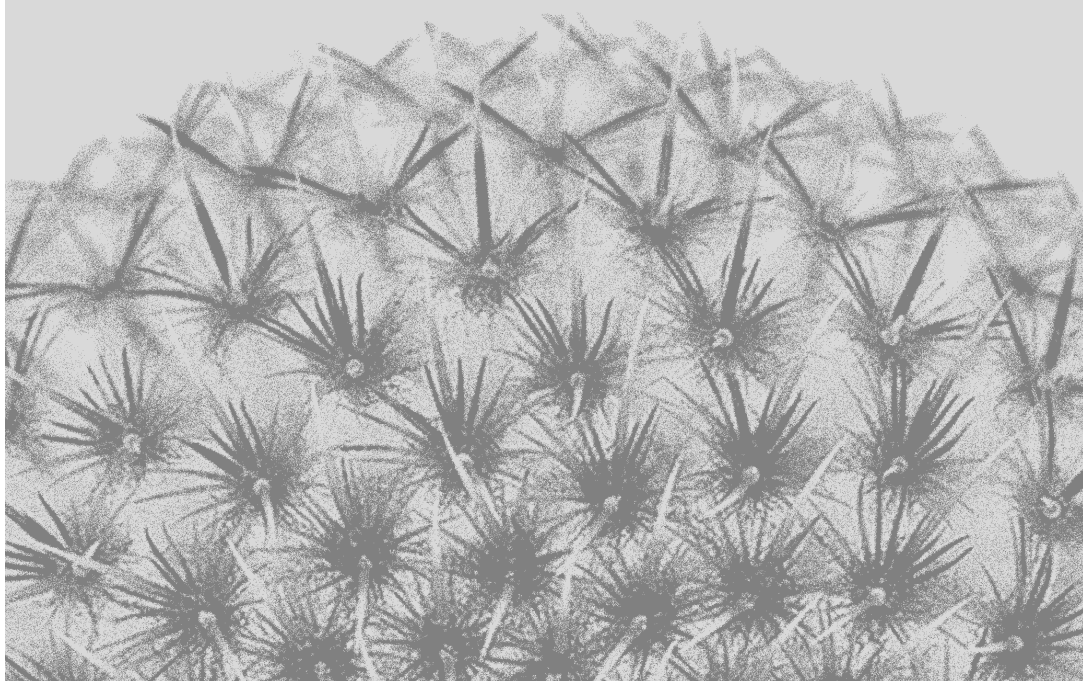
Merrilyn Goos, Gloria Stillman and Colleen Vale



# TEACHING

## Secondary School

# MATHEMATICS



This page intentionally left blank

# TEACHING Secondary School MATHEMATICS

Research and practice for the 21st century

Merrilyn Goos, Gloria Stillman and Colleen Vale

First published in 2007

Copyright © Merrilyn Goos, Gloria Stillman and Colleen Vale 2007

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system, without prior permission in writing from the publisher. The *Australian Copyright Act 1968* (the Act) allows a maximum of one chapter or 10 per cent of this book, whichever is the greater, to be photocopied by any educational institution for its educational purposes provided that the educational institution (or body that administers it) has given a remuneration notice to Copyright Agency Limited (CAL) under the Act.

Allen & Unwin  
83 Alexander Street  
Crows Nest NSW 2065  
Australia  
Phone: (61 2) 8425 0100  
Fax: (61 2) 9906 2218  
Email: [info@allenandunwin.com](mailto:info@allenandunwin.com)  
Web: [www.allenandunwin.com](http://www.allenandunwin.com)

National Library of Australia  
Cataloguing-in-Publication entry:

Goos, Merrilyn.  
Teaching secondary school mathematics : research and  
practice for the 21st century.

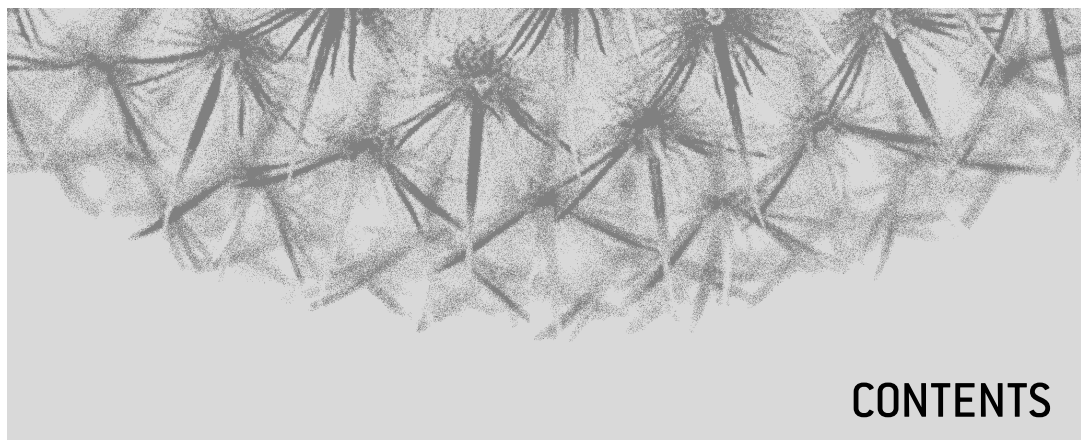
Bibliography.  
Includes index.  
ISBN 978 1 74114 651 6 (pbk.).

1. Mathematics – Study and teaching – Australia. I.  
Stillman, Gloria. II. Vale, Colleen. III. Title.

510.71

Text design by Lisa White  
Index by Puddingburn  
Typeset in 12 on 17 pt Spectrum MT by Midland Typesetters, Australia  
Printed by CMO Image Printing, Singapore

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



<i>Figures and tables</i>	<i>vii</i>
<i>Acknowledgments</i>	<i>xii</i>
<i>About the authors</i>	<i>xiii</i>
<b>Part I: Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
1 Doing, teaching and learning mathematics	3
<b>Part II: Mathematics pedagogy, curriculum and assessment</b>	<b>19</b>
2 Developing mathematical understanding	21
3 Developing mathematical connections	46
4 Effective use of technologies in mathematics education	74
5 Mathematics curriculum models	102
6 Assessing mathematics learning	127
<b>Part III: Teaching and learning mathematical content</b>	<b>157</b>
7 Teaching and learning number	159
8 Teaching and learning measurement	187
9 Teaching and learning geometry and spatial concepts	200
10 Teaching and learning algebra	230
11 Teaching and learning chance and data	255
12 Teaching and learning calculus	282
<b>Part IV: Equity and diversity in mathematics education</b>	<b>317</b>
13 Gender issues in mathematics learning	319
14 Social and cultural issues in mathematics learning	338
15 Teaching students with diverse learning needs	361

<b>Part V: Professional and community engagement</b>	<b>385</b>
16 Working with parents and communities	387
17 Continuing professional learning	406
<i>References</i>	427
<i>Index</i>	475



## FIGURES AND TABLES

### Figures

1.1	Raymond's model of the relationships between teachers' mathematical beliefs and their teaching practice	5
1.2	Secondary school students' drawing of a typical mathematics teacher	11
2.1	Levels of understanding in the Pirie–Kieren theory	25
2.2	A student's attempt to solve simultaneous equations	26
2.3	Factors contributing to successful problem-solving	37
3.1	Context as border	60
3.2	Context as wrapper	61
3.3	The modelling process	69
3.4	Mathematical modelling framework incorporating regulatory mechanism	70
4.1	Spreadsheet for investigating compound interest	76
4.2	Symbolic, graphical and numerical representations of the family of functions represented by $y = x^2 \pm c$	78
4.3	Excel spreadsheet with scrollbars for investigating properties of trigonometric functions	79
4.4	Dynamic geometry software screen display for investigating the angle sum of triangles	80
4.5	Exploring rotation	81
4.6	A spreadsheet simulation of a spinner	81
4.7	Some questions asked in the 2003 CensusAtSchool	82
4.8a	Modelling cooling with an exponential function	83
4.8b	Modelling periodic motion with a trigonometric function	83
4.9a	Finding the turning point of a quadratic function	88
4.9b	Solving the equation $5000 \times (0.758)^x = 1$	88
4.10	Matrix transformation task	91
4.11	Different student programs for finding angle between vectors	92



4.12	Spreadsheet method for solving equation	93
5.1	Sources of influence on mathematics curriculum content	107
5.2	Superordinate and subordinate functions in curriculum development and implementation	109
5.3	Nested sequence of outcomes	119
5.4	Mathematics/science integration continuum	122
5.5	Issues in curriculum integration	123
6.1	Verbal descriptors of standards exemplar, Mathematics Stage 4	133
6.2	KWL chart	138
6.3	Flowchart for preparing an assessment task for students	146
6.4	Recording feedback and assessment using scores	152
6.5	Recording assessment using holistic judgments	152
7.1	A fraction wall showing $\frac{2}{3} = \frac{4}{6} = \frac{6}{9}$	161
7.2	Place value chart	164
7.3	Three solutions for $5 \div 6$	167
7.4	Field laws	170
7.5	Arrays illustrating the distributive law for multiplication	172
7.6	Paper folding into sixths	173
7.7	$0.4 \times 0.6 = 0.24$	174
7.8	A double number line	177
7.9	A ratio table	177
7.10	Procedures for finding the percentage of amounts	179
7.11	Graphic organiser for index numbers	181
7.12	$18 \times 19$ illustrating multiplying negative integers	183
7.13	Arithmetic calculations on CAS calculator	183
7.14	Right-angled isosceles triangle construction for a logarithmic spiral	184
7.15	Learning cycle	185
8.1	Representing volume (volume = area $\times$ height)	193
8.2	The freeway problem	196
8.3	Cosine $30.11^\circ$	197
9.1	'Say what you see'	205
9.2	Many cubes	206
9.3	Federation Square, Melbourne	207
9.4	Slicing a cube	208
9.5	A right-angled or 'left-angled' triangle?	209
9.6	Sum of exterior angles in a polygon	209

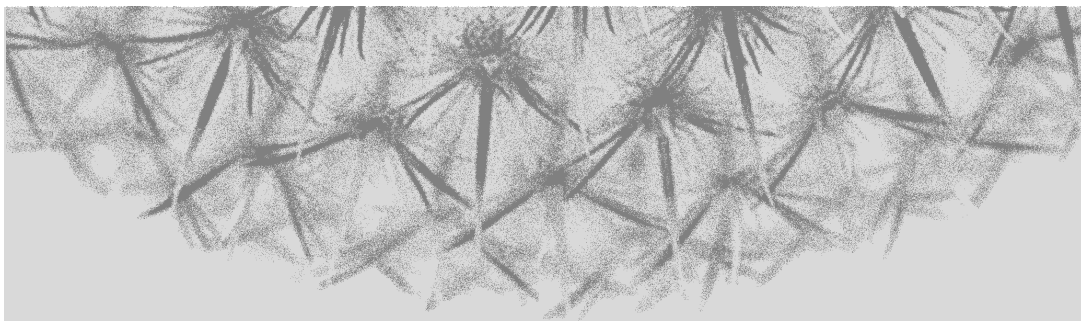
9.7	Folding paper to form tangents to a parabola	212
9.8	Isosceles triangles constructed using <i>Geometer's Sketchpad</i>	212
9.9	Construct a circle that is tangent to two lines	214
9.10	Leaning Tower of Pisa and experiment	216
9.11	Midpoint quadrilaterals formed by dragging vertex A of a quadrilateral	218
9.12	Constructing quadrilaterals from diagonals	218
9.13	Cutting folded paper to construct quadrilaterals	219
9.14	Rotation about the centre, the edge and a point not on the centre	220
9.15	Transformation using folded paper and a hole punch	221
9.16	Cairo tiling (pentagons)	222
9.17	Cylinder created by rotation of rectangle	223
9.18	Pushed-over square (EFCD) and sheared square (GHCD)	224
9.19	Distance at the same latitude	226
9.20	Network diagram or graph	227
10.1	Equivalence tasks	233
10.2	Tasks investigating the notion of variable	235
10.3	Generalising from geometric patterns	243
10.4	Solving equations in a computer algebra environment	244
10.5	Function representations and the links to be developed between these	247
10.6	The family of graphs $y = ax + 1$ in the multiple representation environment (View <sup>3</sup> ) of the TI-SmartView	248
10.7	Possible shapes for graphs of cubic functions	250
10.8	Algebraic transformation with resulting numerical and graphical representations using a function grapher	250
10.9	Translation and dilation of function using a function as object manipulator	251
10.10	Algebraic insight needed to interpret unfamiliar form of solution	253
11.1	Estimating unusual areas—the area of the figure can be estimated by calculating the proportion of random points in the rectangle that fall inside the figure	256
11.2	Comparing the quality of brands of peanut butter	260
11.3	A Punnett square showing the offspring of two pea plants, both heterozygous, with one dominant gene for tall plants	264
11.4	Hours of sleep of Years 7–10 students	267
11.5	Association between lengths of femur bones and heights in humans	269
11.6	Spring temperatures for Perth, disaggregated by month	270
11.7	The statistical investigation cycle	275
11.8	A comparison of the ages of 100 couples getting married	278

11.9	Random sample of 50 voters—22 in favour, 28 against	279
12.1	Use of GridPic to fit a quartic function to a Gothic arch	285
12.2	Students linking numerical and diagrammatic representations in a real-world task	286
12.3	Aeroplane speed models	288
12.4	The running emu	289
12.5	Use of GridPic to draw a tangent to the curve at the point $(-3.5, 0.9)$	290
12.6	Use of GridPic to draw secants approaching the tangent to the curve at the point $(-3.5, 0.9)$	291
12.7	Constant rate of change of height of a stack of plastic cups, per cup	291
12.8	Varying rate of change of total distance run with station distance	292
12.9	Task diagram	292
12.10	Using Draw Tangent and a judicious choice of window	295
12.11	Use of numerical derivative to sketch gradient function of $f(x) = (x-2)^2(x+5)$	295
12.12	Finding the limit informally using a CAS calculator	297
12.13	Finding the limit informally using a CAS calculator	298
12.14	Common textbook diagram for gradient at a point	299
12.15	Calculator notation for finding gradient at a point	300
12.16	Kendal and Stacey's (2003) concept map of differentiation in numerical, graphical and symbolic representations	303
12.17	Developing a rule for the derivative of the sum or difference of two functions	308
12.18	Developing a rule for the derivative of the product of two functions	310
12.19	Use of slope diagrams to find anti-derivatives	311
12.20	Using summation to find area bounded by a curve	312
12.21	Area bounded by a curve	313
13.1	Enrolments in Year 12 intermediate level mathematics expressed as percentages of Year 12 cohort by gender, Australia, 2000–04	327
14.1	Regression of mathematical literacy on social background by country	339
14.2	Cloze task	350
15.1	Sample clinical interview item	366
15.2	Three students' drawings of $\frac{2}{3}$	367
15.3	The RAVE CCC mnemonic for problem-solving	371
15.4	A tiered curriculum	382
16.1	Network model for home–school–community partnerships	395
17.1	Reflection card	408
17.2	The IMPACT procedure	411
17.3	Relationships between the three 'zones of influence' in teacher learning	417

17.4	Adam's first year of teaching	420
17.5	Adam's second year of teaching	421

## Tables

1.1	Relationship between beliefs about mathematics, teaching and learning	7
1.2	Framework for analysing pedagogical content knowledge	14
2.1	Evidence of understanding for secondary mathematics students ( $n = 329$ )	23
2.2	Categories of complex mathematical thinking	34
2.3	Representation of process aspects of mathematics in curriculum materials	35
2.4	Teacher scaffolding questions during problem-solving	39
2.5	Year 11 mathematics lesson	40
2.6	Characteristics of a classroom community of mathematical inquiry	44
4.1	A typology of expected use of graphics calculators in assessment	95
4.2	Factors influencing technology use in mathematics education	97
5.1	Integrated curriculum units: Topics and subject-matter	124
5.2	Integrated curriculum units: Assessment tasks	125
6.1	SOLO taxonomy	134
6.2	Assessment tasks	135
6.3	Everyday rubric grading	147
6.4	Task and rubric for medicine doses	148
6.5	Rubric for communication category judging and scoring criteria for Maths Talent Quest	149
7.1	Division of fraction problem types	175
11.1	Association between where UK citizens live and whether they smoke	269
12.1	Kendal and Stacey's Differentiation Competency Framework	304
12.2	Delos Santos and Thomas's Representational Framework of Knowing Derivative	306
13.1	Historical development of theories and practices for gender equity	329
14.1	Approaches to social justice	348
14.2	Mathematics problems of personal or social relevance	355
14.3	Civilian population aged 15–69 years, labour force status, September 2004	357
15.1	Items from the <i>Australian Mathematics Competition</i>	375
17.1	Adam's practicum experience	419
17.2	Domains of the AAMT Standards	424

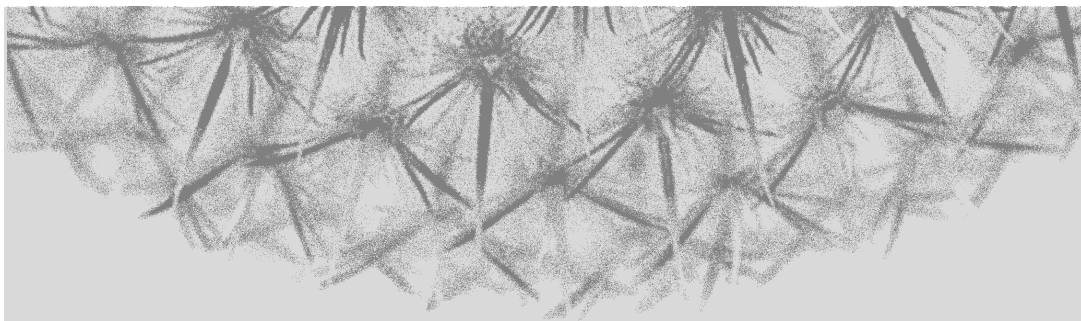


## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Our goal in writing this book was to provide prospective and practising secondary mathematics teachers and university-based mathematics teacher educators with a research-based text that is also rich in practical teaching ideas. Individual chapters were peer reviewed by experienced Australasian mathematics educators, and four anonymous reviewers provided detailed critiques of the book as a whole. We thank the following colleagues for their advice and feedback on our work: Bill Atweh, Kim Beswick, Chris Brew, Jill Brown, Rosemary Callingham, Barbara Clarke, Shelley Dole, Helen Forgasz, Pat Forster, Vince Geiger, Marj Horne, Barry Kissane, Tamsin Meaney, Will Morony, Cath Pearn, Wee Tiong Seah, Steve Thornton, Margaret Walshaw, Paul White, Gaye Williams, Nicola Yelland.

Our special thanks go to Katie Makar for her significant contribution to the chapter on chance and data, and to Ian Edwards of Luther College for permission to include tasks developed at his school.

We are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce material: Curriculum Corporation and David Clarke for MCTP material; Horwood Publishing Ltd; Houghton Mifflin Company; *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*; Mathematical Association of Victoria for Maths Talent Quest rubric; *Mathematics Education Research Journal*; Pearson Education Australia; Sage Publications Ltd; Thomson Learning Australia; University of Melbourne; Victorian Board of Studies; Jill Brown; Helen Chick; Alan delos Santos and Mike Thomas; Ian Edwards; Peter Galbraith; Catherine Harris and Colin Marsh; Margaret Kendal; Mollie MacGregor and Rob Moore; Kaye Stacey; Gaye Williams.



## ABOUT THE AUTHORS

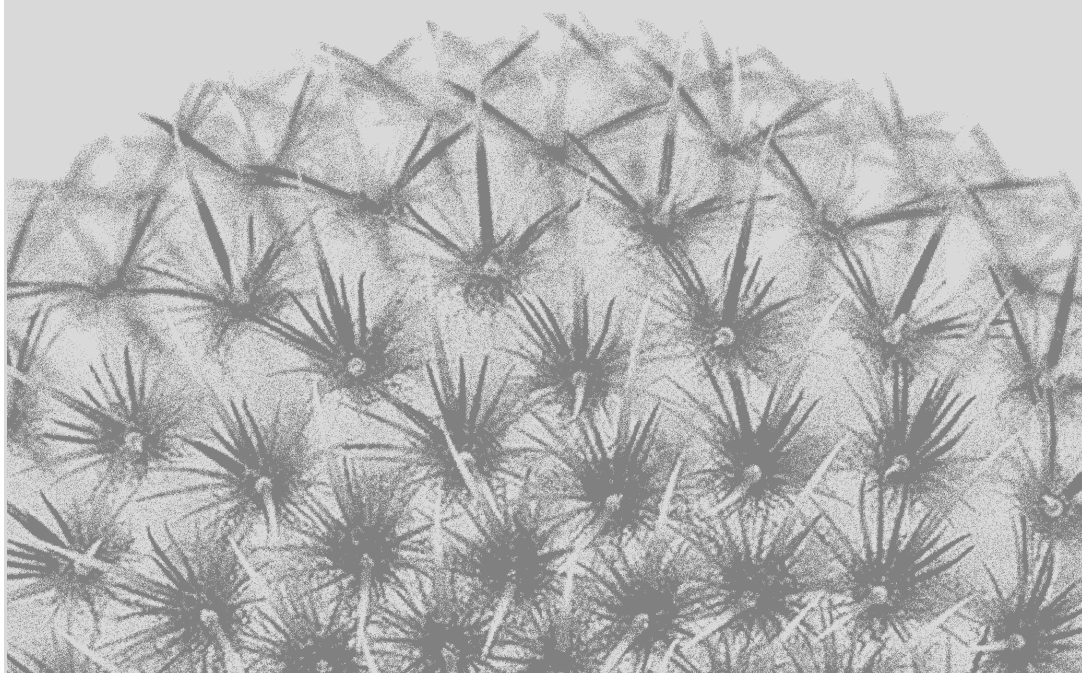
*Merrilyn Goos* is Associate Professor in the School of Education at the University of Queensland, where she co-ordinates Mathematics Curriculum Studies for prospective secondary school teachers in the pre-service Bachelor of Education program. Her research interests focus on analysing teaching and learning in mathematics classrooms, the nature of mathematical thinking, and the ways in which educational and information technologies extend students' thinking and reorganise their interactions with each other and the teacher. She is currently Chief Investigator of a large research project, funded by the Australian Research Council, studying the role of technology-enriched, technology-mediated learning communities in reforming mathematics teacher education. She also led a national research project, commissioned by the Australian Government Department of Education, Science and Training, on home, school and community partnerships that enhance children's numeracy learning. In 2003 she won a University of Queensland Award for Teaching Excellence, and in 2004 was the recipient of an Australian Award for University Teaching.

*Gloria Stillman* is a Senior Lecturer in Mathematics Education in the Department of Science and Mathematics Education at the University of Melbourne. She has had an extensive career as a lecturer teaching secondary mathematics methods in tertiary institutions in Queensland, where she was on the state panel for Mathematics C then A for the Board of Senior Secondary School Studies. Previously she was a secondary mathematics teacher in a Brisbane school. Gloria's research interests focus on secondary school mathematics where she has researched in metacognition, problem solving, applications and modelling,

assessment and the use of context and technology-rich learning environments, particularly at the upper-secondary level. Currently, she is working on two research projects, RITEMATHS, an Australian Research Council funded Linkage project conducted by the University of Melbourne and the University of Ballarat (see [www.extranet.edfac.unimelb.edu.au/DSME/RITEMATHS/](http://www.extranet.edfac.unimelb.edu.au/DSME/RITEMATHS/)), and CCiSM, an ongoing research project into curriculum change in secondary mathematics in mathematical modelling.

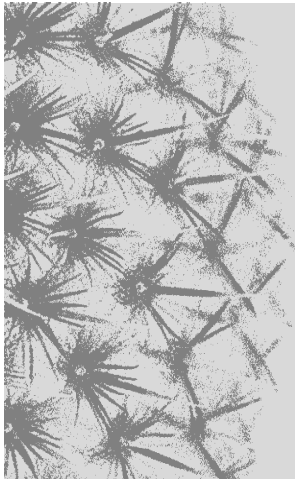
*Colleen Vale* is a Senior Lecturer in the School of Education at Victoria University, Melbourne. Following a short career in secondary school mathematics that included developing gender-inclusive mathematics curriculum and mathematics curriculum in the Victorian Certificate of Education, Colleen now lectures in primary and secondary mathematics education. She is currently the Immediate Past President of The Mathematical Association of Victoria and has been involved in teacher professional development in Victoria for many years. Interested in equity issues in mathematics, Colleen has published research in gender issues and digital technology in mathematics education.

Part I  
**INTRODUCTION**





This page intentionally left blank



# CHAPTER 1

## **Doing, teaching and learning mathematics**

Excellent teachers of mathematics are purposeful in making a positive difference to the learning outcomes, both cognitive and affective, of the students they teach. They are sensitive and responsive to all aspects of the context in which they teach. This is reflected in the learning environments they establish, the lessons they plan, their uses of technologies and other resources, their teaching practices, and the ways in which they assess and report on student learning. (Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers, 2006)

This statement appears in a professional standards framework that describes the unique knowledge and skills needed to teach mathematics well. It reflects findings from a multitude of research studies that show how students' mathematics learning and their dispositions towards mathematics are influenced—for better or for worse—by the teaching that they experience at school (see Mewborn, 2003 for a review of this research). While it is sometimes difficult for researchers to untangle the complex relationships that exist between teaching practices, teacher characteristics and student achievement, it is clear that teachers do make a difference to student learning.

This chapter discusses what it means to be a teacher of secondary school mathematics and the requirements and challenges such a career choice entails. We first consider the mathematical beliefs of teachers and students, as well as students' perceptions of mathematics teachers, reflecting on how teachers communicate powerful messages about the nature of mathematics and mathematics learning to the students they teach. Next we turn our attention to the secondary school mathematics classroom by examining recent research

on mathematics teaching practices, and identify the types of knowledge needed for effective teaching of mathematics. Finally, we review some of the challenges for mathematics curriculum and teaching arising from this and other research.

## Mathematical beliefs

Whether we are aware of it or not, all of us have our own beliefs about what mathematics is and why it is important. In summing up findings from research in this area, Barkatsas and Malone (2005) conclude that ‘mathematics teachers’ beliefs have an impact on their classroom practice, on the ways they perceive teaching, learning, and assessment, and on the ways they perceive students’ potential, abilities, dispositions, and capabilities’ (2005, p. 71). However, the relationship between beliefs and practices is not quite so straightforward as this, and many researchers would agree that ‘the relationship is not linearly causal in either direction but rather beliefs and practice develop together and are dialectically related’ (Beswick, 2005, p. 40). Raymond’s (1997) model of the relationships between beliefs and practices and the factors influencing them is informative in this regard (see Figure 1.1). The model suggests some of the complexity involved in understanding how beliefs shape, and are shaped by, teaching practices, and why inconsistencies sometimes exist between the beliefs that teachers might espouse and those they enact through their practice.

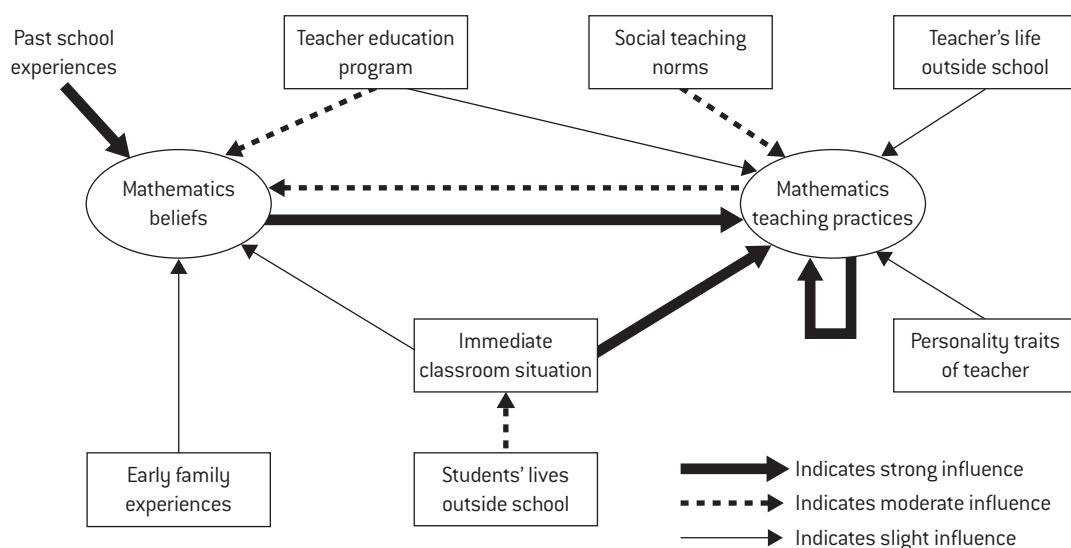
### *Beliefs about the nature of mathematics*

Because teachers communicate their beliefs about mathematics through their classroom practices, it is important to be aware of one’s beliefs and how they are formed.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** In your own words, write down what you think mathematics is and why it is important for students to learn mathematics at school. Compare your thoughts with a fellow student and try to explain why you think this way.

Look for the definition or description of mathematics provided in your local and national mathematics curriculum documents and by notable mathematicians or mathematics educators (Gullberg, 1997; Hogan, 2002; Kline, 1979). Compare these with your own ideas.

Discuss with a partner some of the possible influences on the formation of your beliefs, using Raymond’s (1997) model as a guide (see Figure 1.1).



<b>Mathematical beliefs:</b> About the nature of mathematics and mathematics pedagogy	<b>Students' lives:</b> Home environment, parents' beliefs (about children, school and mathematics)
<b>Mathematics teaching practices:</b> Mathematical tasks, discourse, environment and evaluation	<b>Teacher education program:</b> Mathematics content courses, field experiences, student teaching
<b>Immediate classroom situation:</b> Students (abilities, attitudes, and behaviour), time constraints, the mathematics topic at hand	<b>Past school experiences:</b> Successes in mathematics as a student, past teachers
<b>Social teaching norms:</b> School philosophy, administrators, standardised tests, curriculum, textbook, other teachers, resources	<b>Early family experiences:</b> Parents' view of mathematics, parents' educational background, interaction with parents (particularly regarding mathematics)
<b>Teacher's life:</b> Day-to-day occurrences, other sources of stress	<b>Personality traits:</b> Confidence, creativity, humour, openness to change

Source: Raymond (1997).

*Figure 1.1* Raymond's model of the relationships between teachers' mathematical beliefs and their teaching practice

### *Mathematics and numeracy*

In recent years, the idea of 'numeracy' has gained prominence in discussions about the essential knowledge and competencies to be developed by school students for participation

## 6 INTRODUCTION

in contemporary society. This makes it important for mathematics teachers to have a clear understanding of the nature of numeracy and its relationship with mathematics (Queensland Board of Teacher Registration, 2005). The term ‘numeracy’ is common in Australia, New Zealand, Canada and the United Kingdom, but rarely found in America or other parts of the world, where expressions like ‘quantitative literacy’, ‘mathematical literacy’ or ‘statistical literacy’ are used. These different names convey different meanings that may not be interpreted in the same way by all people. For example, some definitions of quantitative literacy focus on the ability to use quantitative tools for everyday practical purposes, while mathematical literacy is understood more broadly as the capacity to engage with mathematics in order to act in the world as an informed and critical citizen (OECD, 2000). The transformative possibilities of a critical mathematical literacy curriculum have been well documented by Frankenstein (2001) and Gutstein (2003), both of whom advocate approaches to teaching and learning mathematics for social justice to help their students interpret and challenge inequities in their own contexts. Thus the meaning of numeracy extends beyond the use of mathematical skills to incorporate notions of practical purposes, real-world contexts and critical citizenship.

Throughout the 1990s, there was much discussion about the relationship between mathematics and numeracy. Steen (2001) offers the following distinction between the two:

Mathematics climbs the ladder of abstraction to see, from sufficient height, common patterns in seemingly different things. Abstraction is what gives mathematics its power; it is what enables methods derived in one context to be applied in others. But abstraction is not the focus of numeracy. Instead, numeracy clings to specifics, marshalling all relevant aspects of setting and context to reach conclusions . . . Numeracy is driven by issues that are important to people in their lives and work, not by future needs of the few who may make professional use of mathematics or statistics. (2001, pp. 17–18)

These definitions suggest that numeracy is broader than, and different from, the way that mathematics traditionally has been viewed by schools and society.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Revisit your beliefs about the nature of mathematics and compare these with the distinction between mathematics and numeracy proposed by Steen (2001).

How is ‘numeracy’ described in your local mathematics curriculum documents? To what extent does this description incorporate ideas about mathematics being used for practical purposes, in real-world contexts and for developing critical citizenship?

### *Beliefs about mathematics teaching and learning*

Just as important as mathematics teachers’ beliefs about the nature of mathematics are their beliefs about mathematics teaching and learning. Beswick (2005) shows the connections between these types of beliefs by drawing on categories developed by Ernest (1989) and Van Zoest et al. (1994), as shown in Table 1.1.

**Table 1.1 Relationship between beliefs about mathematics, teaching and learning**

Beliefs about the nature of mathematics (Ernest, 1989)	Beliefs about mathematics teaching (Van Zoest et al., 1994)	Beliefs about mathematics learning (Ernest, 1989)
<b>Instrumentalist:</b> Mathematics as a tool kit of facts, rules, skills	Content-focused with an emphasis on performance	Skill mastery, passive reception of knowledge
<b>Platonist:</b> Mathematics as a static body of absolute and certain knowledge comprising abstract entities	Content-focused with an emphasis on understanding	Active construction of understanding
<b>Problem-solving:</b> Mathematics as a dynamic and expanding field of human creation	Learner-focused	Autonomous exploration of own interests

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Researchers usually obtain information about teachers' mathematical beliefs via questionnaires [e.g. Barkatsas & Malone, 2005; Beswick, 2005; Frid, 2000a; Perry et al., 1999]. Obtain a copy of one of these beliefs questionnaires and record your responses. Discuss your answers with a partner in the light of the classifications in Table 1.1.

### *Student beliefs*

So far, we have given our attention to teachers' mathematical beliefs, but what do students believe about the nature of mathematics? A more subtle way to investigate this than to ask a direct question involves using metaphors for mathematics, such as:

*If mathematics was a food, what kind of food would it be?*

*If mathematics was a colour, what colour would it be?*

*If mathematics was music, what kind of music would it be?*

(See Frid, 2001; Ocean & Miller-Reilly, 1997 for more ways of using metaphors for mathematics.)

Pre-service teachers who tried this activity with their junior secondary students during a practice teaching session were surprised, and somewhat disturbed, by the results. If mathematics was a food, most students agreed that it would be a green vegetable such as broccoli, brussels sprouts or zucchini. According to them, these vegetables taste terrible but we have to eat them because they are good for us, thus implying that mathematics is a necessary but unpleasant part of their school diet. Others who were more favourably disposed towards mathematics compared it with bread (a staple food), fruit salad (because it contains a variety of ingredients) or lasagne (different layers are revealed as you eat it). These responses perhaps suggest that students had varying perceptions of mathematical knowledge as either necessary, diverse or sequenced in layers of complexity. Students thought that if mathematics was a colour it would be either black (depressing, evil), red (the colour of anger and pain) or brown (boring). The few who admitted to liking mathematics often said it would be blue because this colour is associated with intelligence or feelings of calm and

peacefulness. There was more variety in metaphors for mathematics as music. Many students said that mathematics was like classical music because they found it difficult to understand; some likened it to heavy metal music because ‘it hurts your brain’; while one responded that it was like the theme from the movie *Jaws*—because ‘it creeps up on you’. Writing in her practice teaching journal, one pre-service teacher lamented: ‘There was not one person in the class who admitted to liking maths and compared it with McDonald’s or Guy Sebastian!’

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Try the mathematical metaphors activity with some school-aged children and some adults (if possible, with mathematics teachers, non-mathematics teachers and non-teachers). Analyse the results and compare them with a partner’s.

Investigating students’ views about mathematics and comparing these with teachers’ beliefs might lead us to reflect on the role of teachers in enriching or limiting students’ perspectives on the nature and value of mathematics, and to consider how students’ dispositions towards mathematics might be shaped by their experiences in school mathematics classrooms. The important message here is that *through their words and actions, teachers communicate their beliefs about what mathematics is to the students they teach.*

## Perceptions of mathematics teachers

Through their daily experiences in classrooms, students develop long-lasting perceptions about mathematics and mathematics teachers. Some of these perceptions involve memories about particular teachers, such as those below, while others are more stereotypical, arising from students’ experiences over time in many different mathematics classrooms:

I was never very good at maths in primary school. I particularly remember a teacher who shamed me and ridiculed me in front of the class. That was a shattering experience, and every time I was asked to answer a mental maths question after that I’d just freeze. Things did improve, and in my last year of primary school I actually did quite



well. That led to the next problem, when I got to secondary school and was put in the A stream class with all the students who were really good at maths, and I constantly felt like I was swimming against the tide to keep my head up. I didn't take maths for my A-levels. I really regret not doing more maths at school, as I still have a big confidence problem with maths and I hate being put on the spot—working behind a till, to give change—my primary school days come back to haunt me and I still get a bit panicky.

I always excelled at maths during primary school. I enjoyed recall activities used to teach the times tables, especially when the teacher timed us with a stopwatch and the quickest student received a prize. (I used to win a lot!) I couldn't understand why other students didn't feel the same way—but I get it now! Despite this I struggled with maths in the junior secondary years. I didn't like my maths teacher very much because he was intimidating, boring and hard to approach. By Year 10 I was finding maths easier again so I decided to take senior maths subjects. I had a fantastic teacher and found maths easier than other subjects as there was more of a focus on understanding and application than on memorising content. I graduated from Year 12 with an A for maths, largely thanks to great maths teaching.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Write your personal mathematical life history, describing your experiences of learning mathematics at home, at school and at university, and recalling the influence of different teachers and other people you may have encountered. What are your earliest memories of doing mathematics? What have been your 'highs' and 'lows'? Compare your mathematical life history with a partner. Together, compile a list of qualities of the best mathematics teachers in your experience.

To further emphasise the key role that teachers play in influencing students' dispositions towards mathematics, we can also explore school students' perceptions by inviting them to draw a typical mathematics teacher. A pre-service teacher tackled this task by drawing

a stick figure on the whiteboard and asking the class to give her instructions on what additional features to include. The finished drawing, complete with annotations provided by the class, is reproduced in Figure 1.2.

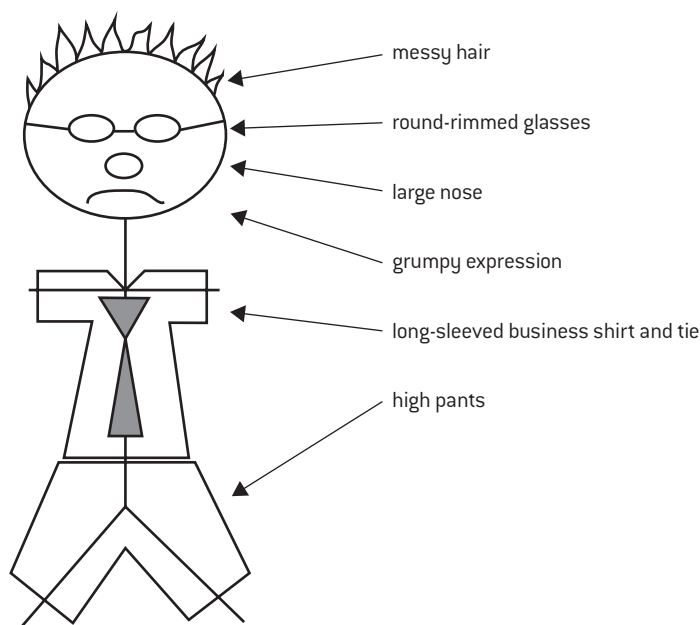


Figure 1.2 Secondary school students' drawing of a typical mathematics teacher

The school students also commented on aspects of a typical mathematics teacher's personality, using words such as 'boring', 'old', 'depressing', 'cranky' and 'ugly'. Other pre-service teachers found that their students produced very similar drawings and described mathematics teachers in much the same way. Likewise, local and international studies of students' images of mathematicians have identified themes such as *the foolish mathematician* (lacking common sense or fashion sense), *the mathematician who can't teach* (doesn't know the material or can't control the classroom) or even *mathematics as coercion* (mathematicians as teachers who use intimidation or threats) (Picker & Berry, 2001; see also Grootenboer, 2001; Ryan, 1992). While you may not recognise yourself in these drawings or descriptions, the clear message here is that *teachers have the power to engage or alienate students in ways they will remember for the rest of their lives*.

## Mathematics teaching practices: Perspectives on Year 8 classrooms

The preceding discussion has touched on relationships between teachers' mathematical beliefs and their mathematics teaching practices, and students' perceptions of the way mathematics is taught. Observational research such as that undertaken in the TIMSS 1999 Video Study (Hollingsworth et al., 2003) gives a clearer picture of what actually happens in mathematics classrooms. This study was funded by the US Department of Education to describe and compare teaching practices across seven countries—Australia, the Czech Republic, Hong Kong SAR, Japan, the Netherlands, Switzerland, and the United States. These were among the 40 countries that participated in the 1995 Third International Mathematics and Science Study, an international comparative study of student achievement in mathematics and science. In the 1995 TIMSS mathematics assessment, US students were outperformed by students in each of the other six countries, while Japanese students recorded the highest scores.

The TIMSS 1999 Video Study collected data from 638 Year 8 mathematics lessons across the seven countries listed above. The Australian sample comprised 87 schools randomly selected to be proportionally representative of all states, territories and school systems, as well as metropolitan and country areas. One teacher was randomly selected from each of these schools and was filmed for one complete Year 8 mathematics lesson. The coding and analysis of the videotapes was very rigorous and comprehensive, and the study provides us with detailed information about the distinctive features of Year 8 mathematics lessons in each country. Some of the main conclusions about the average Year 8 mathematics lesson in Australia are summarised below.

One type of analysis considered the *procedural complexity* of the mathematical problems presented to students. Low-complexity problems required few decisions or steps by students, while high-complexity problems required many decisions and contained two or more sub-problems. In common with all countries except Japan, most problems (77 per cent) presented in Australian lessons were of low procedural complexity and few (8 per cent) were of high complexity. Another type of analysis considered the *relationships among problems* as a measure of the mathematical coherence of the lesson. Four types of relationships were classified: repetition, mathematically related, thematically related and unrelated. Three-

quarters of problems presented in Australian lessons were repetitions of preceding problems (a higher proportion than for any other country), and only 13 per cent were mathematically related in that they extended or elaborated a preceding problem (a lower proportion than for any other country). Problem statements were also analysed to determine the *mathematical processes* to be engaged for their solution. ‘Using procedures’ problems could be solved by applying a procedure or set of procedures involving, for example, number operations or manipulation of algebraic symbols. ‘Stating concepts’ problems called on mathematical conventions or examples of mathematical concepts (e.g. ‘Draw the net of an open rectangular box.’). ‘Making connections’ problems required students to construct relationships between mathematical ideas, and often to engage in the mathematical reasoning processes of conjecturing, generalising and verifying. The analysis found that in Australia, and in all other countries except Japan, most of the problems presented in lessons (62 per cent) focused on using procedures. Only 15 per cent of problems in Australian Year 8 lessons involved making connections (compared with 54 per cent in Japan).

Although Australian students perform reasonably well in international comparative studies of mathematics achievement, the findings of the TIMSS Video Study point to areas where different methods of teaching might lead to higher achievement. In particular, it seems that the average Year 8 mathematics lesson in Australia displays ‘a cluster of features that together constitute a syndrome of shallow teaching, where students are asked to follow procedures without reasons’ (Stacey, 2003, p. 119). This study suggests that when mathematics teachers make choices about pedagogy, lesson organisation, content and how the content is presented, they need to provide students with:

- more exposure to less repetitive, higher level problems;
- more opportunities to appreciate connections between mathematical ideas; and
- more opportunities to understand the mathematics behind the problems they are working on.

Increasing the emphasis on challenge, connections and understanding may go some way towards addressing the sense of alienation experienced by many students in secondary school mathematics classrooms.

Knowledge needed for teaching mathematics

Statements of the professional requirements for successful teaching of mathematics, such as the *Standards for Excellence in Teaching Mathematics in Australian Schools* (Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers, 2006), usually identify three domains that structure the professional work of mathematics teaching: knowledge, attributes and practices. The statement that opened this chapter described the professional *practice* of mathematics teachers who make a positive difference to their students’ learning in terms of an inclusive and supportive learning environment, coherent planning for learning, teaching approaches that challenge students’ thinking, and timely and informative assessment and reporting. The *attributes* of excellent teachers encompass a belief that all students can learn mathematics, commitment to lifelong professional learning, and constructive interaction with a range of communities relevant to their professional work. These teachers also have a strong *knowledge* base that includes knowledge of students and their social and cultural contexts, knowledge of the mathematics appropriate to the level of students they teach, and knowledge of how students learn mathematics. In this section, we take a closer look at one aspect of the knowledge base needed for effective teaching of mathematics.

Research on mathematics teachers’ knowledge has largely been concerned with identifying their *pedagogical content knowledge* (PCK), defined by Shulman (1987) as ‘the blending of content and pedagogy into an understanding of how particular topics, problems, or issues are organised, represented, and adapted to the diverse interests and abilities of learners, and presented for instruction’ (1987, p. 8). The framework developed by Chick et al. (2006) and reproduced in Table 1.2 incorporates many aspects of PCK that have been identified in the literature and defines a set of goals for teachers’ learning about teaching mathematics.

Table 1.2. Framework for analysing pedagogical content knowledge

PCK Category	Evident when the teacher . . .
Clearly PCK	
Teaching strategies	Discusses or uses strategies or approaches for teaching a mathematical concept
Student thinking	Discusses or addresses student ways of thinking about a concept or typical levels of understanding

PCK Category	Evident when the teacher . . .
Student thinking—misconceptions	Discusses or addresses student misconceptions about a concept
Cognitive demands of task	Identifies aspects of the task that affect its complexity
Appropriate and detailed representations of concepts	Describes or demonstrates ways to model or illustrate a concept (can include materials or diagrams)
Knowledge of resources	Discusses/uses resources available to support teaching
Curriculum knowledge	Discusses how topics fit into the curriculum
Purpose of content knowledge	Discusses reasons for content being included in the curriculum or how it might be used
<b>Content knowledge in a pedagogical context</b>	
Profound understanding of fundamental mathematics	Exhibits deep and thorough conceptual understanding of identified aspects of mathematics
Deconstructing content to key components	Identifies critical mathematical components within a concept that are fundamental for understanding and applying that concept
Mathematical structure and connections	Makes connections between concepts and topics, including interdependence of concepts
Procedural knowledge	Displays skills for solving mathematical problems (conceptual understanding need not be evident)
Methods of solution	Demonstrates a method for solving a maths problem
<b>Pedagogical knowledge in a content context</b>	
Goals for learning	Describes a goal for students' learning (may or may not be related to specific mathematics content)
Obtaining and maintaining student focus	Discusses strategies for engaging students
Classroom techniques	Discusses generic classroom practices

Source: Based on Chick et al. (2006).

## Current challenges for mathematics teaching

Secondary school mathematics teachers in the twenty-first century face at least two significant challenges. The first was foreshadowed in 1956 by Ken Cunningham (2006), the director of the Australian Council for Educational Research (ACER), who argued that the mathematics curriculum needed to be more relevant because many secondary students felt alienated in mathematics classrooms. The postwar secondary mathematics curriculum was designed for the very small number of students who would study mathematics in Year 12 rather than taking into account the needs of all students, irrespective of their likely career paths and employment prospects. He made a very strong case for what we now call numeracy, or mathematical literacy, in the secondary mathematics curriculum, and especially quantitative—or what we now call statistical—literacy.

Steen (2001) recently argued that statistical literacy was very important for active citizenship and democracy, since people need to be able to use and interpret the ever-increasing amount of information and data available for decision-making in all aspects of life. These ideas are now more evident in mathematics curricula for all levels of secondary schooling. They include an emphasis on applying knowledge and problem-solving, and the expectation that students will conduct investigations of mathematical phenomena in their world. Statistical literacy is also included throughout secondary school, although not necessarily in all subjects offered at the senior secondary level (see Chapter 11, on chance and data). There are now much higher retention rates to the end of secondary school, and schools and education systems provide a range of senior secondary mathematics subjects to cater for students. However, students continue to seek relevance in mathematics and teachers find this a challenging aspect of their work—although it can be very rewarding when successful. We pay particular attention to this issue in Chapter 3, on making mathematical connections, as well as in other chapters throughout this text.

A second challenge for mathematics teachers relates to understanding of mathematics. When revisiting the themes and issues of mathematics in the school curriculum presented originally by Cunningham, Geoff Masters (2006), a later director of ACER, argued that in the twenty-first century the issue for mathematics teaching and learning is to help learners to make sense of mathematics. This involves making connections cognitively between mathematical concepts, socially through the applications of mathematics, personally by

building on prior knowledge and linking to personal interests, mathematically with other ideas and ways of thinking, and historically and culturally through understanding the development of mathematical ideas and human culture. It is the flexibility, depth and diversity in thinking mathematically that comes from making sense of situations and mathematical abstractions which will be important for working mathematically to meet the social, economic and environmental challenges of the twenty-first century. This challenge—to promote mathematical understanding—is taken up in the next chapter. It continues to be evident throughout this book as we discuss the use of particular tools and teaching strategies, and examine how students develop the facility to use the various concepts and skills that constitute the field of mathematics.

## The structure of this book

The remainder of this book addresses the professional knowledge, professional attributes and professional practice of secondary school mathematics teachers. It is divided into four sections. Part II deals with issues around mathematics pedagogy, curriculum and assessment, as well as the role and influence of technologies in mathematics education. Part III analyses relevant research on students' learning of specific mathematical content (number, measurement, geometry and spatial concepts, algebra, chance and data, and calculus) and identifies implications for effective teaching approaches. Part IV considers equity and diversity in mathematics education in terms of gender, social and cultural issues, and teaching mathematics to students with diverse learning needs. Part V discusses responsibilities of secondary mathematics teachers with regard to professional and community engagement beyond the immediacy of the classroom and school.

## Recommended reading

**Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers (2006).** *Standards for Excellence in Teaching mathematics in Australian schools*, <[www.aamt.edu.au/standards/](http://www.aamt.edu.au/standards/)> (10 April 2007).

**Frid, S. (2001).** Food for thought. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 57(1), 12–16.

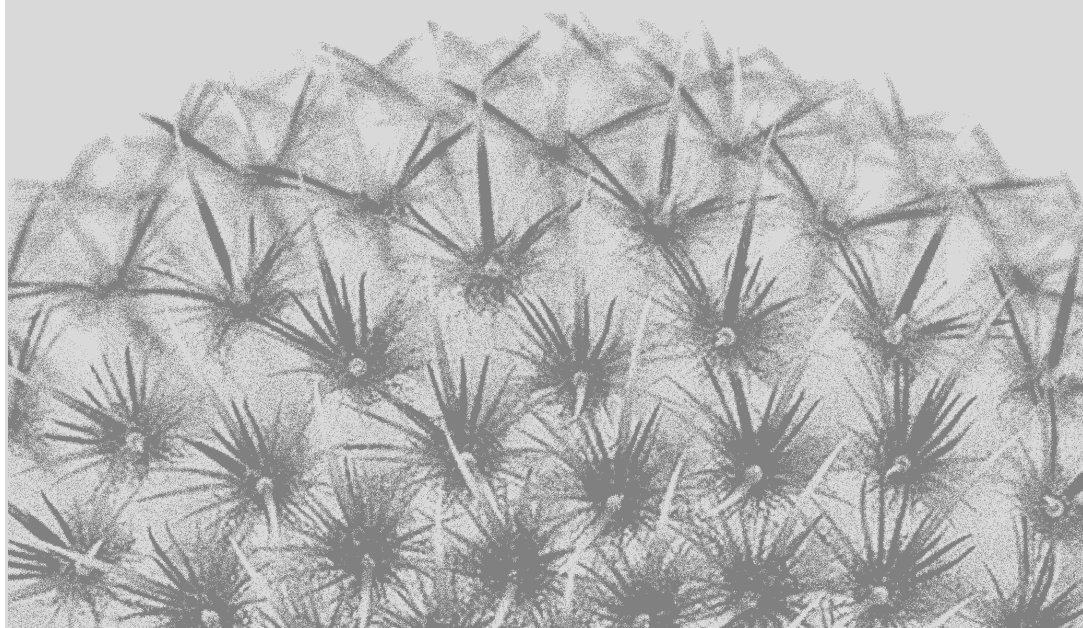


**Hogan, J. (2002).** Mathematics and numeracy: Is there a difference? *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 58(4), 14–15.

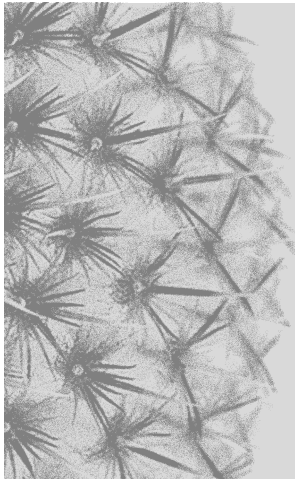
**Hollingsworth, H., Lokan, J. & McCrae, B. (2003).** *Teaching mathematics in Australia: Results from the TIMSS 1999 Video Study*. Melbourne: Australian Council for Educational Research.

Part II

# **MATHEMATICS PEDAGOGY, CURRICULUM AND ASSESSMENT**



This page intentionally left blank



## CHAPTER 2

### **Developing mathematical understanding**

The desire to make sense of what we see, hear and learn is driven by a need to understand, and knowing whether or not one does understand something is essential for learning. Research in mathematics classrooms has shown that mathematical thinking and reasoning are important for the development of conceptual understanding in mathematics. This chapter looks at the nature of mathematical understanding and what teachers can do to develop deep understanding of mathematical concepts in their students. We compare two general theories of learning and consider what they might be able to tell us about mathematics learning and teaching. This is followed by a discussion of mathematical thinking, with specific attention given to mathematical reasoning and problem-solving. The final part of the chapter considers the role of the teacher in creating a classroom culture of mathematical inquiry.

#### **What does it mean to understand something in mathematics?**

Mathematics syllabuses and curriculum documents in many countries place great emphasis on building students' understanding (e.g. Australian Education Council, 1991; National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 2000). Most mathematics teachers would claim that they value learning with understanding, but what exactly does this mean?

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** How do you know when you understand something in mathematics? Discuss your responses to this question with a peer or in a small group. Compare with other groups—are there any similarities or differences in your responses? What kinds of answers do you think secondary school students would give to this question?

One of the authors of this book asked the question ‘How do you know when you understand something in mathematics?’ of over 300 Queensland secondary school mathematics students in Years 10, 11 and 12. Their responses were grouped into the categories shown in Table 2.1. The majority of students considered that they understood something in mathematics if they could do the associated problems and get the correct answer. A few described understanding in affective terms—that is, understanding was accompanied by feelings of increased confidence, enjoyment or excitement. Only a small proportion of students associated understanding with knowing why something worked or made sense, and even fewer referred to the ability to apply their knowledge to unfamiliar problems as evidence of understanding. Perhaps the most sophisticated kind of response came from students who knew they understood something when they could explain it to someone else. Our observations of many secondary mathematics classrooms and interviews with students suggest that explaining actually does more than allow students to *assess* their understanding—it is also a process through which understanding is *clarified and refined*.

Researchers often describe mathematical understanding in terms of the structure of an individual’s internal knowledge representations. For example, Hiebert and Carpenter (1992) define understanding as ‘making connections between ideas, facts, or procedures’ (1992, p. 67), where the extent of understanding is directly related to the characteristics of the connections. (This definition is much like Category III responses in Table 2.1.)

It is also helpful to distinguish between different kinds of mathematical understanding, and these are often expressed in the form knowing-[*preposition*]. For example, Skemp (1987) describes instrumental understanding as knowing-*what* to do in order to complete a mathematical task, and contrasts this with relational understanding as both knowing-*what* to do and knowing-*why* the particular piece of mathematics works. The actions of students with

instrumental understanding are driven by the goal of getting the correct answer (see Category I responses in Table 2.1). Students who learn mathematics as a set of fixed, minimally connected rules whose applicability is limited to a specific range of tasks cannot adapt their mental structures to solve novel or non-routine problems. On the other hand, students who have relational understanding construct richly connected conceptual networks that enable them to apply general mathematical concepts to unfamiliar problem situations (see Category IV in Table 2.1).

**Table 2.1 Evidence of understanding for secondary mathematics students (n=329)**

Response category	Sample responses	Frequency	Proportion
I Correct answer	When I get it right. You can do heaps of them without mistakes.	234	0.71
II Affective response	I get interested. I feel confident when doing it.	35	0.11
III Makes sense	It fits in with my previous knowledge. You realise why you use the formula, what reasons.	52	0.16
IV Application/transfer	When I can apply it to something else outside school. When I can understand a complex problem and do all the related problems.	27	0.08
V Explain to others	When I can explain it to other people without confusing myself. I can explain the theory to other students.	24	0.07

Others have expanded this framework in ways that provide insightful contrasts. Mason and Spence (1998) identify differences between:

- knowing-*that*, as in stating something (e.g. the sum of interior angles of a triangle is 180 degrees);
- knowing-*how*, as in doing something (e.g. finding the area of a triangle);

- knowing-*why*, as in explaining something (e.g. why the algorithm to divide one fraction by another involves inverting and multiplying); and
- knowing-*to*, as in seizing the opportunity to use a strategy that comes to mind in the moment of working on a problem.

They argue that it is possible for students to get into situations where they have understanding in the forms of knowing-that, knowing-how and even knowing-why, but the relevant knowledge does not come to mind (knowing-to) when it is needed.

It is becoming more commonly acknowledged that mathematical understanding is not an acquisition or a product, as implied by Hiebert and Carpenter's (1992) definition, but rather a continuing process of negotiating meaning, or of attempting to make sense of what one is learning. Pirie and her colleagues (Pirie & Kieren, 1994; Pirie & Martin, 2000) have attempted to represent the dynamic and recursive nature of this process by conceptualising growth in understanding as movement back and forth through a series of nested layers, or levels, each of which illustrates a particular mode of understanding for a specified person and a specified topic. Figure 2.1 provides a diagrammatic representation of these levels of understanding.

*Primitive knowing* describes the starting place for growth of any particular mathematical understanding. At the second level, *image making*, learners use previous knowledge in new ways. *Image having* involves using a mental construct about the topic without having to do the activities which brought it about. *Property noticing* occurs when learners can combine aspects of images to construct relevant properties. In *formalising*, the learner abstracts a quality from the previous image, while *observing* is a process of reflecting on and coordinating this formal activity and expressing such coordinations as theorems. *Structuring* occurs when learners attempt to think about their formal observations as a theory. *Inventising* presents the possibility of breaking away from existing understanding and creating new questions.

## School mathematics and inquiry mathematics

When we look at the kind of mathematical errors that students make, it is natural to assume that these arise because of a lack of understanding. More often, however, 'errors are based on systematic *rules* which are usually distortions of sound procedures' (Perso, 1992, p. 12). A classroom example will help to illustrate this point. Figure 2.2 shows the work of a Year 11 student who was attempting to solve a pair of simultaneous equations as a

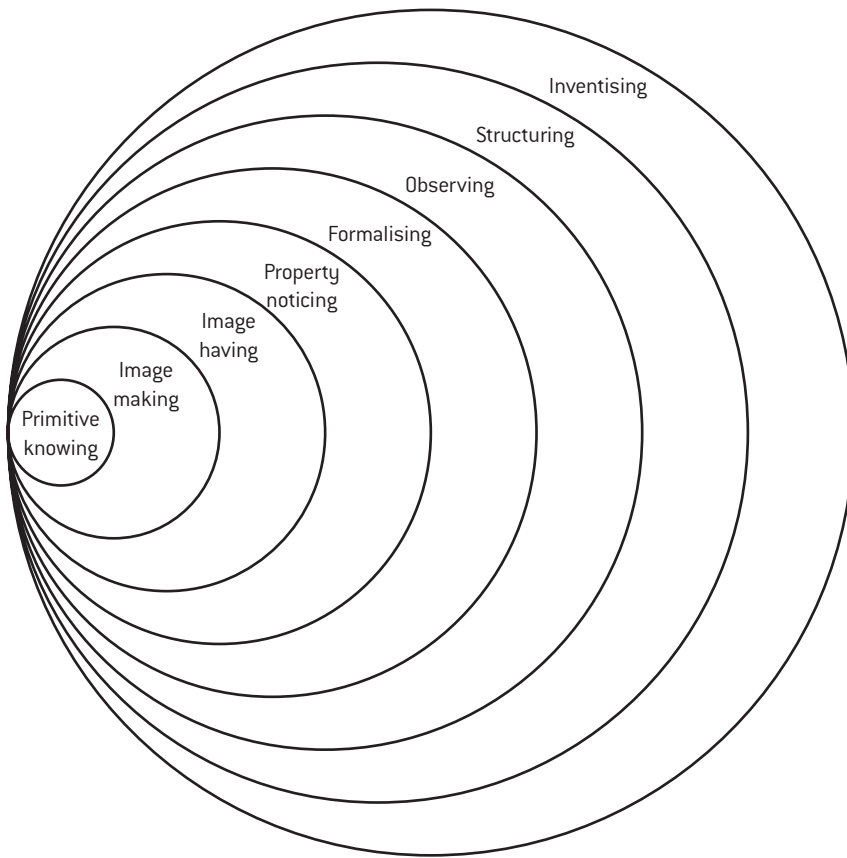


Figure 2.1 Levels of understanding in the Pirie–Kieren theory

homework exercise. Instead of adding the two equations, she subtracted equation (2) from equation (1) and assumed that this would eliminate  $y$ . She then checked her answer ( $x = 8$ ,  $y = 6$ ) by substituting into equation (1), and was puzzled to find that she obtained a different result.

When it was suggested to her that it would be more appropriate to add the equations instead of subtracting them, she insisted: ‘But this is what the teacher did—we were taught always to *subtract* them!’ It is unlikely that the teacher really said these words, but this is how the student had interpreted, and probably over-generalised, the teacher’s advice about handling simultaneous equations. This example demonstrates that if students simply aim to reproduce the procedures demonstrated by the teacher without understanding when and



why these procedures work, they will create their own reasons and rules in a systematic, if flawed, effort to achieve understanding.

$\begin{array}{rcl} 2x + y & = & 10 \quad [1] \\ x - y & = & 2 \quad [2] \\ \hline x & = & 8 \end{array}$ <p>Substitute into [2]:</p> $\begin{array}{rcl} 8 - y & = & 2 \\ y & = & 6 \end{array}$
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Figure 2.2 A student's attempt to solve simultaneous equations

In many mathematics classrooms, learning is assumed to involve mastering a pre-determined body of knowledge and procedures. Likewise, it is assumed that the teacher's job is to present the subject-matter in small, easily manageable pieces and to demonstrate the correct technique or algorithm, after which students work individually on practice exercises. Richards (1991) has described this as the 'school mathematics' culture, where teaching and learning are structured as information transfer or *transmission*. However, as the example in Figure 2.2 shows, knowledge cannot be transferred directly from teacher to learner; instead, learners reinterpret and transform the teacher's words and actions. In contrast, in an 'inquiry mathematics' culture, students learn to speak and act mathematically by asking questions, proposing conjectures, and solving new or unfamiliar problems.

In recent years, researchers have been interested in studying the characteristics of these contrasting classroom cultures and identifying consequences for students' mathematical achievement. Boaler (1997a, 1998, 1999, 2000) conducted a highly influential study of students' mathematics learning in two English secondary schools, which she called Amber Hill and Phoenix Park. She chose these schools because their students were similar in terms of socio-economic and cultural background but their teaching methods were very different. Mathematics teachers at Amber Hill used traditional teaching methods, consistent with the 'school mathematics' culture described above, and assessment was based solely on written tests in preparation for the national examinations at the end of Year 11. Classrooms here were quiet and orderly, and students appeared to be motivated and hard-working. Yet, when interviewed, the students revealed their dislike of mathematics, which for them was an extremely boring and difficult subject. Also, despite their diligence in listening to the

teacher and working through textbook exercises, this very passive approach to their work left them unable to apply their mathematical knowledge to unfamiliar tasks. Boaler said this was because the students had developed ‘inert knowledge’, which she attributed to their belief that learning mathematics required memorising set rules, equations and formulae.

Teaching approaches at Phoenix Park were much more progressive, and mathematics lessons often quite unstructured. Students worked on open-ended projects for most of the time, and there was a strong emphasis on meaning and on explaining one’s thinking. The philosophy here was that students should encounter mathematics in a context that was realistic and meaningful, and teachers taught new mathematical content when the need arose as students worked on their projects. Most of the students enjoyed this inquiry mathematics approach and found mathematics interesting because it involved thinking and solving problems.

One of the most important findings of this study concerns the evidence Boaler found of differences in students’ learning between the two schools. At the beginning of the study, when the students were in Year 9, there were no significant differences in their mathematical performance as measured by standardised tests and other questions Boaler devised to assess aspects of number work. During the study, Boaler used various methods to assess students’ mathematics learning. One of these was an applied investigation task that required students to interpret and calculate from the scale plan and model of a house. Phoenix Park students performed substantially better than Amber Hill students on this task, which is perhaps not surprising given the former school’s project-based teaching approach. More significantly, Phoenix Park students achieved just as well as, and sometimes better than, Amber Hill students on conventional written tests assessing mathematical content knowledge. Amber Hill students’ greater experience in working textbook exercises did not help them in formal test situations if the questions required them to do more than simply reproduce a learned rule or procedure. By comparison, Phoenix Park students were flexible and adaptive mathematical thinkers who could apply their knowledge to unfamiliar tasks. This study therefore provides compelling evidence that a ‘school mathematics’ approach produces only instrumental understanding—knowing-*that* and knowing-*how*—while an ‘inquiry mathematics’ approach can generate relational understanding—knowing-*why* and knowing-*to*.

## Theories of learning

For teaching to be effective, it must be grounded in what we know about how students learn. This section outlines the two theories of learning that are currently most influential in mathematics education: constructivism and sociocultural perspectives. Both of these theoretical positions have something to say about relationships between social processes and individuals' learning (Cobb, 1994), and the theories have intermingled in recent years (Confrey & Kazak, 2006). Constructivism gives priority to individual construction of mathematical understanding, and sees social interaction as a source of cognitive conflict that brings about learning through reorganisation of mental structures. This position contrasts with the sociocultural perspective, which views learning as a collective process of enculturation into the practices of the mathematical community (e.g. Lerman, 1996, 2001).

### *Constructivism*

The central claim of constructivism is that learners actively construct knowledge and personal meanings by connecting their prior knowledge with new knowledge gained from their own interactions with the world (Davis et al., 1990). The emergence of constructivism was significantly influenced by the work of Swiss psychologist Jean Piaget (1954) on theories of cognitive development. Piaget realised that babies, children, adolescents and adults think in ways that are qualitatively different—that is, adults do not simply know more than children, they know *differently*. From his observations of children, Piaget concluded that intellectual development proceeded through a series of stages as children matured. The age ranges he attached to these stages are no longer accepted—for example, he under-estimated the reasoning capacity of younger children and over-estimated that of adolescents. We also now know that learners may exhibit different types of thinking in different contexts and for different topics. Nevertheless, Piaget's ideas about stages of development in children's thinking help us to think about the kinds of things learners may be able to do that are limited by their age rather than by their skill.

In mathematics education, constructivism 'attends to how actions, observations, patterns and informal experiences can be transformed into stronger and more predictive

explanatory ideas through encounters with challenging tasks' (Confrey & Kazak, 2006, p. 316). In such encounters, cognitive change begins when students experience conflict with their previous ways of knowing and take action to resolve this perturbation. Recording and communicating their thinking allow students to reflect on their actions and the adequacy of their new understanding. In order to participate successfully in a constructivist classroom, students and teachers have to renegotiate classroom norms that regulate patterns of interaction and discourse. These include *social* norms, such as expectations that students should explain and justify their reasoning, as well as *sociomathematical* (or discipline-specific) norms—for example, about what counts as an acceptable, efficient or elegant mathematical solution to a problem (see McClain & Cobb, 2001; Wood et al., 2006).

### *Sociocultural perspectives*

The term 'sociocultural' is used to describe a family of theories whose origins can be traced to the work of the Russian psychologist Lev Vygotsky in the early twentieth century. Vygotsky's work was virtually unknown to the Western world until the 1970s, when English translations became available (e.g. Vygotsky, 1978). Since then, his ideas have been explored and extended by many other researchers (see Forman, 2003; Sfard et al., 2001, for reviews of sociocultural research in mathematics education).

Vygotsky claimed that individual cognition has its origins in social interaction—that is, memory, concepts and reasoning appear first between people as social processes, and then within an individual as internal mental processes. He also claimed that mental processes are mediated by cultural tools—such as language, writing, systems for counting, algebraic symbol systems, diagrams, drawing tools, physical models, and so on—and that this mediation transforms people's thinking by changing the way they formulate and solve problems. In connection with these ideas, Vygotsky introduced the notion of the *zone of proximal development* (ZPD) to explain how a child's interaction with an adult or more capable peer might awaken mental functions that have not yet matured. He defined the ZPD as the distance between a child's problem-solving capacity when working alone and when they have the assistance of a more advanced partner, such as a teacher. The metaphor of *scaffolding* (introduced by Wood et al., 1976) became associated with interactions in the ZPD to describe how a teacher structures tasks to allow students

to participate in joint activities that would otherwise be beyond their reach, and then withdraws or *fades* support as students begin to perform more independently.

Vygotsky also drew on his observations of how children learned by playing together without adult intervention to explain the ZPD in terms of more equal status partnerships. From an educational perspective, there is learning potential in collaborative group work where students have incomplete but relatively equal expertise, each partner possessing some knowledge and skill but requiring the others' contributions to make progress. This approach has informed research on collaborative ZPDs in small-group problem-solving in mathematics education (e.g. Goos et al., 2002).

Contemporary sociocultural theory views learning as increasing participation in a community of practice (Lave & Wenger, 1991). In mathematics classrooms, this means that the teacher is responsible for initiating students into a culture of mathematical inquiry where discussion and collaboration are valued in building a climate of intellectual challenge. Van Oers (2001) proposes that this process begins with the teacher's demonstration of a mathematical attitude—that is, a willingness to deal with mathematical concepts and to engage in mathematical reasoning according to the accepted values in the community—and consequently from the teacher's mathematical expectations about the learners' activity. Learners appropriate this mathematical attitude by participating in shared practice structured by the teacher's expectations and actions.

### **A classroom scenario**

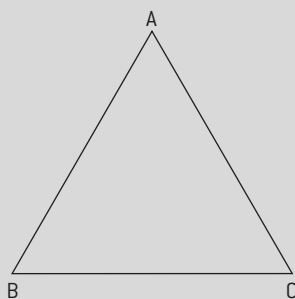
During his first practicum session, Damien (a pre-service teacher) was assigned to teach a very challenging Year 10 mathematics class. The students were unmotivated and had a history of poor achievement in mathematics, and there was a great deal of disruptive behaviour. Damien decided that the best approach was to use whole-class exposition and questioning in order to maintain order and control, and he offered very simple tasks to give students some experience of success. This approach was not successful, as shown by the post-lesson debriefing notes Damien recorded with the help of his university supervisor, who had observed the lesson.

Teacher expectations	Teacher actions	Student actions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Listen to teacher, copy example, practise similar tasks.</li> <li>• Low-ability class, I will accept performance before understanding.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Whole-class work, blackboard example, worksheet for individual practice.</li> <li>• Choose simple exercises.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Confused, few finished task.</li> <li>• Unwilling to work, used delaying tactics, off task, restless.</li> <li>• Rude to each other and to teacher.</li> </ul>

During the second practicum session, Damien was teaching the same class. In one lesson he decided to take a different approach by trying a practical activity. He wanted students to work out for themselves some properties of equilateral and isosceles triangles—for example, when triangles have equal side lengths, their angles are also equal. The students had to use rulers and compasses to draw triangles with given side lengths, measure the angles, tabulate their results (as in the example below) and draw conclusions.

### Example

Draw the equilateral triangles with side lengths shown below ( $AB = BC = AC$ ). Measure and record the size of the angles for each triangle.



Side length [cm]	Angle (degrees)		
	A	B	C
5			
6.5			
9			

Not only did this activity allow students to discover mathematical properties for themselves, it also had the unplanned effect of stimulating peer interaction and

discussion—something that Damien had previously discouraged because he thought the class would become unruly and difficult to manage. It also gave him opportunities to listen to students' conversations and ask questions that moved their thinking towards generalising relationships between angles and sides. Below are the debriefing notes for the lesson recorded by Damien and his university supervisor.

Teacher expectations	Teacher actions	Student actions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Work things out for themselves.</li> <li>• Learn by doing, 'hands on'.</li> <li>• Raised expectations, wanted understanding.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provided investigation task.</li> <li>• Toured room, asked questions of individuals and groups.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Shared results, explained to each other.</li> <li>• Asked me questions, wanted to show me their work.</li> <li>• Cooperative, on task, excited.</li> </ul>

Consider the above two lessons and explain in terms of constructivist theory why the second lesson was more successful than the first. (Think about challenging tasks, cognitive conflict, recording of and reflection on new understanding.)

Now use sociocultural perspectives to explain why the second lesson was more successful than the first. (Think about cultural tools, scaffolding, peer interaction.)

## Mathematical thinking

Williams (2002) has developed a framework for describing students' mathematical thinking that may prove useful for teachers as they observe the nature of learning occurring in their classrooms. The framework is based on work of Dreyfus et al. (2001), who view mathematical thinking as abstraction and generalisation. Three categories of student thinking are identified, at increasing levels of complexity:

1. *recognising*: realising that a known mathematical procedure applies in a new situation;
2. *building-with*: using several previously known mathematical procedures to solve an unfamiliar problem;
3. *constructing*: selecting previously known strategies, mathematical ideas and concepts to integrate when solving an unfamiliar challenging problem.

Williams (2002) added further detail to create a set of nested categories, showing how students move from analysis to synthesis to evaluation (see Table 2.2).

### Angles in polygons

Consider the following task (Williams, 2002, pp. 335–6).

Students were provided with an A3 page containing polygons with three to ten sides. Students were then asked to work in pairs and were directed to:

- use straight lines to divide each polygon into triangles;
- cut out the triangles for one polygon (at a time);
- tear off each angle of each triangle;
- place the angles around a point and find the sum of all the angles from triangles for a particular polygon;
- record their findings in a table with headings like ‘number of sides of polygon’ and ‘total of angles’.

Students were shown how to piece the angles together, and instruction was given about how to tell the size of the total angle by the number of rotations made. Students were asked to look for a pattern in the table they generated. Once the pattern was found, the teacher developed a rule, and then the students practised the rule on other polygons.

- Work with a partner on the ‘Angles in polygons’ task by following the instructions given to students.
- Discuss with your partner the types of thinking you used to complete the task (e.g. finding a pattern, using known information). Decide which category of thinking the task elicits (refer to Table 2.2).
- How could the task be refined or its manner of implementation be changed so that it calls forth more complex thinking? (Use the examples of thinking in Table 2.2 as a source of ideas.)



**Table 2.2 Categories of complex mathematical thinking**

Complexity of thinking	Examples of thinking
Evaluation (Constructing)	<p>Continually check for inconsistencies as different aspects of the problem are explored.</p> <p>Look for how the new mathematical processes used may be applicable to other situations.</p> <p>Recognise new mathematical insights developed may be useful in solution pathways used to resolve subsequent spontaneous questions.</p>
Synthesis (Constructing)	<p>Select relevant strategies, ideas and concepts.</p> <p>Integrate mathematical ideas, concepts and strategies to produce a new mathematical insight.</p> <p>Develop a mathematical argument to explain <i>why</i>.</p> <p>Find and resolve a spontaneous question.</p> <p>Progressively resolve subsequent spontaneous questions.</p> <p>Develop a new process to add to problem-solving repertoire.</p>
Evaluative-analysis (Building-with)	<p>Use a quick method or estimate to check a finding by relating the mathematics back to the context.</p> <p>Refer to the context to provide reasons for why a pattern works.</p>
Synthetic-analysis (Building-with)	<p>Interconnect different solution pathways by considering <i>why</i> two or more solution pathways may be appropriate to solve the same problem.</p> <p>Consolidate insights developed through the problem by building-with them in the development of further insights.</p>
Analysis (Building-with)	<p>Search for patterns.</p> <p>Search for alternative solution pathways to solve the same problem.</p> <p>Work backwards where you have only been taught to solve the question forwards. For example, find the length of a rectangle when given the width and the area if previous questions always gave the length and width and required the student to find the area.</p> <p>Analyse a situation to find what known mathematical procedures to apply (analyse to <i>recognise</i>).</p>

Mathematical thinking is represented in curriculum documents in a variety of ways that distinguish mathematical processes from mathematical content. Table 2.3 summarises approaches to specifying ‘process’ aspects of mathematics in curriculum materials provided for teachers in Australia (Australian Education Council, 1994), the United States (National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 2000) and the United Kingdom (Qualifications and Curriculum Authority, n.d.). Common to all of these curricula are the thinking processes of *reasoning* (described in the Australian *National Profile* as investigating, conjecturing, applying and verifying) and *problem-solving*.

**Table 2.3 Representation of process aspects of mathematics in curriculum materials**

<i>National Profile</i> (Australia)	Investigating Conjecturing Using problem-solving strategies Applying and verifying Using mathematical language Working in context
<i>NCTM Principles and Standards</i> (USA)	Problem-solving Reasoning and proof Communication Connections Representation
<i>National Curriculum</i> (UK)	Problem-solving Communicating Reasoning

### *Mathematical reasoning*

Mathematical reasoning involves making, investigating and evaluating conjectures, and developing mathematical arguments to convince oneself and others that a conjecture is true. Yackel and Hanna (2003) assert that ‘explanation and justification are key aspects of students’ mathematical activity in classrooms in which mathematics is constituted as reasoning’ (2003, p. 229). Students learn to give explanations and justifications when teachers (a) provide tasks that require them to investigate mathematical relationships (as in

the example from Williams, 2002, above), and (b) foster a classroom climate where students are expected to listen to, discuss and question the claims made by others (National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 2000).

*Consider the following task:*

Write down your age. Add 5. Multiply the number you just got by 2. Add 10 to this number. Multiply this number by 5. Tell me the result. I can tell you your age (by dropping the final zero from the number from your result and subtracting 10).

Investigate this task with a partner. Why does it work? Formulate a generalisation to explain why and present your argument to the class. Evaluate any alternative solutions presented by others (National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 2000, pp. 56–7).

*Mathematical problem-solving*

Problem-solving is considered to be integral to all mathematics learning (National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 2000), and a great deal of research on mathematical problem-solving was carried out during the 1980s and 1990s (see Schoenfeld, 1992 for a comprehensive international review, and Anderson & White, 2004 for information on recent Australasian research). Since this time, problem-solving has been incorporated into the aims of mathematics syllabuses and other curriculum documents throughout Australia, most recently under the heading of ‘Working Mathematically’. (See Chapter 5 for a discussion of curriculum models based on problem-solving.)

‘Problems’ and ‘problem-solving’ have had many—often contradictory—meanings in the past (Schoenfeld, 1992). However, a commonly accepted definition is that a task is a problem if the person attempting it does not know the solution method in advance (National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 2000). This means that a particular task could be a problem for one person but a routine exercise for another, because the ‘problem’ does not lie solely in the task, but rather in the interaction between task and student.

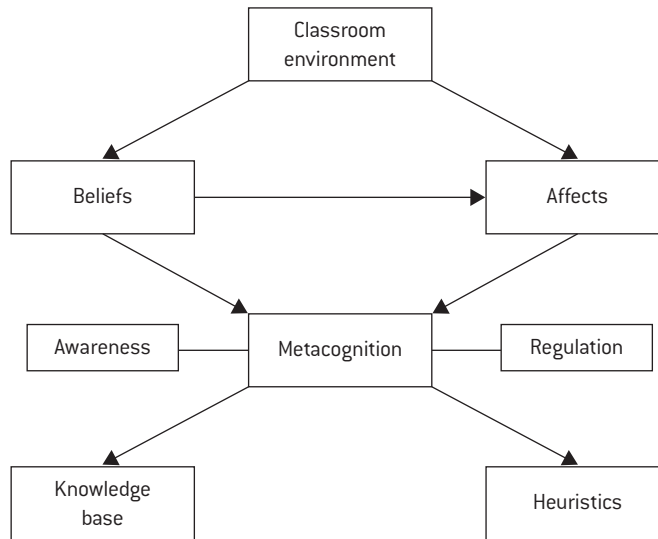


Figure 2.3 Factors contributing to successful problem-solving

Figure 2.3 identifies factors contributing to successful problem-solving that were identified by research in the 1980s and 1990s. The mathematical *knowledge base* includes intuitive knowledge, facts and definitions, routine procedures and algorithms, and knowledge about the rules of mathematical reasoning. *Heuristics*, general strategies or ‘rules of thumb’ for making progress with non-routine tasks (e.g. work backwards, look for a pattern, try a simpler problem), are also an important strategic resource. *Metacognition* has two components: *awareness* of one’s own mathematical strengths and weaknesses, task demands and factors affecting task difficulty; and *regulation* of one’s thinking while working on mathematical tasks. Regulation involves such activities as planning an overall course of action, selecting specific strategies, monitoring progress, assessing results, and revising plans and strategies if necessary. Without effective metacognitive awareness and regulation, students will not be able to recognise or use their knowledge to help them solve a problem when they get stuck, and they typically persist with inappropriate strategies that lead nowhere.

Beliefs and affects may enhance or interfere with metacognitive activity. Students’ *beliefs* represent their mathematical world-view. Op ’t Eynde et al. (2002) propose that ‘students’ mathematics-related beliefs are the implicitly or explicitly held subjective conceptions students hold to be true about mathematics education, about themselves as mathematicians,

and about the mathematics class context' (2002, p. 27). Their beliefs about themselves as doers of mathematics, and about particular topics, the nature of mathematics in general, and the mathematics classroom environment contribute to their metacognitive awareness and influence their metacognitive regulation (Schoenfeld, 1992). Self-beliefs also reinforce *affects*, in particular attitudinal traits such as motivation, confidence and willingness to take risks (McLeod, 1992; McLeod & Adams, 1989). These affective reactions may in turn influence students' capacity to maintain task involvement. Variations in the *classroom environment* can trigger different types of affective responses, but the classroom context has an even more important role to play in shaping students' beliefs (Henningesen & Stein, 1997). We have seen that teaching which emphasises memorisation, formal procedures and correct answers at the expense of understanding can lead students to believe that they are meant to be passive participants, neither capable of, nor responsible for, proposing and defending ideas of their own (Boaler, 1998; Schoenfeld, 1988).

Holton and Clarke (2006) have discussed the idea of scaffolding—introduced earlier in connection with teacher–student interaction in the zone of proximal development—as a means of developing students' metacognition. They propose that scaffolding questions posed by the teacher during three stages of problem-solving (listed in Table 2.4) can support students in becoming aware of and regulating their thinking, and that students can become self-scaffolding by asking themselves the same questions as the teacher's support is withdrawn (the teacher *scaffolds and fades*).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Try solving the problem below. Work on your own for a few minutes to get a feel for the problem, and then work with a partner or in a small group. Use the scaffolding questions in Table 2.4 to monitor and regulate the group's problem-solving attempts.

Divide five dollars amongst eighteen children such that each girl gets two cents less than each boy.

Most mathematically experienced students attempt an algebraic solution to this problem, and are surprised to discover that other approaches can be more productive (see Goos et al., 2000 for an analysis of secondary school students' solution methods for this task).

**Table 2.4 Teacher scaffolding questions during problem-solving**

Getting started	While students are working	After students are finished
What are the important ideas here?	Tell me what you are doing.	Have you answered the problem?
Can you rephrase the problem in your own words?	Why did you think of that?	Have you considered all the cases?
What is this asking us to find?	Why are you doing this?	Have you checked your solution?
What information is given?	What are you going to do with the result once you have it?	Does it look reasonable?
What conditions apply?	Why do you think that that stage is reasonable?	Is there another solution?
Anyone want to guess the answer?	Why is that idea better than that one?	Could you explain your answer to the class?
Anyone seen a problem like this before?	You've been trying that idea for five minutes. Are you getting anywhere with it?	Is there another way to solve the problem?
What strategy could we use to get started?	Do you really understand what the problem is about?	Could you generalise the problem?
Which one of these ideas should we pursue?	Can you justify that step?	Can you extend the problem to cover different situations?
	Are you convinced that bit is correct?	Can you make up another similar problem?
	Can you find a counter-example?	

### *Creating a classroom community of inquiry*

It should be clear from the discussion we have presented throughout this chapter that teachers have a pivotal role to play in developing students' understanding of mathematics. We have also seen that an 'inquiry mathematics' approach leads to deeper understanding and more flexible mathematical thinking in students. Much recent research based on constructivist and sociocultural theories has asked how the mathematics classroom can become a 'community of inquiry' and what teachers should do to engage students in mathematical thinking, reasoning and problem-solving. While it is not feasible to give a list of prescriptive actions or recipes for teachers to follow, researchers have identified characteristics of classroom communities of mathematical inquiry and the teacher's role within such classrooms.

A recent study of an Australian secondary school mathematics classroom (Goos, 2004b) found that key elements of the teacher's role involved:

- modelling mathematical thinking;
- asking questions that scaffolded students' thinking;
- structuring students' social interactions; and
- connecting students' developing ideas to mathematical language and symbolism.

An example from a Year 11 lesson on matrices about two months into the school year illustrates this teacher's actions and the students' responses (see annotated field notes in Table 2.5).

**Table 2.5 Year 11 mathematics lesson**

Annotation	Interaction	Whiteboard
Scaffolds students' thinking	T reminds Ss of procedure for finding inverse of a $2 \times 2$ matrix using simultaneous equations. Asks Ss to solve the resulting equations. Ss provide equations and solution.  T: So the inverse of $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 5 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ is $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -5 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 5 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ $\begin{aligned} 3a + c &= 1 \\ 5a + 2c &= 0 \\ 3b + d &= 0 \\ 5b + 2d &= 1 \\ a = 2, b = -1, c = -5, d = 3 \end{aligned}$
	T: Can you check via matrix multiplication that you do get the identity matrix? Ss confirm this is so.	
Models mathematical thinking	T: Is it inefficient to do this every time? Ss concur. T: Could we find a shortcut? Luke suggests reversing the position of $a$ and $d$ , and placing minus signs in front of $b$ and $c$ . T elicits symbolic representation and writes on whiteboard.	Inverse of $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ is $\begin{pmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{pmatrix}?$
Models mathematical thinking	T: How could we verify this? Ss suggest doing another one. T provides another example; asks students to use 'Luke's conjecture' to write down the hypothetical inverse and check via matrix multiplication. Ss do so; they are convinced the method works.	$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{\text{inverse}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

Annotation	Interaction	Whiteboard
Scaffolds Ss' thinking	T gives another example for Ss to try. Gradual increase in S talk as they realise Luke's conjecture doesn't work for this one (matrix multiplication does not yield the identity matrix).	$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{\text{inverse}} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} ?$ $\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$
Scaffolds Ss' thinking	T reminds Ss they can still find the inverse by solving simultaneous equations. Ss do so and verify via matrix multiplication.	Inverse is $\begin{pmatrix} \frac{2}{5} & \frac{-1}{5} \\ \frac{-3}{5} & \frac{4}{5} \end{pmatrix}$
Scaffolds Ss' thinking	T: How is this related to Luke's conjecture? (which is half right). Ss reply that the first attempt is too big by a factor of 5, so they need to divide by 5.	
Scaffolds Ss' thinking	T: What did you divide by in the previous example? Ss realise they could divide by 1.	$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{\text{inverse}} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{1} & \frac{-1}{1} \\ \frac{-1}{1} & \frac{2}{1} \end{pmatrix}$
Models mathematical thinking	T: So the new method (dividing by something) works. But how do you know what to divide by? Find a rule that works for these two cases. Test it on another matrix of your choice. (Ss do so.) T: What is the divisor? Dean: $ad-bc$	
Mathematical conventions and symbolism	T names 'this thing' ( $ad-bc$ ) as the <i>determinant</i> . T: Let's formalise what you've found. What would I write as the inverse of $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ ?  Alex volunteers the formula, which T writes on whiteboard. Rhys: What part of that is the determinant? T labels $ad-bc$ and writes the symbol and name 'del' on whiteboard.	$\frac{1}{ad-bc} \begin{pmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{pmatrix}$ $\nabla = ad - bc$ $\text{del}$



The aim of the lesson was to have the students discover for themselves the algorithm for finding the inverse of a  $2 \times 2$  matrix  $\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$ . The teacher first chose a matrix  $A$  with a determinant of 1 and asked the students to find the inverse  $A^{-1}$  by using their existing knowledge of simultaneous equations to solve the matrix equation  $AA^{-1} = I$ . He then elicited students' conjectures about the general form of the inverse matrix, based on the specific case they had examined. Since the nature of the example ensured that students would offer  $\begin{pmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{pmatrix}$  as the inverse, the teacher was able to provide a realistic context for students to test this initial conjecture. A counter-example, whose inverse was found to have the form  $n \begin{pmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{pmatrix}$ , allowed the students to find a formula for  $n$ , which only then was labelled by the teacher as the determinant.

In a lesson that took place six weeks later, the teacher asked students to develop a method for finding the angle between two vectors  $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ , based on their knowledge of the formula for the dot product,  $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|\cos\theta$ , encountered for the first time only the previous day. Now the students were expected to advance their thinking without the teacher's scaffolding, and most spontaneously formed small groups and pairs to work on the task without his assistance for over ten minutes. When the teacher reconvened the class, he nominated a student (Alex) to come to the whiteboard to present his solution. As Alex began to calculate the value of  $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ , the teacher reminded him that he wanted a general equation first before any numerical substitution. Other students then began offering Alex suggestions and hints as to how to proceed:

**Adam:** Rearrange it, Alex.

**Aaron:** Yeah, rearrange it.

**Alex:** Using . . . ?

**Aaron:** Using, like, symbols.

**Adam:** Look up on the board! (i.e. at the formula  $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|\cos\theta$ ). Just write down the equation.

**Alex:** So you work out  $\mathbf{a}$  dot  $\mathbf{b}$  using this method—(starts to substitute numbers again)

**Teacher:** I don't want to see anything to do with those numbers at all!

**Aaron:** Alex, rearrange that equation so you get theta by itself. (Alex begins to do so.)

**Teacher:** How's he going? Is he right? (Chorus from class, 'Yes'. Alex finishes rearranging formula to give  $\vartheta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{a \cdot b}{|a||b|}\right)$ ). Alex, that's great, that's spot on!

Here Adam and Aaron appear to be using teacher-like scaffolding strategies to move a peer's thinking forward, and they bypass the teacher completely in directing their comments to the student at the whiteboard.

As the school year progressed, the teacher continued to withdraw his support to pull his students forward into their zones of proximal development, and students responded by taking increasing responsibility for their own mathematical thinking. The effect is illustrated by the following exchange, which occurred about three months before the end of the school year. Dylan, a student who had previously displayed a highly instrumental approach to understanding mathematics (Skemp, 1987), was struggling with a task that asked students to prove that there is a limit to the area of a Koch snowflake curve. The following dialogue occurred after Dylan had spent several minutes with his hand raised hoping to seek the teacher's assistance:

**Dylan:** (Plaintively) I can't keep going! I want to know why!

**Alex:** (Looks up, both laugh) Have you got my disease?

**Dylan:** Yeah!

**Alex:** Dylan, wanting to know why!

**Dylan:** Me wanting to know why is a first, but I just want to. It's a proof—you need to understand it. (Alex resumes work, Dylan still has his hand raised.)

Dylan's newfound insistence on 'knowing why', rather than glossing over elements of a proof he did not understand, indicates that he was moving towards fuller participation in the practices of mathematical inquiry—where being able to reason is essential to understanding.

A similar study carried out in the United States (Hufferd-Ackles et al., 2004) summarises just how these teacher–student interactions change over time as a community of inquiry grows (see Table 2.6).

**Table 2.6 Characteristics of a classroom community of mathematical inquiry**

Dimension	Change
Questioning	Shift from teacher as questioner of students to students and teacher as questioners. Student–student talk and questioning increase, especially ‘Why?’ questions.
Explaining mathematical thinking	As the teacher asks more probing questions to stimulate student thinking, students increasingly explain and articulate their mathematical ideas.
Source of mathematical ideas	Shift from teacher as source of all mathematical ideas to students’ ideas also influencing the direction of lessons. The teacher uses student errors as opportunities for learning.
Responsibility for learning	Students increasingly take responsibility for learning and evaluation of others and self. Mathematical sense becomes the criterion for evaluation. The teacher encourages student responsibility by asking them questions about their own and each other’s work.

We should not underestimate the challenges associated with implementing these teaching approaches in secondary mathematics classrooms. Often it seems that content coverage and assessment pressures get in the way of developing understanding and mathematical thinking, especially when we are faced with a classroom full of students who have been socialised, over many years of schooling, into believing that teaching is telling and learning involves memorisation and practice. Yet the evidence from research convinces us that an inquiry mathematics approach offering worthwhile tasks and stimulating social interactions is the most effective way to foster learning with understanding.

### Recommended reading

**Boaler, J. (1998).** Open and closed mathematics: Student experiences and understanding. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 29, 41–62.

**Boaler, J. (2000).** Mathematics from another world: Traditional communities and the alienation of learners. *Journal of Mathematical Behavior*, 18(4), 1–19.

**Goos, M. (2004b).** Learning mathematics in a classroom community of inquiry. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 35, 258–91.

**Holton, D. & Clarke, D. J. (2006).** Scaffolding and metacognition. *International Journal of Mathematical Education in Science and Technology*, 37(2), 127–43.

**Richards, J. (1991).** Mathematical discussions. In E. von Glaserfeld (ed.), *Radical constructivism in mathematics education* (pp. 13–51). Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic.

**Wood, T., Williams, G. & McNeal, B. (2006).** Children's mathematical thinking in different classroom cultures. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 37, 222–55.

## CHAPTER 3

### **Developing mathematical connections**

Being able to understand the world from a mathematical perspective is what we hope to facilitate for our students as secondary school teachers of mathematics. To this end, all students need to build a cohesive and comprehensive picture of mathematics by establishing and appreciating how:

- the mathematics they are doing in secondary school connects with and builds on the mathematical concepts and skills they started constructing and developing in the primary years;
- the mathematics they do in their mathematics classes connects across other curriculum areas which they study, such as geography, science and health, and physical education; and
- various connections within mathematics itself are established.

Teachers of mathematics have many opportunities for forming and strengthening these connections through ensuring explicit connections are made:

- among content topics across lessons;
- among content within lessons;
- through mathematical applications; and
- through mathematical modelling to the world around them.

## Connections across the middle years

The transition from primary to secondary school appears to be an ongoing problem, despite many transitions programs being implemented over the years. For example, when baseline data for the Middle Years Numeracy Research (MYNR) Project in Victoria were collected in 1999, researchers noted a significant drop in performance in numeracy tasks from Year 6 (the last year of primary school) to Year 7 (the first year of secondary school) in urban schools (Siemon et al., 2001). They also noted that teachers in Years 5–9 classes could expect a range of up to seven years in numeracy-related performance, echoing similar findings in international comparison studies.

To overcome difficulties associated with this transition into the lower secondary school, it was recommended that classroom teaching strategies involve the regular and systematic use of open-ended questions, mathematical games, authentic problems, and extended investigation to enhance students' mathematics learning and capacity to apply what they know. In addition, teachers should focus on the connections within mathematics, across tasks and topics, and explicitly develop students' strategies for making connections. Teachers who model the making of such connections themselves are on the road to beginning this process.

Teachers need to actively engage all students in conversations and texts that encourage reflection on their learning, and explanation and justification of their thinking. Simply engaging students by doing does not ensure mathematical learning occurs: there must be a focus on meaning and on ensuring that students are attending to what matters and how it matters mathematically (Mason, 2004). Highly atomised, topic-based approaches tend to mask the 'big ideas' of middle years mathematics (that is, place value and multiplicative thinking, see Chapter 7) and 'crowd the curriculum' (Siemon et al., 2001). Merely 'getting learners to do tasks in mathematics lessons is not sufficient to ensure that they make mathematical sense of what they are doing' (Mason, 2004, p. 79). Even supplementing this by discussion is not sufficient to ensure mathematical learning if learners are focusing their energies and attention elsewhere (Mason, 2004). Thus learning activities need to be designed or chosen so they are appropriate to learners' needs and interests; however, the teacher also needs to work at actively gaining and focusing students' attention on the relevant aspects of the task at hand.

The MYNR Project researchers used data collected from student responses to rich assessment tasks to develop an emergent numeracy profile. This profile can be used to select learning materials and structured, numeracy-specific teaching across the middle years. The major discriminating factors distinguishing performance at different levels in the profile were:

- students' understanding of, and capacity to apply, rational number ideas;
- metacognitive activity—namely, monitoring of cognitive goals (indicative of conceptual understanding of the situation/task) and monitoring cognitive actions (indicative of procedural management of the solution attempt); and
- the extent to which students could deal with patterns.

Chapters 7 to 11 give a brief overview of the extent of the relevant content areas covered in the primary school years to help you facilitate students' transition from primary school; however, it would also be worthwhile to consult curriculum documents relevant to the middle years in your state or territory.

## **Connections across curriculum areas**

Until recently, formal cross-curricular cooperation in Australian secondary schools was limited to some attempts at the lower secondary levels. Use of mathematics in other subject areas does occur (e.g. in chemistry or geography), but when a mathematical problem is set in, say, a physical education context, the motivation to do this usually emanates from the mathematics classroom and there is no formal arrangement where the physical education teacher and the mathematics teacher cooperate in writing a cross-curricular unit to serve as the basis for both the next mathematics unit and the next physical education unit. Thus subject disciplines protect their time allocation in the curriculum and their territory.

At the lower secondary level, interdisciplinary projects are a possibility for formal cross-curricular cooperation (see Goos & Askin, 2005). However, there has to be a payoff between the amount of mathematics applied or learnt through these projects and the time devoted to them in an already decreasing time allocation to mathematics classes. With this in mind, mathematics needs to be the anchor subject to ensure that a significant amount and depth

of mathematics is involved. (Integrated curriculum models are discussed and illustrated further in Chapter 5.)

## Connecting content across lessons

According to Lampert (2001, p. 179):

In school, students will connect what they learn in one lesson to what they learn in the next lesson in one way or another. The teacher can work to deliberately structure the making of connections to enable the study of substantial and productive relationships in the content. If the teacher can make the conceptual connections among lessons obvious, students will have the opportunity to study aspects of the content that are not easily contained in single lessons. They will be able to study the kinds of ideas that make a subject coherent across separate topics.

Lampert suggests that a suitable context be selected as a basis for generative problems which act as a thread connecting the mathematical content from one lesson to the next. This context can be a unifying real-world situation—such as back problems resulting from improper lifting techniques as a connecting thread for several lessons on dynamics at the senior secondary level—or it can be a mathematical context—such as an investigation into the patterns and algebra of square numbers as an over-arching context for teaching mathematical notions such as powers and Pythagoras' Theorem at the lower secondary level.

Connecting content across lessons is similar to the task of selecting problems that will allow connections across content within a single lesson, but it is a more substantial task, as the teacher needs to be able to anticipate and identify the mathematics within the situation that will allow the same context to be sustained across several lessons. The problems need to be developed or selected in a way that will allow the focusing of students' attention on significant mathematical ideas and the important relationships among the mathematical concepts contained within them. The problem of designing a roller-coaster ride, for example, can be used as the basis for a generative theme for the study of functions in Year 11. Designing the ride using functions to model the track, and possibly other aspects of the ride, is the ultimate goal; however, along the way students build an understanding of a variety of functions, their transformations, key features, gradient functions, and various mathematical and technological tools for working with functions.



## Making connections in lessons

The use of open questions in the mathematics classroom is often advocated to foster the development of students' higher order thinking. However, Herbel-Eisenmann and Breyfogle (2005) point out that 'merely using open questions is not sufficient' (2005, p. 484). This is especially true if the goal is to have students develop connections in a lesson that lead to an interconnected web of mathematical knowledge (Noss & Hoyles, 1996), rather than the students being 'funnelled' into the teacher's or textbook writer's way of thinking. Three ways in which teachers may assist students to develop connections in a lesson are explored here in three different classroom scenarios about a task, *Shot on goal* (see box). These methods include *triadic dialogue*, *funnelling* and *focusing*.

### Shot on goal

You have become a strategy adviser to a group of new soccer recruits. Your task is to educate them about the positions on the field that maximise their chance of scoring. This means that when a player is dribbling the ball down the field, running parallel to the sideline, where is the position that allows this player to have the maximum amount of the goal exposed for a shot on the goal?

Initially you will assume the player is running on the wing (i.e. close to the sideline) and is not running in the goal-to-goal corridor (i.e. running from one goal mouth to the other). Find the position for the maximum goal opening if the run line is a given distance from the near post. (Relevant field dimensions and a diagram of a soccer field as well as guiding questions are provided.)

Source: (Adapted from Galbraith et al., 2007, p. 135)

### Scenario 1: Triadic dialogue

The common use of *triadic dialogue* (Initiation–Response–Feedback) in many classrooms is well documented. The following exchange between a teacher and Year 9 students working on the *Shot on goal* task is typical of the type of questioning associated with triadic dialogue:

<b>Teacher:</b>	Now the question says: 'Find the angle of the shot on the run line 20 metres from the goal line.' See if you can find where that
-----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

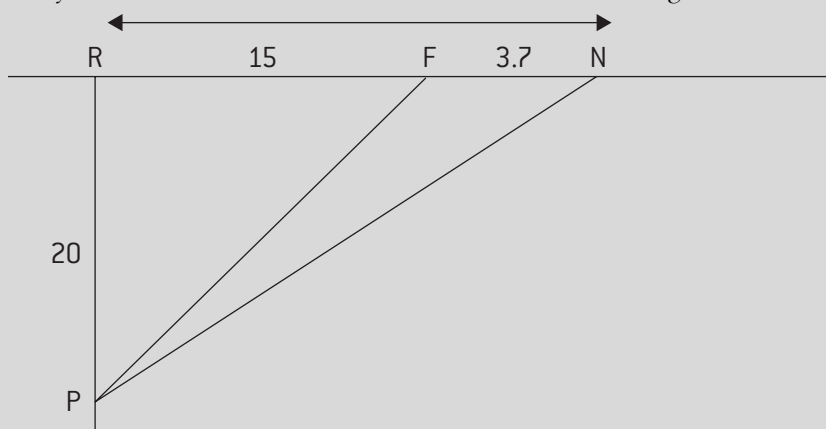
- 20 metres should be put. [Pause] Has anyone worked out where that 20 metres belongs? [Initiation]
- Mary:** It is AB. [Response]
- Teacher:** Good. Thank you very much. [Feedback] Is that in agreement with everybody else? [Initiation]
- Several students:** Uhuh. [Response]
- Teacher:** Good. Now that's the first thing we need to do. [Feedback]

Source: Extract from RITEMATHS project classroom transcript (2005).

### Scenario 2: Funnelling

In an effort to avoid such restricted patterns of interaction, but at the same time stay in control of the direction of the lesson, teachers commonly engage in *funnelling* (Herbel-Eisenmann & Breyfogle, 2005). This technique often gives the impression that students are making the connections in a lesson for themselves, but this is not in fact the case, as demonstrated by the following example of a different teacher using *Shot on goal* in the context of hockey with a Year 9 class.

This is the fourth lesson the class has spent on the task. The teacher drew the following diagram on the whiteboard before the students entered the room, and as a class they decided the formula shown would find the shot angle.



$$\begin{aligned}\text{Shot angle} &= \angle NPF \\ &= \angle RPN - \angle RPF\end{aligned}$$

- Teacher:** Now, has anyone worked out where that [the formula] goes in terms of LISTS? Which LIST would that formula be in? [referring to LISTS in the graphics calculator used for storing and manipulating data]
- Ben:** The last one.
- Teacher:** The last one. We don't write it in that form but why is it in the last one?
- Ben:** Because it is the last step?
- Teacher:** Because this is the [pause] last step. This is: 'The answer is' step, isn't it? [The teacher writes in large capital letters and circles ANSWER IS then draws a four column table representing LISTS on the whiteboard with the second and third columns headed L2, L3.] So could anyone suggest what should be in this one [second column] and that one [third column] if you are going to get there [fourth column]? [Spiro raises his hand.] What should be in LIST 2 and LIST 3 if you want LIST 4? [Waves at students] No, I am not going to ask you. My question was this: What do I put here and here if I want angle NPF there [pointing to the last column of the table he has drawn]?
- Mat:** RPF and RPN.
- Teacher:** I want to put RPF there [writes on board with an arrow to column 2] and I want to put [writes RPN on board with an arrow to column 3], agree?
- Mat:** Yeah.
- Teacher:** How then do I calculate LIST 4?
- Abdi:** You take LIST 2 from [stops].
- Teacher:** I heard starters, someone?
- Mat:** LIST 3 from LIST 2.
- Teacher:** So LIST 4 is LIST 3 minus LIST 2, agree? [Doesn't detect the error.]
- Mel:** Yes.
- Sue:** But what numbers do you put in LIST 2?
- Teacher:** Yes, that's an issue. Now we have to find out this question: How do I find the angle in LIST 2 [writes 'Find L2'.] How do I calculate, this is, there's 4 [writes 'L4' above NPF] That's in LIST 2 [writes '2' above RPF.

That's in LIST 3 [writes '3' above RPN]. How do I calculate angle RPF [writes angle below L2.]? Yes?

**Spiro:** Using tan.

**Teacher:** Using tan, so what did you use? I will call this A [indicating  $\angle$  RPF].

**Spiro:** Tan A equals 15 over 20. A equals  $20^{-1}$ .

**Teacher:** Angle A equals [waits]?

**Spiro:**  $\tan^{-1}$ . No, no,  $15^{-1}$ .

**Teacher:** OK, I am going to ask this question: Which is the number that changes all the time? Is it the 20 or the 15 that continues to change as the runner moves [drawing their attention to the shot spot on the diagram by writing '(Runner)' beside P]?

**Sue and Spiro:** The 20.

**Teacher:** The 20 moves. So sometimes this could be 20, next time it could be [waits]?

**Sue and Spiro:** 15.

**Teacher:** And then?

**Students:** 10.

**Teacher:** And then?

**Students:** 5.

**Teacher:** Or it could go 1 and 2 and 3 and 4 and 5. Where are these—1, 2, 3, 4—coming from? Of course, positions along the line, aren't they [drawing various dots down the run line, RP, from R]?

**Mel:** Yes.

**Teacher:** So how can I get this formula [pointing to  $A = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{15}{20}\right)$ ] which is really good for one case, this case [pointing to the board] to a general formula so that it works for all these different points? Fatima?

**Fatima:** I just thought of 15 divided by LIST 1.

[The transcript continues with the teacher 'funnelling' students towards developing a corresponding formula for the tan of  $\angle$  RPN.]

*Source:* Extract from RITEMATHS project classroom transcript, SOG lesson 4 (2005).

Funnelling results in the classroom discussion converging to the thinking pattern of the teacher. However, funnelling can also be used to scaffold students along a predetermined path of solution and connection-making. In these circumstances, the teacher needs to make students aware of the metacognitive purpose of the questions asked and explicitly encourage students to start asking themselves these same questions. As students take responsibility for doing this, the teacher then fades the scaffolding. In the above exchange, the teacher's goal was to make sure all the students could 'code it up' (set up the problem) on their graphics calculators, and the teacher's funnelling was directed at bringing the class to this point.

### *Scenario 3: Focusing*

Herbel-Eisenmann and Breyfogle (2005) suggest using a third questioning technique, 'focusing', to develop students' own connection-making. Here the teacher listens to students' responses and guides the discussion on the basis of the students' thinking, not on the basis of how the teacher would necessarily solve the task. The following transcript is from the same classroom introduced above; however, it is taken from the first lesson when students were beginning the hockey version of the *Shot on goal* task. The teacher facilitated the students' coming to know which angle was the focus of the task through focusing questions during a whole-class discussion when three students attempted to draw the relevant angle on the whiteboard at the front of the room.

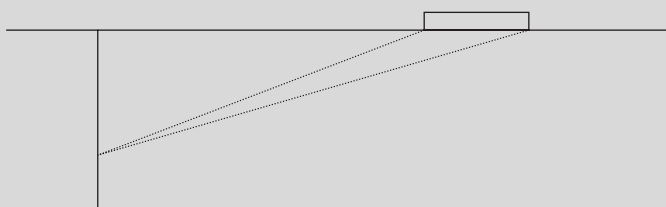
They began with a diagram showing a goal box on the goal line and a run line perpendicular to this line.



**Teacher:** Now, next part. Where do those lines go? Would someone like to come out and show where they think they have to hit? Dave?

**Abdi:** Is it like the best spot?

**Teacher:** Not the best spot but where he can hit the ball and still get it in.  
 [Dave has drawn lines from a spot on the run line to the near post and the far post.]



**Teacher:** Explain.

**Dave:** Ah, well, you can still hit that post [pointing to far goal post] and it will still go in and you can still hit the inside of that post [pointing to near goal post] and it will most likely go in.

**Teacher:** OK, is there a second person would like to come out?

**Spiro:** There is no wall around the field, is there?

**Ben:** There is a goalie.

**Teacher:** Come on Spiro [holding out whiteboard pen] First debate was that's a solution [pointing to Dave's diagram]. What are you going to do—agree with the first speaker or are you going to change it?

**Spiro:** I am not going to agree. Hit it off the wall. Is there another wall?

**Teacher:** What wall are you referring to?

[Spiro draws a line down the side of the field diagram.]

**Dave:** There is no wall. [Spiro shades the diagram on the whiteboard to indicate a wall down the side of the field.]

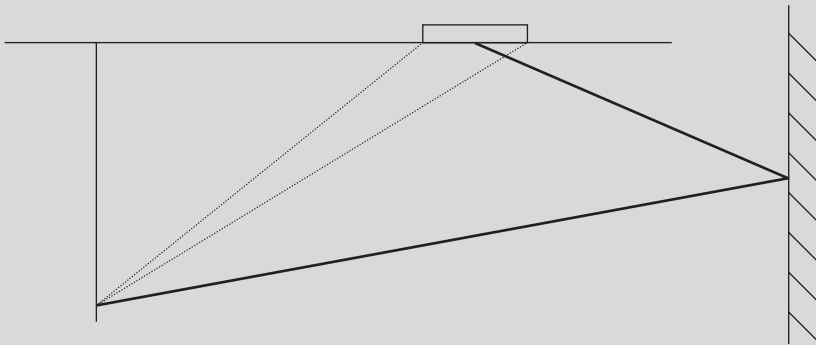
**Spiro:** That wall there.

**Dave:** Spiro, this is a gutter—there is no wall.

**Teacher:** OK, now, so you are going to bounce it off the wall?

**Mel:** That was my idea.

**Teacher:** Can you show me the paths that would be allowed for you?  
 [Spiro draws a trajectory from the shot spot to the wall then into the goal.]

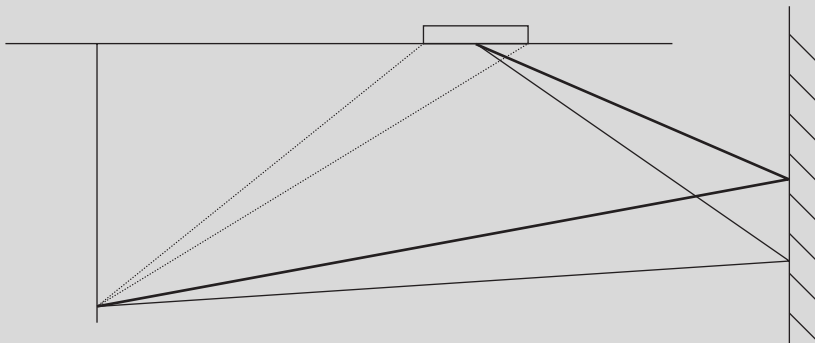


**Teacher:** Third speaker.

**Mel:** All right. OK, what if mine is the same as that one?

**Teacher:** OK, yours is the same as that one. I'll give you a different coloured pen.

**Mel:** What will I do? [Draws an angled trajectory showing the ball bouncing off the wall but lower down.] That's about right.



**Teacher:** Now, where are my hockey players? Robyn? How many people play hockey? Robyn, as a judge of these things . . .

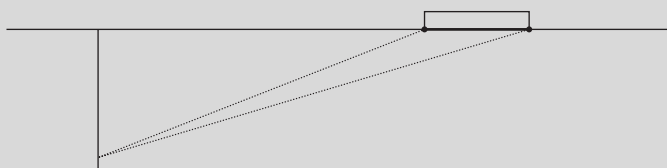
**Mel** [Interrupting]: I didn't mean it to be that angle.

**Teacher:** As a judge of these, which ones would you accept in a hockey game? Mel's? Spiro's? Dave's?

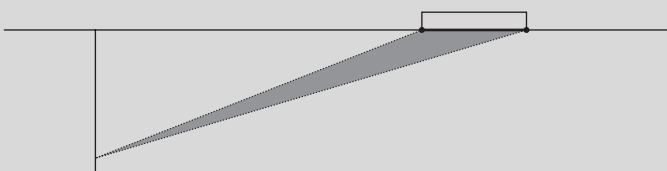
**Mike:** Is there a wall there or not? [General laughter]

**Teacher:** Is there a wall or is there not? OK, when you play hockey on a field, is there a wall there?

- Fay:** No.
- Teacher:** If there was a wall there, would it be inside the field or outside the field?
- Cate:** Outside.
- Teacher:** Therefore, if you hit the wall it would be . . . [waits]?
- Jo:** It would be out.
- Teacher:** It would be out so [walks to diagram on whiteboard] . . . Do you think the second one and third one are acceptable hits?
- Students:** Nooo!
- Spiro:** [Clapping] All right then. I agree with Dave.
- Teacher:** Then you agree with Dave. Why do you agree with Dave?
- Spiro:** Because it is a straight line hit until at least it is in.
- Cate:** I have a better solution.
- Teacher:** OK, let's hear the better solution. [Hands pen to Cate who goes out to whiteboard.] Could you listen, please. Yeah, go for it. [Cate draws a large dot at each goal post then a thick line across the goal mouth.]



- Teacher:** Explain to me your better solution.
- Cate:** Ah, because Dave said you could hit the two poles but you can hit the ball between the poles, anywhere from this post to that post.
- Abdi:** [Almost disdainfully] But you have got a goalie!
- Teacher:** No, just forget that. They broke their leg over here. So what you are saying is: It's not just two lines? [Shades in between the two lines.]





- Dave:** That's what I meant.
- Mel:** That was what I was going to ask.
- Teacher:** What were you going to ask?
- Mel:** Whether Dave just meant the lines or between the lines as well.
- Teacher:** OK, if it is that case, which angle are we being asked to find for the best angle? Where is the best angle? Where is this angle that is the shot on goal angle? Would you draw it quickly freehand in the exercise book?

*Source:* Extract from RITEMATHS project classroom transcript, SOG lesson 1 (2005).

In this approach, students have to articulate their thinking so others can understand what they mean. It also allows the teacher to see more clearly what students are thinking and what connection-making they are doing for themselves. It is obvious from this transcript that the teacher values student thinking, and that students are encouraged to contribute. The teacher asks *clarifying questions* and *restates aspects of the solution* to keep attention focused on the *discriminating aspects* of the particular student's solution. However, for this to be used effectively, the teacher must be able to see the essence of a mathematical task and, on a moment-by-moment basis, the essence of a task solution proffered by a student.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Re-read the dialogue above. Note when the teacher is asking clarifying questions and restating aspects of a particular solution.

Reflect on the merits or otherwise of the teacher allowing the students this amount of time to come to an understanding of where the best angle might be for the shot on goal.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** When observing classes, look at what happens *after* the first question is posed. What interaction follows? Reflect on how you can pose questions or ensure students pose questions for others so that all students engage in mathematical thinking and make connections for themselves.

## Connections through mathematical applications

Curriculum documents often advocate making connections to the real world through the use of mathematical applications for teaching and assessing (e.g. BOSNSW, 2002; QBSSS, 2001) as a means of motivating and engaging students, as well as illustrating the usefulness of mathematics to describe and analyse real-world situations. Galbraith (1987) categorises as applications ‘the problem type questions typical of the teaching and examining tradition’ (1987, p. 6). He sees these as serving an important—if limited—function in ‘requiring translation, interpretation, and the successful use of relevant mathematics’ (1987, p. 6). The limitation comes from the closed nature of the task: ‘The situation is carefully described, relevant data are provided, and the student knows that each datum must be used in finding the solution. Assumptions needed to define the outcome ... are explicitly provided.’ (1987, p. 6).

The underlying assumption in selecting application examples for the classroom is that mathematical awareness and understanding are fostered through an active engagement in finding and applying solutions to real-life problems that fall within the sphere of students’ personal understanding. Teachers’ knowledge of students’ interests is therefore crucial in bringing such tasks to the classroom, unless teachers allow students to pose their own problems or the teacher chooses open tasks where the students have freedom to choose their own pathway and pose questions of interest to themselves in solving the task.

Unfortunately, for pragmatic reasons, application problems are often presented in the classroom with more reduced task contexts rather than a highly lifelike ones. There appear to be three levels of embedding of context that characterise these problems. These have been termed *border*, *wrapper* and *tapestry problems* (Stillman, 1998).

### *Border problems*

For *border problems*, the context is merely a border around the mathematics (see Figure 3.1). Here the supposed connection to the real world is superfluous. The mathematics and context are in fact entirely separate, and the mathematics can easily be disembedded—once it is realised that this is all the task entails—as the context does not obscure the mathematics at all.

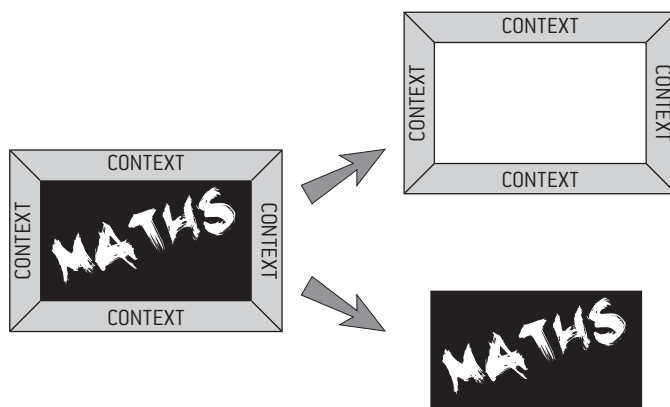


Figure 3.1 Context as border

However, these types of problems are deceptively difficult for students, particularly in the lower secondary years, as their form is not as transparent to many students as to the adult who wrote them. In the *Microwave ovens* problem in the box below, the connection of the mathematics to microwave ovens is merely window dressing for the mathematical task of equating the two equations and solving for  $t$ . There is no motivation for why you would need to do this in a real-life context. Giving an answer as a number with years written after it is also no indication that a student is working within the context and making connections to the real world outside the classroom.

### Microwave ovens

The number of radioactive emissions from a certain faulty microwave oven is given by  $N_1 = 64(0.5)^t$  at  $t$  years from the time of use. The number of emissions from a second faulty microwave is given by  $N_2 = 4^{15}(0.0625)^t$  at  $t$  years from the first time of use. Find out when both microwaves will emit the same number of radioactive emissions.

Source: Stillman (2002).

### Wrapper problems

In *wrapper problems*, the mathematics is hidden within the context but the two can be separated by unwrapping the mathematics (see Figure 3.2). The context can, in a sense, be thrown away as the mathematics is all that is needed to solve the problem. The more diligent problem-solver may pick up the wrapper after a mathematical solution is reached to check that it makes sense. However, the presence of the context does make the unwrapping of such problems quite challenging for some students. The box on page 62 shows an example of a wrapper problem, *Road construction*.

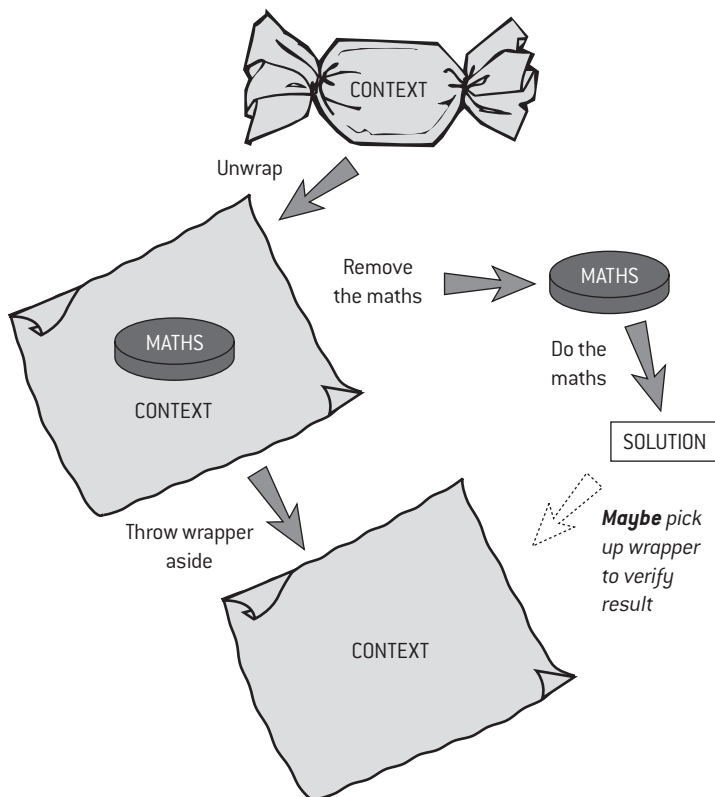


Figure 3.2 Context as wrapper

### Road construction

A new traffic lane (minimum width 6 metres) is to be added to a section of highway which passes through a cutting. To construct the new lane, engineers need to excavate an existing earth bank at the side of the roadway, which is inclined at  $25^\circ$  to the horizontal. This will make the inclination steeper. Local council regulations will not allow slopes greater than  $40^\circ$  due to the potential for erosion. Decide whether the new traffic lane can be excavated without expensive resumption of properties at the top of the bank, which is 7 metres above the road surface.

*Source: Galbraith & Stillman (2001, p. 306).*

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Read through the *Road construction* problem again. Give possible reasons why it took some students just six to eight minutes to solve whilst others took eighteen to 25 minutes. It would be helpful to look at the different ways in which you could draw a diagram for the task.

### *Tapestry problems*

In *tapestry problems*, the context and the mathematics are entwined or intermingled and the solution process proceeds by continually referring back to the context to check you are on track. There is always the sense that the two are very much interrelated. The upper bound of these applications are actually true modelling problems such as the task in the box below, *Drying out*.

### Drying out

There are many lakes in Australia that are dry for most of the time, only filling for short periods immediately after rain. Lake Eyre in South Australia is an example of one of these normally dry lakes. When a dry lake bed is filled with water, how rapidly will the lake empty?

*Source: Henry & McAuliffe (1994, pp. 41–48).*

Over-use of border and wrapper problems leads to a rather impoverished view of applications of mathematics, and certainly does not foster the modes of thought associated with the modelling of real-world situations. The teacher whose interview transcript appears below elaborates on this issue.

- Teacher:** If you are going to use context, then it should always be true to context. I mean we always set conditions anyway.
- Interviewer:** What do you mean you set conditions?
- Teacher:** Well, there is always the opportunity to set conditions. So if you are going to give a contextualised question and you are going to give a formula or function like that why not set the conditions so they can make it more realistic. So that you have realised the limitations within the question but you are saying: ‘Hey, wait a minute. This is maths. It does apply to the context but the maths can overwhelm the context in some ways. We have considered that. Here are the conditions to make it more realistic.’ In that one [referring to a task about the height of a tree producing cabinet timber being modelled by a cubic function], rule out the negative. It is considered, then, that maths can go beyond reality.
- Interviewer:** You don’t think it gives them the message that you are just required to do these things and therefore you have tried to stick them in a context but the context is something that is irrelevant?
- Teacher:** Kids believe that because it is considered the norm of mathematics. They believe they will get questions that may not make sense to them but they know it has to be mathematical.
- Interviewer:** Where would they develop that idea from?
- Teacher:** Going through school, right through from junior [high school]. Right through . . . Context is just a coat that they wear.

*Source:* Stillman (2002).

In Chapter 14, we discuss the influence of socioeconomic status on students’ interpretation of the context of such problems. In particular, there is evidence that students from low

socioeconomic backgrounds rely too heavily on personal experience of contexts and find it difficult to ‘unwrap the mathematics’.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** In small groups, examine the application tasks in a mathematics textbook. Categorise them as border, wrapper or tapestry problems. Report your findings to your peers.

Applications problems in the secondary setting can provide a useful bridge between the contextualised practice problems of the past and full-blown modelling tasks. In the busy classroom, it is frequently not possible to explore and model real situations. Often the situation is simplified to make it more approachable with regard to the skill level of students, so the ‘real situation’ that is being modelled is ‘pseudo-real’ at best. However, reducing the realism may prevent students from posing and asking questions, making simplifying assumptions, generating and selecting variables, and formulating the mathematical model themselves.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Re-read the *Drying out* problem above. White (n.d.) restated the problem as: ‘Find how long it takes the lake to become dry again. We expect the answer to be in days.’

In groups, brainstorm the problem. Generate a list of variables involved. Select from these those that will be considered in an initial model of the situation.

Read the article by White, discussing the suggested classroom techniques for carrying out this modelling task.

## Connections through mathematical modelling

As Kaiser and Sriraman (2006) show, there is wide variation in what is meant by the term ‘modelling’ in mathematics education. This causes difficulties for teachers, students and assessors when modelling is expected to form a significant part of the curriculum. One

interpretation sees a role for mathematical modelling primarily for the purpose of motivating, developing and illustrating the relevance of particular mathematical content (e.g. Zbiek & Conner, 2006). Alternatively, mathematical modelling can be seen as an approach in which the modelling process is driven by the desire to obtain a mathematically productive outcome for a problem with genuine real-world motivation (e.g. Galbraith & Stillman, 2006; Pollak, 1997; Stillman, 2006). At times this is directly feasible, while at other times the descriptor ‘life-like’ is more accurate. The point is that the solution to such a problem must take seriously the context outside the mathematics classroom, within which the problem is located, in evaluating its appropriateness and value (see Galbraith et al., 2006). The learning goal is to support the students’ development of modelling competencies as modelling itself is considered to be content.

In the latter view, mathematical modelling involves more than just application problems. It is a process that students work through, and the techniques and meta-knowledge about applying mathematics gained in this process are as important as the eventual solution. Many secondary textbooks take the approach of mathematical theory followed by examples, purely mathematical practice exercises and then the mathematics just covered embedded in contextualised problems. According to Blum and Kaiser (1984), ‘when we start with situations which have already been idealized, the resulting mathematization appears almost compulsory, which is practically a falsification of any genuine process of modelbuilding’ (1984, p. 213). Applications problems of this nature circumvent the modelling process to a large extent. A purely applications approach does not engender the cultivation of the metaknowledge about applying mathematical processes which accompanies the modes of thought associated with modelling real-world situations. Two motivations for adopting a modelling approach at the senior secondary level are the impact of technology such as graphics and CAS calculators (discussed in Chapter 4) and the opportunity modelling affords of making mathematics relevant through connections to the real world. This approach to modelling has been adopted in curriculum documents in some states, as the following interview with a Queensland teacher indicates.

**Interviewer:** Where did the motivation for introducing applications and mathematical modelling into the upper secondary school curriculum in the mid- to late 1980s come from?



**Teacher:** Up until that time it was just Maths I and Maths II and Maths in Society which was very traditional and very abstract whereas the new A, B and C syllabus was all about providing real-life opportunities for the kids to be able to see the relevance of mathematics, I suppose, and to apply the mathematics rather than just drawing a graph. And I suppose the other side of it was the technology . . . I think that has been a big driving thing, the fact that you have the technology that you can then explore real-life situations and the kids can actually get down and get dirty in the mathematics rather than everything being really nice and neat. Because up until that stage, like in the old syllabus, because they didn't have that facility, everything was always pretty much nice. You used to spend a double period drawing a graph [laughs]. What is even scarier is that there are still some schools who do that, but that is another story.

**Interviewer:** Why was the introduction of applications and modelling considered to be a valuable initiative at the senior secondary level?

**Teacher:** One of the big things between the old syllabuses . . . and the new ones . . . the kids were always asking: 'Why do we do this? What's the point of all this? Where am I ever going to use this?' . . . The old syllabus was very much content driven whereas the new syllabus and, even down the track and as I understand it more and more, it's more about understanding concepts and how the concepts relate to each other. And mathematical modelling allows you to build the understanding of the concepts. The content is important and you need the content but it is the application of that content in a way that is meaningful and the kids can make sense of that. So there is a purpose for it. There is a relevance to the mathematics that they are doing and the kids can see that. Nowadays, unless the kids can see a reason for doing something they just park up [refuse to budge]. You will get the small handful of kids who will just jump through any hoop that you give them but the vast majority of kids, unless there is a reason for doing it, they just won't engage.

*Source:* Extract from CCiSM project interview (2005).

### *The modelling process*

Although application problems can require the problem to be translated into a suitable representation, a mathematical model formulated and relevant mathematics used successfully in solving the problem and validating the solution, there are important aspects of modelling that are omitted in this process. These are crucial to the modelling task and vital for students to develop their own repertoire of modelling techniques. Treilibs et al. (1980–81) and Klaoudatos (1994) have argued that modelling ability is different from conventional mathematics ability, and their research showed that facility with conventional mathematics was no indication of students' modelling ability. Students who are very successful at conventional mathematics are often the most resistant to change from traditional pedagogy to a modelling approach (Clatworthy & Galbraith, 1989). Clatworthy comments in an interview that 'you become so locked into being successful in the standard mode of mathematics that you become too scared and too tight mentally to look at the processes that are involved in modelling' (1989, p. 102).

With most modelling situations (e.g. the 'Mad Cow' disease example below), the task is not so constrained that only a limited number of possible mathematical models can be used in the solution, as is the case with applications problems. The process of defining the real-world problem in such a way as to allow it to be explored and investigated is crucial to modelling. Questions need to be asked about what has to be known and what tools are available to try to solve the problem. Specific assumptions made in reducing the problem to a manageable mathematical model must be identified. Decisions have to be made about which variables are important and which can initially be ignored in simplifying the problem. The modellers make these decisions—they are not made for them, as happens in applications problems. Also, when the particular problem has been solved by the modeller, the validation process requires testing with a different data set from that used in the model development. The model may need modification if there are inconsistencies with empirical test data or if it is felt that the simplifying assumptions have produced a model that is too unrealistic or undesirable to be useful. The modeller is thus required to explore the strengths and weaknesses of the model, clearly communicating any limitations to possible users.

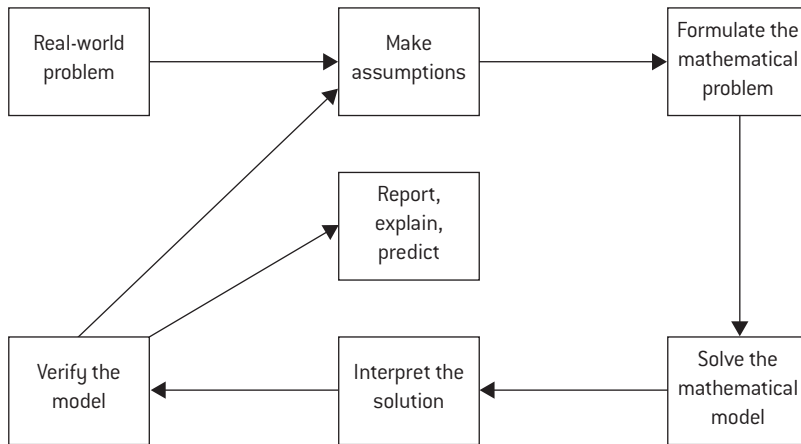
### ‘Mad Cow’ disease

CJD (Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease) is a fatal brain disease of humans first classified in the 1920s. In 1996, doctors in the United Kingdom reported a variant of the disease, vCJD. Research since suggests that vCJD is the result of exposure to the agent that causes the cattle disease commonly called ‘Mad Cow’ disease. Parts of the brain are destroyed—hence the name. This is caused by abnormal versions of agents called prions which build up over time as they are resistant to the body’s normal mechanisms for breaking them down. They can join together into sheets (or fibrils) that destroy the nervous tissue around them. It is also possible that the presence of abnormal prions increases the probability that further ones will be produced. The height of mad cow disease in the United Kingdom was the mid-1980s. The first cases of vCJD occurred in the mid-1990s. Once symptoms are displayed, the sufferer generally survives around two years.

By 4 August 2006, there had been a total of 156 definite and probable recorded deaths of vCJD in the United Kingdom. In 2001, Lawson and Tabor reported that the Government Chief Medical Officer was still saying that the final toll was likely to be between ‘hundreds and hundreds of thousands’. Is it possible that there really is this number of sleepers out there in the general population who are infected with vCJD but who are yet to display the symptoms?

*Source:* Adapted from Lawson & Tabor (2001).

Although several simple sequential cycle frameworks of the modelling process (e.g. White, n.d.—see Figure 3.3) have been developed, when the process is studied holistically it really is quite messy (Clements, 1989). In reality, following a sequential modelling cycle from analysis of the real-world situation through several iterations of the cycle to develop a refined model of the situation may be a long way from what really happens. The phases of the process are all interconnected and a particular mode of attack can lead directly from one phase to any other phase. *Some sense of this complexity is necessary if students are to develop the meta-knowledge associated with modelling.*



Source: White (n.d., p. 8).

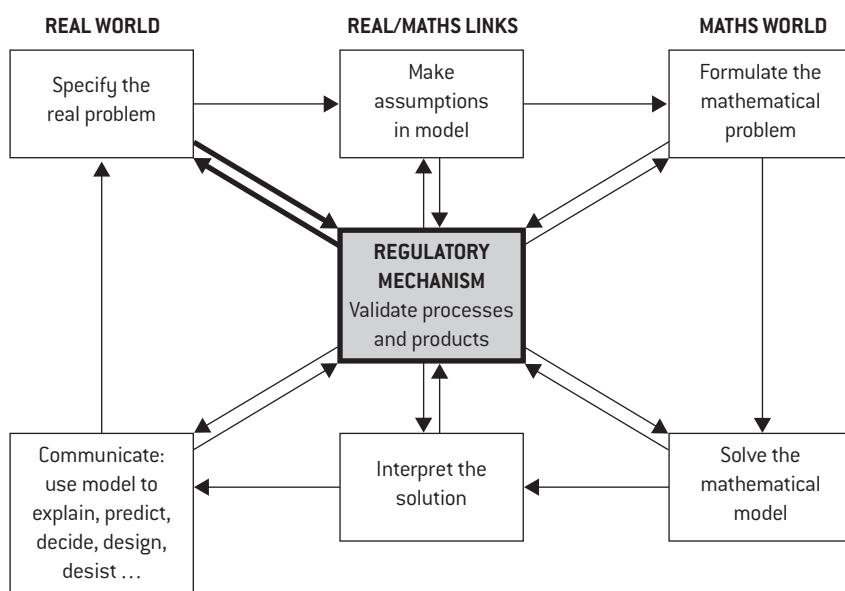
Figure 3.3 The modelling process

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Work in small groups on the ‘*Mad Cow*’ disease modelling problem presented above. Statistics on CJD in the United Kingdom are available from <[www.dh.gov.uk/PublicationsAndStatistics/Statistics/fs/en](http://www.dh.gov.uk/PublicationsAndStatistics/Statistics/fs/en)>. Reflect on the processes you used in the light of the modelling cycle developed by White (n.d.). How adequately does it describe the complexity of your thinking?

Modellers need to be continually aware of the connections between the situation being modelled and the mathematical activity taking place, with some validation of the partially complete model occurring at each stage. In essence, validation then becomes a regulatory or controlling activity (i.e. it is metacognitive—see Chapter 2), affecting the whole modelling process. Recent research (e.g. Galbraith & Stillman, 2006; Maaß, 2006) confirms the presence of this metacognitive activity, even when students are beginning modellers in Year 9.

Figure 3.4 shows how this regulatory mechanism monitors the modelling processes throughout the solution. It is still possible to follow the cycle sequentially as before, but now deviating or backtracking via the regulatory mechanism and bringing into play a continual process of reconsidering possible assumptions, strategies, actions and their results in terms of other components in the modelling activity are highlighted. The links between

the problem context and the regulatory mechanism are thicker to show the importance of carrying out this reconsideration in terms of the original problem specification. Connections between the real world and the mathematical world are continually being made to lessen the sense of separation present in other frameworks. This separation often reinforces the notion that context is at best a wrapper for the mathematics, leading to failure by many students to make the connections and use the context as a means of monitoring the solution process throughout (Stillman, 2002).



Source: Stillman (1998, p. 245).

*Figure 3.4* Mathematical modelling framework incorporating regulatory mechanism

### *Modelling sub-skills*

As modelling ability differs from conventional mathematical ability, it is imperative that the component skills that characterise modelling competency (Maaß, 2006) be fostered in the classroom, both by being the focus of particular instruction and through application in modelling tasks. The sub-skills include:

- formulating the specific question to be answered mathematically;
- specifying assumptions associated with mathematical concepts or the modelling context;
- identifying important variables or factors;
- modelling different aspects of objects;
- modelling different aspects of situations;
- generating relationships;
- selecting relationships;
- making estimates;
- validating results;
- interpreting results.

Tasks that focus on the development of specific sub-skills can be developed from discussions of solutions to modelling tasks such as *Drying out* (White, n.d.) or *Modelling comparative Olympic performance* (Galbraith, 1996). In his analysis, Galbraith provides examples of making four distinct types of assumptions, those associated with:

- mathematical concepts (e.g. a shot in shot put can be treated as a free projectile);
- mathematical detail (e.g. the range of a projectile varies only slowly with the angle of projection);
- the modelling context (e.g. 172 centimetres is a representative height for a female hurdler); and
- major leaps in the solution process (e.g. 10 per cent is a reasonable estimate to compensate for air resistance).

The journal *Teaching Mathematics and Its Applications*, is a prolific source of such examples that can be adapted and modified for teaching of specific sub-skills.

Often the same object can be modelled by a variety of models, depending on the situation being investigated. A person, for example, could be modelled by a cylinder with a particular diameter and height if we wanted to know how much space had already been taken up in heaven, or alternatively by a rectangle if we were considering legal specifications for the size of entrance and exit doors which may or may not be rectangular. Here is an example from Stacey (1991) of a task to develop students' formulation skills.

## Developing formulation skills

Match the models with the appropriate situations.

Models of the Earth	Situations being investigated
A. Stationary point	a. Eclipse of the moon
B. Stationary straight line	b. Driving with a road map around Melbourne
C. Stationary plane	c. Propagation of earthquakes
D. Point revolving around sun	d. A ball thrown through the air
E. Circle (or disc)	e. Eclipse of sun
F. Sphere filled with layers of material	f. Calculating how far you can look out to sea from a cliff
	g. Sending a probe to intercept Halley's comet

Construct a similar task where a variety of different models are appropriate for something (e.g. a person) when different situations are being investigated (e.g. an opinion poll or hurdling).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** As a beginning teacher, it is useful for you to both be able to make resources suitable for your students and other teachers to use, and to familiarise yourself with the applications of mathematics in different workplaces.

Gather information or data about the use of mathematics in the workplace by visiting a commercial or industrial site. From this information, develop a resource designed by you for students in Year 9 or Year 10 addressing topics in the mathematics curriculum guides for your state. Incorporate technology use into your resource where practical and appropriate. Provide teacher notes and solutions to student tasks.

## Conclusion

In this chapter, we have endeavoured to highlight ways to facilitate students' ability to understand the world from a mathematical perspective. In particular, we have looked at developing connections across the transition from the primary to lower secondary years, from their mathematics classrooms to doing mathematics in other curriculum areas and making connections within mathematics itself. In later chapters, these ideas will be explored further.

## Recommended reading

**Galbraith, P. (1996).** Modelling comparative performance: Some Olympic examples. *Teaching Mathematics and Its Applications*, 15(2), 67–77.

**Galbraith, P.L. & Stillman, G.A. (2006).** A framework for identifying blockages during transitions in the modelling process. *ZDM*, 38(2), 143–62.

**Henry, M. & McAuliffe, R. (1994).** Drying out. *Mathstralia* (pp. 41–8). Melbourne: AAMT.

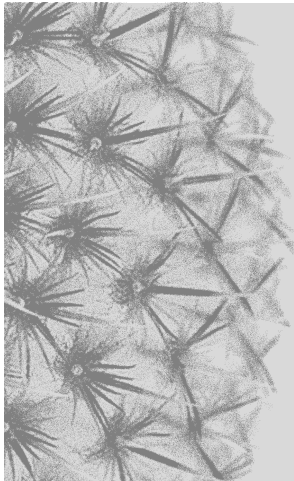
**Herbel-Eisenmann, B.A. & Breyfogle, M.L. (2005).** Questioning our patterns of questioning. *Mathematics Teaching in the Middle School*, 10(9), 484–9.

**McMaster, H. & Mitchelmore, M. (2006).** *Working Mathematically*. Sydney: Authors.

**Pollak, H. (1997).** Solving problems in the real world. In L.A. Steen (ed.), *Why Numbers Count: Quantitative Literacy for Tomorrow's America*. New York: College Entrance Examination Board.

**White, P. (n.d.).** Mathematical Modelling and the General Mathematics Syllabus. *NSW HSC Online*. Sydney: Curriculum Support Directorate,  
<[www.curriculumsupport.education.nsw.gov.au](http://www.curriculumsupport.education.nsw.gov.au)> (25 January 2007)





## CHAPTER 4

### **Effective use of technologies in mathematics education**

In 1999, the state, territory and Australian government Ministers of Education agreed on a set of goals for schooling in Australia in the twenty-first century. Along with expectations that students will develop high standards of knowledge and skills in the key learning areas, including mathematics, they specified eight general goals for learning, one of which was for students to 'be confident, creative and productive users of new technologies, particularly information and communication technologies [ICTs], and understand the impact of those technologies on society' (Ministerial Council on Education, Employment, Training and Youth Affairs, 1999). As a consequence, most state and territory education authorities now regard facility with ICTs as one of the essential capabilities that young people should acquire in order to participate successfully in contemporary social, economic and cultural life (e.g. Department of Education and the Arts, Queensland, 2004; Department of Education and Children's Services, South Australia, 2001; Victorian Curriculum and Assessment Authority, 2004b).

In the 1990s, mathematics curriculum policy in Australia began to promote the use of technology to aid students' learning and understanding of mathematics (Australian Education Council, 1990). The intent of this national policy framework is reflected in the various state and territory mathematics curriculum statements and syllabuses that permit, encourage or expect the use of technologies such as computers, graphics calculators or calculators with computer algebra systems (CAS). The mathematics teaching profession in Australia also recognises that teachers need knowledge of a range of technologies, and that excellent mathematics teachers are able to use technologies to make 'a positive difference to the

learning outcomes, both cognitive and affective, of the students they teach' (Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers, 2006).

Technologies currently used in secondary school mathematics education include mathematics-specific hardware (e.g. hand-held graphics calculators and CAS calculators), mathematics-specific software (e.g. graphing, statistics and dynamic geometry software), general-purpose software (e.g. spreadsheets) and the internet. The continuing development of new hardware and software, and the emergence of new technologies such as interactive whiteboards and personal digital assistants (PDAs), make this an exciting time to be a mathematics teacher. To become *effective* users of technology in mathematics education, however, teachers need to make informed decisions about how and why to integrate different types of technology into their classroom practice in order to support students' learning of mathematics. We begin this chapter by identifying and illustrating ways in which technology can enhance student learning, and then discuss some of the implications of technology use for mathematics curriculum, pedagogy and assessment. The chapter concludes by considering some problems and challenges in creating technology-rich classroom learning environments.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Before reading any further, record your own views about learning mathematics with technology. Do you think secondary students should be allowed to use scientific and graphics calculators when learning mathematics? Are computers a useful learning tool? What might be some benefits and disadvantages in teaching and learning mathematics with technology? Then ask other adults (teachers and non-teachers, if possible) and some school students what they think. Discuss your views and findings with other pre-service teachers in your class.

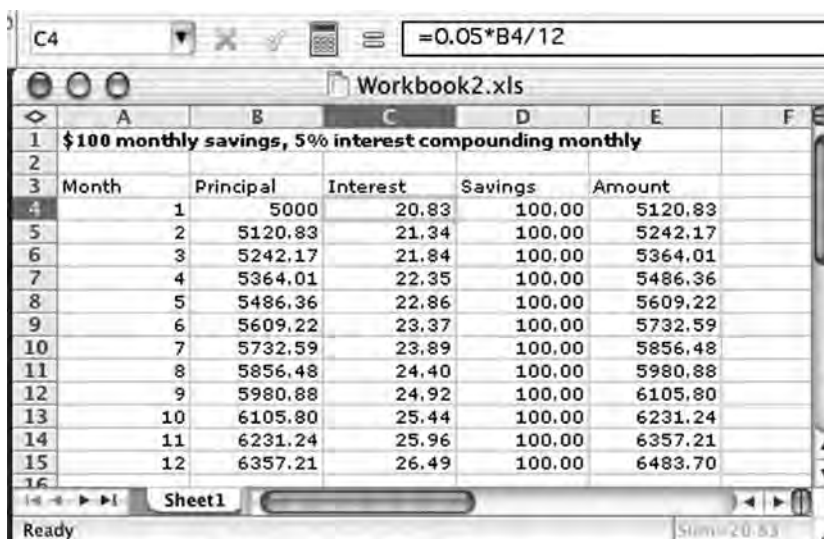
## Potential benefits of learning mathematics with technology

Education researchers recognise the potential for mathematics learning to be transformed by the availability of technology resources such as computers, graphics calculators and the internet (see Arnold, 2004; Burrill et al., 2002; Forster et al., 2004; Goos & Cretchley, 2004 for

reviews of recent research). In Australia and internationally, teacher organisations encourage the use of technologies as natural media for mathematics learning. For example, the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers' (1996) policy statement on the use of calculators and computers recommends that 'all students have ready access to appropriate technology as a means both to support and extend their mathematics learning experiences' (see National Council of Teachers of Mathematics 2000 for a US perspective). Issues specific to the use of graphics calculators were discussed at a special conference organised by AAMT, where it was agreed that teaching with graphics calculators enhances students' learning by encouraging an understanding of mathematics as richly connected concepts (Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers, 2000; Morony & Stephens, 2000). Let us explore some of the specific ways in which technology affords learning opportunities in mathematics.

### *Learning from instant feedback*

Learning is assisted by the instant feedback that technology can provide. Figure 4.1 shows how using a spreadsheet to investigate the effect of compound interest on saving allows students to experiment with different interest rates, initial investments and monthly deposits by changing these amounts or formulae and observing how the dependent values are modified.



Month	Principal	Interest	Savings	Amount
1	5000	20.83	100.00	5120.83
2	5120.83	21.34	100.00	5242.17
3	5242.17	21.84	100.00	5364.01
4	5364.01	22.35	100.00	5486.36
5	5486.36	22.86	100.00	5609.22
6	5609.22	23.37	100.00	5732.59
7	5732.59	23.89	100.00	5856.48
8	5856.48	24.40	100.00	5980.88
9	5980.88	24.92	100.00	6105.80
10	6105.80	25.44	100.00	6231.24
11	6231.24	25.96	100.00	6357.21
12	6357.21	26.49	100.00	6483.70

Figure 4.1 Spreadsheet for investigating compound interest

## Using a spreadsheet

1. Use Excel software to reproduce the spreadsheet shown in Figure 4.1. The spreadsheet shows the monthly balance in a savings account where a person has invested \$5000 at 5 per cent interest, compounding monthly, and adds \$100 per month to the account. Design a task with instructions for students that will lead them through an investigation of the effects of changing the principal, interest rate or amount of monthly savings. Include activities that would help students develop knowledge of compound interest needed for the spreadsheet investigation.
2. Spreadsheets are an important tool for investigating many topics within financial mathematics, such as budgeting, investing, borrowing money, and calculating income tax. Identify the financial mathematics topics in your local mathematics curriculum documents. Select one topic and devise an application or modelling task (see Chapter 3) that makes use of spreadsheets.

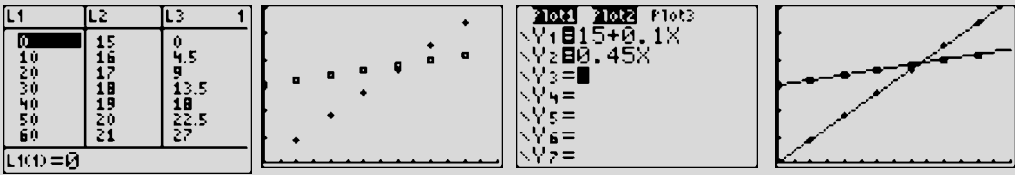
## Observing patterns

Technology can also help students to understand patterns, such as those related to linear functions where there is a constant rate of change. For example, when asked to compare mobile phone company charge rates (see the box below), students might make a table of values for minutes and costs for each company, enter these into their graphics calculator and plot the points. They might then describe the two patterns verbally, write equations for the costs, and check these equations by plotting them on the same axes as the points originally graphed.

### Comparison of mobile phone company charge rates

Phones-R-Us is a new mobile phone company that offers phone services for \$15.00 per month plus \$0.10 for each minute used to make calls. Long-established market leader Telecorp has no monthly fee but charges \$0.45 per minute for calls. Compare the two companies' charges for the time used each month. If you are currently a Telecorp subscriber, should you change to Phones-R-Us?

No. minutes	0	10	20	30	40	50	60
Phones-R-Us	\$15.00	\$16.00	\$17.00	\$18.00	\$19.00	\$20.00	\$21.00
Telecorp	\$0.00	\$4.50	\$9.00	\$13.50	\$18.00	\$22.50	\$27.00



Devise a graphics calculator task similar to the mobile phone investigation that will allow students to explore linear functions as models of real-world situations. (See Geiger, McKinlay & O'Brien, 1997, 1999 and Goos, 2002 for examples.)

*Making connections between multiple representations*

Technology makes it possible for students to see connections between multiple representations of a concept and to gain insights into abstract entities such as functions. Graphing software or graphics calculators can be used to explore families of functions represented symbolically, graphically and numerically (in tables) much more quickly, and with much less chance of error, than if this task was done by hand (as in Figure 4.2).

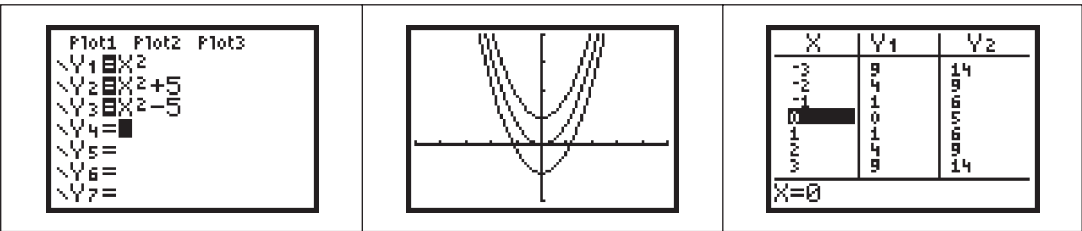


Figure 4.2 Symbolic, graphical and numerical representations of the family of functions represented by  $y = x^2 \pm c$

### Working with dynamic images

Technology supports inductive thinking by allowing students to quickly generate and explore a large number of examples, and make conjectures about patterns and relationships. This process is greatly enhanced when students work with dynamic images or use interactive tools that can change the appearance of the mathematical objects on screen. Figure 4.3 illustrates how scrollbars inserted in an Excel spreadsheet can be used to vary the parameters in equations describing trigonometric functions and draw conclusions about related changes in amplitude, period, phase shift and vertical displacement of the related graphs.

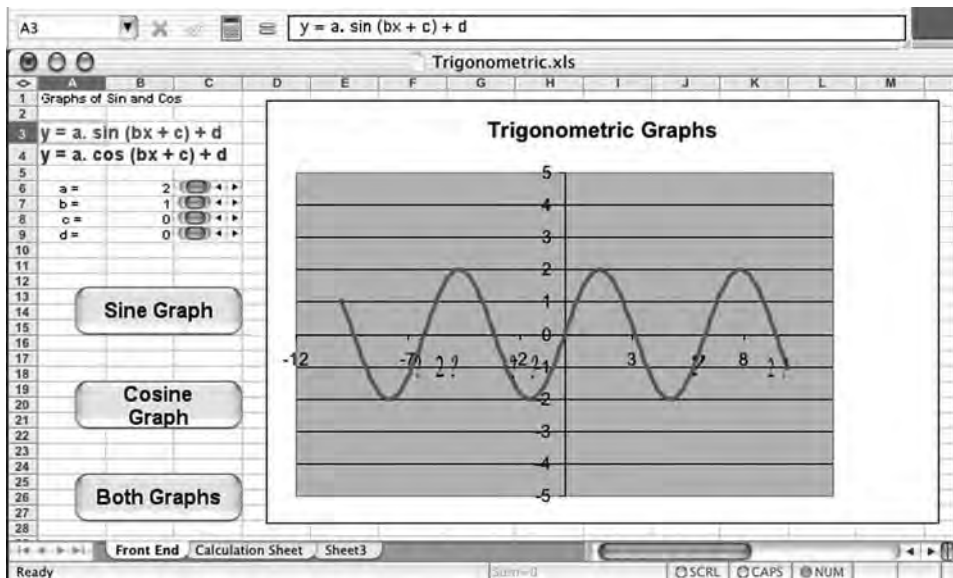


Figure 4.3 Excel spreadsheet with scrollbars for investigating properties of trigonometric functions

Dynamic geometry software provides tools for constructing geometric objects in two or three dimensions and then manipulating these objects—for example, by ‘dragging’ vertices—to identify invariant properties. An example is provided in Figure 4.4, which shows the results of generating many examples of triangles and calculating the sum of their

internal angles. The internet also offers many useful sites where students can work with dynamic images of various kinds. Figure 4.5 shows a segment of a virtual manipulative website that enables students to interact with visual objects to develop an understanding of symmetry, transformations and other spatial concepts.

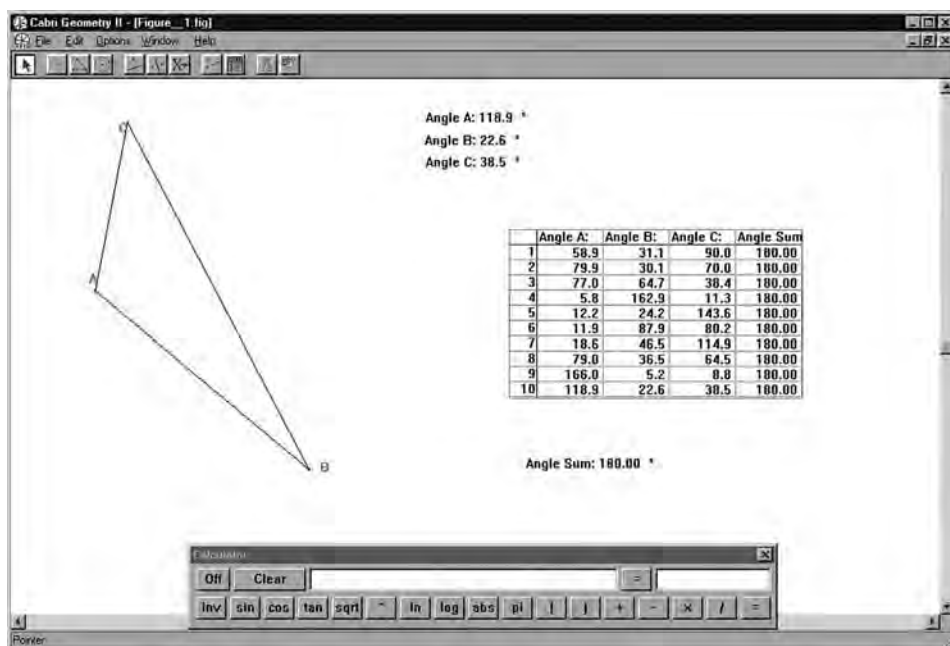
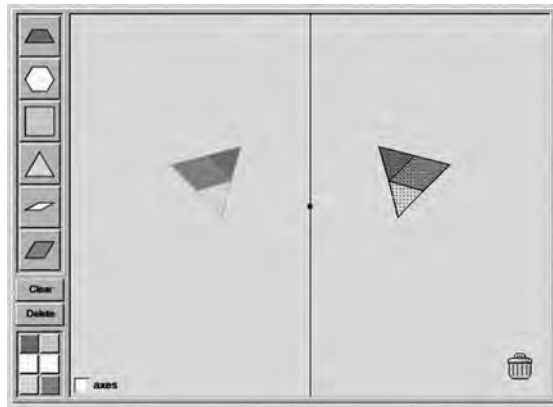


Figure 4.4 Dynamic geometry software screen display for investigating the angle sum of triangles

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Prepare an investigation of facial symmetry using digital photographs and image manipulation software such as Adobe Photoshop, Paint Shop Pro, scanning software, or good quality drawing software (see Todd Edwards, 2004, for an example of an investigation). Discuss any issues you may need to consider in using photographs of teachers, students or celebrities whose images can be found on the internet.



Source: National Library of Virtual Manipulatives, <[www.matti.usu.edu/nlvm](http://www.matti.usu.edu/nlvm)>.

Figure 4.5 Exploring rotation

### Exploring simulated or authentic data

With access to technology, students are no longer limited to working with simple data sets contrived by the teacher or textbook to make calculation easier. Computer software or graphics calculator programs can be used to simulate random phenomena, such as tossing coins and rolling dice, or to construct randomising devices like a spinner with sectors of the same (or different) area (Figure 4.6).

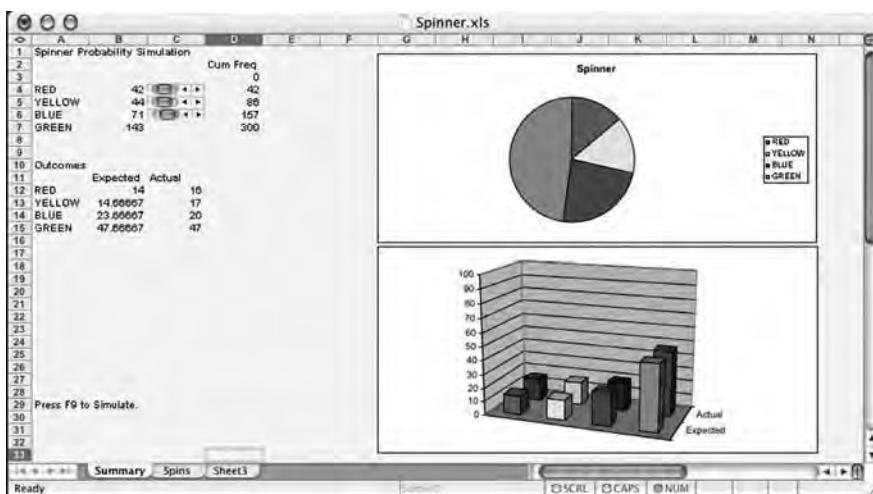


Figure 4.6 A spreadsheet simulation of a spinner



**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Find out how to generate random numbers using a spreadsheet or graphics calculator and investigate ways of using these functions to generate random data for different situations.

An enormous range of authentic data sets is now available from internet sites. The Australian Bureau of Statistics website at <www.abs.gov.au> offers data sets and other education resources suitable for secondary mathematics classrooms. Students can collect their own data through this website via the CensusAtSchool project, which encourages students to respond to questions of interest about themselves and then investigate samples of the response data from the total population of responses received Australia wide. Figure 4.7 shows some of the questions asked in the 2003 CensusAtSchool. Each question is linked to a page displaying the corresponding table of results and spreadsheets that can be downloaded for further analysis.

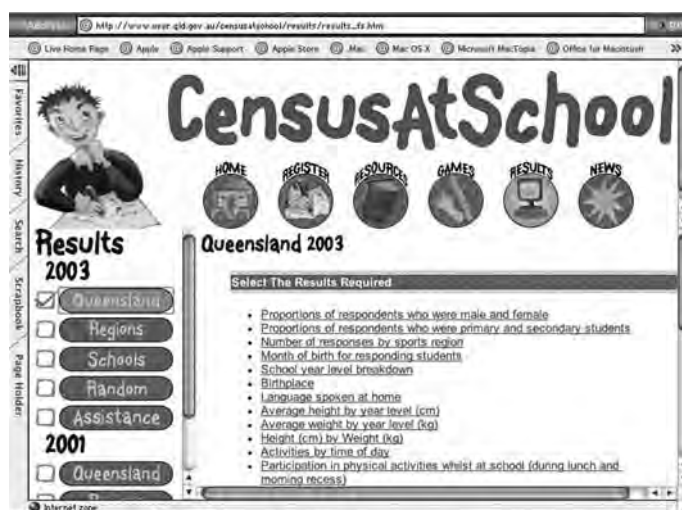
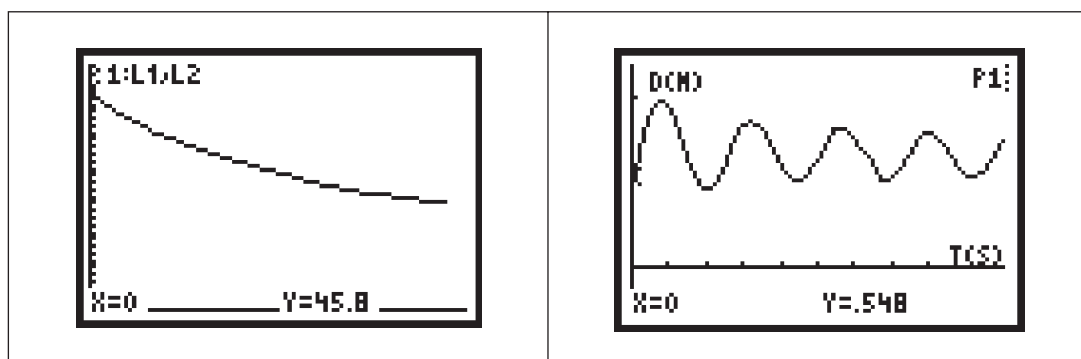


Figure 4.7 Some questions asked in the 2003 CensusAtSchool

Data collection becomes even more realistic when students use data-logging equipment, such as motion detectors and probes that measure temperature, light intensity, pH, dissolved oxygen, heart rate and the frequency of sound waves, to investigate physical

phenomena and the mathematical relationships that describe them. Using these technologies, students can discover that the rate at which hot water cools can be modelled by an exponential function and the motion of a pendulum by a trigonometric function (see Figure 4.8a and 4.8b). The instruction booklets that come with data loggers usually provide examples of classroom activities, worksheets for students, sample solutions to the questions asked, and suggestions for making connections with other curriculum areas. Other resources can be found on calculator company websites (URLs are listed at the end of this chapter).



*Figure 4.8a* Modelling cooling with an exponential function

*Figure 4.8b* Modelling periodic motion with a trigonometric function

Digital photographs and movies also help bring into the mathematics classroom real-world situations that can be analysed with the aid of commercially available software or free software downloadable from the internet (see Hyde, 2004; and Pierce et al., 2005 for a list of sites). Data relevant to students' lives can be captured from pictures or movies to study a wide range of mathematics concepts, such as functions, ratio, similarity and transformations, Pythagoras' Theorem, calculus, and concepts of position, velocity and acceleration.

### *Visualisation*

A common characteristic of each of the above applications of technology is the opportunity for learners to visualise mathematical concepts. Students can observe changes in numbers, see patterns, and view images of geometric figures, relationships and data. Visualisation as a means of learning mathematics has gained more prominence through the use of technology,

and visual reasoning has become more widely acknowledged as acceptable practice for mathematicians in the mathematical discovery process (Borba & Villarreal, 2005). Teachers may take it for granted that students are adept at visualisation and that visual images will help them to understand. However, not all students have highly developed visualisation skills, so teachers may need to direct students' attention to the important elements of the image. Because students may misinterpret an image and hold on to their misconceptions, teachers also need to scaffold students' use of visualisation and interpretation. Some examples of difficulties or misconceptions that may arise in these learning environments or the ways in which teachers may scaffold learning are provided in Chapters 9, 10 and 11 in the contexts of geometry, algebra, and chance and data. Visualisation and the use of visual reasoning are discussed in Chapter 9.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Use a digital camera to take photographs of a bridge in your local community or search the internet to obtain pictures of well-known bridges (e.g. Sydney Harbour Bridge, Story Bridge, Golden Gate Bridge).

- Print the images and use 'by hand' methods to find a function that models the main arch of the bridge.
- Download one of the free programs listed in the articles by Hyde (2004) and Pierce et al. (2005) and use this software to find a function that models the same bridge.
- Compare the functions you obtained by the two different methods, commenting on any similarities or differences. Discuss with fellow students any advantages and disadvantages of the 'by hand' and technology methods you used.

### *Finding and sharing mathematics*

In previous sections, the internet has been represented as a library of resources for lesson preparation and classroom activities. However, teachers often have little time to search for ideas or information, or they may lack confidence in evaluating what they find on the internet. For this reason, it is helpful to have a list of a few well-established sites recommended for secondary mathematics teaching, such as those we have already mentioned in this chapter. Others worth adding to your list are:

- the NRIC site, which operates like an online mathematics magazine: <<http://nrich.maths.org.uk>>;
- the St Andrews History of Mathematics site, which includes biographies of mathematicians as well as historical material: <[www-groups.dcs.st-and.ac.uk/~history](http://www-groups.dcs.st-and.ac.uk/~history)>;
- the Math Forum site, which offers problems, puzzles, online mentoring and teacher discussion areas: <[www.mathforum.org](http://www.mathforum.org)>.

(See Dengate, 2001 and Herrera, 2001 for information on additional recommended sites; and Handal et al., 2005 for a practical approach to evaluating online mathematics resources.)

The internet is also a networking tool that makes it possible for many people to collaborate and combine their efforts to solve mathematical problems. An example is the Noon Observation Project, which invited students from around the world to investigate the geometric method used by Eratosthenes to estimate the circumference of the earth. This required measurements made at different geographic locations of the length of a shadow cast by a metre rule. Students measured the shadow at high noon at their own location, used this to work out the Earth's circumference, and submitted their data via the project's internet site (<[www.ed.uiuc.edu/noon-project](http://www.ed.uiuc.edu/noon-project)>).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Do some research on approaches to evaluating the educational worth of internet sites (e.g. see Handal et al., 2005). Design an evaluation form and use it to evaluate some of the sites mentioned in this chapter.

## Technology and curriculum

The introduction of new technologies into mathematics education inevitably raises questions about the kinds of knowledge and skills that are valued and worth keeping in the curriculum, and those that could perhaps be de-emphasised. However, this is not a new phenomenon. For example, manipulation of base ten logarithms, once taught as a labour-saving technique that enabled students to perform operations on large numbers, disappeared from the junior secondary curriculum when scientific calculators became widely available in schools in the mid-1970s.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Technology needs to be used intelligently with text resources, whether or not these resources have been designed with technology in mind.

Many modern mathematics textbooks come with CDs and websites offering technology-based classroom activities. Evaluate some of these resources in the light of the potential benefits of learning mathematics with technology outlined above. To what extent do the CDs and websites add value to the textbook?

Some schools may still be using older textbooks that do not explicitly support the integration of technology into mathematics education. Select a chapter from an older textbook and design appropriate technology-based activities to supplement or replace the existing text-based exercises and activities.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Complete the following quiz (adapted from McKinlay, 2000) by indicating your preference along the continuum at the right of each statement.

Junior secondary mathematics students should be allowed to use digital technology (a graphics calculator, CAS calculator or computer software) to:

	Never	Always
Graph linear functions	←————→	
Graph quadratic functions	←————→	
Find the roots of quadratic equations	←————→	
Perform linear regression	←————→	
Perform quadratic regression	←————→	
Calculate the mean of a set of raw data	←————→	
Calculate the mean from a frequency table	←————→	
Calculate the median of a set of raw data	←————→	
Calculate the median from a frequency table	←————→	

	Never	Always
Construct a histogram	←	→
Write and run simple programs	←	→
Download programs from the internet	←	→
Expand and simplify algebraic expressions	←	→
Factorise algebraic expressions	←	→
Solve equations	←	→
Draw geometric shapes	←	→
Verify geometric properties or relationships	←	→
Calculate with number including fractions	←	→
Measure angles and other attributes of geometric figures	←	→

Compare and discuss your responses with your group. How did individuals justify their opinions about student use of digital technology?

Recent discussions amongst Australian mathematics educators converge on the view that curricula must continue to focus on important areas of mathematics while emphasising mathematical communication and reasoning, and that good curriculum design should take advantage of all kinds of technology as tools for learning (Morony & Stephens, 2000). While technology should not drive curriculum, it can certainly influence what mathematics is taught. There are three ways in which this might happen.

### *What can be omitted?*

Some skills and procedures that can be performed using technology may require less emphasis, become optional or become redundant—especially if, in the past, they were the only methods available. For example, knowing how to manually complete the square is no longer the only way for pre-calculus students to find the turning point of a quadratic (Figure 4.9a) and finding logarithmic solutions to exponential equations might not be considered essential when they can be obtained graphically (Figure 4.9b).

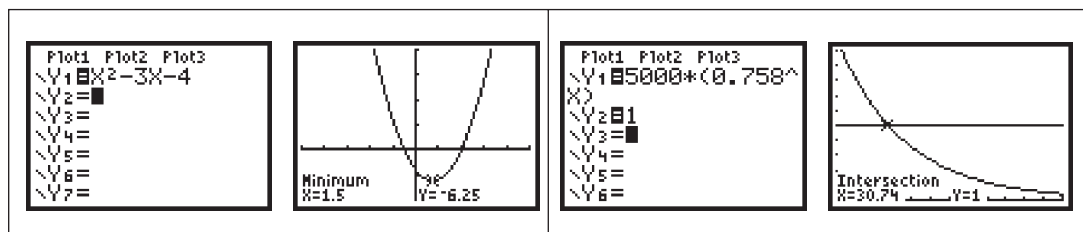


Figure 4.9a Finding the turning point of a quadratic function

Figure 4.9b Solving the equation  $5000 \times (0.758)^x = 1$

Kissane (2001) has argued that, in a CAS environment, the traditional focus on teaching students how to manipulate expressions and solve equations algebraically should give way to a greater emphasis on helping students to express relationships algebraically, formulate equations and interpret the solutions.

#### *What can be added?*

In some cases, the curriculum can be extended to remove previous limitations—for example, having access to graphics calculators or computer software makes it possible to work with non-integer coefficients for quadratics, combinations of functions and large data sets. New approaches can also be introduced to tackle tasks that would not otherwise be accessible to students: curves can be fitted to real data, iterative procedures can provide scope for numerical analysis of problems not amenable to algebraic methods, and financial scenarios can be investigated using the graphics calculator's time-value-money module. Opportunities arise to investigate more complex application and modelling problems that demand consideration of assumptions, decisions about the appropriate degree of accuracy, and evaluation of the validity of models.

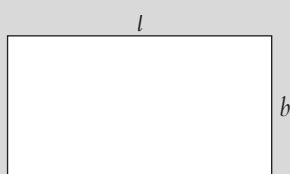
#### *How can the sequencing or treatment of topics be changed?*

Access to graphics calculators makes it possible to use graphical approaches to build understanding before moving into analytical work, such as in solving systems of simultaneous equations. Before learning the standard algebraic solution techniques, students can first gain experience in drawing the graphs of two straight lines and finding their point of intersection, thus reinforcing the key concept that there is only one point whose coordinates satisfy both

equations simultaneously. Similarly, graphical treatment of simple optimisation problems—such as finding the maximum area of a rectangle with fixed perimeter—makes these ideas accessible to junior secondary students without the need to invoke calculus concepts (see the box below).

### Finding the maximum area of a rectangle with fixed perimeter

I have 20 m of wire with which to fence a rectangular garden. What are the dimensions of the largest area that can be enclosed?



$$\begin{aligned} b + l &= 10 \\ b &= 10 - l \\ A &= l \times b \\ &= l(10 - l) \end{aligned}$$

A graphics calculator can be used to generate data on lengths and corresponding breadths and areas (Screen 1). The relationship between area and length is represented via a scatterplot (Screen 2) and the area function is plotted over these points (Screen 3). The maximum area is found by tracing along the curve or querying the calculator directly (Screen 4).

L1	L2	L3	1
1	2	3	
4	5	6	
7	8	9	
10	11	12	
13	14	15	
16	17	18	
19	20	21	
22	23	24	
25	26	27	
28	29	30	
31	32	33	
34	35	36	
37	38	39	
40	41	42	
43	44	45	
46	47	48	
49	50	51	
52	53	54	
55	56	57	
58	59	60	
61	62	63	
64	65	66	
67	68	69	
70	71	72	
73	74	75	
76	77	78	
79	80	81	
82	83	84	
85	86	87	
88	89	90	
91	92	93	
94	95	96	
97	98	99	
100	101	102	
103	104	105	
106	107	108	
109	110	111	
112	113	114	
115	116	117	
118	119	120	
121	122	123	
124	125	126	
127	128	129	
130	131	132	
133	134	135	
136	137	138	
139	140	141	
142	143	144	
145	146	147	
148	149	150	
151	152	153	
154	155	156	
157	158	159	
160	161	162	
163	164	165	
166	167	168	
169	170	171	
172	173	174	
175	176	177	
178	179	180	
181	182	183	
184	185	186	
187	188	189	
190	191	192	
193	194	195	
196	197	198	
199	200	201	
202	203	204	
205	206	207	
208	209	210	
211	212	213	
214	215	216	
217	218	219	
220	221	222	
223	224	225	
226	227	228	
229	230	231	
232	233	234	
235	236	237	
238	239	240	
241	242	243	
244	245	246	
247	248	249	
250	251	252	
253	254	255	
256	257	258	
259	260	261	
262	263	264	
265	266	267	
268	269	270	
271	272	273	
274	275	276	
277	278	279	
280	281	282	
283	284	285	
286	287	288	
289	290	291	
292	293	294	
295	296	297	
298	299	300	
301	302	303	
304	305	306	
307	308	309	
310	311	312	
313	314	315	
316	317	318	
319	320	321	
322	323	324	
325	326	327	
328	329	330	
331	332	333	
334	335	336	
337	338	339	
340	341	342	
343	344	345	
346	347	348	
349	350	351	
352	353	354	
355	356	357	
358	359	360	
361	362	363	
364	365	366	
367	368	369	
370	371	372	
373	374	375	
376	377	378	
379	380	381	
382	383	384	
385	386	387	
388	389	390	
391	392	393	
394	395	396	
397	398	399	
400	401	402	
403	404	405	
406	407	408	
409	410	411	
412	413	414	
415	416	417	
418	419	420	
421	422	423	
424	425	426	
427	428	429	
430	431	432	
433	434	435	
436	437	438	
439	440	441	
442	443	444	
445	446	447	
448	449	450	
451	452	453	
454	455	456	
457	458	459	
460	461	462	
463	464	465	
466	467	468	
469	470	471	
472	473	474	
475	476	477	
478	479	480	
481	482	483	
484	485	486	
487	488	489	
490	491	492	
493	494	495	
496	497	498	
499	500	501	
502	503	504	
505	506	507	
508	509	510	
511	512	513	
514	515	516	
517	518	519	
520	521	522	
523	524	525	
526	527	528	
529	530	531	
532	533	534	
535	536	537	
538	539	540	
541	542	543	
544	545	546	
547	548	549	
550	551	552	
553	554	555	
556	557	558	
559	560	561	
562	563	564	
565	566	567	
568	569	570	
571	572	573	
574	575	576	
577	578	579	
580	581	582	
583	584	585	
586	587	588	
589	590	591	
592	593	594	
595	596	597	
598	599	600	
601	602	603	
604	605	606	
607	608	609	
610	611	612	
613	614	615	
616	617	618	
619	620	621	
622	623	624	
625	626	627	
628	629	630	
631	632	633	
634	635	636	
637	638	639	
640	641	642	
643	644	645	
646	647	648	
649	650	651	
652	653	654	
655	656	657	
658	659	660	
661	662	663	
664	665	666	
667	668	669	
670	671	672	
673	674	675	
676	677	678	
679	680	681	
682	683	684	
685	686	687	
688	689	690	
691	692	693	
694	695	696	
697	698	699	
700	701	702	
703	704	705	
706	707	708	
709	710	711	
712	713	714	
715	716	717	
718	719	720	
721	722	723	
724	725	726	
727	728	729	
730	731	732	
733	734	735	
736	737	738	
739	740	741	
742	743	744	
745	746	747	
748	749	750	
751	752	753	
754	755	756	
757	758	759	
760	761	762	
763	764	765	
766	767	768	
769	770	771	
772	773	774	
775	776	777	
778	779	780	
781	782	783	
784	785	786	
787	788	789	
790	791	792	
793	794	795	
796	797	798	
799	800	801	
802	803	804	
805	806	807	
808	809	810	
811	812	813	
814	815	816	
817	818	819	
820	821	822	
823	824	825	
826	827	828	
829	830	831	
832	833	834	
835	836	837	
838	839	840	
841	842	843	
844	845	846	
847	848	849	
850	851	852	
853	854	855	
856	857	858	
859	860	861	
862	863	864	
865	866	867	
868	869	870	
871	872	873	
874	875	876	
877	878	879	
880	881	882	
883	884	885	
886	887	888	
889	890	891	
892	893	894	
895	896	897	
898	899	900	
901	902	903	
904	905	906	
907	908	909	
910	911	912	
913	914	915	
916	917	918	
919	920	921	
922	923	924	
925	926	927	
928	929	930	
931	932	933	
934	935	936	
937	938	939	
940	941	942	
943	944	945	
946	947	948	
949	950	951	
952	953	954	
955	956	957	
958	959	960	
961	962	963	
964	965	966	
967	968	969	
970	971	972	
973	974	975	
976	977	978	
979	980	981	
982	983	984	
985	986	987	
988	989	990	
991	992	993	
994	995	996	
997	998	999	
1000	1001	1002	
1003	1004	1005	
1006	1007	1008	
1009	1010	1011	
1012	1013	1014	
1015	1016	1017	
1018	1019	1020	
1021	1022	1023	
1024	1025	1026	
1027	1028	1029	
1030	1031	1032	
1033	1034	1035	
1036	1037	1038	
1039	1040	1041	
1042	1043	1044	
1045	1046	1047	



R-squared value to determine the most appropriate model are relying on the calculator's 'black box' algorithms rather than mathematical reasoning, and they risk choosing a model that does not make sense (e.g. one that predicts a cup of hot water will boil after cooling). Without skilful teacher intervention, these easily accessible calculator functions can encourage students to take a purely empirical approach without learning how to justify their reasoning. Taking an even broader perspective on curriculum design, it is important for control of the curriculum to remain in the hands of educators rather than being unduly influenced by commercial interests or entities that produce educational resources. (Issues regarding curriculum content and curriculum decision-making are explored further in Chapter 5.)

## Technology and pedagogy

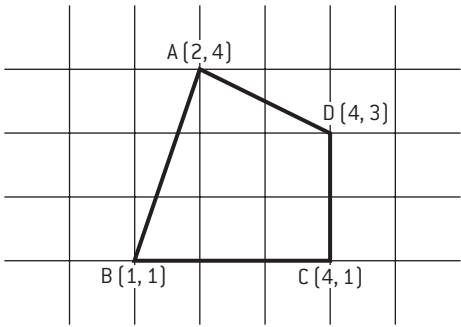
Many research studies have investigated the effects of technology usage on students' mathematical achievements and attitudes and their understanding of mathematical concepts, but less is known about how students actually use technology to learn mathematics in specific classroom contexts or about how the availability of technology has affected teaching approaches. In this section, we draw on our research in Australian secondary school mathematics classrooms to describe various modes of working with technology by using the metaphors of technology as *master*, *servant*, *partner* and *extension of self* (Goos et al., 2000, 2003).

Teachers and students can see technology as a *master* if their knowledge and competence are limited to a narrow range of operations. In fact, students can become dependent on the technology if their lack of mathematical understanding prevents them from evaluating the accuracy of the output generated by the calculator or computer. As one student commented: 'Sometimes you learn a technique using technology that you don't really understand, and then you don't grasp the concept.'

The way in which technology could prove the master for teachers became clear during observations of one of the research project classrooms. This teacher admitted very little expertise with using a graphics calculator, to the extent that he regularly called on a student 'expert' to demonstrate calculator procedures via the overhead projection panel. While the teacher lacked confidence in the use of technology, he nevertheless retained tight control of the lesson agenda through the medium of the student presenter, often providing the mathematical commentary and explanations accompanying the student's silent punching of the calculator keys. Because of syllabus and research project expectations, this

teacher felt obliged to include technology-based learning activities in his lessons; however, his own lack of knowledge and experience in this area made him reluctant to allow students to use technology other than to reproduce the demonstrated keystrokes.

Technology is a *servant* if used by teachers or students only as a fast, reliable replacement for pen and paper calculations. For example, students in our research project commented that technology helped with large and repetitive calculations, allowed them to calculate more quickly and efficiently, reduced calculation errors, and was useful in checking answers. From the teacher's perspective, technology is a servant if it simply supports preferred teaching methods—for example, if the overhead projection panel is used as an electronic chalkboard that provides a medium for the teacher to demonstrate calculator operations to the class. We observed a more creative approach in one of the research project classrooms during a Year 11 lesson on matrix transformations. Students were supplied with the worksheet in Figure 4.10, and the teacher physically demonstrated the results of several matrix transformations using transparent grid paper, plastic cut-out polygons and the overhead projector.



Place a plastic polygon on the grid so that each vertex lies on an integer coordinate position. This shape can be manipulated to any number of integer positions.

Consider each vertex as a vector;  
e.g.  $A(2, 4)$  can be thought of as  $\mathbf{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ .

From the list of  $2 \times 2$  matrices below choose one. Apply this matrix to the vertex vectors and reposition your polygon to the new coordinates. Try to identify what each matrix transformation does geometrically. Follow up by trying to identify from the arithmetic elements of the matrices why your polygons were transformed in the way they were.

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{E} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{-1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{F} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{-\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{G} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{-1}{2} & \frac{-\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & \frac{-1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{H} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{-1}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{-\sqrt{3}}{2} & \frac{-1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$$

Figure 4.10 Matrix transformation task

Students then investigated further with their own polygons and grid paper by recording the coordinates of the vertices before and after transformation, with the graphics calculator taking care of the matrix calculations so that conjectures on the geometric meaning of the transformations could be formulated and tested. Here the technology became an intelligent servant that complemented the effective features of more conventional instruction.

Technology is a *partner* if it increases the power that students exercise over their learning by providing access to new kinds of tasks or new ways of approaching existing tasks. This may involve using technology to facilitate understanding or to explore different perspectives. Students participating in our research have commented that ‘by displaying things in different ways [technology] can help you to understand things more easily’, and that ‘technology may help you approach problems differently in the sense that you can visualise functions’.

Technology can also act as a partner by mediating mathematical discussions in the classroom—for example, when teachers and students use the overhead projection panel to present and examine alternative mathematical conjectures. This is illustrated by the practice we observed in one classroom of inviting students to compare and evaluate graphics calculator programs they had written to simplify routine calculations, such as finding the angle between two three-dimensional vectors  $\mathbf{r}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix}$  and  $\mathbf{r}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} d \\ e \\ f \end{pmatrix}$  using the formula

$$\vartheta = \cos^{-1} \left( \frac{\mathbf{r}_1 \cdot \mathbf{r}_2}{|\mathbf{r}_1| |\mathbf{r}_2|} \right) = \cos^{-1} \left( \frac{ad + be + cf}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2} \sqrt{d^2 + e^2 + f^2}} \right).$$

The teacher provided only minimal instruction in basic programming techniques and expected individual students to consult more knowledgeable peers for assistance. Volunteers then demonstrated their programs via the overhead projection panel and examined the wide variation in command lines that peers had produced (see Figure 4.11 for examples).

<pre>PROGRAM: ANG :Prompt A,B,C,D, :E,F :cos-1((A*D+B*E+C *F)/J((A^2+B^2+C^2) (D^2+E^2+F^2))) :</pre>	<pre>PROGRAM: DODGE :Disp "FIRST VEC TOR" :Prompt X :Prompt Y :Prompt Z :X→A :Y→B</pre>	<pre>PROGRAM: VECTOR :ClrHome :Output(5,2,"VEC TOR MACHINE") :Output(3,4,"3D OR 2D") :Input M :If M=3:Goto A</pre>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Figure 4.11 Different student programs for finding angle between vectors

This public inspection of student work also revealed programming errors that were challenged and subsequently corrected by other members of the class. When interviewed after the lesson, students commented that programming helped them to develop a more thorough understanding of the underlying mathematical concepts, especially when there were opportunities to compare programs written by different people.

Technology becomes an *extension of self* when seamlessly incorporated into the user's pedagogical or mathematical repertoire, such as through the integration of a variety of technology resources into course planning and the everyday practices of the mathematics classroom. For students, this is a mind-expanding experience that accords them the freedom to explore at will. They explained this by saying that 'technology allows you to expand ideas and to do the work your own way', and 'it allows you to explore and go off in your own direction'. We observed such sophisticated use by teacher and students in a lesson involving use of iterative methods to find the approximate roots of a cubic equation. Students worked through a task where they constructed spreadsheets to investigate whether or not the iteration process converged on a solution (as in Figure 4.12), with some also deciding to use function-plotting software to create an alternative, graphical representation of the problem.

	A	B	C	D	E
1	$x^3 - 8x - 8 = 0$ rearranged as $x = x^3/8 - 1$			x	F(x)
2				-1.5	-1.421875
3	x	F(x)		-1.421875	-1.35933065
4	-1.5	$= [1/8] * [(A4)^3] - 1$		-1.35933065	-1.31396797
5	=B4	$= [1/8] * [(A5)^3] - 1$		-1.31396797	-1.28357265
6	=B5			-1.28357265	-1.26434517
7				-1.26434517	-1.25264282
8				-1.25264282	-1.24569243
9				-1.24569243	-1.24162534
10				-1.24162534	-1.23926640
11				-1.23926640	-1.23790525
12				-1.23790525	-1.23712221

Figure 4.12 Spreadsheet method for solving equation

This was a challenging task, and few students found all three roots of the equation. When one group of students did so, the teacher made a spur-of-the-moment decision to ask them to present their solution to the whole class via a laptop computer and data projector. With no time for rehearsal, the students shared the tasks of operating the computer keyboard, data projector remote control (which permitted scrolling and zooming independently of the computer) and laser pen, while coordinating their explanations and answering questions from their peers. Mathematical and communications technologies were smoothly incorporated into their unfolding argument, and were used to link numerical and graphical representations of the equation-solving task, and to clarify and elaborate on points raised by fellow students and the teacher.

These examples show that introducing new mathematical and communication technologies into classrooms can change the ways that knowledge is produced. Implicit in these changes are a number of challenges for teachers, the most obvious of which involves becoming familiar with the technology itself. While this is important, some attention also needs to be given to the inherent mathematical and pedagogical challenges in technology-rich classrooms if the goal of a problem-solving and investigative learning environment is to be realised. For example, placing graphics calculators in the hands of students gives them the power and freedom to explore mathematical territory that may be unfamiliar to the teacher, and for many teachers this challenge to their mathematical expertise and authority is something to be avoided rather than embraced. Perhaps the most significant challenge for teachers lies in sharing control of the technology with students and orchestrating the resulting classroom discussion.

## Technology and assessment

Reasons for looking closely at the connection between technology and assessment were foreshadowed by the AAMT (1996) *Statement on the Use of Calculators and Computers for Mathematics in Australian Schools*, which noted that: 'Assessment practice should reflect good teaching practice. The use of technological resources as integral aids to learning assumes their inclusion in the assessment process.' (1996, p. 5) This means that if technology is available for learning mathematics, then it must also be available to students when their understanding is being assessed. In practice, most recent developments in assessment policy have been concerned with access to and use of graphics calculators and CAS calculators in high-stakes assessment in the senior secondary years (Years 11 and 12).

In states with external examinations that assume access to graphics calculators, there has been a great deal of interest in the nature of assessment items—especially with respect to how these items may have changed since graphics calculators were introduced, the extent to which they require use of technology, and how technology might affect the solution method. Mueller and Forster (2000) analysed the Western Australia Tertiary Entrance calculus examination before and after government-mandated implementation of graphics calculators and found that the percentage of algorithmic, procedurally oriented questions declined but there was an increase in the number of applications questions where technology could take care of complex calculations. In Victoria, Flynn and colleagues (Flynn & Asp, 2002; Flynn & McCrae, 2001) have investigated the impact of permitting CAS calculators on the kind of questions asked in the Victorian Certificate of Education examinations. Queensland has a long history of school-based assessment and teacher ownership of curriculum, and thus there is greater diversity of practice in technology use.

Researchers have also been interested in investigating differences between levels of calculator use in assessment. Kissane et al. (1994) distinguished between three choices that could be made regarding calculator use in formal assessment: required (assumes all students have access); allowed (some students will not have access); or disallowed. They later developed a typology of student use of graphics calculators in examinations and within courses, shown in Table 4.1, which can be used to design examinations that capitalise on the capabilities of this technology.

**Table 4.1 A typology of expected use of graphics calculators in assessment**

---

**Calculator use is expected**

1. Students are explicitly advised or even told to use graphics calculators.
2. Alternatives to graphics calculators are very inefficient.
3. Graphics calculators are used as scientific calculators only.

**Calculator is used by some students, but not by others**

4. Use and non-use of graphics calculators are both suitable.

**Calculator use is not expected**

5. Exact answers are required.
  6. Symbolic answers are required.
  7. Written explanations of reasoning are required.
  8. Task involves extracting the mathematics from a situation or representing a situation mathematically.
  9. Graphics calculator use is inefficient.
  10. Task requires that a representation of a graphics calculator screen will be interpreted.
-

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :**

- Find out about policies regarding use of technology for assessment in the senior secondary mathematics subjects taught in your state or territory. For which subjects is technology use required, allowed or disallowed? For what kind of assessment tasks is technology use required, allowed or disallowed? What kind of technology is covered by these policies?
- Use the typology provided in Table 4.1 to analyse a Year 11 or Year 12 mathematics examination paper. Comment on the balance you find between the three types of technology use expected.
- Investigate recent research on the impact of CAS technology on mathematics assessment. Compare the schemes for classifying examination questions reported by Flynn and Asp (2001) with the typology provided in Table 4.1 [which was devised for graphics calculators without CAS capabilities]. Use Flynn and Asp's scheme to analyse an examination paper that permits the use of CAS.
- Find out about schools' policies on the use of technology for assessment in junior secondary mathematics. How is students' work in mathematics expected to contribute to their learning about technology? Conduct an inquiry at your school and compare your findings with those of your pre-service colleagues.

The requirement for students to use graphics calculators—including those with CAS capabilities—in formal assessment tasks has given rise to many other issues beyond that of level of use discussed above. One issue concerns our expectations as to what students should record to 'show their working' with a calculator (Ball & Stacey, 2003). A list of keystrokes is usually not very helpful, so what might be a reasonable alternative? This is really a question about the forms of mathematical representation and communication we value and want our students to demonstrate. One approach is to require students to show enough work so that the reasoning processes can be followed throughout the solution (US College Board, 2007). In practice, this means that students must show the mathematical set-up (e.g. the equation to be solved or graphed, the derivative to be evaluated) and steps that lead to the solution, in addition to results produced by the calculator.

Another issue emerges from studies of CAS calculators and their symbolic manipulation capabilities (e.g. Ball & Stacey, 2005b; Flynn & Asp, 2002) that have shown how different brands and models produce different intermediate results and make different solution pathways possible. Assessment in these circumstances becomes problematic because of the uncertainties and inconsistencies in the mathematical capacities that are being assessed.

## Challenges in creating technology-rich mathematics learning environments

So far we have painted a very positive picture of technology use in mathematics classrooms in terms of benefits for student learning and innovative teaching approaches. Yet there are many challenges in creating technology-rich mathematics learning environments. Research in this area has identified a range of factors that influence whether and how mathematics teachers use technology: their skill and previous experience in using technology; time and opportunities to learn (pre-service education, professional development); access to hardware and software in the school; availability of appropriate teaching materials; technical support; curriculum and assessment requirements; institutional culture; knowledge of how to integrate technology into mathematics teaching; and beliefs about mathematics and how it is learned (Fine & Fleener, 1994; Manoucherhri, 1999; Simonsen & Dick, 1997; Walen et al., 2003). We can classify these factors as being related to the teacher's *knowledge and beliefs*, the *professional context* or *sources of assistance*, as shown in Table 4.2. Let us consider each of these categories in turn, and identify implications for you as a mathematics teacher. (We will return to these categories in Chapter 17 when we examine professional learning and development.)

**Table 4.2 Factors influencing technology use in mathematics education**

Knowledge and beliefs	Skill/experience in working with technology
	Pedagogical knowledge (technology integration)
	General pedagogical beliefs
Professional context	Access to hardware, software, teaching materials
	Technical support
	Curriculum and assessment requirements
	Students (perceived abilities, motivation, behaviour)
Sources of assistance	Pre-service education (university program)
	Practicum and beginning teaching experience
	Professional development



Many studies have demonstrated close links between teachers' *knowledge and beliefs* about learning, their pedagogical practices and their orientation towards technology. Teachers with a transmission view of mathematics learning tend to display teacher-centred practices and to use technology mainly for calculation, while those with constructivist beliefs take a more learner-centred approach and use technology for concept-development. You might like to revisit your responses to the quiz in the section on Technology and curriculum (above), as these reflect your own pedagogical knowledge and beliefs.

Factors related to *sources of assistance* are very relevant to your experience as a pre-service teacher, but because technology changes so rapidly you will need to continually update your knowledge throughout your teaching career. Professional development on technology in mathematics education is offered by mathematics teacher associations and through journals, websites and conferences (see Chapter 17 for more information).

Often it seems that the teaching *context* plays an overriding role in supporting or hindering teachers' efforts to create technology-rich learning environments. We have already discussed the impact of curriculum and assessment policies on teachers' and students' use of hand-held technologies. By mandating, permitting or prohibiting hand-held technologies in different mathematics subjects, these policies can also influence which students get to use technology. For example, it is common to find higher use amongst senior secondary classes taking advanced mathematics subjects because this is required by the relevant syllabuses. On the other hand, younger students and those enrolled in lower status mathematics subjects that do not lead to tertiary study are often disadvantaged because access to technology is not given a priority by the school for these classes.

From a practical point of view, gaining access to technology resources for the classes you teach is likely to be a significant challenge for you as a mathematics teacher. Many of our current and former pre-service students have discovered that computer laboratories are often booked out by non-mathematics classes, that few classrooms are equipped with computers or data projectors, and that there are not enough class sets of graphics calculators. In these circumstances, you need to be realistic about what is possible and concentrate on what you can do with the resources you have. Alejandre (2005) has identified some common situations faced by mathematics teachers who want to incorporate technology into their classroom practice, and she makes the following suggestions on how to make the best of them.

If you have *one computer (desktop or laptop) in your classroom, without internet access*, you can use the computer:

- as a reference station—ask a student to check some facts related to the task that the class is completing by using CD-ROMs;
- to accompany and enhance a mathematical investigation lesson—organise a task where students have to collect data (e.g. to investigate the relationship between their height and their arm span) and then enter it into a spreadsheet that can be used to summarise and analyse trends across the whole class;
- as one of several stations or task centres within a classroom ‘menu’—arrange the classroom so students work in groups of three or four on each activity.

If you have *one computer (desktop or laptop) in your classroom, with internet access*, you can use the computer in much the same way as described above, but its reference capacities are now expanded because you can give students access to the type of mathematical websites we discussed earlier in the chapter.

If you have *one computer (desktop or laptop) in your classroom and a data projector or some other kind of display*, you can use the computer:

- to introduce or reinforce concepts by displaying and manipulating dynamic images and objects, such as drawings, diagrams or graphs, that you might otherwise have presented via an overhead projector or the whiteboard;
- to introduce work the students will have to do when they go to the computer laboratory.

If you have *a cluster of four to six computers in your classroom*, you can use the computers:

- as a reference area—if students are working on a task in small groups, one student from each group could go to the computers to search for information to help them complete the task (as there are likely to be more than four to six groups, this strategy could also accommodate pairs of students at each computer);

- as stations or task centres offering different technology-based activities through which groups of students rotate.

If you have no computer in your classroom and have to *book a computer laboratory*, be sure to have a back-up plan in case unforeseen problems occur. You may find it easier to use graphics calculators, which can perform many of the functions of mathematical software.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Work with a partner to develop a corresponding list of suggestions for teachers who have limited or uncertain access to graphics calculators, such as in schools where students are not required to buy a calculator or where there is no calculator hire scheme. What strategies can you suggest in the following circumstances?

- You have to book a class set of graphics calculators for each lesson in which you plan to use them, and there are several class sets in the school.
- There are only one or two class sets of graphics calculators, and they are usually reserved for the senior classes.
- There are no graphics calculators in the school, but you have your own calculator and a display (overhead projector panel).
- There are no class sets of graphics calculators, but you have managed to find about ten in working order.
- There are a couple of class sets of old-model graphics calculators.

## Conclusion

Early recommendations about preparation for teaching with technology assumed that teachers needed only general technological literacy. We now recognise that knowing how to use computers and other forms of technology is not the same as knowing how to teach effectively with technology, since pedagogical content knowledge is required to integrate technology into the curriculum in specific subject domains, such as mathematics. Pedagogical content knowledge, which enables teachers to create mathematical representations that connect students with the subject-matter, is at the heart of teaching effectively with

technology, and is embodied in such metaphors for technology as *master*, *servant*, *partner* and *extension of self* that we introduced in this chapter. The opportunities that teachers provide for technology-enriched student learning are also affected by ways in which they draw on their own knowledge and beliefs about the role of technology in mathematics education, and by how they interpret aspects of their teaching contexts that support or hinder their use of technology.

## Recommended reading

**Ball, L. & Stacey, K. (2003).** What should students record when solving problems with CAS? In J. Fey, A. Cuoco, C. Kieran, L. McMullin & R. Zblek (eds), *Computer algebra systems in secondary school mathematics education* (pp. 289–303). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

**Burrill, G., Allison, J., Breaux, G., Kastberg, S., Leatham, K. & Sanchez, W. (2002).** *Handheld graphing technology in secondary mathematics: Research findings and implications for classroom practice*. Dallas, TX: Texas Instruments.

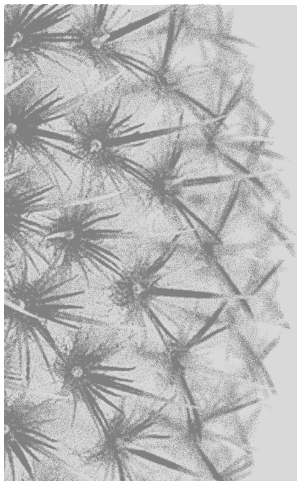
**Goos, M., Galbraith, P., Renshaw, P. & Geiger, V. (2003).** Perspectives on technology mediated learning in secondary school mathematics classrooms. *Journal of Mathematical Behavior*, 22, 73–89.

**Handal, B., Handal, P. & Herrington, T. (2005).** Evaluating online mathematics resources: A practical approach for teachers. In M. Coupland, J. Anderson & T. Spencer (eds), *Making mathematics vital* (Proceedings of the 20th biennial conference of the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers, pp. 153–65). Adelaide: AAMT.

**Casio website:** <[www.casioed.net.au/index.htm](http://www.casioed.net.au/index.htm)>.

**Texas Instruments website:**

<<http://education.ti.com/educationportal/sites/US/homePage/index.html>>.



## CHAPTER 5

### **Mathematics curriculum models**

Ever since the formation of public education systems in the Australian colonies in the 1870s, the official curriculum has been state-based rather than a national curriculum prescribed by a central authority. Under the Australian constitution, education remains the responsibility of state and territory governments rather than the federal government. This means that, in principle, each state and territory is free to determine its own curriculum, despite attempts by the Commonwealth in the late twentieth and early twenty-first centuries to engineer a national approach to curriculum collaboration. Because of the extent of curriculum variation around Australia, it is beyond the scope of this chapter to explore the content and structure of secondary school mathematics curricula in each state and territory, nor is this the place to discuss general theories of curriculum development and change. Instead, we focus on some of the ‘big ideas’ behind curriculum decision-making in the context of Australian mathematics education. The first part of the chapter lays the groundwork by introducing some fundamental curriculum concepts. Next we consider how decisions are made about what mathematics should be taught in secondary schools, and we provide a brief historical overview of mathematics curriculum development in Australia. Finally, we describe different models for organising the secondary school mathematics curriculum.

#### **Curriculum concepts**

‘Curriculum’ can be defined in many ways, with some definitions referring only to educational intentions and others to the reality of what actually happens in schools. For example, some people would say that a curriculum is a plan for learning (the intention), while others

would see curriculum as the set of all educational experiences offered to students by teachers and schools (the reality). Stenhouse (1975) brought these two ideas together in his definition of curriculum as ‘an attempt to communicate the essential principles and features of an educational proposal in such a form that it is open to critical scrutiny and capable of effective translation into practice’ (1975, p. 4). ‘Curriculum’ can also be represented in different ways according to the perspectives of the various participants in curricular activities:

- The *intended* curriculum represents the vision laid out by the curriculum designers in written curriculum documents and materials.
- The *implemented* curriculum represents teachers’ interpretation of the formal written documents and the way they enact this in the classroom.
- The *attained* curriculum represents the learning experiences as perceived by students as well as what students actually learn.

Because educational intentions rarely match educational realities, it is almost inevitable that there will be gaps between the curriculum that is intended by its designers, implemented by teachers and attained by students.

A curriculum also has a number of components that address the purpose, content, organisation and assessment of student learning. Van den Akker (2003) provides the following list of essential curriculum components and the questions they address:

- *Rationale*: What educational purposes and principles underpin the curriculum?
- *Aims and objectives*: Towards which specific learning goals are students working?
- *Content*: What are students learning and how is this sequenced?
- *Learning activities*: How are students learning?
- *Teacher role*: How is the teacher facilitating learning?
- *Materials and resources*: With what are students learning?
- *Grouping*: How are students allocated to various learning pathways and how are they organised for learning within the classroom?
- *Location*: What are the social and physical characteristics of the learning environment?
- *Time*: How much time is available for specific topics and learning tasks?
- *Assessment*: How do we know how far learning has progressed?

The relevance of these individual components will vary according to whether curriculum planning and implementation take place at the level of the education system, the school or the classroom. For example, system-level curriculum documents usually give most attention to the rationale, aims and objectives, and content, and often provide suggestions for content sequencing and time allocation. At the classroom level, the individual teacher is typically most concerned with learning activities, teacher role, and materials and resources. All ten components need to be coherently and systematically addressed by subject departments or teams of teachers involved in school-level curriculum planning and implementation. It is also important to maintain a close alignment and balance between all components, even though the process of curriculum change may emphasise only some specific components at a particular time (e.g. through the introduction of new learning goals, or new content, or new assessment approaches).

## What mathematics should we teach, and why?

Education is concerned with selecting and making available to the next generation those aspects of culture—knowledge, skills, beliefs, values, customs—thought by our society to be most worthwhile. However, people can vary in their opinions as to what constitutes worthwhile curriculum content.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** What mathematics do you think that all students should know and be able to use after ten years of schooling? Make a list of what you consider to be the mathematical topics, concepts, skills and ways of thinking that are critical for students to succeed in further education, training, employment and adult life beyond Year 10. Be prepared to give reasons to support your selection.

In pairs or small groups, compare your list with other pre-service teachers. Comment on reasons for any similarities and differences between your lists.

Compare your list with the published curriculum document for mathematics to Year 10 in your own state or territory, noting similarities and differences.

### *Democratic access to powerful mathematical ideas*

The above task challenges teachers to justify their selection of ‘essential’ mathematics. Curriculum choices need to be founded on an understanding of why mathematics is important, especially in these times of rapid social, economic and scientific change. The *National Statement on Mathematics for Australian Schools* (Australian Education Council, 1991) gives four reasons why everyone—not only the select few—needs to understand and be able to use mathematics. First, mathematics is used *in daily living*, whether this involves managing our home lives (measuring quantities for cooking, gardening, sewing, carrying out maintenance, or repairs to buildings or vehicles), our personal finances (spending, saving, budgeting, taking out loans, planning for retirement) or our leisure activities (travelling, reading maps, playing games). Second, mathematics is necessary for intelligent *participation in civic life*. Often this requires interpreting data in order to make informed decisions about economic, social, political, health or environmental issues. Third, mathematics is used *at work*. Although a high level of mathematics is needed in certain professions (e.g. engineering, science, information technology, economics), a foundation of mathematical knowledge underpins a very wide range of careers in industry, trades, communication, design, planning and agriculture. Finally, mathematics is *part of our cultural heritage*—it is one of humankind’s greatest intellectual and cultural achievements, and deserves to be part of a liberal education for all.

Another way of looking at the question of what mathematics to teach, and why, comes from those who argue that it is a fundamental human right for all students to have democratic access to powerful mathematical ideas (Malloy, 2002). In the United States, this ideal was exemplified by publication of the National Council of Teachers of Mathematics *Curriculum and Evaluation Standards for School Mathematics* (NCTM, 1989), and by the early 1990s many countries around the world had developed strong national programs that emphasised the breadth and connectedness of mathematical content and the processes of mathematical thinking. The components of ‘powerful mathematical ideas’ emphasised by these programs are reflected in the second version of the NCTM’s curriculum guidelines, the *Principles and Standards for School Mathematics* (NCTM, 2000). This document outlines curriculum standards—statements of what mathematics teaching should enable students to know and do—for mathematical content in the areas of number, algebra, geometry, measurement, and data analysis and probability, and for the mathematical processes of problem-solving,

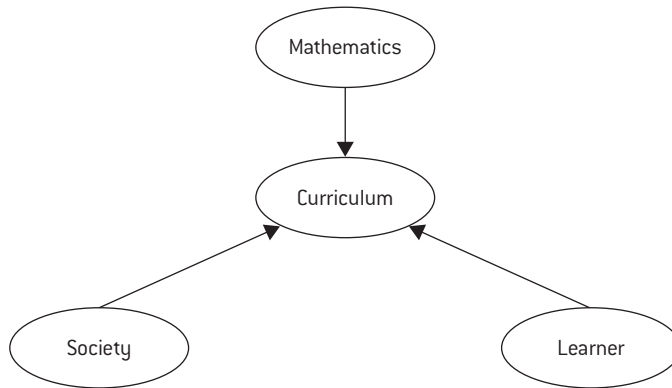


reasoning and proof, connections, communication and representation. But what is meant by 'democratic access' to these ideas? Malloy (2002) proposes that the literature on democratic education identifies four distinguishing characteristics that provide a rationale for democratic access to the curriculum. First, a *problem-solving curriculum* should develop students' ability to draw on their mathematical knowledge to solve problems of personal and social relevance. Second, *inclusivity and rights* should be promoted by presenting mathematics from multiple perspectives that affirm the worth of individuals and groups from diverse backgrounds. Third, there should be *equal participation in decisions that affect students' lives*, so that students use the classroom as a forum for public discussion of their own and others' ideas. Fourth, students should experience *equal encouragement for success* through access to materials that develop critical habits of mind and engage them actively in learning mathematics. Many of these ideas are discussed in more detail in Part IV of this book (Chapters 13, 14 and 15), where we examine issues of equity and diversity in teaching mathematics to all students.

## Who makes curriculum decisions?

Van den Akker (2003) proposes that decisions about what to include in the mathematics curriculum (and what to exclude from it) may be influenced by three major orientations or their respective proponents (see Figure 5.1). The first of these orientations is represented by mathematics as an academic discipline that has its own cultural heritage, so curriculum choices from this orientation are based on claims about the structure of the discipline and what counts as essential mathematical knowledge. For example, we might argue that an understanding of functions is essential because this is fundamental to the study of mathematical relationships and representations. The second orientation takes account of societal claims about relevant problems and issues, and curriculum choices from this orientation may be influenced, for example, by the needs of employers in the commercial, technical, financial and industrial sectors for workers who can apply mathematics to practical tasks and problems. A third orientation takes the learners' perspective in emphasising curriculum content and learning experiences that are personally meaningful, challenging and intrinsically motivating. From this orientation, curriculum choices might reflect a desire to help learners become confident and critical users of mathematics in their everyday lives. The rationale of a mathematics curriculum may reflect all of these orientations. In practice,

however, curriculum decisions often involve compromises to accommodate the interests of their various proponents.



*Figure 5.1 Sources of influence on mathematics curriculum content*

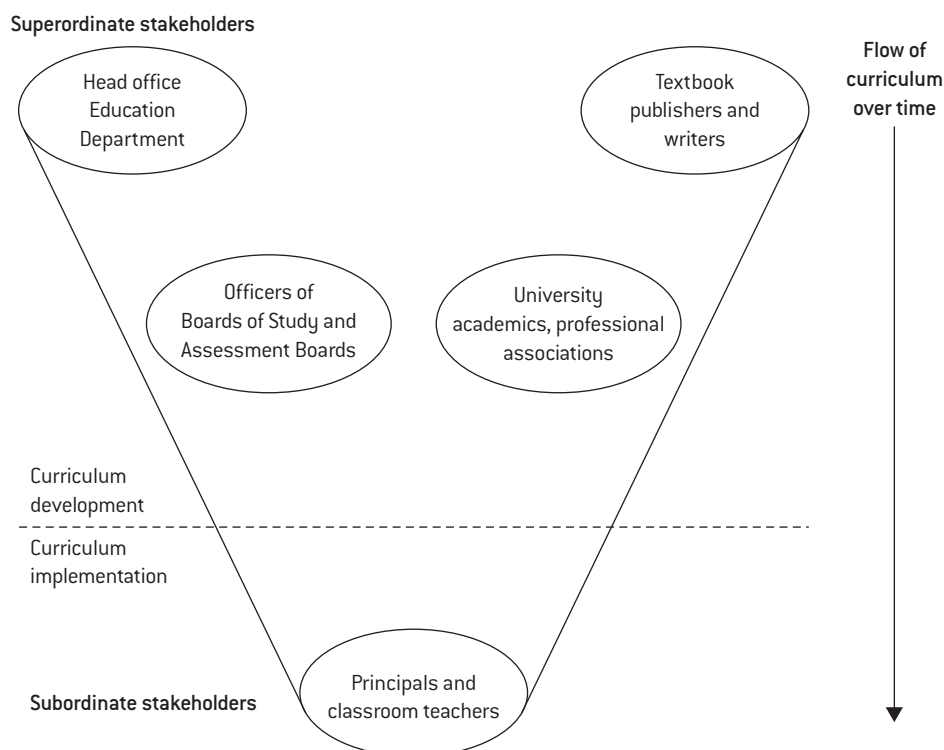
There are many potential stakeholders involved in developing mathematics curricula in Australia. The following list is adapted from Harris and Marsh (2005, p. 19):

- Ministers for Education (state and territory, federal);
- federal agencies such as the Department of Education, Science and Training;
- Department of Education senior officers (state and territory);
- Catholic Education senior officers (state and territory);
- independent school senior officers (state and territory);
- curriculum and assessment authorities (state and territory);
- teachers' unions (state and territory, federal);
- school councils;
- principals;
- teachers;
- parent organisations;
- students;
- university academics (mathematicians, mathematics educators);
- employers;
- business organisations;

- mathematics teacher professional associations (such as the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers) and mathematics education research organisations (the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia);
- textbook writers and publishers;
- the Curriculum Corporation;
- the Australian Council for Educational Research;
- the media;
- educational consultants; and
- lobby groups.

The level of influence and activity of these potential stakeholders varies over time and in different contexts. Harris and Marsh (2005) argue that their roles can be understood by examining a high-control model of curriculum decision-making which, although developed several decades ago (Rogers & Shoemaker, 1971), is consistent with the current emphasis on top-down accountability in education systems. This is known as the authority–innovation–decision-making model, where stakeholders are divided into a superordinate group that makes the major decisions in initiating and directing the curriculum development process, and a subordinate group that implements the decisions made by the higher status group. The functions of these two groups are represented by Figure 5.2.

While the authority–innovation–decision-making model is useful in alerting us to the typically hierarchical nature of curriculum decision-making, it nevertheless underestimates the agency of teachers by overlooking the significant power that teachers have in implementing (or rejecting) change, and in participating in the change process through their membership of professional associations, teacher unions, school clusters and subject departments. Harris and Marsh (2005) suggest that the most important aspect of agency is that of translation: teachers exert significant agency in translating the intended curriculum into the implemented curriculum. The authority–innovation–decision-making model is also limited in that it recognises only the system contexts of curriculum—education departments and curriculum and assessment authorities, universities, textbook publishers, schools—but not the broader social and cultural context of curriculum change—represented by parents, students and employers—and the roles of the media and lobby groups in publicising and diffusing concerns about curriculum content and standards.



*Figure 5.2* Superordinate and subordinate functions in curriculum development and implementation

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Find out how mathematics curriculum decisions are made in your state or territory. What is the role of the local curriculum and assessment authority? What is its relationship to the state/territory education department and the Catholic and independent schools sectors? What formal roles do teachers, parents, teacher unions, business organisations and university academics play in mathematics curriculum development?

Conduct a media survey over a semester to identify news items about mathematics education. What views are expressed about mathematics curricula? By whom? To what extent are these views critical or supportive of current curricula?

## Historical overview of mathematics curriculum development in Australia

School mathematics in Australia has been shaped by a range of forces since European settlement in 1788. Clements et al. (1989) have argued that colonialism was the major influence on mathematics education over the first 200 years, in that both the colonial power and those who were being colonised accepted without question that mathematics curricula and teaching methods should replicate British models. In England, the three main classes of society had access to different types of education: elite public schools were provided for children of the aristocracy, grammar schools and public schools for children of the middle and professional classes, and charity schools for children of lower social class families. This pattern strongly influenced the development of school and university mathematics education in Australia.

In early colonial times in Australia (1788 to the mid-1850s), almost all children were of convict or lower social class origins, and primary schools adopted curricula very similar to those used in charity schools in England. Children were taught reading, writing and arithmetic, with boys additionally being offered training in agriculture and the mechanical arts and girls receiving instruction in needlework. The scope of arithmetic, mirroring that taught in English schools, was limited to the four operations, vulgar fractions, an understanding of proportion, and simple applications of these skills to practical tasks. As the non-convict population grew, there was a corresponding increase in demand for education suited to children of the wealthy and the middle class. Schools established in response to this demand adopted curricula almost identical to the public and grammar schools in England, which emphasised the classics (Greek and Latin) and mathematics (formal algebra and Euclidean geometry) in order to prepare the sons of the upper and middle classes for entry to English universities.

In later colonial times (mid-1850s to Federation), the newly established universities in the Australian colonies exerted a significant influence on school mathematics curricula through their control of matriculation and public examinations. Again, the colonial influence was evident—for example, when the Universities of Sydney and Melbourne were founded in 1851 and 1853 respectively, they adopted academic programs comparable to those offered by Oxford and Cambridge in order to claim equivalent status with these elite English institutions, and their entrance examinations were almost identical to those set

in England in requiring candidates to pass in Greek, Latin, Euclidean geometry, algebra, arithmetic and English. Preparing students for these examinations became the overriding goal of secondary schools and, because the examination questions were narrow in scope and rewarded rote learning, the mathematics teaching in secondary schools was oriented towards reproduction of learned facts and procedures. It is important to note, however, that during this time period fewer than 2 per cent of all Australian children attended secondary school, so most of the population had no access to mathematics education beyond the rudiments of arithmetic.

Despite the impetus for social and political reform brought on by Federation in 1901, mathematics education in Australia in the first half of the twentieth century continued to mimic English curriculum models, and the mathematics taught in schools remained largely unaffected by developments in the field of mathematics. This stagnation is reflected in the use, until at least the 1950s, of secondary school arithmetic, algebra and geometry textbooks published in England at the beginning of the twentieth century. Mathematics teaching was still formal and rigid, emphasising memorisation and drilling in routine skills in preparation for written examinations. Although the new Australian constitution had given responsibility for education to the states, mathematics curricula in schools across Australia still depended on English ideas and hence were remarkably similar.

The 'New Mathematics' movement of the 1960s brought an end to curriculum inertia (Pitman, 1989). The Soviet launch of Sputnik 1 in 1957 and the reaction to this perceived military threat by non-communist Western nations—and especially the United States—provided the political context for major curriculum reform, resulting in the allocation of vast amounts of funding to curriculum development projects in the physical sciences and mathematics in order to prepare better scientists and engineers and thus re-establish military superiority over the communist bloc countries. The intellectual foundations for the 'New Mathematics' movement lay in the work of the Bourbakists in France, who redefined mathematics in terms of abstract notions of sets, functions, axioms and formal logic. Translation of this view into school mathematics curricula was supported by university mathematicians and mediated by mathematics educators who saw connections between formal mathematical structures and prevailing cognitive developmental theories of learning. Secondary mathematics curricula in Australia, as in many other countries, changed to reflect a new view of mathematical knowledge based on axiomatic structures of

formal logic. However, in practice, neither students nor teachers were able to cope with such abstract ideas, and by the mid-1970s evidence was also emerging that the ‘New Mathematics’ curriculum not only failed to prepare students adequately for tertiary mathematics, but also left children without fundamental arithmetical skills.

Mathematics curriculum initiatives in Australia in the 1980s were influenced by:

- concerns that young people were unable to apply their mathematical knowledge and skills in real-world situations;
- advances in technology (computers, calculators) that made it possible to reduce the emphasis on pen and paper computation;
- economic changes that led to the demise of old industries and creation of new ones that needed new types of workers; and
- calls for development of a core mathematics curriculum accessible to all children (Pitman, 1989).

The formalism of ‘New Mathematics’ was replaced by a focus on mathematics as problem-solving, and the desire to achieve a better balance between equity and quality in mathematics education. These were the goals that drove many international, national and state-based mathematics curriculum development projects in the 1980s. Perhaps the best-known Australian initiative was the Mathematics Curriculum and Teaching Program (MCTP), which identified, documented and disseminated examples of good practice amongst mathematics teachers to encourage them to model their own practice on ‘what worked’ successfully in other classrooms (Lovitt & Clarke, 1988).

In this brief historical overview, it is possible to trace the effect of academic mathematics and mathematicians, changing social, political and economic conditions, and concerns for equity and relevance in the curriculum—the three broad orientations claimed by van den Akker (2003) to be the major influences on curriculum decision-making. Since the late 1980s, however, curriculum development in Australia has been a highly politicised issue because of unresolved tensions between the states’ and territories’ constitutional autonomy in education matters and the Commonwealth’s desire for a national curriculum to achieve greater consistency between state-based education systems (see Marsh, 1994 and Reid, 2005 for analyses of the politics of national curriculum collaboration).

The Commonwealth began funding school education in 1963, and from this time until 1988 exerted only indirect influence on school curricula via funding for curriculum projects and resource development. More direct Commonwealth intervention began in 1988 when John Dawkins, Commonwealth Minister for Employment, Education and Training, issued a policy statement arguing for a single national curriculum framework that could be adapted by the states and territories to inform local syllabus development. The following year, the Australian Education Council—comprising Commonwealth and state Ministers of Education—announced the Hobart Declaration that endorsed agreed national goals for schooling and launched the process of national collaborative curriculum development. By 1991, the curriculum had been organised into eight Learning Areas (now known as Key Learning Areas, or KLAs), and teams of writers were commissioned to produce *Statements* and *Profiles* for each Learning Area. The Profiles described what students were expected to know and do, and thus marked a shift from the conventional curriculum focus on content to be taught, or ‘inputs’, towards the desired ‘outcomes’ for student learning. Within each Profile, the outcomes were arranged into content and process strands in a sequence that depicted progressive growth of student understanding. In mathematics, the content strands were number, space, measurement, algebra, and chance and data, and the process strand was labelled ‘Working Mathematically’ (Australian Education Council, 1994). By the time the national curriculum framework was submitted to the Australian Education Council meeting of June 1993, the political complexions of the state governments had changed and this, together with intensive lobbying by mathematics academics and others in the mathematics education community who were critical of the new curriculum, led ministers to vote to defer acceptance of the Statements and Profiles. Ultimately, the national curriculum documents were referred back to the states and territories for determination of the extent, nature and timing of any implementation.

This failed attempt at a national curriculum nevertheless provided a common framework that was adopted or adapted during the 1990s by all states and territories to produce outcomes-based curricula in the Key Learning Areas. In 2003, the prospect of national curriculum collaboration emerged once again when Brendan Nelson, Commonwealth Minister for Education, Science and Training, issued a strong call for removal of inconsistencies between state and territory curricula, school starting ages and Year 12 assessment procedures. Interestingly, however, the feeling amongst experts in curriculum theory is



that any new attempt at national curriculum collaboration will fail unless it recognises the political realities of Australia's federal system, articulates a clear rationale and conceptual base that does not rely solely on claims about consistency, economic efficiencies or national identity, and engages the professional community to build a genuine constituency of support (Reid, 2005). At the time of writing, it remains to be seen whether these requirements will be met by the latest attempt to design a national curriculum.

## How can the mathematics curriculum be organised?

The introduction of Key Learning Areas has had a significant impact on curriculum organisation to Year 10 in all Australian states and territories. More recently, however, there has been a move towards identifying the essential capabilities—knowledge, skills, understandings and dispositions—that students need to develop within and across the KLAs. These so-called 'essential learnings' provide an alternative framework for organising both disciplinary and interdisciplinary learning in the junior secondary school. In the senior secondary years, however, a range of mathematics subjects is typically offered to cater for the differing post-secondary pathways that students may follow.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Visit your state or territory curriculum authority website and investigate the organisation of the mathematics curriculum in the junior and senior secondary years:

- Identify the extent to which the ten curriculum components listed by van den Akker (2003) are represented in these curriculum documents. Are there any differences in emphasis between the compulsory and post-compulsory years of schooling?
- What type of framework is used to organise the curriculum to Year 10?
- What mathematics subjects are offered in Years 11 and 12? What is the rationale for each of these subjects, and who are the intended clientele? How does the mathematical content differ in these subjects? What are the consequences of differentiated content? (For example, is it possible for students to switch from one subject to another? How do subjects prepare students for different post-school destinations?) How much flexibility are teachers allowed in selecting content?

### *Process-driven curriculum models*

In the previous section, we traced the historical development of mathematics curriculum in Australia, noting how the emphasis shifted over time from mathematical content and skills to mathematical structures and, by the 1980s, to mathematical processes. The call by the National Council of Teachers of Mathematics in the United States for problem-solving to be the guiding principle for mathematics education in the 1980s (NCTM, 1980) became the catalyst for process-driven curriculum development in Australia, leading to problem-solving and applications achieving new prominence in mathematics curricula in almost every part of Australia (Stacey & Groves, 1984).

During the 1980s, several curriculum development projects across Australia focused on problem-solving, applications or modelling. In South Australia, Gaffney and Treilibs (1982) developed mathematical modelling curriculum materials focusing on real-life problems, while in Western Australia the Curriculum Branch of the Education Department (1984) developed materials for an Applying Mathematics course. Several projects were also underway in Victoria. The Reality In Mathematics Education (RIME) Teacher Development Project was attempting to improve the quality and relevance of mathematics teaching in Years 7–10 through active investigation of mathematical and real-world situations (Lowe, 1984). In 1985, the Mathematics Curriculum and Teaching Program (Lovitt et al., 1986) began to develop and trial sample applications lessons for Years 9 and 10 as well as the primary classroom, and in early 1986 the Australian Academy of Science decided to transform its *Mathematics at Work* series (Treilibs, 1980–81) into two volumes (Lowe, 1988, 1991b) with an emphasis on applications and mathematical modelling for the senior secondary level. In Queensland, Clatworthy and Galbraith (1987) began a mathematical modelling course at a senior secondary college, where the modelling component was conducted in parallel with conventional topics taught and tested using a traditional format.

By the early 1990s, senior secondary mathematics curricula Australia were undergoing major revision in almost every state and territory to make mathematics more accessible to all students and increase the emphasis on problem-solving, investigation and modelling (Stephens, 1990). Attempts to introduce formal school-based or external assessment of these mathematical processes—whether through examinations, centrally set common tasks, problems selected from a common bank, or projects and extended investigations

developed at the school level—have met with varying degrees of success. Concerns over teacher and student workload and the authenticity of student work completed under non-supervised conditions, combined with the extent and pace of change, have threatened the integrity and sustainability of these process-driven curriculum models in some parts of Australia (Stillman, 2001, 2007).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** How are the process aspects of mathematics conceptualised by senior secondary mathematics curricula in your local jurisdiction? To what extent are problem-solving, applications, modelling and investigations represented in these documents? What advice is provided about how to teach these processes?

What kinds of tasks are used to assess these processes? Under what conditions do students complete these assessment tasks?

Discuss your findings with peers in the light of the concerns about curriculum sustainability raised by Stillman (2001, 2007).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Do a library search to obtain some of the process-driven curriculum resources developed in the 1980s (e.g. R.I.M.E., MCTP, *Mathematics at Work*), or find out whether local schools have these resources. Select one and evaluate its relevance to the current senior secondary mathematics curriculum in your state or territory.

### *Outcome-based curriculum models*

Curriculum documents for Years 1 to 10 in Australia typically represent an outcome-based approach and are often organised around the eight Key Learning Areas that were defined in the national curriculum collaboration process described in the previous section. United States educator William Spady is considered to be the first and most influential advocate of outcome-based education (OBE), and various versions of outcome-based curriculum

models have been adopted internationally—in the United States, Canada, South Africa, New Zealand and the United Kingdom, as well as Australia. Spady (1993) has defined an outcome as ‘a culminating demonstration of learning’ (1993, p. 4)—that is, the result of learning that we would like students to demonstrate at the end of significant learning experiences. Such an approach requires us to identify the desired outcomes of learning and to align teaching and assessment towards these outcomes.

Spady and Marshall (1991) describe three forms of outcome-based education: traditional, transitional and transformational. In the *traditional* form of OBE, the curriculum remains unchanged and outcomes are written to reflect the knowledge and skills of traditional school subjects, often at the level of a topic or unit. The Australian mathematics curriculum profile (Australian Education Council, 1994) is an example of this approach. In contrast, *transformational* OBE starts by identifying exit or culminating outcomes that focus on adult life roles, and is thus concerned with students’ success after they leave school rather than the knowledge and skills they acquire as they become more proficient in mathematics (or any other school subject). The scope of *transitional* OBE lies between the other two forms: exit outcomes are not reflective of life roles but nevertheless describe the broad knowledge, competencies and dispositions to be demonstrated when students graduate from school. In this approach, the subject-matter becomes the vehicle for cultivating higher order thinking. Many curriculum documents to Year 10 in Australia now attempt to address some combination of traditional, transitional and transformational approaches to outcome-based education.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Analyse the mathematics curriculum documents in your own state or territory to identify evidence of traditional, transitional, and transformational approaches to OBE. *Traditional* outcomes are subject-specific and describe what students should know and do. *Transitional* outcomes may still fit within school subject boundaries but refer to broadly specified expectations for higher order thinking and positive dispositions. *Transformational* outcomes are generic, future-oriented and cross-curricular (i.e. they may be the same across all Key Learning Areas).

Spady articulated four principles of outcome-based education: clarity of focus; expanded opportunities to learn; high expectations; and designing down the curriculum. ‘Clarity of focus’ means that teachers constantly need to be mindful of the learning outcomes they want students to achieve, and to make these expected outcomes explicit for their students. Closely related to this is ‘designing down the curriculum’, whereby all curriculum planning begins from a clear definition of the significant learning outcomes students are to demonstrate by the end of their schooling; all instructional decisions are then made by working back from this broadly expressed desired end-result. These decisions should also provide students with ‘expanded opportunities to learn’—a principle based on the belief that ‘all students can learn and succeed, but not on the same day and in the same way’ (Spady & Marshall, 1991, p. 67). Teachers need to provide students with many opportunities to succeed and demonstrate their learning, rather than simply ‘covering the content’ at the same rate for the whole class. Finally, having ‘high expectations’ for all students does not imply that students are equally academically able, but that all deserve to be engaged with an intellectually challenging curriculum that stretches them to produce their best possible performance. This is why Australian curriculum documents to Year 10 specify the same learning outcomes for all students, rather than different outcomes that might encourage a lowering of expectations for some students.

Clearly, the four principles outlined by Spady present teachers and schools with many challenges. In a traditional time-based curriculum, the teacher presents a course in a fixed timeframe even though some students learn more quickly—or slowly—than others. Because an outcome-based curriculum acknowledges that students learn in different ways and at different rates, teachers will need to devise flexible strategies for working with the whole class, groups within the class and individuals. Although it is not necessary to offer different activities to students who have reached different levels of understanding, some thought should be given to selecting or designing tasks that can be accessed by all students. (See Chapter 15 for further discussion and examples of differentiated curriculum planning and implementation in heterogeneous, or ‘mixed ability’, mathematics classes.)

In outcome-based mathematics curriculum documents, the learning outcomes for each strand or segment or dimension (terms vary between states and territories) are arranged in a series of levels that depict progressive growth of student understanding. Because the series assumes a continuum of growth, the levels are nested so that each higher level subsumes the outcomes of the lower level (as in Figure 5.3). The outcomes at each level should be

qualitatively different from those above and below, and the sequence should describe how students' thinking changes from one level to the next.

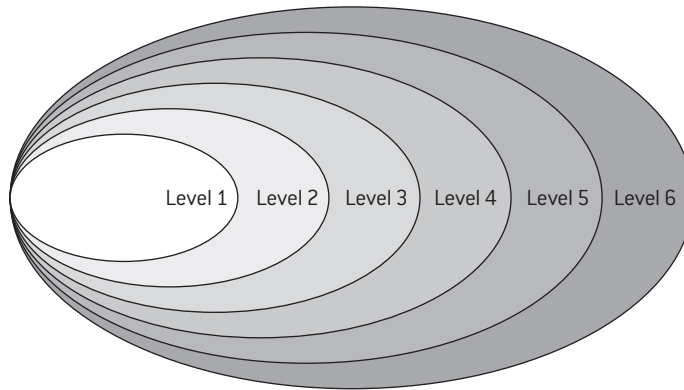


Figure 5.3 Nested sequence of outcomes

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Obtain a photocopy of the level-by-level outcome statements for one of the content strands (or equivalent) of your local outcome-based mathematics curriculum document. Cut up the page(s) so that each outcome statement is on a separate piece of paper. Work with colleagues to reassemble the statements in a continuum that reflects your understanding of how students' thinking changes as they learn. Discuss reasons for positioning the outcomes in the sequence you decide. Compare your sequence with the original curriculum document and resolve any differences.

The national mathematics curriculum *Profile* (Australian Education Council, 1994) included a single process strand, entitled 'Working Mathematically', which was organised into the following substrands:

- investigating;
- conjecturing;
- using problem-solving strategies;
- applying and verifying;
- using mathematical language;
- working in context.

However, each state and territory has reorganised (and sometimes renamed) the ‘Working Mathematically’ strand according to its own curriculum design. In her review of the role of problem-solving in contemporary mathematics curriculum documents, Stacey (2005) notes that ‘there is not strong agreement on how the process strand for mathematics is constituted, and consequently on what are the key aspects to teach and to assess’ (2005, p. 345). Her analysis also points to the different and somewhat unsatisfactory ways in which outcome-based curriculum documents describe expectations for development or progress in learning in the process area. Little is known about the characteristics of student growth with regard to mathematical processes, and this is an area where more research is needed to inform curriculum design.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :**

1. Compare the organisation of process strands in the Australian national mathematics curriculum *Profile*, the NCTM’s *Principles and Standards*, and your local outcome-based mathematics curriculum for the junior secondary years (see below). Refer to the relevant descriptions of the substrands provided in these documents to identify similarities and differences between the conceptualisation of ‘problem solving’, ‘working mathematically’ and ‘mathematical processes’.

NCTM <i>Principles and Standards</i> (USA)	National mathematics <i>Profile</i> (Australia)	Local mathematics curriculum (state/territory)
Problem-solving Reasoning and proof Communication Connections Representation	Investigating Conjecturing Using problem-solving strategies Applying and verifying Using mathematical language Working in context	

2. Compare the relative emphases on mathematical processes in the junior and senior mathematics curricula in your state or territory. How similar or different is the conceptualisation of ‘processes’ in these curricula? Discuss with your peers any implications for continuity in curriculum planning across the secondary school years.

### *Integrated curriculum models*

In Chapter 3, we saw that recent moves to reform mathematics curricula and teaching approaches have aimed to make mathematics more meaningful for students by highlighting links between mathematical topics, investigating mathematical applications in the real world, and valuing connections between mathematics and other curriculum areas. Curriculum integration is often proposed as a means of helping students to develop richly connected knowledge and to recognise how this knowledge is used in real-world contexts, and secondary schools are beginning to develop numeracy policies that demonstrate integrated approaches across the curriculum. However, we need to be clear about what is meant by ‘integration’, whether integrating separate discipline areas is desirable, and if so how this might be achieved in practice.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Investigate the extent to which the mathematics curriculum for junior and senior secondary subjects in your state or territory encourages cross-curricular connections. What guidelines—if any—are provided for teachers to plan and implement integrated curriculum units?

Approaches to curriculum integration differ according to the type of connections made between subject areas (see Wallace et al., 2001). At one extreme is a subject-centred approach; at the other is full curriculum integration where knowledge from relevant disciplines is brought to bear on problem-solving situations (Woodbury, 1998). In between lie a variety of interdisciplinary approaches that connect subject areas in different ways—for example, by planning separate subjects around a common theme or problem, or by unifying some subjects into a single course taught by two or more teachers. Huntley (1998) discusses these variations in terms of three broad categories. She describes an *intradisciplinary* curriculum as one that focuses on a single discipline. An *interdisciplinary* curriculum still has its focus on one discipline, but uses other disciplines to support the content of the first domain (e.g. by establishing relevance or context). In an *integrated* curriculum, disciplinary boundaries dissolve completely as concepts and methods of inquiry from one discipline are infused into others.



Considering integration of mathematics and science, Huntley (1998) proposes a continuum to clarify the degree of overlap or coordination between these disciplines during instruction (see Figure 5.4). For example, she defines a ‘mathematics *with* science’ course as one teaching mathematical topics (represented by the circle filled with horizontal lines) under the cover of a science context (circle filled with vertical lines). On the other hand, in a ‘mathematics *and* science’ course, the two disciplines interact and support each other in ways that result in students learning more than just the mathematics and science content (circles overlap completely to form a new pattern).

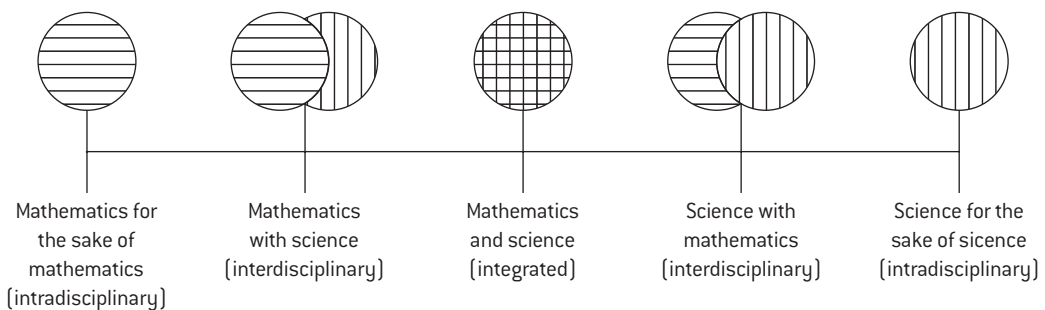
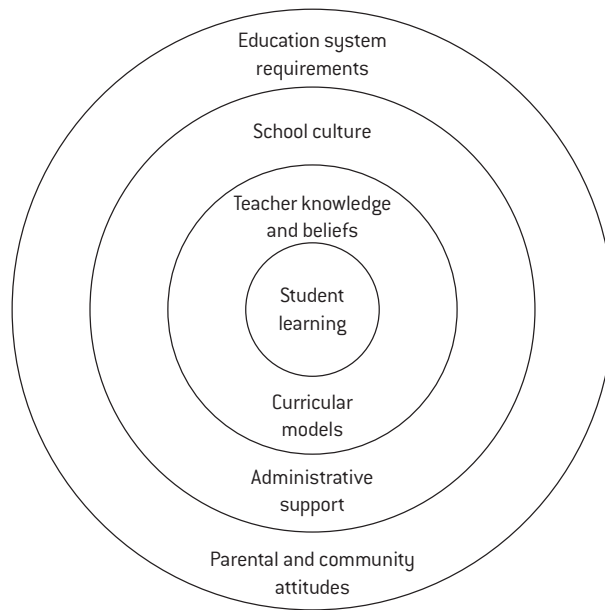


Figure 5.4 Mathematics/science integration continuum

Previous research has identified many factors that may hinder or facilitate the design and implementation of integrated curricula (e.g. see Frykholm & Meyer, 2002; Huntley, 1998; Woodbury, 1998). These factors operate at several levels of influence, as depicted in Figure 5.5. Beyond the school, we must consider the influence of education systems on curriculum content and assessment of student achievement, as well as parental and community attitudes (see Chapter 16). School cultures can inhibit interdisciplinary collaboration, especially in secondary schools where departments are usually organised around subject specialisations. Schools also need to provide administrative support to teachers by allowing adequate time for conceptualising and designing integrated programs and scheduling joint planning time so teachers can work in teams. Inflexible timetabling of teachers and classes, and inefficient allocation of rooms and other facilities can also make it difficult to offer genuinely integrated learning experiences.

However, teachers themselves are the key because teachers' disciplinary knowledge and beliefs, their assumptions about how curricula should be organised, and their knowledge of alternative curriculum models can either facilitate or limit their ability to pursue an



*Figure 5.5* Issues in curriculum integration

integrated approach. Mathematics teachers' reservations about curriculum integration are often expressed as fears that the mathematics curriculum will be watered down, or that specialist mathematics teachers will no longer be required if integrated programs are introduced. Both of these fears rest on the assumption that generalist teachers, working as individuals, will be expected to teach cross-disciplinary units. On the contrary, however, an intellectually challenging integrated curriculum requires the contribution and collaboration of teachers from both disciplines, and mathematics expertise becomes more rather than less important in these circumstances. Teachers who are committed to curriculum integration must then address important questions about their goals for integration, which disciplines to bring together, how relationships between disciplines are to be coordinated, selection of content, depth of treatment, instructional approaches and assessment of student learning.

Some of these issues have been investigated by Australian researchers and teachers who are interested in curriculum integration in secondary schools. Goos and Mills (2001; see also Goos, 2001) designed a project that brought together pre-service mathematics and history teachers to prepare integrated curriculum units for junior secondary students that would meet learning outcome requirements of both the mathematics and Studies of Society and Environment (SOSE) syllabuses in Queensland. The full list of curriculum units developed

by the pre-service teachers in the first year of the project is shown in Table 5.1, together with an outline of the history/SOSE and mathematics subject-matter dealt with by each. The culmination of each curriculum unit was to be an assessment task with real-world value and use that would allow junior secondary students to demonstrate the mathematics and SOSE knowledge and skills they had developed through their integrated studies. Some of the more imaginative assessment tasks are shown in Table 5.2.

**Table 5.1 Integrated curriculum units: Topics and subject-matter**

Topic	History/SOSE content	Mathematics content
Pyramids of Egypt	Dating the pyramids Political/social structure of ancient Egypt Geography of Egypt Religious/burial practices and beliefs Pyramid construction methods	Ratio and proportion Plane and 3D shapes Measurement (length, area, volume, angle, time, mass) Statistics
Australian postwar immigration policies	Postwar immigration and population analysis The end of the 'White Australia' policy Cultural diversity	Percentage Ratio and proportion Statistics
Australian federal elections and opinion polling	Australian system of government and elections Manipulation of statistics by media and political bias in newspapers Comparing the 1993 and 1998 elections	Data collection (sampling, surveys) Graphical representations of data
The Mediaeval plagues	English society 1348–1500 Case study: the Black Death Social impact and aftermath	Statistics (data collection, representation, analysis and prediction)
Archaeology: Investigation of a fifteenth century Cossack site	Excavation of a mock site Determining physical characteristics and age of the Cossack	Algebra and functions Ratio and proportion Measurement
The Space Race	Early space exploration and Apollo 13 mission Politics and the Strategic Defence Initiative	Trigonometry Geometry on a sphere
China	Geography, history, politics, culture and population	Percentages, fractions, decimals Scale drawings, time lines Statistics

**Table 5.2 Integrated curriculum units: Assessment tasks**

Topic	Assessment task
Pyramids of Egypt	You have been declared Pharaoh of Egypt! As a monument to your reign, you choose to build a pyramid in your honour. Determine resources required, list environmental impacts, forecast problems that may occur, and construct a scale model of your pyramid. Conduct a feasibility study and report on your findings.
Australian federal elections and opinion polling	Write an article to be published in the <i>Australian Government Weekly</i> . Analyse the issues in a specific election, including the use of statistics and opinion polls.
Australian postwar immigration policies	A new Minister for Immigration has plans to reinstate the 'White Australia' policy. Your advisory committee is to prepare him a briefing report on this decision.
The Mediaeval plagues	Create a twenty-minute TV current affairs or documentary program on the impact of the plagues on English society, OR 'What would we do if it happened again?'

The project analysed the benefits and difficulties experienced by the pre-service teachers and identified implications for collaboration between teachers across different subject areas. These included uncertainty about the extent of integration that was possible and desirable, organisational constraints involving subject timetabling and allocation of resources, and the challenges of working with teacher colleagues who held different pedagogical as well as epistemological beliefs (see Figure 5.5).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Do a library search of professional journals and books to locate other examples of integrated curriculum units. For example, see Goos and Askin (2005), House and Coxford (1995) and McGraw (2003).

## Conclusion

In this chapter, we have looked at mathematics curriculum development and curriculum models from an international and national perspective and identified some of the historical,

social and political forces that shape curriculum change. Curriculum is not simply a 'product', created by 'experts' and handed over to teachers for classroom implementation; instead, curriculum decision-making is a dynamic process in which teachers can play a significant role within and beyond the classroom.

## Recommended reading

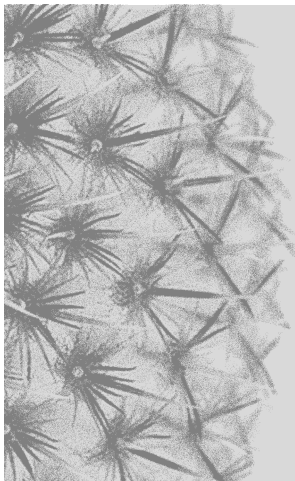
**Australian Education Council (1994).** *Mathematics: A curriculum profile for Australian schools*. Melbourne: Curriculum Corporation.

**Goos, M. & Askin, C. (2005).** Towards numeracy across the curriculum: Integrating mathematics and science in the middle years. In R. Zevenbergen (ed.), *Innovations in numeracy teaching in the middle years* (pp. 125–41). Canberra: Australian Curriculum Studies Association.

**McGraw, S. (ed.) (2003).** *Integrated mathematics: Choices and challenges*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

**Stacey, K. (2005).** The place of problem solving in contemporary mathematics curriculum documents. *Journal of Mathematical Behavior*, 24, 341–50.

**Stillman, G. (2004).** Sustained curriculum change: The example of the implementation of applications and modelling curricula in two Australian states. In H.-W. Henn & W. Blum (eds), *ICMI Study 14: Applications and modelling in mathematics education* (pp. 261–6), Dortmund: University of Dortmund.



## CHAPTER 6

### **Assessing mathematics learning**

Assessment involves collecting and interpreting evidence of students' learning, using this evidence to make judgments about the quality of learning, and communicating these judgments to different audiences. 'Assessment in mathematics has political, ideological and cultural aspects, as well as educational aspects' (Galbraith, 1995, p. 274). Assessment is political, as it brings the issue of power into the teaching and learning environment. In our publicly funded education system, schools are held accountable to the community through the assessment of their students. Governments use assessment data to inform curriculum policy and direct resources to programs and schools, sometimes according to ideology. Governments are also responsive to parental concerns about the quality of feedback received through school reports and the equity or otherwise of assessment practices. At the time of writing this book, there is a debate about a national curriculum for Australia and, with respect to mathematics, the efficacy of a common curriculum and assessment for Year 12 is part of this debate. According to Stephens et al. (1994), changing assessment requirements and methods at Year 12 level impact content and assessment at all levels of secondary schooling, so controlling assessment exercises power over mathematics curriculum and teaching more broadly. Changing the conditions in high-stakes assessment at the end of secondary schooling also has equity implications for the community (Teese, 2000). In the school setting, teachers argue more ardently about how to assess students than about how to teach students, for example, the concept of variable. In the classroom, teachers have the power to set expectations and make judgments. Teachers determine who is good at mathematics and who is not, place students in particular class groups and so determine who 'lives their dream' and who does not.

Clarke (1988) has claimed that, ‘irrespective of the purposes we might have for assessment, it is through our assessment that we communicate most clearly to students which activities and learning outcomes we value. It is important, therefore, that our assessment be comprehensive, and give recognition to all valued learning experiences’ (1988, p. 1). Assessment is part of the learning process. Students reflect on their work and use metacognitive skills to self-correct and direct their problem-solving. Feedback from teachers assists them to focus on what matters, and the skills and concepts that need their attention. Teacher feedback also provides information about students’ mathematical strengths and hence the knowledge and skills that they can draw upon and build on for future learning. The data teachers gather through various forms of assessment are used to develop teaching and learning programs that best meet students’ needs.

In this chapter, we draw on Australian examples and research to discuss the educational aspects of assessment and methods used in mathematics. We invite you to inquire into the political, ideological and cultural dimensions of assessment in mathematics as well.

## Purposes of assessment

According to D.J. Clarke (1996), the fundamental purposes of assessment are ‘to model, to monitor and to inform’ (1996, p. 328). A regime of assessment employed by an educational system is thus seen as valid and reliable depending on the extent to which it: (a) provides ‘an effective model of valued performance in mathematics and an effective model of educational practice’; (b) monitors ‘these valued performances’ by providing all students with sufficient ‘opportunities to display their capabilities in forms that can be documented’; and (c) informs the actions of stakeholders, such as students, teachers, parents/carers, employers, subsequent educational providers (e.g. TAFE or universities), systems and governments. Assessment is ongoing over the years of secondary schooling.

*Formative assessment* provides feedback to students, parents and teachers about achievement throughout the secondary years. Formative assessment has the purposes of advancing students’ learning and informing teachers’ instructional decisions (Even, 2005). It may occur throughout a teaching cycle using informal methods such as classroom questioning and observation as well as various formal methods such as tests, assignments, and problem-solving tasks and investigations.

*Summative assessment* is used to indicate the achievement status or level of performance of a student. This usually occurs on completion of a unit or course of study. Teachers normally follow the curriculum and assessment guidelines for mathematics in their jurisdiction when undertaking this form of assessment. Significantly, summative assessment also provides the information necessary for certification of achievement at the end of a course of study—for example, the New South Wales Higher School Certificate, the ACT Year 12 Certificate or the Western Australian Certificate of Education.

In addition to relatively local state-based systemic regimes of assessment, there are both national and international achievement testing regimes at the secondary level that are of interest to secondary mathematics teachers. Both literacy and numeracy achievement are reported through various state-specific standardised testing systems (e.g. the Assessment Improvement Monitor [AIM] test at Year 7 level in Victoria which includes national benchmarked numeracy items) to inform the annual *National Report on Schooling in Australia*. Some states and territories (e.g. Tasmania and the ACT) have also been monitoring numeracy against the national benchmarks at Year 9 level. Common national tests of numeracy at both Year 7 and Year 9 level were trialled in 2006 and were due to be implemented in 2008. The purpose of state and territory numeracy testing is to monitor student progress over time. Schools and their communities are able to compare their students' achievements with national benchmarks and with students in other states and territories. The national assessment program allows comparison across Australia, and so it is a system of accountability for meeting priorities set by state governments and the federal government.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Research the results of national/state testing of students in a secondary school with which you are familiar. Interview the mathematics coordinator, curriculum coordinator and/mathematics teachers.

- Who is provided with results of these tests and how does this happen?
- How do the school, mathematics faculty and mathematics teachers use these results to inform the school and classroom mathematics program?
- What changes to curriculum have been made to the school program in an attempt to improve the school's performance?
- What changes have been made to the teaching of mathematics to improve students' performance?



Australia and New Zealand also participate in international comparison studies such as *Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study 2002/03* (TIMSS) (see Thomson & Fleming, 2004) and the OECD's *Programme for International Student Assessment* (PISA) (see Turner, 2007). Australia participates in TIMSS ostensibly to build a comprehensive picture of trends in, and patterns of, achievement in mathematics and science for students in Years 4 and 8 in comparison to other participating countries. TIMSS is conducted by the International Association for the Evaluation of Educational Achievement (IEA) and is administered every four years. PISA, on the other hand, is designed to measure the 'mathematical literacy' of fifteen-year-old students in Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) member countries at the end of compulsory schooling. Mathematical literacy is defined as 'the capacity to identify, to understand the role that mathematics plays in the world, to make well-founded mathematical judgements and to engage in mathematics, in ways that meet the needs of an individual's current and future life as a constructive, concerned and reflective citizen' (OECD, 1999, p. 41). The emphasis in PISA is on 'mathematical knowledge put into functional use in a multitude of different situations and contexts' (OECD, 1999). These situations are classified as: (1) student's 'personal life'; (2) 'school life'; (3) 'work and sports'; (4) 'local community and society as encountered in daily life'; and (5) 'scientific contexts' (1999, p. 50). Outcomes from TIMSS and PISA studies are discussed throughout this book.

## Aligning assessment with curriculum and teaching

Different assessment approaches are underpinned by different theories of learning. Written tests or examinations in a limited timeframe follow behaviourist theories of learning. On the other hand, as Shepard (2001) points out in her comprehensive overview of the role of classroom assessment in teaching and learning, contemporary assessment is based on constructivist and sociocultural theories of learning. For example, authentic performance assessment (Lajoie, 1992) is underpinned by constructivist principles. In such assessments, students work on complex extended tasks where they make 'arguments which describe conjectures, strategies, and justifications' (Romberg, 1993, p. 109) investigated or used during the task. As these different theories of learning are based on different understandings of what learning is and what constitutes demonstration of understanding (see Chapter 2), it

is imperative that teachers are aware of the learning theories on which the assessment instruments or assessment methods being used are founded (see, for example, Romberg, 1993).

## Evidence-based judgment models

Evidence of student learning can be interpreted in different ways. For example, is student knowledge measured in some way or is it inferred from observations of performance? In objective tests, measures are derived from counting the number of correct items or aggregating marks allocated for various parts of items that are correct. In other forms of assessment, such as the report of a mathematical investigation, numbers (e.g. 20 out of 25) may be assigned according to a global judgment about the quality of the report as a whole or by aggregating marks allocated for successful completion of various predetermined requirements of the assessment piece that can involve local judgments of quality. The two most common frameworks used for interpreting the results of the assessment are norm-referencing and criterion-referencing.

### *Norm-referenced judgment models*

Norm-referencing compares student performance to that of other students on the same or similar tasks. Students are ranked from lowest to highest performance, and grades are then awarded based on some predetermined distribution. Grades thus have relative rather than absolute meaning, making it difficult to detect changes in achievement patterns over time. Sadler (1987) also notes that this system of grading ‘may in fact be used as a means of distributing “merit” in such a way as to artificially create (and maintain) a shortage of high grades’ (1987, p. 192).

### *Criterion-referenced judgment models*

Criterion-referencing, on the other hand, judges scores or performances in relation to a set of absolutes—an external, predetermined set of criteria. If a student meets all criteria for a particular grade, then that grade must be awarded no matter how many other students have also met the criteria. However, as Sadler (1996) points out, this often does not occur in practice due to confusion between criteria and standards. Sadler clarifies the distinction

between the terms in an assessment context: 'By CRITERION is meant a property or characteristic by which the quality of something may be judged. By a STANDARD is meant a definite level of achievement aspired to or attained.' (1996, p. 2)

### *Standards-referenced judgment models*

As a further alternative to the above, Sadler (1987) developed the concept and operational principles for an assessment system described as 'standards-referenced assessment' which was introduced within the school-based secondary school assessment program in Queensland and is the current approach for the new Higher School Certificate (Tognolini, 2000) and the Mathematics Years 7–10 Syllabus (Board of Studies NSW, 2003) in New South Wales. There are four basic methods of specifying and publicly declaring standards: by using numerical cut-offs; tacit knowledge; exemplars; or verbal descriptors. Numerical cut-offs have the appeal of being simple and appearing to signify sharp boundaries. On a criterion designated 'mathematical techniques', for example, the boundaries for standards could be set at 85 per cent, 70 per cent, 50 per cent, 25 per cent. A result on a test in the range 70 per cent to less than 85 per cent is then graded as being at a B standard. Tacit (or mental) standards can be used as the basis of post-assessment moderation by consensus of teachers or by a district moderator. Such standards are not articulated, but reside in the heads of the assessors. In contrast, standards-referenced assessment can be strengthened by using a combination of exemplars of student work and verbal descriptions. 'Exemplars are key examples chosen so as to be typical of designated levels of quality or competence' (Sadler, 1996, p. 200). These can be annotated to show the context in which the example was produced, the qualities that the example displays to show how it meets a particular level of quality, and what additional characteristic(s) it would need to be designated to be at the next level. Exemplars are provided by various authorities using standards-referenced assessment (see, for example, *Assessment for Learning in a Standards-referenced Framework—Mathematics* CD-ROM available from <<http://shop.bos.nsw.edu.au>>). Verbal descriptors of standards are statements of the properties that characterise the designated level of quality. The example in Figure 6.1 is for Stage 4 of the New South Wales Mathematics Years 7–10 Syllabus. Here descriptors of standards are given to distinguish three levels of performance on the task.

**Activity: Diagonals of a Quadrilateral**

If the diagonals of a quadrilateral bisect each other, what type of quadrilateral could it be?

Give reasons for your answer and illustrate by drawing diagrams.

Is there more than one type of quadrilateral in which the diagonals bisect each other?

What conclusions can you make?

**Criteria for assessing learning**

Students will be assessed on their ability to:

- Demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the nature of different quadrilaterals,
- Draw a valid conclusion about the diagonals of quadrilaterals.
- Communicate mathematical ideas.

**Guidelines for marking**

Range	Students in this range
High	Identify and accurately draw different types of special quadrilaterals: trapezium, parallelogram, rectangle, rhombus, square, kite. Make a valid conclusion about the bisection of diagonals for the different types of quadrilaterals.
Satisfactory	Identify and accurately draw at least two special quadrilaterals. Identify some quadrilaterals for which the diagonals bisect each other.
Progressing	Identify and draw one quadrilateral for which the diagonals bisect each other.

*Figure 6.1* Verbal descriptors of standards exemplar, Mathematics Stage 4  
(NSW Mathematics Years 7–10 Syllabus, Board of Studies NSW)

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Gather and analyse assessment materials used by mathematics teachers in your secondary school. Collect materials used for different year levels (junior and senior mathematics) and different types of assessment tasks.

- What theories of mathematics learning are reflected in the design of the mathematics tasks used?
- What judgment models does the mathematics faculty use?
- Choose one assessment task. Make recommendations for improving the task for measuring student achievement using the assessment guidelines in your state.

Competency-based assessment is ‘a special case of standards based assessment where the proficiency continuum has been reduced to a simple dichotomy, “competent” versus “not competent”, with only one “standard”’ (Maxwell, 1997, p. 72). Competencies are used in vocational education.

*Developmental-based assessment*

Developmental-based Assessment (DBA) has been developed and trialled in secondary mathematics classrooms by Pegg and his team in rural New South Wales (Pegg & Panizzon, 2004). The impetus for teachers using DBA techniques ‘arose directly from changing assessment practices required to satisfy the requirements of new syllabus documents introduced into New South Wales for mathematics and science in 2000’ (Pegg et al., 2003, p. 4). This form of assessment relies on teachers interpreting students’ responses within a framework of cognitive developmental growth, namely, Biggs and Collis’s SOLO (Structure of the Observed Learning Outcome) model (1991), but incorporating more recent developments in SOLO (Pegg, 2003). This model proposes five modes of thinking: sensorimotor; ikonic; concrete symbolic; formal; and post-formal. According to Collis (1994), the level of the response of an individual to a problem involving thinking is determined first by ‘the mode of functioning, determined by the nature and level of the elements and operations to be utilised and secondly, the complexity of the structure of the response within the mode’ (1994, p. 338). The structure of a response represents the learning cycle (unistructural, multistructural to relational) within a mode (see Table 6.1).

**Table 6.1 SOLO taxonomy**

Response level	Meaning
Unistructural	Responses use single elements of the task, often with contradictions between them.
Multistructural	Responses use multiple elements of the task.
Relational	Responses create connections among elements of the task to form an integrated whole.

Teachers (or the students themselves) can then use this framework to ‘place learners along a developmental continuum’ (Pegg et al., 2003, p. 4). The framework is a source of ‘advice to the teacher on possible pathways for future teaching endeavours’ (2003, p. 4).

It has also proven invaluable in helping teachers realise how limiting many of the questions they were asking students were in providing insight into the degree of understanding held by students (Pegg & Panizon, 2004, p. 441). The use of extended response items worded so students had opportunities to reach relational solutions became more of a feature of the teachers' assessment practices once they became aware of these limitations. The theoretical framework also provides a justification for qualitative teacher judgments.

## Collecting and interpreting evidence of student learning

Secondary mathematics teachers use a wide range of assessment methods, though it would be fair to say that tests and exams predominate (Cooney et al., 1993; Watt, 2005). Watt (2005, p. 21) makes a case for using 'alternative methods of assessment that are able to effectively assess the range of students' mathematical abilities' in an effective assessment plan to overcome issues such as differences in learner characteristics leading to some students being differentially advantaged by particular assessment forms (Leder et al., 1999); effective sampling across the breadth of content, techniques and processes of mathematics; and current emphases on assessing mathematics in context and higher order processes. Different forms of assessment are also useful for the different purposes of assessment, and the different stages of learning a new topic. Assessment tasks in themselves should be worthwhile learning activities for students. A representative collection suggested in a variety of mathematics curriculum documents from various Australian states includes those shown in Table 6.2.

**Table 6.2 Assessment tasks**

• Rich tasks (the New Basics)	– an experiment or survey
• Rich assessment tasks	– a mathematical investigation
• Concept maps	– a field activity
• Student self-assessment	– a project
• Teachers' questions during lessons	• Subject examinations
• Open-ended questions	• Practical tasks such as measurement activities
• Debates	• Extended analysis tasks
• Journals	• Extended modelling and problem-solving tasks
• Topic tests	• Portfolios
• Reports (written, oral, multimedia or combinations of these) on	• Diagnostic tests

Cooney et al. (1993) point out that it must be ‘understood that new forms of assessment reflect a different and more fundamental vision of what it means to know mathematics’ (1993, p. 274). As these researchers found, teachers will not use alternative forms of assessment if ‘these tasks do not reflect their own understanding of mathematics’, if the intrinsic value of these types of assessments escapes them, or if the outcomes measured by the tasks are not what the teachers value, regardless of whether or not they are explicitly stated in curriculum documents (Cooney et al., 1993, p. 247). Ayres and McCormick (2006) reported instances of similar findings from a survey of General Mathematics teachers in New South Wales conducted soon after changes to the New South Wales syllabuses in 2000. The researchers viewed these changes as threatening the relevance of teachers’ existing subject knowledge base and reducing the relevance of many of their past skills in assessment.

Watt (2005), investigating assessment methods used by mathematics teachers in a selection of Sydney metropolitan secondary schools, found the main assessment technique the teachers reported using was written tests/exams with ‘satisfaction with the written test as accurately portraying student capabilities [increasing] with school year’ (2005, p. 37). A major reason for teachers’ avoidance of alternative assessments in Watt’s study, despite these being suggested in the New South Wales syllabuses for many years, was a perception that such methods were too subjective and thus unreliable. Watt suggests that one means of ensuring teachers take alternative assessment seriously is to require a range of alternative assessment methods to be implemented. Some states (e.g. Queensland) have required this for some time, even at the senior secondary level, but others are now emphasising a new agenda in assessment—particularly those engaged in an outcome-based approach to teaching and learning where teachers are required to use standards-based criterion referencing when reporting students’ achievement.

Advice regarding the use of these forms of assessments, particularly when they are contributing to exit scores or exit levels from a course of study, varies in terms of whether or not the assessment must be done under fully supervised conditions in class or in unsupervised conditions in the students’ own time. Advice about the extent to which authorship needs to be verified by teachers also varies.

In the remainder of this section, we describe a selection of methods of assessment including informal assessment (classroom questions, student self-assessment), alternative assessment (open-ended questions, rich assessment tasks, performance assessment) and traditional assessment instruments (tests).

### *Teacher classroom questions*

Teacher questions that serve the purpose of determining what students know or understand are part of the normal interactions in the classroom. They scaffold students' learning and focus their attention on what matters when problem-solving, for example (see the lesson scenarios in Chapters 2 and 3). During independent or group work, the teacher circulates, monitoring progress and assisting students individually or in small groups. The questions used should require students to explain what they are doing and how they found their solution so the teacher can gauge their level of understanding and the sophistication of the solution process that they are using: What have you found? How did you get your solution? Why do you think that method will work? These kinds of questions should also be used during classroom discussion of problem-solving approaches or solutions to problems. In this situation, the questions should also focus on comparing strategies and solutions, and students justifying their approach as well as explaining it: Have we found all the possible solutions? How do you know? Are everyone's results the same or different? Why/why not? The DVD *Assessment for learning: Aspects of strategic questioning* (Curriculum Corporation, 2006) has practical advice and examples of strategic questioning.

When interacting with students who are experiencing difficulty with a task, the temptation is to explain the process again. A better approach is to find out what they understand by asking them to restate the problem or explain the process they are using. Teachers may also need to probe understanding of prerequisite skills for the particular task using a series of closed or open questions.

### *Self-assessment tasks*

'How would he know? He never asks me.' This response was given by a student to a researcher asking for comment on what the student's mathematics teacher knew about the student's mathematics work. This response highlights the importance of teachers talking to students in order to form a productive relationship to facilitate their learning. This student's response also suggests that a teacher's judgment about a student's strengths, weaknesses and needs may be quite different from that of the student. Many mathematics teachers understand the role of students' awareness of their own strengths and weaknesses for providing motivation and direction for their learning and have included student self-assessment methods in their practice. The IMPACT procedure (see Chapter 17) is one



example that teachers can use to gather general information about students’ perceptions of their learning and progress. Other approaches include self-assessment questionnaires (e.g. KWL chart—see Figure 6.2), graphic organisers or checklists about particular mathematics topics.

	KWL Chart: Topic	
Know about	Want to learn about	Have learned about

Figure 6.2 KWL chart

*Open-ended questions*

- The volume of a rectangular prism is 32 cubic units. What could be the dimensions of this prism?
- The average age of three people is eighteen years. If one person is twelve years old, what could be the age of the other two people?
- The gradient of a straight line is  $-3$ . Sketch four different straight-line graphs with a gradient of  $-3$ .
- Find ten fractions between one-sixth and one-third.

Open-ended questions such as these are very useful as catalysts for learning activities (Sullivan & Clarke, 1991), and also as items in assessment instruments. There are multiple solutions and methods for solving them, so they are particularly useful in all classrooms as students have different levels of skill and understanding of concepts. They can be used to find out what students know about a concept when beginning a topic, investigating a concept, applying a skill, or ascertaining students’ understanding or skills at the end of a teaching sequence. Since there are multiple solutions and methods for finding solutions to these kinds of questions, a student’s solution and method of solution may be located on the continuum of standards used in state curriculum and assessment documents (where these apply).

### *Rich assessment tasks (RATs)*

Plummer (1999), writing within the context of quality assessment for the revised School Certificate for New South Wales secondary schools, considers assessment tasks to be rich 'if they provide assessment information across a range of course outcomes within one task, optimising students' expression of their learning' (1999, p. 15) and thus reducing the need for additional assessment. According to Plummer, rich assessment tasks:

- explicitly describe the expectations of the task to the learner;
- engage the learner;
- connect naturally with what has been taught;
- provide opportunities for students to make a start;
- are learning activities;
- provide opportunities for students to demonstrate subject knowledge, skills and understandings;
- focus on the critical areas of learning within a subject; and
- assist teachers to determine the specific help which students may require in content areas (Plummer, 1999, p. 15).

Importantly with RATs, individual students access these tasks at their own knowledge and skill level and pursue the task in widely differing ways (Gough, 2006).

### *Performance assessment*

In performance assessment, 'the teacher observes and makes a judgment about the student's demonstration of a skill or competency in creating a product, constructing a response, or making a presentation' (McMillan, 2004, p. 198). These tasks can be highly structured teacher-directed assignments or semi-structured or more open tasks in which students are required to define the goals of the task, the method of investigation and means of reporting. Cognitive research and practical experience suggest that in worthwhile performance-based tasks:

- students perform, create, construct, produce, or do something;
- deep understanding and/or reasoning skills are needed and assessed;

- sustained work is involved—often days and weeks;
- students are asked to explain, justify and defend;
- performance is directly observable;
- engaging ideas of importance and substance are involved;
- trained professional judgments are required for scoring;
- multiple criteria and standards are pre-specified and public;
- there is no single ‘correct’ answer;
- if authentic (i.e. the task is similar to that encountered in real-life contexts), the performance is grounded in real-world contexts and constraints.

(McMillan, 2004, p. 199)

Examples of performance tasks are shown in the following box.

### Examples of performance tasks

- *Carparks*: Redesign the school carpark to improve its efficiency, capacity and safety.
- *Soft drink cans*: Design an aluminium soft drink can that holds an appropriate volume and is attractive, easy to handle and store, and economical to manufacture.
- *Excursion*: Plan and estimate costs for an excursion for your class to a local place of interest.
- *Game*: Design a board game, including the playing board and a clear set of rules.
- *Vacation*: Plan and develop a budget for a vacation trip for a group of four people to a location within Australia or to another country.

Source: Adapted from Clarke (1997, p. 33).

### Tests

Tests and examinations are individual tasks normally undertaken in a defined time period under supervised conditions with any access to information and resources (e.g. ‘open book’) clearly defined. They can be oral, written or electronic. Tests can also be taken in unsupervised conditions (e.g. ‘take-home’ exams). Items or questions in tests should follow the

content and activities of mathematics lessons, and students should have access to the resources that have been used during learning. If students have been using technology such as a graphics calculator, then assessment conditions should allow access to these tools so that their understanding and skills can be assessed comprehensively.

A variety of question and item types are used in mathematics tests, including multiple-choice, short-answer, extended multi-step analysis and problem-solving questions. Questions can be closed or more open, with students required to do some analysis or problem-solving. Examples of questions can be found in past examination papers, state, national and international tests and research articles, as well as in teacher resources (e.g. Beesey et al., 2001). Advice on designing different types of test questions abounds in most classroom assessment texts (e.g. McMillan, 2004). When selecting questions and items for the test, it is important to be aware of the common errors or misconceptions that students may display. As these can be masked by the phrasing of questions or use of particular examples, teachers should include more than one question about a concept to gather more comprehensive information. Before being administered, the test as a whole needs to be evaluated globally (see Gronlund & Linn, 1990, p. 245 for a checklist of pointers in appraising a test).

Commercial textbook electronic resources often provide item banks and templates for constructing tests. These can be very useful, but it is important to check that the structure and language of these questions are consistent with the teaching and learning activities used in lessons.

As well as ensuring that the test is consistent with the content of teaching, it is also necessary to select items and structure these items so as to gauge the diversity of understanding, levels of mathematical thinking and performance. This involves more than including simple and difficult questions or questions relating to different standards in the curriculum. Items testing higher order thinking and relational thinking must be included, as proposed in the SOLO taxonomy (Biggs & Collis, 1991). Kastberg (2003) illustrates how Bloom's Taxonomy can be used for designing mathematics tests, and includes algebra examples for each of the levels of thinking in this taxonomy (knowledge, comprehension, application, analysis, synthesis and evaluation).

Involving students in designing the test is a very useful and successful assessment strategy. Students are asked to construct questions for the test, with the teacher either

providing guidelines or leaving the requirements open-ended. Students' questions provide insight into the depth and breadth of their knowledge and level of thinking, as well as the skills and understanding revealed in the answers they provide for their question. Using their questions in the test is also affirming for students.

### Assessment items

Below are two different items for assessing chance and data. The first is a multiple-choice item and the second an extended individual written task. Both items appeared in Victorian Year 7 AIM tests (VCAA, 2001, 2004a). The extended response example shown relies on responses to a previous item (Part B) which asked students to identify (a) multiples of 3 and 5 and (b) prime numbers from 3 to 33.

**Multiple choice item:** Shade one bubble.

A box contains 5 green balls, 4 white balls, 3 black balls and 3 red balls.

One ball is picked out without looking.

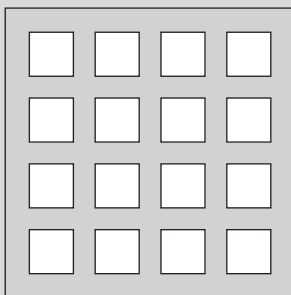
What is the probability that the ball is green?

$$\frac{1}{2} \quad \text{○} \quad \frac{1}{3} \quad \text{○} \quad \frac{1}{4} \quad \text{○} \quad \frac{1}{5} \quad \text{○}$$

### Extended task: Dartboard (Part C)

Use your answers from Part B to help complete the following task.

Below is a picture of a carnival dartboard with blank cards.



Your task is to fill in the dartboard by writing one number only on each card, using the following five rules.

*Rule 1:* Only numbers from 3 to 33 may be used and each number may only be used once.

*Rule 2:* The chance of hitting a number which is a multiple of both 3 and 5 will be one in eight.

*Rule 3:* The chance of hitting a number which is a factor of 12 will be one in four.

*Rule 4:* The chance of hitting a prime number is the same as hitting a non-prime number.

*Rule 5:* The chance of hitting a single digit number will be one in four.

Compare these items.

- What could you find out about your students' knowledge of chance and data when using each of these items?
- Identify the mathematical learning outcomes assessed by each of these two items.
- What are the limitations, or weaknesses, in each of these items?
- In what situations, and for what purposes, would you use multiple-choice items and extended response items in a mathematics test?

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Consider the different forms of assessment listed and discussed above.

- Write a list of advantages and disadvantages for each form of assessment.
- Identify the most appropriate purpose for which this form of assessment could be used.
- Which of these forms of assessment are used in your secondary school and why?
- To what extent and how do the conditions and policy of the school and state assessment authority limit a teacher's choice of assessment?

## Preparing assessment tasks for students

The Australian Curriculum, Assessment and Certification Authorities (ACACA) have drawn up guidelines for both quality and equity in assessment. These are reproduced in the box below. They should be borne in mind when making decisions about the type of assessment task to use, designing and constructing tasks or tests, and selecting items and questions for assessment purposes.

### Guidelines for assessment quality and equity

1. An assessment item should assess what the item writer intends it to assess and only what on face value it purports to assess.
2. Students should not, unless there is a specific and justifiable reason for doing so, have to decode some hidden instructions or clues on how to answer an assessment item.
3. Specialist language or jargon in an assessment item should only be used to aid clarity and accuracy and if that specialist language is an integral part of the teaching and learning in that subject.
4. The reproduction of gender, socioeconomic, ethnic or other cultural stereotypes should only be used in assessment items after careful consideration as to its necessity.
5. To allow students to demonstrate their command of what the item is supposed to assess, the item should be presented clearly through an appropriate choice of layout, cues, visual design, format and choice of words, and state its requirements explicitly and directly.
6. The use of background material and requirement of assumed knowledge in an assessment item should only be used when the item writer can reasonably presume all students have ready access to these.
7. Assessment criteria should be explicit, clear, unambiguous and declared in advance.
8. The criteria should allow students to identify appropriate ways to demonstrate command of the required knowledge and skills.
9. The criteria should also allow the marker to recognise, where appropriate, different ways in which a student may demonstrate command of the required knowledge and skills.

*Source: ACACA (1996).*

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Discuss these principles and the equity issues concerning assessment. Why is this important?

Using these guidelines, write a critical reflection on an assessment task that you have collected from your secondary school or designed and used in your teaching.

Once an assessment task has been found, modified or designed, it is important to ensure that student responses provide useful evidence of their learning. Typical quality assurance steps to ensure this happens are summarised in the flow chart in Figure 6.3. (See Bush & Greer, 1999, for more information on preparing assessment tasks.)

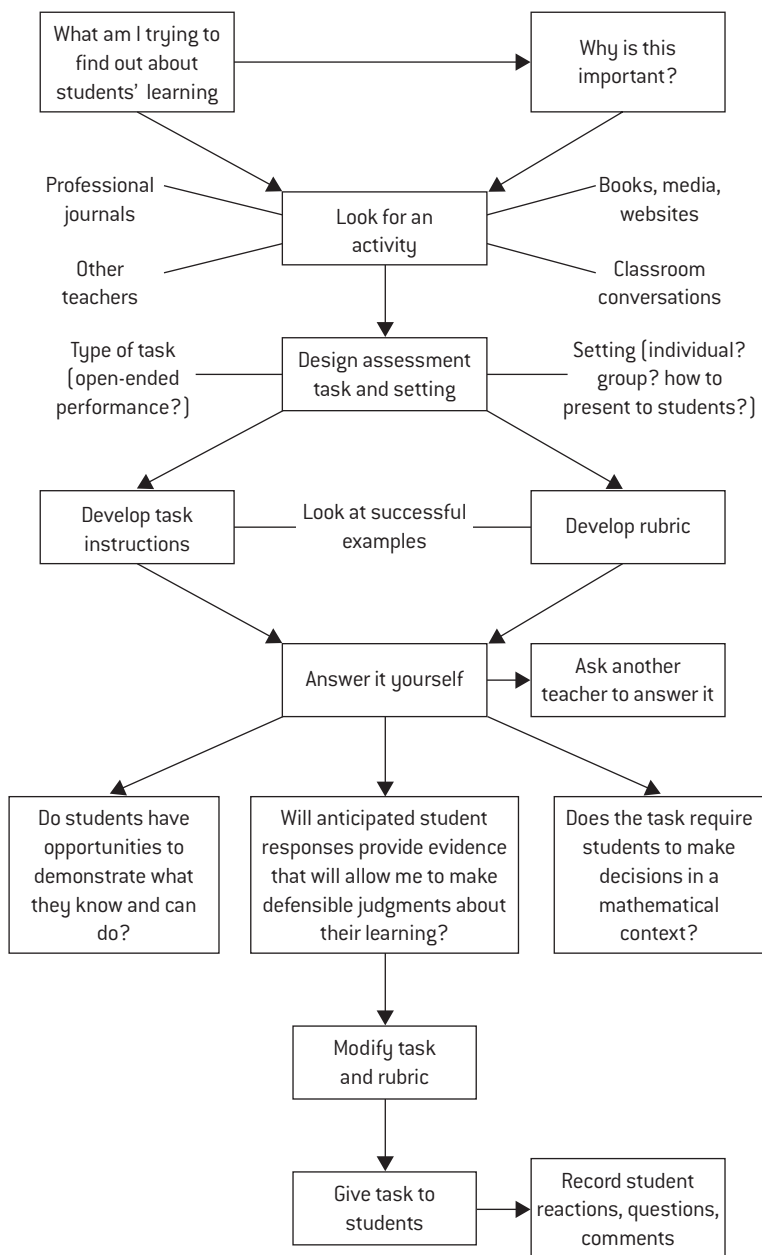
## Strengthening the consistency of teacher judgments

Teachers have always had complete autonomy when it comes to using assessment for formative purposes. The position varies with relation to summative assessment, especially for high-stakes assessment that is instrumental in determining which students win sought-after places at high-status tertiary institutions. Since the 1980s, school-based assessment has risen in prominence as either a replacement for, or an adjunct to, external public examinations at the end of secondary schooling. School-based assessment relies on teachers' ability to make assessment judgments that are consistent across students and tasks, and consistent with the judgments made by other teachers within and outside the school. Morgan and Watson (2002) note that interpretive assessment judgments are 'influenced by the resources individual teachers bring to the assessment task' (2002, p. 103), and that this may lead to inequity when different interpretations are made of students' achievements. However, the difficulties of being able to make a sound judgment based on equitable practices should not be a reason for doing nothing, as a range of strategies is available for strengthening the consistency of teacher judgments. Two such strategies—moderation and the use of rubrics—are discussed below.

### *Moderation*

In some states and territories (e.g. Queensland and the ACT) teachers' voices are given high status and 'teachers' qualitative judgments' are considered an important component of





Source: (Adapted from Bush & Greer, 1999)

Figure 6.3 Flowchart for preparing an assessment task for students

teachers' professionalism underpinning school-based assessment systems (Sadler, 1987, p. 193). In Queensland, for example, teachers—'the people most familiar with students'

achievements in a subject’—assess student performance in senior secondary education; however, these teacher judgments ‘must be able to stand up to scrutiny by expert practitioners external to the school’ (Queensland Studies Authority, 2006). An externally moderated entirely school-based assessment system is used. The expert practitioners are practising teachers from other schools and tertiary educators. In the Australian Capital Territory, on the other hand, unit grades for ACT Board of Senior Secondary Studies accredited courses are reviewed and verified by structured, consensus-based peer review involving teachers from a range of ACT colleges (ACT BSSS, 2006).

### *Rubrics*

Assessment rubrics are tools for rating the quality of student performance that identify the anticipated evidence that will be used for making judgments. They are used for all types of assessment. Publishing these rubrics for students along with the assessment task makes the expectations of the task explicit for students, and encourages students to be self-directed and reflective in their learning.

Generic, or holistic, rubrics can apply to a broad spectrum of tasks. Holistic rubrics commonly use general descriptors for levels of performance such as exemplary, excellent, good, satisfactory, not satisfactory. The example in Table 6.3 illustrates how teachers might use assessment judgments to inform their teaching.

**Table 6.3 Everyday rubric grading**

<b>E</b>	<b>Excellent example</b>	Meets or exceeds expectations. Complete, clear communication. Clear understanding. Any error is trivial.
<b>M</b>	<b>Meets expectations</b>	Understanding is evident. Needs some revision or expansion, but written comments are enough. No additional teaching needed.
<b>R</b>	<b>Needs revision</b>	Partial understanding is evident, but significant gap(s) remain. Needs more work/teaching/communication.
<b>F</b>	<b>Fragmentary</b>	Clearly misunderstands. Insubstantial attempt made.

Source: Stutzman & Race (2004, p. 36).

Task-specific rubrics apply to a specific task. The rubric in Table 6.4 and the following box was used in the Middle Years Numeracy Research Project (Siemon, 2002) for an algebraic problem-solving task involving the use of inverse relationships, simple ratios, division and application in a familiar context.

### Medicine doses

Occasionally, medical staff need to calculate the child dose of a particular medicine, using the stated dose for adults. The rule used is as follows:

$$\text{Child dose} = \text{Adult dose} \times \frac{\text{Age}}{\text{Age} + 12}$$

- A. If the adult dose for a particular medicine is 15 mL, what would be the appropriate dose for a six-year-old child?
- B. A nurse uses the formula to work out the dose for an eight-year-old boy. She correctly calculates it as 6 mL. What was the adult dose?
- C. At what age would the adult dose be the same as the child dose? Explain your reasoning.

**Table 6.4 Task and rubric for medicine doses**

	Descriptor	Score
<b>A</b>	No response or incorrect	0
	Information from formula used but incorrect or incomplete calculation	1
	Correct (5 mL), appropriate use of formula or recognition of proportion	2
<b>B</b>	Incorrect or no response	0
	Fraction component identified but incomplete, e.g. recorded as 6 divided by 6+12	1
	Fraction correct ( $\frac{6}{18}$ ) but not interpreted appropriate to context	2
	Fraction given as $\frac{1}{3}$	3
<b>C</b>	No response or incorrect	0
	Information from formula used but incorrect or incomplete calculation	1
	Correct (20 mL), appropriate use of formula	2

Source: Beesey et al. (2001); Siemon, (2002).

Multiple analytic rubrics describe levels of performance for individual aspects of performance that could stand alone. These rubrics include scoring systems for test or exam tasks, as well as for performance and problem-solving tasks. An example of an analytic rubric is provided in Table 6.5. It was developed by the Mathematics Association of Victoria for its Maths Talent Quest (2006), which is an open-ended mathematical performance task involving students in mathematical inquiry, investigation and problem-solving. Students are able to present their entry in a variety of formats. The rubric used for competition judging has descriptors and scores for communication, understanding, originality and presentation. Table 6.5 shows the descriptors for only the communication category.

**Table 6.5 Rubric for communication category judging and scoring criteria for Maths Talent Quest**

Sub-category	High	Score	Medium	Score	Low	Score	Not evident	Score
A Approach to the investigation	The approach to the investigation is explicit with aims and goals, a thorough plan for solving and conclusions clearly stated.	4	The approach to the investigation is often clear with aims, goals, a plan for solving and with conclusions stated.	3	The approach to the investigation and aims and goals are stated.	2	There are no aims and goals given and the approach to and planning for the investigation is unclear. Conclusions were unclear or not stated.	0
B Use of mathematical terminology	Precise and appropriate mathematical terminology and notation is used to support mathematical thinking and communicate ideas.	4	Mathematical terminology and notation in the solution is used to share ideas.	3	Some mathematical terminology and notation to communicate is used.	2	No mathematical terminology and notation is used or everyday, familiar language to communicate ideas is used.	0

**Table 6.5** *continued*

Sub-category	High	Score	Medium	Score	Low	Score	Not evident	Score
C Clear and detailed explanations	Explanations with clear and effective detail of how and why solutions were made or given.	4	Explanations with detail are mostly given about how and why most solutions were made.	3	Explanations are incomplete or ineffective as to why the solution makes sense.	2	Does not explain the solution or the explanation cannot be understood or related to the investigation.	0
D Use of diary or learning journal	The diary or learning journal is an explicit, reflective account of the processing and inquiry in the investigation.	4	The diary or learning journal gives some explanation of the mathematical thinking and learning involved.	3	The diary or learning journal offers very little explanation of the mathematical thinking and learning involved.	2	There is no diary or learning journal.	0

Source: MAV (2006).

The ACT Board of Senior Secondary Studies (2006) provides the following advice on how to develop a rubric:

1. Decide on the focus and purpose of the rubric.
2. Decide on the type of rubric required to assess the task/s.
3. Decide on the criteria needed to assess the task/s using the course framework.  
Ask what are the cognitive and performance components required in the task/s.
4. Make sure there are not too many criteria to ensure clarity of expectations.

5. Brainstorm the characteristics of student responses at different levels based on previous evidence.
6. Develop descriptors for each performance level that: (a) describe unique characteristics; and (b) use unbiased and unambiguous language (no comparative language).
7. Align the rubric descriptors with the grade descriptor language and expectations for each standard A–E in the Course Framework.
8. Check that the rubric: (a) defines a continuum of quality; (b) focuses on the same criteria; (c) validly discriminates performance levels; and (d) can be reliably rated.
9. Test your rubric against actual samples of student work.
10. Share your rubric with students.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Comment on the strengths and weaknesses of the sample rubrics for making judgments about students' performance.

Collect other examples of assessment rubrics from schools, the internet or other teachers' references [e.g. Bush & Greer, 1999]. Select a rubric and explain why it would be useful for assessment in your mathematics teaching.

A. Watson (2006, p. 153) argues that assessment should focus on what mathematicians do when inquiring and constructing meaning. She proposes the following verbs for some of these actions:

exemplifying	specialising	completing
deleting	correcting	comparing
sorting	organising	changing
reversing	varying	generalising
conjecturing	explaining	justifying
verifying	convincing	refuting

Use a selection of these or other verbs that describe what mathematicians do to design an assessment rubric for a non-routine problem-solving task.

## Recording, profiling and reporting

### Recording

Keeping records of students' progress and achievement is a teaching responsibility and an important part of the process of providing feedback to students and informing parents and other teachers. These data are also critical for evaluating one's own performance as a teacher of mathematics and helping make decisions about the focus of lessons and suitable learning activities for students.

Recording of student performance can take many forms. For example, teachers may wish to allocate marks in relation to the criteria for assessing learning in the *Diagonals of a Quadrilateral* activity in Figure 6.1. This could be recorded as in Figure 6.4.

Name: Maria	
Activity: Diagonals of a Quadrilateral	Class: 8F
	Date: 28/7/07
<b>Criteria</b>	<b>Performance</b>
Demonstrates knowledge and understanding of the nature of different quadrilaterals	4/5
Draws a valid conclusion about the diagonals of quadrilaterals	2/2
Communicates mathematical ideas	3/3

Figure 6.4 Recording feedback and assessment using scores

Alternatively, the teacher may have used and recorded holistic judgments (see Figure 6.5) informed by the marking guidelines for various standards.

Class: 8F			
Activity: Diagonals of a Quadrilateral		Date: 28/7/07	
Student	Level of Performance		
	Progressing	Satisfactory	High
Alan	✓		
Barry			✓
Colleen		✓	
Gloria	✓		
Helen C		✓	
Helen F		✓	
Maria			✓
Peter		✓	
Phil		✓	
Tass			✓

Figure 6.5 Recording assessment using holistic judgments

Spreadsheets and electronic records provided online or commercially can be especially useful for analysing data. When selecting or designing these forms of records, it is important to ensure that the format is flexible enough for the diversity of assessment activities used and that it will produce summative assessment data appropriate for the mode of reporting required by the school.

### *Reporting*

We need to know the audience (student, teacher, parent, administrator) and take the audience into account in both how and what we report. Modes of reporting include:

- written reports (either paper or electronic);
- interviews with parents or carers and/or students;
- culminating performances or presentations;
- student folios.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Consult your local curriculum and assessment authority website and determine the regulations with regards to assessment and reporting.

Find out about one secondary school's reporting policy, process and requirements. Share your findings with your pre-service colleagues and discuss the merits of different formats and approaches.

Parents and carers of students in Years 7 and 9 participating in state and territory numeracy assessments receive individual reports that show where the results place a student's achievement in relation to the national numeracy benchmarks and in comparison to other students in the year level. State and territory results from the international mathematics assessment programs such as TIMSS and PISA can be found in specific international and national reports, some of which are available from websites such as <[www.acer.edu.au](http://www.acer.edu.au)> and <[www.pisa.oecd.org](http://www.pisa.oecd.org)>. Summaries of the results are provided



in the annual *National Report on Schooling in Australia*, which is available on the Ministerial Council on Education, Employment, Training and Youth Affairs (MCEETYA) website, <[www.mceetya.edu.au](http://www.mceetya.edu.au)>.

## Conclusion

In this chapter, we have discussed the purpose and methods of assessing students' mathematical learning. It is clear that monitoring student progress and discussing understanding and achievement are critical for students' learning, and that mathematics teachers use many different methods to gather information about students' understanding and skills. This information should inform teachers' decisions about further teaching and learning activities for the current focus or future topics. Given the advantages and disadvantages of the various assessment and reporting methods discussed in this chapter, it is important for teachers to be able to justify the practices that they use.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Read the following quote from a Queensland teacher:

Like, it's like marks, I mean most maths teachers in Knowledge and Procedures want to use marks. Why? What's a mark? What does a half a mark or a mark here or there mean? And yet they insist on using marks to grade kids and the only real reason is because it is easy. The same as exams, what do exams tell you? The only time, the only reason exams are any good are for teachers for marking. They are not good for kids, they are not good for developing understanding, so what's the point? [Extract from CCISM project interview, 2005]

- Discuss this teacher's beliefs about assessment.
- Write a statement explaining your beliefs about mathematics assessment and the practice that you will use when teaching mathematics.

## Recommended reading

**Bush, W. & Greer, A. (1999).** *Mathematics assessment: A practical handbook for grades 9–12*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

**Bush, W. & Leinwand, S. (eds) (2000).** *Mathematics assessment: A practical handbook for grades 6–8*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

**Clarke, D.J. (1997).** *Constructive assessment in mathematics: Practical steps for classroom teachers*. Berkeley, CA: Key Curriculum Press.

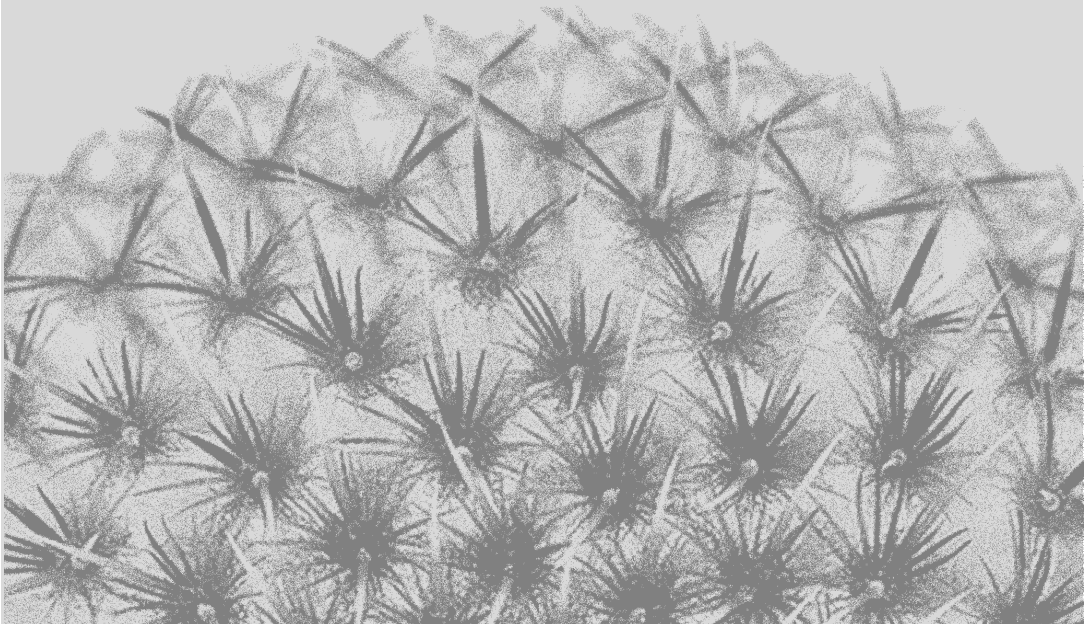
**Kastberg, S. (2003).** Using Bloom's Taxonomy as a framework for classroom assessment. *Mathematics Teacher*, 96(6), 402–5.

**Plummer, F. (1999).** Rich assessment tasks: Exploring quality assessment for the School Certificate. *SCAN*, 18(1), 14–19.

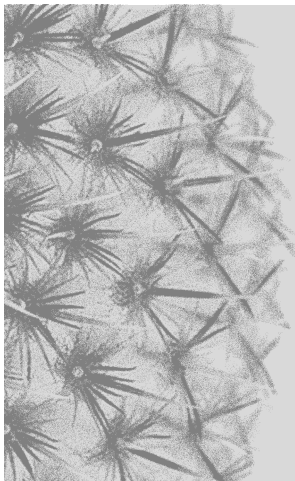
This page intentionally left blank

Part III

# **TEACHING AND LEARNING MATHEMATICAL CONTENT**



This page intentionally left blank



## CHAPTER 7

### Teaching and learning number

When students begin secondary school, they have already had many years of school and life experiences with number. Most students strongly associate mathematics with numbers and readily appreciate the application of number to real problems. In secondary school, as in the primary years, number concepts and skills are needed for all other mathematics domains. By the end of primary schooling, students have learned the underpinning concepts of whole numbers and fractions, and the skills to operate with numbers and think mathematically to solve problems. However, for most students, their understanding of these concepts and facility with operations is unlikely to be secure. At the beginning of secondary school, there is a diverse range of competencies and strategies used by students and the mathematical skills and achievement of far too many students actually decline in their first year of secondary school (Siemon et al., 2001). As their secondary mathematics teacher, you need to begin by finding out what your students know for each topic in number. With this knowledge, you can then pay attention to consolidating their understanding and build on their knowledge to develop more efficient strategies, improve skills, operate with the full range of numbers in our number system and use effective strategies for more complex problem-solving situations.

In this chapter, we will assist you to ‘unpack’ some of the key number concepts and describe teaching approaches that both connect with students’ primary experiences of learning, and support mathematical understanding and skill development. We will focus on concepts and skills that are important for mathematical literacy and success in senior secondary mathematics at the expense of discussing particular topics in senior secondary

mathematics, such as complex numbers or matrices. These include: place value with decimals; fractions; mental computation; multiplicative thinking (including operations with fractions and decimals); proportional thinking (including percentage); exponential thinking; irrational numbers; and integers. Of course, students taking vocational mathematics subjects in senior secondary mathematics will revisit many of the topics discussed in this chapter to solve problems for particular contexts. Since it is important for secondary teachers to understand the development of concepts and mathematical thinking over the long term of a child's mathematical education, we will first present an overview of students' number learning in primary school.

## Number in the primary years

Primary teachers use a range of materials and learning aids to assist children's learning of number (Booker et al., 2004). These concrete materials enable students to visualise concepts in multiple ways. The materials are important for connecting mathematical symbols and language with concepts. Initially, young children count by rote, then they use one-to-one correspondence and touch objects to count by ones and count all when adding. In the early years, primary teachers then build more efficient strategies for addition using the part-part-whole concept of number, counting on from largest number, doubles, near-doubles and building to ten to establish addition and subtraction facts (Department of Education and Training, NSW, 1998; Wright, 1998). You may observe that some secondary students who are not proficient still use counting on by ones (counting on fingers or with tally marks) for addition.

Children begin to understand fractions and decimals in context and model these using materials in primary school, normally from Year 2 or 3. They continue to need to use concrete materials in early secondary school to assist them to understand equivalence of fractions and decimals, to compare and order fractions and decimals, and to understand operations with fractions and decimals. For example, Figure 7.1 shows a fraction wall made of fraction strips, and children can use this wall to find equivalent fractions and play a game to practise finding equivalent fractions.

In the upper primary school, children extend their knowledge of the 'Base 10' number system to include large numbers and decimal fractions. Through a range of application tasks, they develop a sense of very large and very small numbers and learn to compare them,

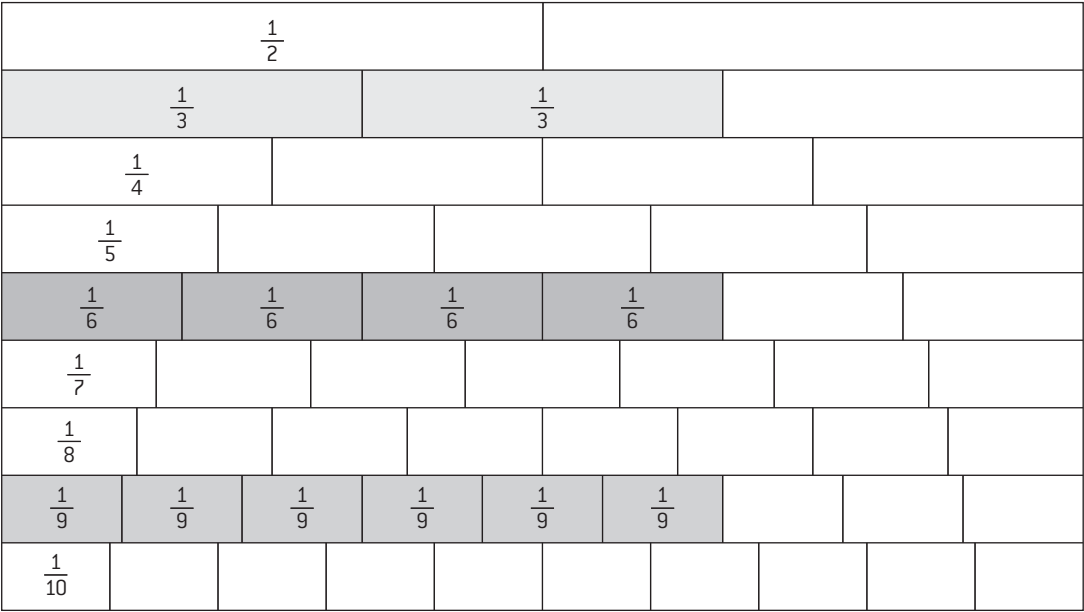


Figure 7.1 A fraction wall showing  $\frac{2}{3} = \frac{4}{6} = \frac{6}{9}$

though these concepts may not be consolidated for many students commencing secondary school. Children commonly explore the concept of a million through problems such as:

How long would it take one person to hand out one million pamphlets if you walked door to door in Sydney?

Developing number sense and skills with all types of numbers continues during secondary schooling, and it is important to continue the process of developing the language, and symbolic and visual representations of whole numbers, fractions and decimals using the concrete materials and learning aids commenced in primary school.

### Number in the secondary years

In the secondary years, students consolidate and extend their number sense for solving problems and making judgments (McIntosh et al., 1997). Students with number sense are able to:



- calculate mentally;
- use approximate values to estimate;
- understand the connections and relationships between numbers and use them when calculating;
- have a sense of the size of a number in relation to other numbers;
- switch between equivalent representations of numbers; and
- assess the reasonableness of a solution when solving problems.

Students in secondary school also learn about other types, or sets, of numbers:

- integers (positive and negative number);
- rational numbers (numbers that can be expressed as a vulgar fraction);
- irrational numbers (numbers that cannot be expressed as a vulgar fraction);
- real numbers (the set of rational, irrational numbers and zero); and
- for some students, complex numbers.

Recent Australian research and results of international studies of mathematics achievement shed light on common misconceptions and the concepts and types of number problems that cause the most difficulty for secondary students. A large study of students in the middle years of school—that is, Years 5–8—in Victoria found that many students had difficulty with:

- explaining and justifying mathematical thinking;
- reading, manipulating and using common fractions, decimals, ratio, proportion and formulae;
- thinking multiplicatively;
- generalising simple patterns; and
- interpreting results in context (Siemon et al., 2001).

Furthermore, there was a considerable range of achievement levels for students in a single-year level, up to seven years of schooling. Other researchers have observed weaknesses in number knowledge and skills, including mental computation (Callingham & McIntosh,

2002), comparing decimals (Moloney & Stacey, 1997; Steinle et al., 2002), and ratio and proportion (Dole et al., 1997).

In the Third International Mathematics and Science Study, thirteen-year-old Australian students on average performed better than the international average for the sections on the test dealing with number and measurement (Lokan et al., 1996). However, there were some items on which Australian students performed particularly poorly (more than 10 per cent below the international average); and these included multiplication and division of decimals, division of fractions and items requiring operations with two or more fractions.

Siemon and colleagues (2001) recommended that teachers in the middle years focus the speaking and listening among students and teachers in mathematics classrooms on building meaning and making connections between ideas. This is because asking students to represent concepts in multiple ways, to explain their reasoning and to justify their reasoning, contributes to concept and skill development. We will now discuss the teaching and learning of foundation number topics in secondary school. You will need to use some particular approaches for students who are well behind their peers. These are discussed in Chapter 15.

## Place value

Understanding the value of digits according to their place in a number is the basis of counting and comparing all numbers. Children in the primary years learn that the values are structured on multiples of 10 (Base 10 number system), that zero is a place-holder, and that the decimal point is a marker that separates the whole elements from fractional elements of the number. In other cultures, a comma is sometimes used instead of a full stop. With the aid of a place value chart (see Figure 7.2), saying aloud the place value when reading decimal numbers will help students who have difficulty comparing decimals. For example, the number 31.265 should be read as thirty-one wholes and two tenths, six hundredths and five thousandths, or thirty-one wholes and two hundred and sixty-five thousandths, and not as thirty-one point two six five. This approach will also help students to interpret large numbers that are common in the media—for example, \$3.6 billion—and be aware that the scientific notation is  $3.6 \times 10^9$ . Number expanders are useful for renaming, and learning is enhanced when students make their own number expander for decimals (see Booker et al., 2004).

Tens	Ones •	Tenths	Hundredths	Thousandths
3	1 •	2	6	5

*Figure 7.2* **Place value chart**

Moloney and Stacey (1997) found that only 75 per cent of Year 10 students could compare decimals with 80 per cent accuracy; higher proportions of students make errors in the earlier secondary grades. Students also have difficulty relating their everyday use of decimals to school mathematics (Irwin, 2001).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** For each pair of decimal numbers, circle the one that is LARGER.

<div>1.053</div> <div>4.08</div> <div>3.72</div>	<div>1.06</div> <div>4.7</div> <div>3.073</div>	<div>0.4</div> <div>0.36</div> <div>5.62</div>	<div>0.457</div> <div>0.216</div> <div>5.736</div>
Student A		Student B	

The above table shows responses from two students in research conducted by Steinle et al. (2002) for three items.

- Analyse these two students' responses. How is their thinking similar and/or different? Comment on their level of skill.
- Write a pair of decimal numbers that Student A would be likely to compare incorrectly, but Student B would compare correctly.
- Write another pair of decimals Student B would be likely to compare incorrectly while Student A would compare correctly.
- How could you show these students that their thinking is incorrect?

Misconceptions arise for a number of reasons. Steinle and colleagues (2002) observed two main persistent misconceptions among a number of others. One is the 'longer is larger' fallacy. Students who think longer is larger are using 'whole-number thinking' (also prevalent as the source of misconceptions with fractions). The 'shorter is larger' fallacy often occurs after students are introduced to negative integers, and these students have difficulty placing decimals smaller than one on a number line labelled with integers. These students seem to think that decimal numbers are below zero or negative (Irwin, 2001). Linear attribute blocks that show students the value of digits in decimal numbers, together with open-ended investigations, games and application problems related to familiar contexts for students, improve students' knowledge of decimals (Irwin, 2001; Steinle et al., 2002).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Develop a set of materials and tasks that would be suitable to use with the students whose responses are recorded above:

- Find out about and make some linear attribute blocks (Steinle et al., 2002).
- Make a number expander for decimals with four decimal places.
- Search for games and other resources for teaching decimal place value.

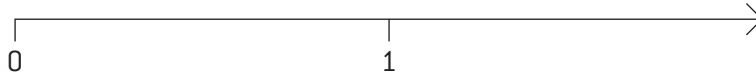
## Fractions

While students have been learning about fractions since the early years of schooling, conceptual understandings and operations with fractions are difficult for many students in secondary school (Brown & Quinlan, 2006; Callingham & McIntosh, 2002; Oliver, 2005; Pearn & Stephens, 2004; Siemon et al., 2001). A focus on rules without understanding of fractions and the persistence of whole-number thinking are sources of many misconceptions and errors in students' work (Gould, 2005; Pearn & Stephens, 2004).

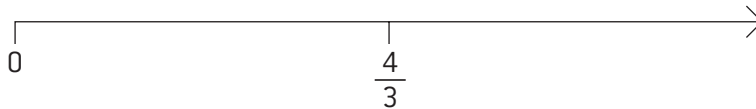
Many students understand a fraction to be part of a whole rather than seeing a fraction as also meaning a part of a collection and the operation of division (Gould, 2005). Students at risk in secondary schools do not accurately illustrate equal parts when drawing models of proper fractions, especially when trying to use circles, and many students have difficulty modelling improper fractions using a number line (Gould et al., 2006; Pearn & Stephens, 2004).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** The two tasks below require students to place fractions on a number line, but the second is more difficult. Propose an explanation for this difference.

1. Put a cross where you think  $\frac{8}{5}$  would be on this number line.



2. Put a cross where you think 1 would be on this number line.



Students also need to understand that  $\frac{5}{6}$  means  $5 \div 6$ —that is, 5 divided by 6 or 5 shared between 6. Consider the problem and three typical solutions shown in Figure 7.3.

While many students will place cuts in the pizzas to show that each family would get  $\frac{5}{6}$  of a pizza, either by slicing each pizza into six pieces or by slicing  $\frac{1}{6}$  off each pizza, one or two students in your class will probably slice three pizzas in half and two into thirds to give a result of  $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3}$ . These students use an Ancient Egyptian notion of fractions with numerators only represented by 1 unconsciously in this real-life situation. Capable students could be challenged to design similar problems and show that a fraction can be represented by a sum of other fractions with numerators of 1. (Note that the Ancient Egyptians used only one fraction with a numerator other than 1 and that was  $\frac{2}{3}$ .)

Making sense of fractions also means that students are able to compare fractions and find equivalent representations of fractions. Fractions modelled using paper-folding to create area models, such as fraction strips and rectangles, and fraction walls made of multiple fraction strips, can be used for open-ended investigations such as ‘find ten fractions that are equivalent to  $\frac{2}{3}$ ’ or ‘find ten fractions between  $\frac{1}{4}$  and  $\frac{3}{4}$ ’ (see Figure 7.1). Formalising these investigations through discussion of the findings enables students to appreciate that equivalent fractions are formed when multiplying or dividing by one ( $\frac{5}{6} \times \frac{3}{3} = \frac{15}{18}$  and  $\frac{21}{35} \div \frac{7}{7} = \frac{3}{5}$ ).

Six families want to share five rectangular pizzas. How would you cut the pizzas so that each family has an equal amount?

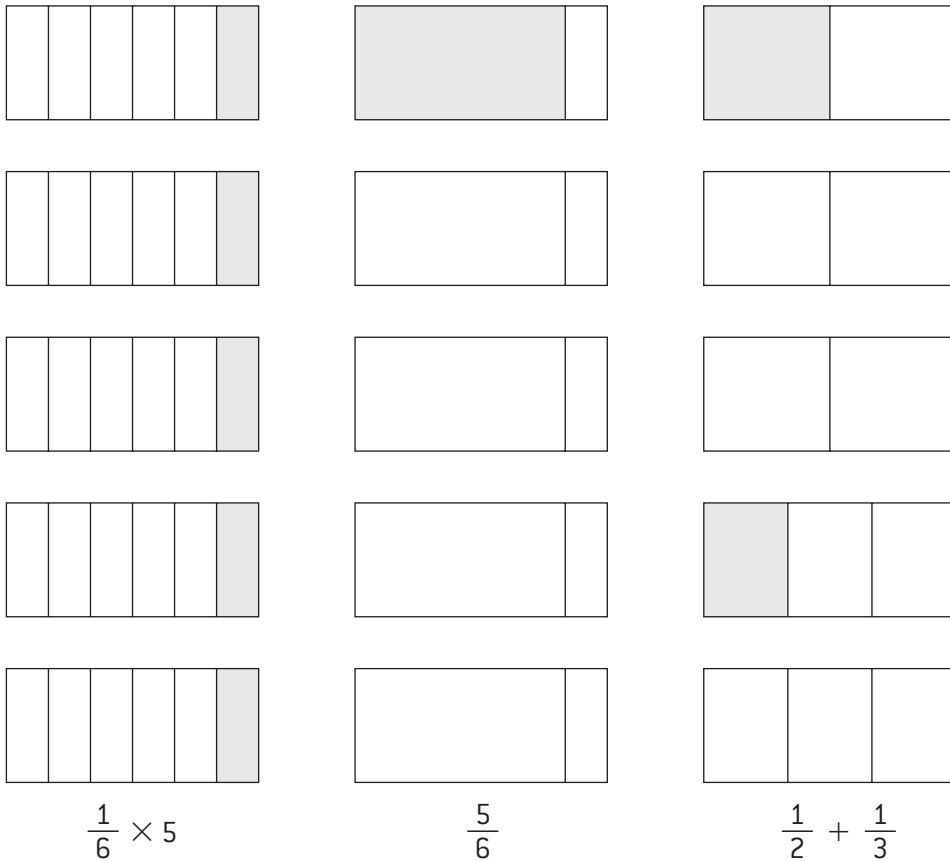


Figure 7.3 Three solutions for  $5 \div 6$

Some students use whole-number thinking when comparing fractions with unlike denominators. For example, a student may argue that  $\frac{2}{3}$  is larger than  $\frac{7}{10}$  because there is only one difference between the numerator and the denominator in this fraction (Pearn & Stephens, 2004). These students perceive fractions as two whole numbers. To develop their fraction sense, students need to be able to visualise fractions that are near 0 or 1 or some other common fraction, such as  $\frac{1}{2}$ . Having a mental image of fractions with the same numerator becoming smaller and smaller as the denominator increases will assist students who are whole-number thinkers. Students can then check their reasoning by finding equivalent

fractions. For these reasons, it is not wise to approach the teaching of comparing and adding fractions using the cross-multiplication algorithm  $\left(\frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ad+bc}{bd}\right)$  before finding out about students' conceptual understanding of fractions. The learning sequence should proceed by first modelling using materials and number lines, then estimating, and deriving algorithms with a well-designed investigation (Brown & Quinn, 2006; Oliver, 2005).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** The following two problems encourage students to use visual images and estimation:

Picture these two sets of fractions in your mind.

$$\frac{4}{10} \quad \frac{4}{47} \quad \frac{4}{8} \qquad \frac{99}{100} \quad \frac{6}{7} \quad \frac{15}{16}$$

- Order the fractions in each set from smallest to largest. Explain the visual images, or number sense that you used to order these fractions.
- Use four of these digits: 1, 3, 4, 5, 6 or 7 (only once), to create a sum of two fractions that is less than but as close as possible to 1. (Try writing these digits on small square pieces of paper so that you can try digits in different places using estimation to find a solution.)

$$\frac{\square}{\square} + \frac{\square}{\square} < 1$$

- Document your thinking processes. In a group, share and compare your strategies and discuss why you chose particular ways to solve these problems. Discuss the mental pictures of fractions, the fraction concepts and the skills that you used.
- Use these problems with a group of secondary students, assess the students' understanding of fractions and report your findings.
- Prepare a set of learning activities to address any misconceptions that you observe. Include multiple representations of fractions and games for practice [see Oliver, 2005 for an example].

## Mental computation

Mental computation is the ability to use number facts and number sense to solve operations without the aid of computational tools, or pen and paper. It is more than automatic recall, though knowledge of the basic number facts for addition, subtraction, multiplication and division is needed for efficient thinking strategies. Mental computation has received a lot of attention in mathematics curriculum documents since the early 1990s. The emphasis resulted from research that showed that adults used mental strategies and computational tools such as calculators more often than pen and paper algorithms to estimate and calculate with accuracy (e.g. Northcote & McIntosh, 1999). Teaching materials have been developed for the primary and middle years, but secondary textbook writers have paid scant attention to the continuing development of efficient mental computation strategies with whole numbers, fractions, decimals and percentages.

Some students seem to develop very flexible ways of thinking with number in spite of an absence of structured learning opportunities in the classroom. Callingham and McIntosh (2002), in their study of students from Year 3 to Year 10, found that students' mental computation competence 'drops sharply between Years 6 and 7' (2002, p. 159). Forty per cent of Year 7 students were not yet competent with table facts and inverses, adding and subtracting two-digit numbers, multiplying two-digit numbers by a single-digit number, or halving even two-digit numbers. Year 7 students also made errors adding and subtracting decimals to one decimal place, adding halves and quarters beyond one, subtracting familiar unit fractions from one, and finding a half, a quarter or 25 per cent of two- or three-digit numbers. McIntosh (2002) further explains that many students' mental computation errors with whole numbers were procedural, whereas the errors made with decimals, fractions and percentages were because students did not understand the concept.

Students who use efficient mental strategies demonstrate understanding of the field laws (illustrated in Figure 7.4) and the order of operations to partition numbers and/or reorganise the sequence of thinking, and so lighten the cognitive load.



**REVIEW AND REFLECT :**

1. The scores for a football match are shown on the television screen as:

Ess      57  
Kang      76

How far behind is Essendon?

2. There are 24 lollies in a packet of Mintchocs. If I have eight packets of Mintchocs, how many lollies are there altogether?

- Solve these two problems mentally and then document your thinking process for each.
- In a group, share and compare your strategies and discuss why you chose particular ways to solve the problem. Discuss the field laws that you used for each mental strategy (see below).
- Use a number line to model the subtraction strategies.
- Consider other similar problems and document a range of strategies that could be applied.

**Commutative**

$$\begin{aligned} 3 + 4 &= 4 + 3 \\ 3 \times 4 &= 4 \times 3 \\ 3 - 4 &\neq 4 - 3 \\ 12 \div 4 &\neq 3 \div 12 \end{aligned}$$

**Identity elements**

$$\begin{aligned} 8 + 0 &= 8 \\ 8 - 0 &= 8 \\ 8 \times 1 &= 8 \\ 8 \div 1 &= 8 \end{aligned}$$

**Associative**

$$\begin{aligned} (5 + 6) + 8 &= 5 + (6 + 8) \\ (7 - 3) - 2 &\neq 7 - (3 - 2) \\ (5 \times 2) \times 4 &= 5 \times (2 \times 4) \\ (20 \div 5) \div 2 &\neq 20 \div (5 \div 2) \end{aligned}$$

**Inverse elements**

$$\begin{aligned} 7 + (-7) &= 0 \\ 4 \times \frac{1}{4} &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

**Distributive**

$$\begin{aligned} 35 + 6 &= (30 \times 6) + (5 \times 6) \\ 48 \div 4 &= (40 \div 4) + (8 \div 4) \end{aligned}$$

*Figure 7.4* **Field laws**

Not surprisingly, mental computation with fractions, decimals and percentages is more cognitively demanding than for whole numbers. Watson and Callingham (2004) found that students first use mental strategies with simple fractions, decimals with the same number of

places and common percentages, and take some years to develop strategies for finding percentages of a number, such as 90 per cent or 15 per cent. Unfortunately, many secondary mathematics textbooks just don't give students opportunities to do mental computations and develop these skills. And sadly, the secrets of the field laws are often kept from students with the least developed number skills when teachers persist with requiring these students to spend more time on pen and paper written algorithms rather than on developing number sense and mental strategies. There are, however, lots of opportunities to include practice in mental computation and it is vital to be aware of the importance of teaching and practising mental strategies and to take these opportunities when they arise—for example, calculating the missing angles in a triangle using mental computation with the whole class as an oral activity rather than asking the students to write equations for the exercise. Online quiz and test programs often also encourage the use of mental strategies.

Lessons in mental computation based on students sharing strategies with the whole group validate everyone's thinking as effective, demonstrate more efficient strategies, give ownership of ideas to students, recognise that there is more than one way to work something out, and illustrate that different ways are used for different numbers.

#### REVIEW AND REFLECT :

- Find out what mental strategies secondary students use. Use the sample problems above and make up one each for addition and division, then interview some students in a school. Record their thinking strategies and compare with the findings of colleagues.
- Plan a mental computation lesson for whole numbers, fractions or decimals that is appropriate for the students you interviewed (see McIntosh & Dole, 2004, for examples).

## Multiplicative thinking

Automatic recall of multiplication facts is not secure for 40 per cent of Year 7 students (Callingham & McIntosh, 2002). Furthermore, thinking multiplicatively is more than remembering multiplication facts. Understanding multiplication, the language that is used

in the structure of multiplication problems, its connections to other operations, and the field laws that govern the operation are foundation concepts for many other concepts and skills in secondary mathematics: proportional reasoning, ratio, exponential reasoning, transforming algebraic expressions, and functions that define proportional relationships in data. Weaknesses in secondary students' multiplicative thinking lead to poor understanding of ratio and proportion: 'The essence of proportional reasoning lies in understanding the multiplicative structure of proportional situations . . . for example, 4 in relation to 8 as multiplying by 2 rather than adding 4.' (Shield & Dole, 2002, p. 609)

Arrays are commonly used in primary classrooms to help children learn multiplication facts (Booker et al., 2004; Young-Loveridge, 2005). They illustrate the commutative, associative and distributive laws for multiplication (see Figure 7.5), and help students to make sense of the multiplication of fractions and decimals. Arrays of algebra blocks can be used to model the distributive law in algebra, so illustration using whole numbers facilitates algebra learning (Leigh-Lancaster & Leigh-Lancaster, 2002).

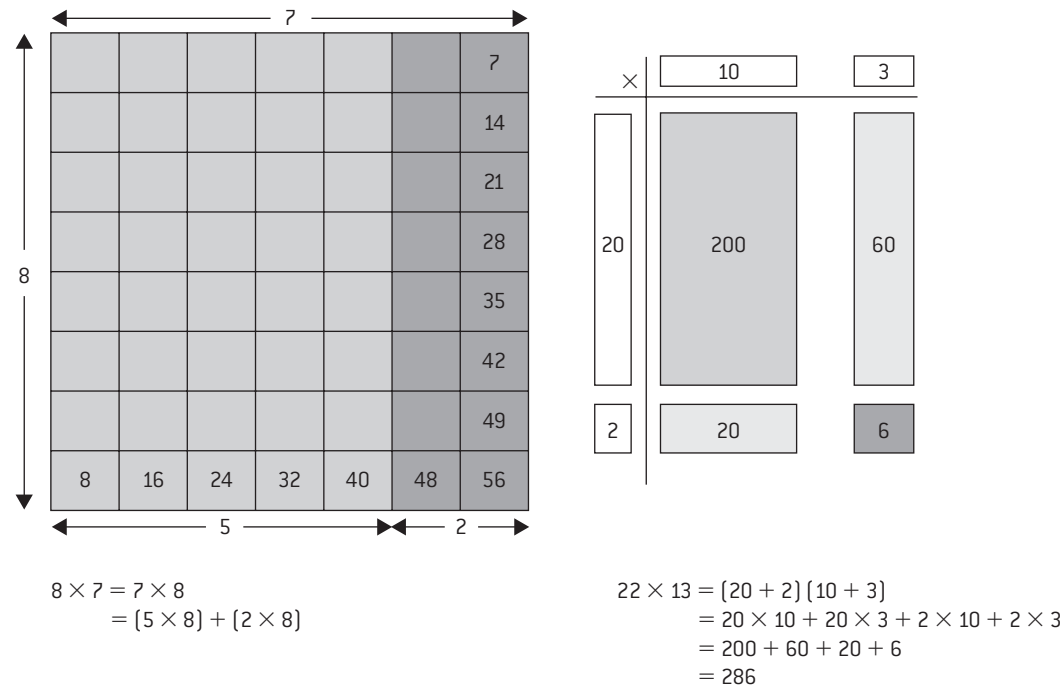
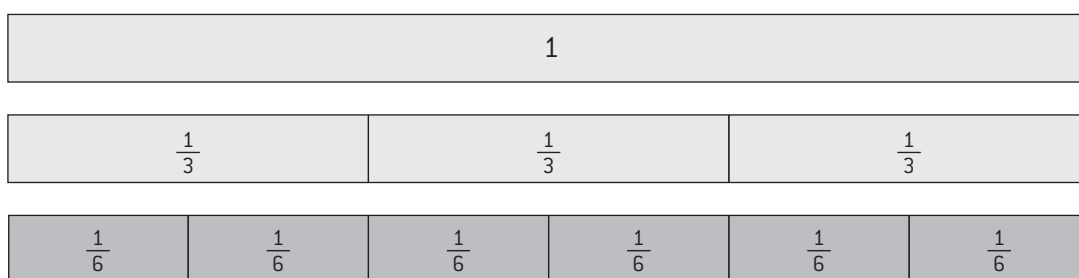


Figure 7.5 Arrays illustrating the distributive law for multiplication

## Multiplication of fractions and decimals

When using calculators to investigate the multiplication and division of decimal numbers students are usually surprised to find that multiplication by a number less than one results in a smaller number and that division results in a larger number. Students need multiple approaches and representations, such as paper folding to make linear and rectangular area models for multiplying fractions and decimals so that they understand where the algorithms and rules come from. For example, to make sixths using a strip of paper, you need to fold it into thirds and then fold it in half again. Students arrive at this process intuitively (see Figure 7.6).



From the first folds,  $1 \div 3 = \frac{1}{3}$

From the second fold,  $\frac{1}{2}$  of  $\frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{6}$ , that is,  $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{6}$ . Or  $\frac{1}{3} \div 2 = \frac{1}{6}$ .

Figure 7.6 Paper folding into sixths

Folding paper in this way shows that multiplying fractions makes a smaller fraction and that the numerators are multiplied and the denominators are multiplied. It also illustrates that multiplication by a fraction is the same as division by the reciprocal of the fraction, in this case a whole number  $\frac{1}{3} \div 2 = \frac{1}{3} \times \frac{1}{2}$ .

Figure 7.7 illustrates an array for multiplying decimals and shows that tenths multiplied by tenths equal hundredths. In addition to deriving the procedure for multiplying decimals, you should also teach students to estimate and check solutions using problems such as:

The decimal point is not working on the calculator, where does it go in these solutions?

$$534.6 \times 0.545 = 291357$$

$$49.05 \times 6.044 = 2964582$$

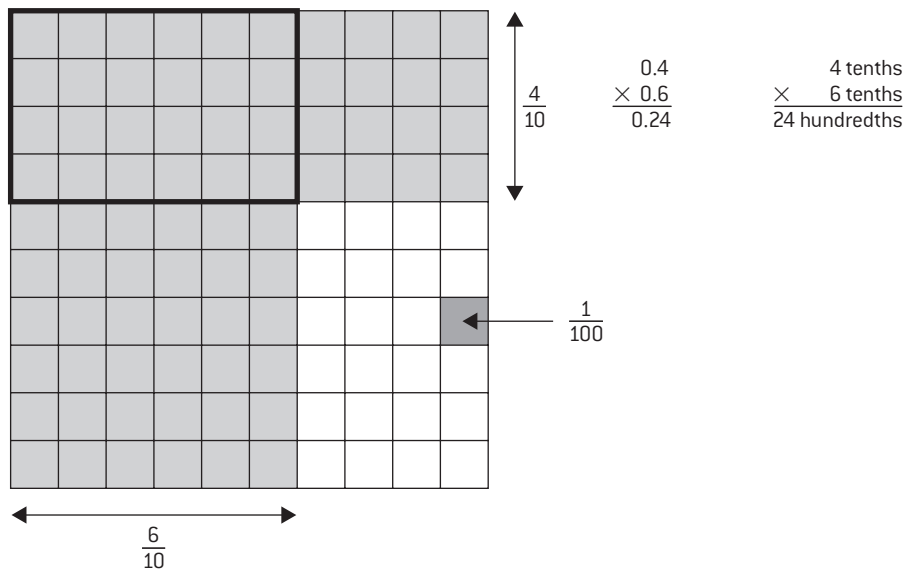


Figure 7.7  $0.4 \times 0.6 = 0.24$

## Division by fractions and decimals

Division is usually introduced to primary children as ‘shared between’, the partition meaning of division. But they also need to understand division as ‘how many groups of’, the quotient or measurement meaning of division. Otherwise, students have difficulty thinking about dividing by fractions, for example, understanding what  $9 \div \frac{1}{4}$  means (Gould, 2005). The fraction strips discussed above can be used to illustrate the division algorithm for fractions. Having made the strips we can ask: ‘How many thirds in a sixth?’

$$\frac{1}{6} \div \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1}{2}$$

This is the same as three ‘lots’ of sixths—that is,  $\frac{1}{6} \times 3 = \frac{1}{2}$ . And so dividing by a fraction is the same as multiplying by its reciprocal.

When students solve fraction division problems placed in a context, they make sense of the problem and generate a strategy for solving it (Gould, 2005). Context suggests particular interpretations, and hence strategies and reasoning for solving problems (Sinicrope et al., 2002). Capable students may discover the strategy for finding a whole given a part (that is, finding the unit rate) or finding the missing factor using an area model for division that

enables division by fractions to make sense (Flores, 2002; Pagni, 1998; Sinicrope et al., 2002). Example problems are shown in the following table. The sharing or unit rate uses the notion of proportion.

Table 7.1 Division of fraction problem types

	Quotition or measurement	Sharing or unit rate	Missing factor
Context	If I need $\frac{3}{4}$ cup of flour to make a cake, and I have $2\frac{1}{2}$ cups of flour, how many cakes can I make for the fete?	If it takes me $\frac{3}{4}$ hour to paint $2\frac{1}{2}$ doors, how many doors can I paint in one hour?	If I have $\frac{3}{4}$ square metre of material and the length of one side is $\frac{2}{5}$ metre, what is the length of the other side?
Guiding question or expression	How many groups of $\frac{3}{4}$ in $2\frac{1}{2}$ ?	$\frac{3}{4} : 2\frac{1}{2} = 1: \square$	$\frac{2}{5} \times \square = \frac{3}{4}$

REVIEW AND REFLECT :

- Search for materials and resources, including online interactive resources, to develop students’ understanding of multiplication and division by fractions.
- Search for activities to use in practising the estimation of solutions.
- Search for contexts and applications of division by fractions or decimals and design investigation or problem-solving tasks for students.

Proportional thinking

Proportional thinking involves making sense of quantitative relationships and comparing quantities that have a multiplicative relationship (Cai & Sun, 2002; Shield & Dole, 2002). Ratio and proportion are used in many real situations, and they underpin and connect many mathematical ideas in secondary school mathematics. Learning about ratio, proportion and percentages provides lots of opportunities for engaging students in authentic tasks and problem-solving. Many measurement and geometry concepts rely on proportional

understanding, such as scales and scale factors, relationships between attributes of shapes (for example,  $\pi$ ,  $\pi$  and the Golden Ratio,  $\phi$ ), speed and trigonometry. Understanding proportional relationships as directly or inversely proportional is necessary for developing function sense (Cai & Sun, 2002). The concepts of direct proportion and inverse proportion, gradient and slope, and non-linear relationships all rely on understanding the multiplicative structure of proportion.

Students make errors when working on ratio and proportion problems when they don't recognise the multiplicative relationship and use additive or absolute differences, or when they apply taught algorithms inaccurately (Cai & Sun, 2002; Shield & Dole, 2002). Interpreting worded problems is also difficult for students (De Bock et al., 2005; Simon et al., 2001). Students need to make sense of the problem rather than just apply a procedure. Although problems may share similar structural features, careful interpretation is needed to discern the difference between a multiplicative relationship and an additive relationship:

1. In the shop, four packs of pencils cost \$8. The teacher wants to buy a pack for every pupil. She needs 24 packs. How much must she pay?
2. Today Bert becomes two years old and Leslie becomes six years old. When Bert is twelve years old, how old will Leslie be?

Teachers need to emphasise the multiplicative structure of ratio and proportion, as some textbooks neglect this concept when defining and giving examples of ratio and proportion (Shield & Dole, 2002).

There are three general types of proportional reasoning problems: comparing two parts of a whole (for example, the ratio of boys to girls in a class); comparing rates or densities (for example, kilometres per hour); and scaling problems (Shield & Dole, 2002). A number of strategies can be used to solve ratio and proportion problems. These include finding the unit rate, using equivalent fractions, and using a scale factor (or size changing). Visual models that support proportional reasoning include the double number line (or proportional number line) and ratio tables (Dole, 1999; Gravemeijer et al., 2005). Ratio tables are pairs of rows in a multiplication table. These models, or tools, enable students to see situations when proportional reasoning is and is not justified and they provide students with the opportunity of reinventing for themselves the cross-multiply and divide algorithm generally used for

proportion problems. These two different models are illustrated in Figures 7.8 and 7.9 respectively for the following problem:

Monica and Kim were riding from Echuca to Heathcote in the Great Victorian Bike Ride. After one and a half hours, they passed a sign post which showed that they had ridden 30 kilometres and that they still had 45 kilometres to ride. Monica said, ‘We’re doing well.’

Why did she say this? How long would it take them to reach Heathcote?

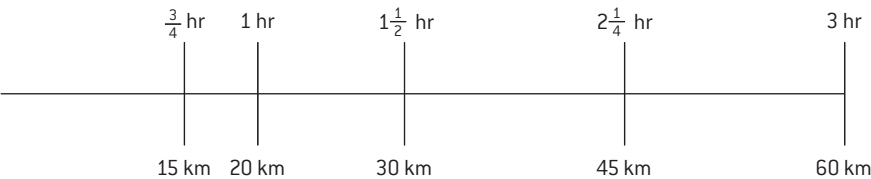


Figure 7.8 A double number line

time	$1\frac{1}{2}$ hr	$\frac{1}{2}$ hr	1 hr	3 min	
distance	30 km	10 km		1 km	45 km

Figure 7.9 A ratio table

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** How do these models help to solve the problem above?  
Discuss with your peers.

Ratios that are equivalent are proportional. Application tasks and projects using scales—such as scale drawing, model building and using maps and plans—provide opportunities for students to develop this concept. Spreadsheets are very useful for investigating proportional relationships. In a spreadsheet, the concept of proportion can be presented dynamically, as a sequence of constant ratios obtained by applying the same rule to



numerous pairs of numbers or quantities that have been gathered from investigations of real or mathematical contexts (Friedlander & Arcavi, 2005). Two examples, one about  $\pi$  and the other trigonometry, are included in Chapter 8. Other exemplary tasks that involve students actively collecting data to investigate proportion include 'Planets' (*Maths300*), *Triple Jump Ratio* (D.M. Clarke, 1996), *The Murdered Mammoth Mystery* (Goos, 2002) and *The Baby and the Heatwave* (see Chapter 13).

## Percentage

Per cent is a particular type of ratio, and is normally introduced in primary school as a special fraction, where models are used to show meaning and equivalence and apply procedures for switching between fractions, decimals and percentage. While we encounter percentages such as  $8\frac{1}{4}$  per cent interest and 0.05 BAC, converting these percentages to fractions or decimals is difficult for students because many students think that percentages are less than one and can only be hundredths. You should approach the teaching of percentage by modelling percentages with visual materials, including estimation tasks and using application problems drawn from contexts that are familiar to and engaging for students. Students who have established concepts and skills with equivalent fractions are already familiar with processes that can be used to solve many percentage problems. Students should be encouraged to automatically recall common conversions from percentages to fractions or decimals.

Calculating the percentage of an amount is typically presented in textbooks as a procedure to learn and memorise rather than one to make sense of, and to make connections with fractions and proportional thinking. For simple calculations of per cent as shown in Figure 7.10, students should use mental computation and explore the function of the percentage key on a calculator. Capable students should be encouraged to develop mental strategies for calculating percentages, such as 11 per cent and 15 per cent.

Ratio, proportion and percentage are important in senior secondary vocational mathematics, such as business mathematics subjects. Online interactive learning objects and commercial ready reckoners are relevant and useful resources for students' investigation of applications in the workplace.

Written algorithm (typical textbook example)	Mental computation	Calculator operation
$\begin{aligned} &20\% \text{ of } 35 \\ &= \frac{20}{100} \times \frac{35}{1} \\ &= \frac{20^1}{20^1} \times \frac{7}{1} \\ &= \frac{7}{1} \\ &= 7 \end{aligned}$	$\begin{aligned} &20\% \text{ of } 35 \\ &= \frac{1}{5} \text{ of } 35 \\ &= 7 \end{aligned}$	$\begin{aligned} &20\% \text{ of } 35 \\ &\boxed{20} \quad \boxed{\times} \quad \boxed{35} \quad \boxed{\%} \\ &= 7 \end{aligned}$

Figure 7.10 Procedures for finding the percentage of amounts

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** In Chapter 3 we discussed approaches for making connections between lessons that would build connections within mathematics and between mathematics and the real world. One of these approaches was to use a mathematical or real-world context for planning a sequence of lessons.

- Construct a concept map about proportion that includes mathematical concepts and real and mathematical contexts and applications.
- Using proportion as a mathematical theme, choose mathematical or real context(s) and search for or design a series of investigations or problem-solving tasks for an extended period of mathematics study. Consider how you could use technology in these lessons. (See the Grade 7 *Curriculum Focal Points* (NCTM) for some ideas about integrating within mathematics.)

### Exponential thinking

The operation of repeating multiplication is known as raising a number by a power, or exponentiation—for example,  $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2$  is expressed as  $2^5$ . The inverse operation is finding the root. Clearly, multiplicative thinking is critical for developing an intuitive understanding of exponentiation (Munoz & Mullet, 1998). Using and understanding

exponentiation, and its inverse, are important for solving a range of problems in measurement and geometry and series of numbers generated by repeated multiplication have many real applications for describing relationships. Students first encounter these ideas when exploring the multiplication facts represented by square arrays, and when finding the volume of cubes. These experiences provide students with concrete representations of square and cubic numbers (for example,  $5^2 = 25$  and  $3^3 = 27$ ), but expressions where the exponent is larger than three are abstractions. Solving problems based on exponential series, such as the one below, provides opportunities for students to investigate powers greater than three. Such problems are typically used for generating patterns in early algebra activities.

Auntie Sue has offered to give an allowance to her niece/nephew for the next five years.

They can choose one of the following scenarios:

- \$500 in the first year and then an extra \$100 extra in each subsequent year;
- \$100 in the first year and then half as much more in each subsequent year;
- \$20 in the first year and then double the amount each subsequent year.

Which offer should they choose? What if the offer was extended to ten years?

Using spreadsheets or graphics calculators to generate tables of values to solve these types of problems provides a type of graphic organiser to support students' understanding (Ives & Hoy, 2003), show the difference between additive, multiplicative and exponential operations, and avoid or challenge misconceptions such as  $3^5 = 3 + 3 + 3 + 3 + 3$  or  $3 \times 5$ . Graphing exponential series (that is, functions) provides a visual representation so that the students can see the relative magnitude of these numbers (Munoz & Mullet, 1998).

Also challenging for students are the ideas of negative and zero exponents. Ives and Hoy (2003) recommend using a graphic organiser in the form of a table so that students investigate the pattern of numbers to discover that  $a^0 = 1$  and that  $a^{-2} = 1/a^2$  (see Figure 7.11). Once again, a graph of the exponential function provides a visual representation to reinforce this learning. (Teaching and learning function concepts are discussed further in Chapter 10.)

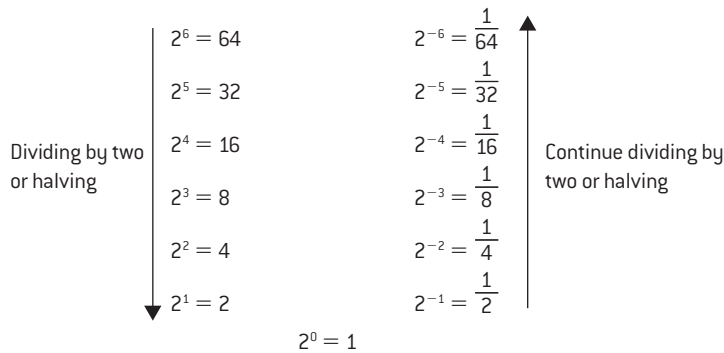


Figure 7.11 Graphic organiser for index numbers

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Discuss ways of generating the results with students for the graphic organiser shown above.

- What does it mean to find the square root of a number?
- Why does  $\sqrt{x} = x^{\frac{1}{2}}$ ?
- Evaluate  $\sqrt{32}$  without using a calculator. You may need to do some research to find methods for evaluating square roots.

Operating with numbers and algebraic symbols expressed in exponential form is a focus for number learning that underpins abstract thinking and reasoning in algebra. Errors in algebraic reasoning in senior secondary mathematics are often attributed to errors or misconceptions when operating with expressions in exponential form (Barnes, n.d.; Gough, 2001). Some common errors include:

- $3^2 + 5^2 = 8^2$
- $2^3 \times 2^4 = 4^7$
- $3^2 \cdot 3^3 = 95$
- $a^2 \times b^5 = ab^7$
- $3^{-2} = 9$
- $4x^{-2} = \frac{1}{4}x^2$
- $(3a)^4 = 3a^4$
- $(a^2)^5 = a^7$

A procedural approach that emphasises memorising index laws contributes to these errors (Barnes, n.d.). Using expansion to evaluate and simplify such expressions improves student performance and leads to discovery and ownership of these laws by students.

## Integers

On the surface, this topic provides secondary teachers with an opportunity to teach students something new about numbers. However, many students have already encountered negative numbers; even very young children can describe ‘underground numbers’, and most curricula require primary students to be able to model negative numbers using number lines and explore various contexts in order to develop a concept of negative number. It is important, therefore, to commence with finding out about your learners, even when teaching new topics. What do they know about integers? Where do they encounter them in real situations?

Number lines and materials such as algebra blocks (Algebra Experience Materials, AEM) are used to model integers and the addition and subtraction algorithms (Leigh-Lancaster & Leigh-Lancaster, 2002). Walking forwards and backwards along number lines will assist students to realise that subtraction of negative numbers is the same as adding positive numbers (see ‘Walk the Plank’, *Maths300*).

Multiplication and division by negative integers is more complex, and senior students continue to make errors when applying the distributive law in algebra (Gough, 2001). Clausen-May (2005) recommends using arrays to show the multiplication of negative numbers. The array in Figure 7.12 shows a mental computation strategy using the idea of compensation when applying the distributive law and illustrates the rule for multiplying negative numbers.

## Irrational number

Surds are likely to be students’ introduction to irrational numbers, even though they will have been using pi ( $\pi$ ) in measurement contexts or have explored digit patterns in decimal numbers to find those that never repeat. They will encounter surds when applying Pythagoras’ Theorem and evaluating square roots to find the length of the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle. However, because calculators give decimal answers to a given

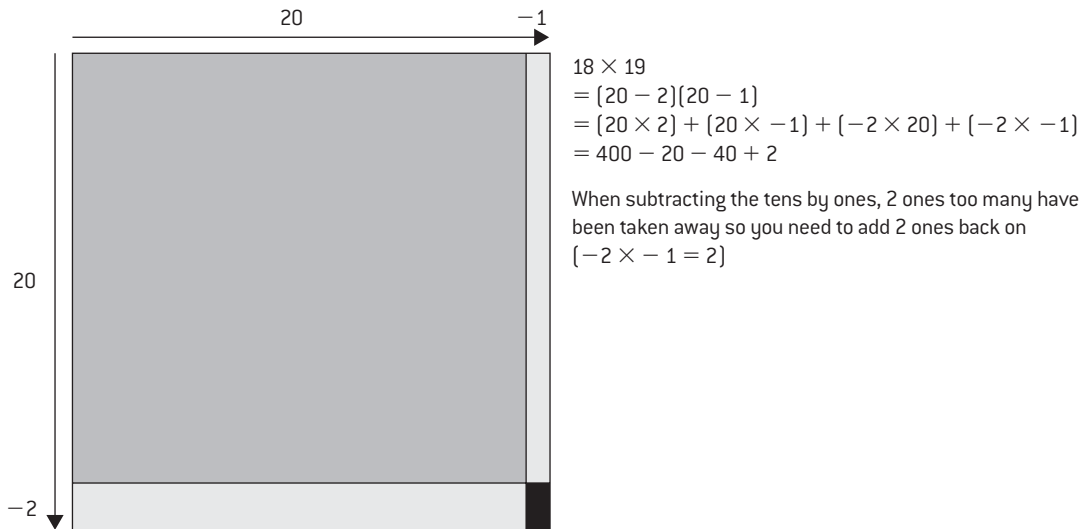
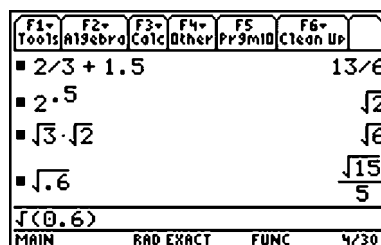


Figure 7.12  $18 \times 19$  illustrating multiplying negative integers

number of places, students may not appreciate that there is anything special about irrational numbers. Irrational numbers cannot be measured as quantities accurately, cannot be expressed as a fraction, and have an infinite non-repeating digit pattern when expressed as a decimal. CAS calculators use rational and irrational number notation (see Figure 7.13), so these tools may be used to explore irrational numbers and to generate algorithms for operating with irrational numbers.



Source: Ball & Stacey (2005a).

Figure 7.13 Arithmetic calculations on CAS calculator

Arnold (2001) argues that students have difficulty with irrational numbers because they are defined by what they are *not*. He proposes that we should focus students' attention on

what irrational numbers *are* by exploring visual images of the most common and beautiful irrationals,  $\pi$ ,  $\sqrt{2}$  and the Golden Ratio,  $\phi$  ( $[1+\sqrt{5}]/2$ ). Using compass and ruler, or with the aid of geometric software tools or CAS, students can explore contexts such as spirals and Golden Rectangles to make more sense of irrational numbers (Stacey & Price, 2005). A simple geometric construction of a right-angled isosceles triangle (1, 1, 2) illustrates the irrational number and is the basis for constructing a logarithmic spiral (shown in Figure 7.14). Simplifying the surds for each hypotenuse in the spiral generates a geometric series with the common ratio of  $\sqrt{2}$  ( $\sqrt{2}$ ,  $\sqrt{4} = 2$ ,  $\sqrt{8} = 2\sqrt{2}$ ,  $\sqrt{16} = 4$ ,  $\sqrt{32} = 4\sqrt{2}$ , ...).

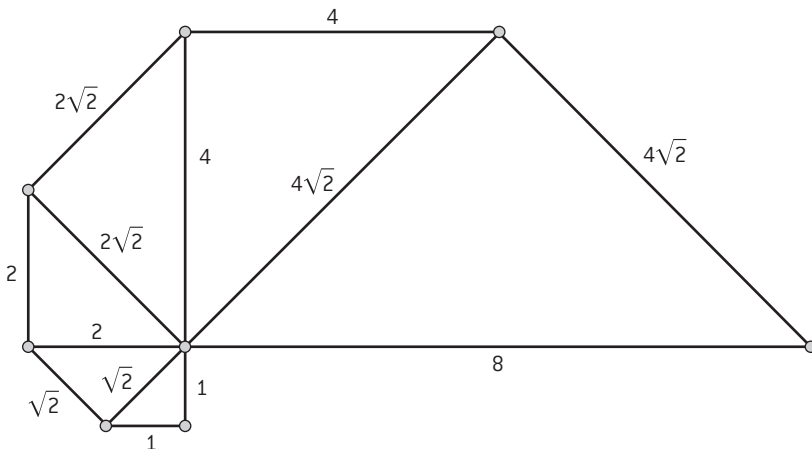


Figure 7.14 Right-angled isosceles triangle construction for a logarithmic spiral

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** The learning cycle described by Frid (2000b) (see Figure 7.15) requires teachers to begin planning their teaching about a topic by finding out about their students' prior knowledge and using this information to plan a series of learning experiences that includes investigation, formalisation, practice and application.

- Prepare a learning cycle for exponential number, irrational number or integers.
- Use technology (calculator, spreadsheet or CAS), a graphics organiser or concrete materials for the investigation task.
- Explain how you would formalise these laws with students following their investigation.
- Find or design a game for students to practise operations with these numbers.
- Include a problem-solving task.

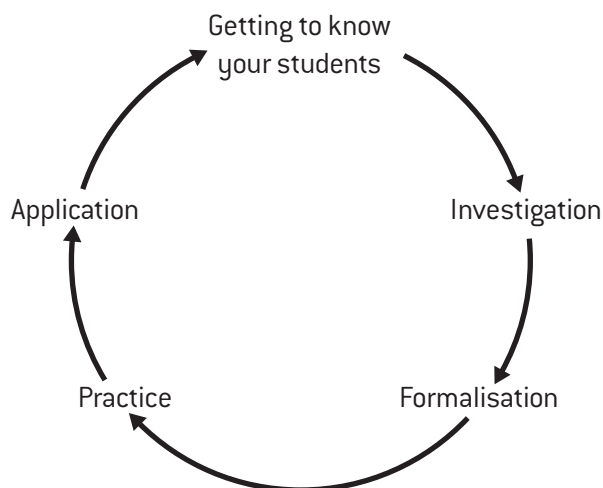


Figure 7.15 Learning cycle

## Conclusion

In this chapter, we have shown that there are many places in which mathematical ideas are connected across domains. The concepts and skills discussed, together with confidence in thinking mathematically, will enable students to use these ideas in a range of vocations and in senior secondary mathematics. We have argued that knowing your students is important for developing a learning program that meets their needs, and using concrete materials and visual representations and estimation activities builds on students' understandings and addresses their misconceptions. We have also recommended using investigations that are interesting for students, and that engage them in reinventing algorithms, so that operating with numbers is meaningful for them.



## Recommended reading

**Arnold, S. (2001).** Thinking irrationally. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher* 57(1), 38–41.

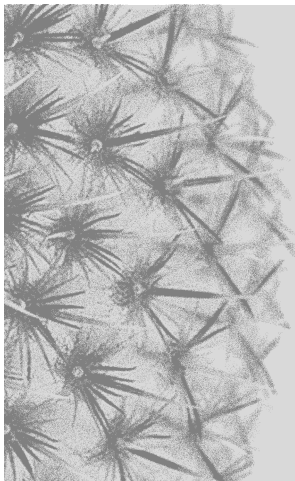
**Litwiller, B. & Bright, G. (eds) (2002).** *Making Sense of Fractions, Ratios and Proportions: 2002 Year Book*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

**McIntosh, A. & Dole, S. (2004).** *Mental computation: A strategies approach*. Hobart: Department of Education, Tasmania.

**Oliver, D. (2005).** Fractions again! In J. Mousley, L. Bragg & C. Campbell (eds), *Mathematics—Celebrating Achievement 100* (MAV Annual Conference 2005, pp. 265–71). Melbourne: MAV.

**Steinle, V., Stacey, K. & Chambers, D. (2002).** *Teaching and Learning about Decimals* (Version 2.1). Melbourne: University of Melbourne. Sample materials available at <<http://extranet.edfac.unimelb.edu.au/DSME/decimals>>.

**Young-Loveridge, J. (2005).** Fostering multiplicative thinking using array-based materials. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher* 61(3), 34–39.



## CHAPTER 8

### Teaching and learning measurement

Teaching and learning measurement concepts and skills provide opportunities for learners to connect mathematics concepts and skills across all fields of mathematics. Furthermore, investigating, solving and modelling measurement problems derived from real-world situations that connect with students' interests enables mathematics to 'come to life' for students. It is essential that students go outside the classroom and into the community to develop the 'hands on' and practical skills of estimating and measuring, as well as the social skills for working cooperatively on problems and projects with real applications.

As is the case for number, students entering secondary school will have developed many of the underpinning concepts and skills in measurement; however, these understandings may not be secure for many students. In this chapter, we will focus on the measurement concepts and skills that are important for mathematical literacy and success in senior secondary mathematics, and that are also routinely included in vocational mathematics subjects in senior secondary mathematics. We begin the chapter by providing some background on children's measurement learning in primary school and outlining the challenges for students in secondary school. The particular topics and skills discussed include: estimating and measuring; perimeter and circumference; area and volume; Pythagoras' Theorem; and trigonometry. Finally, we discuss teaching approaches for integrating and making connections between measurement and other fields of mathematics, and provide examples of problems to engage students in problem-solving and working mathematically on measurement.

In the National Consistency in Curriculum Outcomes Statements of Learning and Professional Elaborations for Mathematics (MCEETYA, 2006) and in some state curricula,

chance and data are included in the field of measurement. Given the special importance of statistical or quantitative literacy for active citizenship, and the diversity of senior mathematics courses with respect to this area of mathematics, the teaching and learning of chance and data are discussed in a separate chapter (Chapter 11).

## **Measurement in the primary years**

Young children begin to measure using direct comparison. They place objects beside each other to see which is bigger or longer and they heft objects to see which is heavier. When objects cannot be placed beside each other, they use informal units to compare the size of objects. They cover surfaces with informal units or squares to develop a sense of area. Situations are created to show that informal units cannot be used for accurate or reliable comparisons, and so the idea of standard units is introduced. The experience of estimating and measuring enables primary students to develop a sense of the size of units and begin to appreciate the importance of accuracy when measuring.

Understanding the area of rectangles is enhanced when children use concrete materials arranged in arrays to discover the rule for finding area and when they make layers of arrays to discover the formula for volume of rectangular prisms (Mitchelmore, 1995). However, some junior secondary students may have been taught these formulae too soon and still need further experiences of measuring area and volume using arrays of materials.

Understanding angle is challenging for primary children, since many students do not identify the physical experience of turning—the definition used in mathematics—as an angle (Mitchelmore & White, 1998, 2000). Furthermore, they do not recognise the similarity of the everyday representations of angles they observe: turn, meeting, slope, corner, bend, direction and an opening. Understanding of angle is not established for many students entering secondary school.

## **Measurement in the secondary years**

Measurement enables us to describe and compare attributes of objects or events in space and time, and to use measurement to solve real problems—including the design and construction of objects and events. The attributes include length, angle, mass, capacity, temperature, time, area, surface area, volume, speed and density. In the secondary years, students continue to develop measurement sense related to these attributes. They develop more

sophisticated strategies for estimating measurements, understand that all units are composed of units of length, mass and/or time, and appreciate that, in real contexts, units of measurement are selected for the purpose of the measurement and not just according to the relative size of the attribute. They explore and use relationships between attributes and units of measurement to calculate measurements of regular and irregular shapes and objects, and composite attributes such as speed and density. The shapes and objects include polygons, regular curved regions, irregular closed shapes and regions, regular and irregular polyhedra, regular solids with curved faces (spheres and cones) and irregular solids.

Developing measurement sense also means that students understand the structure of the system of measurement units and can move flexibly between these units when solving problems in context; a strong foundation in the decimal place value system and multiplication and division by multiples of ten is therefore needed. You can expect that, given the number of students who continue to make errors when comparing and calculating with decimals, finding equivalent units of measurement—especially for area and volume—will need attention in the secondary classroom. You will find that the real context of measurement will assist students to make sense of decimals, but you need to focus on the structure of number and units of measurement and on developing students' multiplicative thinking rather than teaching tricks for converting units, such as moving decimal points (see Chapter 7).

Only students who have consolidated these skills, and who demonstrate an understanding of attributes measured using composite units—such as speed and density—will be able to demonstrate flexible thinking when solving problems and choosing and calculating equivalent composite units (for example, km/hour and  $\text{gm}/\text{cm}^3$ ). Understanding the relationship between units of measurement in the metric system (that is, 1 L of water at sea level on the equator has a mass of 1 kg and takes up  $1000 \text{ cm}^3$  of space) is also necessary for solving a range of real problems.

As mentioned above, some students will enter secondary school without a secure concept of angle in a range of situations. White and Mitchelmore (2002) reported that up to one-third of junior secondary students found it difficult to identify an angle when one or both of the lines had to be imagined, and used features such as the length of the lines that meet, their orientation or the length of the radius marking the angles when making a judgment about an angle.

In the Third International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMSS), Australian students performed poorly on the measurement item about the area of a parallelogram and problem-solving items involving area and perimeter (Lokan et al., 1996). Students continue to be confused by the meaning and definition of capacity and volume throughout secondary school. Generally, they will not have met the concept of surface area in a formal sense when entering secondary school, and geometric understanding of the properties of solids and nets as representations of surface area needs to be developed first. A common misconception among students is the assumption of a linear proportional relationship for scaling area and volume (Van Dooren et al., 2005).

## Estimating and measuring

Measuring involves counting units that uniquely apply to particular attributes (e.g. degrees to measure temperature), using tools of measurement (e.g. scales, stopwatch, clinometers and thermometers) and using relationships to calculate measurements of other attributes such as speed, volume, circumference and density. Students should be encouraged to estimate before measuring and calculating.

We estimate measurements as part of everyday activities, such as how long it will take to reach a destination and how much butter to use in a recipe. Estimation plays a key role in the working lives of people in a range of occupations. Students need many different experiences of estimating and measuring in order to internalise benchmarks for measuring length, mass, angle, time, area, volume and temperature, to improve the accuracy of their estimations, as well as to develop strategies for making estimates (see Lovitt & Clarke, 1988). They should gather and analyse data about their estimations. Teachers can help scaffold this skill by asking students to explain and justify the strategies and benchmarks that they use when estimating. Particular strategies for estimating can be explored through problem-solving tasks, especially for irregular shapes and solids.

Students need to go out of the classroom to experience and explore measurement in context, to estimate and to measure. They should conduct investigations to find out how various tradespeople and professionals make estimations of things that are central to their work. These may include 'rules of thumb' that involve more than one step to arrive at an estimate. They should use measurement tools of the real world, not just the mathematics

and science classroom (e.g. tape measures, pressure gauges and theodolites). Online tools for converting units between systems of measurement can be investigated and used by students, particularly vocational students who may regularly need to work with imperial units.

Particular attention needs to be given to developing estimating and measuring angles. Mitchelmore and White (2000) recommend that students develop a language to describe various real situations of angles, have experiences where they compare and discover the similarity of these situations, and use informal units to estimate and measure angles. As well as providing experiences in the real world with tools, there are various internet sites and digital interactive learning objects that enable students to practise estimating angles (see 'Estimating Angles', *Maths300*).

## Perimeter and circumference

Using open-ended tasks and real problems, students can develop strategies for finding the perimeter of closed regions, and so avoid confusing formulae for perimeter and area. Consider, for example, the following problems:

1. Draw, or make on a geo-board, a rectangle with a perimeter of 18 units. Draw and make another rectangle with a perimeter of 18 units. Find a third rectangle.
  - How did you find these rectangles?
  - Formalise the process you followed by writing a rule to find the dimensions of a rectangle with a given perimeter.
2. How long does it take to run around a hectare?
3. You need to build a new pen for a pet lamb. You have 12 metres of fencing wire and you can use the side of a building as one side of the pen. What are the dimensions of the pen that will give us the largest area for the pet lamb?

Learning about perimeter should not, however, be restricted to rectangles, but rather include problems with other polygons and irregular shapes.

Investigating the circumference of a circle provides a mathematical and real context for learning about proportion, and is often students' first formal encounter with an irrational

number, that is, pi ( $\pi$ ). A teacher with whom one of the authors of this book recently worked decided to conduct a whole-class investigation into circumference using technology when she discovered that students in her Year 9 class still had many misconceptions about pi (one being that pies were round and that was the association between pi and circles). For this investigation, the students measured many different circular objects and entered the measurements of the diameter and circumference into a spreadsheet. The teacher had prepared the spreadsheet with the whole class using her laptop computer and a data projector, and included a column for the ratio of the circumference and diameter. As each student entered the measurements of their circular object, the ratio was displayed for all to see. The average ratio was also displayed. The teacher explained that ‘the big drama was when you hit enter and it calculated pi [the ratio]. There was lots of competition. Could they get to 3.14? How close?’ She noticed that the students appreciated the need for accurate measurements and went back and measured their object again. They ‘would come back and say “My diameter was out by about 2 mm, will that change my answer?”’ This investigation enabled the students to appreciate the need for accuracy when measuring and to see the dynamic calculations of the ratio of circumference and diameter and observe convergence of the average ratio to a constant. By making this investigation a whole-class activity rather than an individual one, the teacher ensured that the inaccuracies in measurement which often occur in an investigation like this did not hinder students’ ‘discovery’ of this constant.

## Area and volume

Students can develop a sense of ownership or agency if they reinvent formulae for finding the area of different polygons. Paper-folding, drawings or construction of triangles circumscribed in rectangles on paper or on geo-boards, or drawings using dynamic geometry software, are alternative environments for investigating the area of triangles (Burns & Brade, 2003; Frid, 2000a). Similarly, students can derive the formulae for finding the area of quadrilaterals and other polygons.

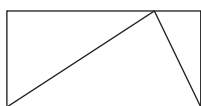
Understanding of volume should be developed through the use of materials to derive the formulae of prisms and cylinders as area of the base times the height (see Figure 8.1). Furthermore, students can discover the relationship between the volume of a prism and a pyramid with the same base (and similarly a cylinder and cone with the same base) to derive

the formulae for the volume of pyramids and cones. Following this investigative approach, along with solving problems about irregular shapes and solids, develops students' skills in reasoning and their capacity for flexible thinking and problem-solving.



Figure 8.1 Representing volume (volume = area  $\times$  height)

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Derive the formula for the area of a triangle. Show that the formula works for a right-angled triangle, an acute-angled triangle and an obtuse-angled triangle [see Frid, 2000b].



Research and discuss different methods for deriving the area of a circle, quadrilaterals, other polygons and the volume of a pyramid and a cone.

When solving area and volume problems, students often make errors when the dimensions of shapes and solids are given in different units. They need to pay attention to the units given in each problem, and to think about which unit to use when calculating. Students who do not have a strong conceptual understanding of area and volume and the units of measurement, or who have poor multiplicative skills, will have difficulty converting square

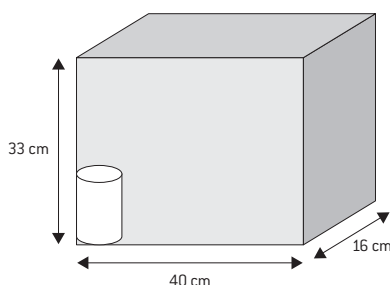


units (such as  $40\,000\text{ cm}^2 = 4\text{ m}^2$ ) and cubic units of measurement. They need visual models of units for area and volume for successful conversion.

Problems based on a real context may also reveal poor conceptual understanding or reliance on applying a given formula without due consideration of the context. Consider the following problem.

### Cans in a box

How many jam tins can be placed in this cardboard box if they have a diameter of 8 cm and are 11 cm high?



Procedural thinkers—that is, students who rely on applying procedures rather than using conceptual understanding—are likely to solve this problem by calculating the volume of a can using the formula for volume of a cylinder and calculating the volume of the box, then dividing the volume of the box by the volume of the can to find the answer. There are many opportunities for students to make errors following this method, and their final solution may not make sense. Redefining the dimensions of the box according to the diameter and height of the can is a more efficient method of solving this problem. Using concrete materials may assist some students to solve these types of authentic problems for area and volume, and strengthen their understanding.

Problems of scale in area and volume are a persistent difficulty for students throughout secondary schooling. Consider the following multiple-choice question:

Which of these pipes will fill a pool the fastest?

- a. one pipe with a diameter of 60 cm;
- b. two pipes each of diameter 30 cm;
- c. three pipes each of diameter 20 cm;
- d. all the same.

Students assume a linear relationship in scaling up problems—that is, if you double the dimensions of a rectangle or rectangular prism, or radius of a circle or sphere, then you will double the area and double the volume. To overcome this misconception, students need experiences with concrete materials, along with diagrams, to be convinced that area and volume increase exponentially when the dimensions are increased (Van Dooren et al., 2005). Real problems (e.g. *Baby and the heatwave*, Chapter 13) provide a personal connection for students to appreciate the concept of scale and enlargement and the effect on the dimensions, area, surface area and volume of shapes and solids.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Try the two problems *Cans in a box* and *Filling a pool* with a group of students. Ask them to explain and justify their solution. Analyse their responses.

- What strategy did they use to solve each of these problems?
- What conceptual understanding of area, volume and scaling was evident or not evident?
- How could you improve their understanding or problem-solving skills?

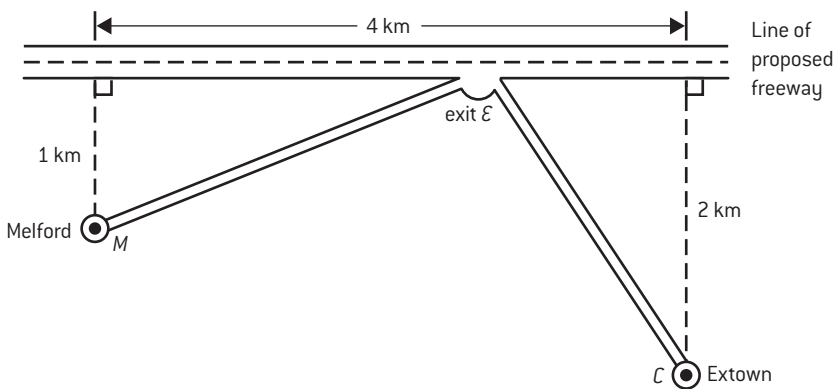
## Pythagoras' Theorem

The study of triangles led to many significant theorems in mathematics. These theorems and their applications constitute an important part of secondary measurement, geometry and algebra learning. As for other content in measurement, students should rediscover this theorem and generate informal proofs through guided investigations (see Lovitt & Clarke, 1988). Concrete materials and various technologies, including Java applets and templates available on the internet and dynamic geometry software, are useful (see Chapters 4 and 9).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :**

- Search teaching resources, including internet sites, for suitable materials and learning activities for proving Pythagoras' Theorem. Prepare a lesson.
- A Victorian secondary teacher asked his students to use different technologies to solve the following problem involving the application of Pythagoras' Theorem (Noura, 2005). They used a spreadsheet (Excel), a graphics calculator, dynamic geometry software (*Geometer's Sketchpad*) and classical geometry.

We need to establish a single exit (E) from a freeway to serve two towns, Melford (M) and Extown (C), which are located 1 km and 2 km from the freeway respectively (see Figure 8.2). The road MEC should be of minimum length in order to minimise the cost of the roads. Where should the exit (E) be placed?



Source: Swan, K. et al. (1997). *Nelson Maths 9: Maths for CSFH*. Melbourne: Nelson, p. 86.

*Figure 8.2 The freeway problem*

- Work in a small group to solve this problem using one of the technologies listed above. Each group should choose a different technology.
- Present and discuss the solution processes used in each group. What understandings of the problem and mathematics are demonstrated? In what way may the skills and understandings vary according to the technology used, if at all?
- Prepare an assessment rubric to use with students for this task. (Refer to Chapter 6 for examples.)

Trigonometry

Quinlan (2004) recommends that students should work from the concrete to the abstract, and from the particular to the general, when being introduced to new topics in mathematics. He illustrated this approach to learning about trigonometry by setting Year 10 students the task of finding the height of the wall in a classroom using two different set squares (45–45–90 and 30–60–90), straws and rulers, and tape measures. The teacher guided the students' investigation by drawing their attention to similar triangles and ratios of the sides. Moving from the particular to the general can be achieved through further investigation of similar triangles. The teacher generated interest in trigonometry by involving students physically in this measurement problem.

Dynamic geometry software provides instant and accurate feedback for students as they conduct an investigation of similar triangles or the unit circle. Students need to be able to construct shapes that retain their geometric properties when sides and vertices are dragged (drag-resistant constructions), and to use the calculation and tabulation features of the software. Figure 8.3 shows the results of an investigation of similar triangles using *Geometer's Sketchpad*. It is also possible to tabulate the ratio for different angles.

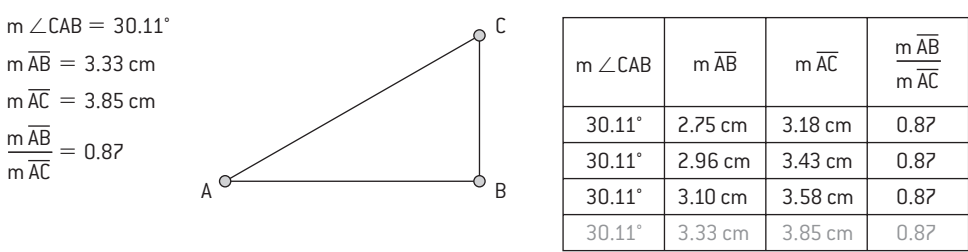


Figure 8.3 Cosine 30.11°

Some teachers, however, prefer the unit circle in order to introduce trigonometric functions. *Trigonometry walk* (Lovitt & Clarke, 1988) is a physical outdoor investigation of the unit circle, and the dynamic software products include a pre-made sketch for a unit circle investigation. Kendall and Stacey (1999) conducted a teaching experiment to compare the unit

circle method with the similar triangles method to establish the trigonometric ratios—that is, the sine, cosine and tangent of an angle in a right-angle triangle—with Year 10 students. They found that the students in the class who learned trigonometry using similar triangles and the SOHCAHTOA mnemonic for the ratios to calculate sine, cosine and tangent ( $S = \frac{O}{H}$ ;  $C = \frac{A}{H}$ ;  $T = \frac{O}{A}$ ) achieved better results in the topic test than students in the unit circle class.

## **Making connections, problem-solving and modelling**

Solving measurement problems provides a context for many number concepts and skills, including multiplicative, proportional and exponential thinking. It needs to be based on secure geometric understanding of shapes and objects, and provides an opportunity to use algebraic thinking. An approach to teaching that makes these connections explicit and integrates learning in these fields will enable students to make connections with and between mathematics and real-world problems (see Chapter 3). Teachers should design lessons in which students work collaboratively in groups on investigations, problem-solving and modelling tasks such as:

- How far away does an on-coming car have to be before it is safe to cross the road? (Lovitt & Clarke, 1988).
- How much rainwater could you collect from the roof of your home if you have 4 mm of rainfall? How much could you collect in a year? What size water tank should you purchase for your home?
- Make a cylinder by rolling an A4 piece of paper lengthways. Make another by rolling an A4 piece of paper widthways. Which cylinder has the largest volume? ('Measuring cylinders', *Maths300*).
- What if watermelons were 'square'? Would you get more or less flesh?

Problems that involve exploring relationships between distance and time, area and perimeter, and surface area and volume, lay the foundations for applications of rates of change and differential and integral calculus in later secondary years.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** In a group, choose an object, setting, context or theme of interest to you. Brainstorm issues and problems related to this theme. Identify the issues or problems that could be investigated or modelled using mathematics. Conduct a search for information to use for an investigation. Design a lesson, series of lessons or a project on learning and applying measurement concepts and skills.

## Conclusion

In this chapter, we have discussed some of the issues and approaches for teaching measurement in secondary schools. We have seen there are many places in which mathematical ideas are connected across fields and are applied in a range of vocations and real settings. Estimating and measuring in real settings, and investigating and problem-solving in groups, will enhance engagement and learning in this field of mathematics.

## Recommended reading

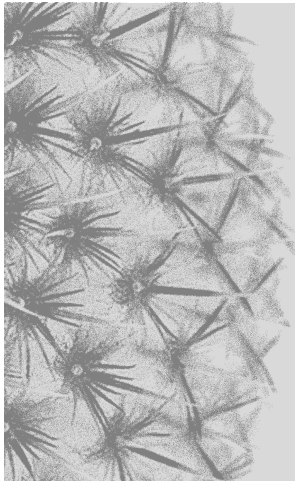
**Clements, D.H. (ed) (2003).** *Learning and teaching measurement: 2003 Yearbook*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

**Quinlan, C. (2004).** Sparking interest in trigonometry. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 60(3), 17–20.

**Noura, K. (2005).** How to teach mathematics using technology. In J. Mousley, L. Bragg & C. Campbell (eds), *Mathematics: Celebrating achievement* (pp. 256–64). Brunswick: Mathematical Association of Victoria.

**Van Dooren, W., De Bock, D., Janssens, D. & Verschaffel, L. (2005).** Students' over reliance on linearity: An effect of school-like word problems? In H. Chick & J. Vincent (eds), *Proceedings of the 29th Conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 4, pp. 265–72), <<http://onlinedb.terc.edu>>.

**White, P. & Mitchelmore, M. (2002).** Teaching and learning mathematics by abstraction. In D. Tall & M. Thomas (eds), *Intelligence and understanding in mathematics*. Flaxton, Qld: Post Press.



## CHAPTER 9

### **Teaching and learning geometry and spatial concepts**

Geometry is regarded as one of the original and essential aspects of mathematics. Kline (1979) has argued that knowledge and understanding of geometry—especially shape and location—is more fundamental than number. Objects in our world cannot exist without shape, but can be described without number. Without spatial sense we would get lost all the time. The place of geometry in the school curriculum is more profound. As Johnston-Wilder and Mason (2005) argue, the development of geometric reasoning is important for all learners:

The significant contribution to all learners' development available through geometrical thinking is to develop the power to imagine, to discern elements that are not shown, to 'see' a dynamic, as something is permitted to change, and to recognise that there are facts which must be true, relationships which may sometimes hold and relationships which can never hold. These facts and relationships are encountered and justified in the Spartan world of geometrical diagrams, but apply to the material world. Architects, engineers, scientists and artists must have taken them into account in their professional activities. (2005, p. 211)

Geometry learning is currently included in curriculum statements in Australian states as, or along with, 'space' and 'spatial sense'. The concepts and skills of location, such as maps, as well as lines, planes and angles and two- and three-dimensional shapes generally form part of these curriculum statements. Measurement concepts traditionally associated

with geometry, such as Pythagoras' Theorem and trigonometry, are usually documented separately in measurement curricula in Australia. In recent years, there has been a shift of emphasis in geometry curricula around the world from Euclidean geometry to transformation geometry (Johnston-Wilder & Mason, 2005), though the amount of classroom time devoted to geometry varies within Australia and elsewhere. There are many connections between geometry and other mathematics concepts, so there are opportunities for teachers and learners to integrate thinking and learning through the study of geometry. For example, proportion is central to the concept of similarity, and understanding the properties of geometric shapes underpins learning about area and volume. Geometry also provides an important context in which to develop visual thinking and reasoning used in all fields of mathematics.

A constructivist approach in which students solve problems, explore geometric figures and reflect upon changes made to figures enables students to experience the surprising relationships in geometry and discover these relationships for themselves (Johnston-Wilder & Mason, 2005). Geometry provides a language to describe and interpret reality and a structure to organise it, and teachers should use real contexts to motivate students and establish a link between school learning and everyday learning (Bartolini Bussi & Boero, 1998; Jones, 1998). Students should be encouraged to use a range of geometric tools for drawing, making, constructing, problem-solving and communicating. These should include pen-and-paper drawing tools, virtual tools such as dynamic geometry software and programming environments (e.g. *Micro Worlds*), and the vocational tools of carpenters, dress designers, cartographers, draftspersons and surveyors.

In this chapter, we will discuss some of the difficulties encountered by students in this area of mathematics, as well as teaching and learning geometric thinking, spatial concepts and skills. The concepts and skills discussed are not a complete list of topics but are indicative of the breadth of geometry learning in secondary schools.

## Geometry and spatial concepts in the primary years

For children, spatial sense and visual skills are needed for mathematics learning. Touching and visualising objects and materials often arranged in basic geometric structures are powerful means of establishing the abstract concepts of number in the primary years of schooling. For example, the rectangular arrangement of materials is used to model



numbers to ten, multiplication and fractions. Visual-spatial skills are needed for measurement, including estimation. Geometry learning in the primary years includes the development of language for shape and location that is essential for modelling, visualising and communicating in all areas of mathematics—for example, in, between, under, beside, near, left and right. Geometric learning also involves visualising, drawing, making, communicating and problem-solving about two- and three-dimensional shapes.

Van Hiele's (1986) levels of geometric thinking have informed the development of the geometry curriculum, especially as it relates to Euclidean geometry, through primary and secondary schooling:

- *Level 1: Recognition*—children are able to recognise and name basic shapes.
- *Level 2: Analysis*—children are able to describe attributes or properties of the basic shapes and sort, classify and make them.
- *Level 3: Ordering*—students begin to establish relationships between the properties of shapes. They are able to identify families of shapes, and make conjectures and simple deductions.
- *Level 4: Deduction*—the idea of a minimum number of properties for definitions is grasped. Students recognise relationships between properties and make logical arguments about properties
- *Level 5: Rigour*—students form chains of reasoning and justify their thinking.

The curriculum documents in Australia assume that students entering secondary school are thinking geometrically at level 3 of Van Hiele's framework. However, many of these students will not have established the analysis level of thinking (level 2). Some will not recognise the congruency of shapes that have been rotated. For example, students may call a square a 'diamond' if it is orientated so that the vertices point to the top and bottom of a page rather than one side being horizontal with the base of the page (Pugalee et al., 2002).

## **Geometry and spatial concepts in the secondary years**

In secondary school, students continue to develop their spatial sense, visual thinking and reasoning. In the intended curricula, they investigate properties and relationships of two-dimensional and three-dimensional shapes including closed curves, polygons and


polyhedra. *Invariance*—that is, a relationship or property that stays the same and does not change when some change is permitted—is a key aspect of geometric thinking (Johnston-Wilder & Mason, 2005). When students investigate *transformations*, they deepen their understanding of *congruence* and *symmetry* and the *properties* of shapes. In the senior secondary years, depending on the state and country, students use vectors and matrices to describe and investigate transformations (see classroom scenario in Chapter 2). Students explore and apply the concepts of similarity by scaling, stretching and shrinking shapes. They interpret and draw plans using multiple points of view and they solve problems by constructing, referring to known properties and using chains of reasoning.

Students' spatial sense and location skills are developed through the interpretation of maps, the use of scales, giving and following directions using compass points, drawing and analysing network diagrams to determine critical paths and shortest routes. They use Cartesian, polar, spherical and navigational systems to investigate and solve problems about location and spatial relationships. In vocational post-compulsory mathematics subjects, these concepts are explored through practical applications and problems.

The actual—that is, implemented—geometry curriculum varies within Australia, and the lack of emphasis and attention to key concepts and reasoning may explain Australian students' relatively poor performance in recent international studies of mathematics performance (TIMSS and PISA) (Thomson & Fleming, 2004; Thomson et al., 2004). Relative to their performance in other areas of the mathematics curriculum, geometry and spatial reasoning constitute the weakest area for Australian students. These studies also reveal that geometry and spatial reasoning was also the only area of the mathematics curriculum for Australian students in which boys' performance was significantly better than girls' (Thomson et al., 2004). These gender differences have a long history in Australia and elsewhere (see Chapter 13), and studies continue to find evidence that gender differences in spatial skills contribute to gender difference in other areas of mathematics (Casey et al., 2001), so considerable attention still needs to be given to closing this gender gap in Australia.

The relative weakness of Australian secondary students in geometry and spatial reasoning has not been given sufficient attention by Australian researchers in recent years. International studies indicate that, while visualisation is enjoying a renaissance in mathematics—largely through the use of technology—little pedagogical effort has been given to developing visual reasoning (Herskowitz, 1998). Herskowitz is concerned that some teachers

may be making the assumption that people are born with visual thinking skills, and so do not give attention to developing this skill.

Students in the junior secondary years will often identify shapes and solids according to what they look like rather than checking properties (Clements & Battista, 1992). The use of technology—in particular, dynamic geometry software—has drawn attention to the need to make the distinction between a drawing and a figure as some students are inclined to draw and check shapes with these tools ‘by eye’ rather than construct and check using properties (Hoyles & Jones, 1998; Laborde, 1998; Mackerell & Johnston-Wilder, 2005). Furthermore, students’ experiences have often been limited to regular polygons, so they do not recognise irregular or concave polygons or irregular or oblique prisms, pyramids and cylinders. For example, students do not recognise that this shape  is a hexagon. For many students, defining shapes does not mean that they understand the properties or can classify shapes and solids by property (for example,  $90^\circ$  rotational symmetry). Visualisation of transformations—especially rotational symmetry—is difficult for some students (Wesslen & Fernandez, 2005).

## Geometric thinking

According to Duval (1998), geometric thinking involves three kinds of cognitive processes: visualisation, construction and reasoning. Johnston-Wilder and Mason (2005) also give importance to language and points of view—that is, the importance of talking and communicating to establish meaning and to develop reasoning. Geometric modelling involves creating spatial representations to model mathematical situations and needs both visual and geometric reasoning (Pugalee et al., 2002).

## Visualisation

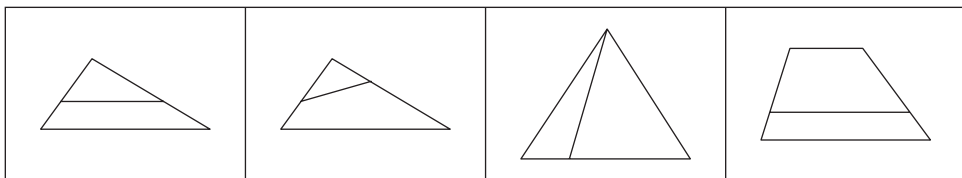
Visualisation is a two-way process between a person’s mind and an external medium (Borba & Villarreal, 2005). On the one hand, it involves the ability to interpret and understand figural information, such as seeing and recognising a shape or attribute of a figure or object (for example, parallel lines), and interpreting a map or graph of a function. It also involves the creation of images from abstract ideas, such as imagining an ellipse or imagining how objects appear from different perspectives, how objects are positioned in relation to each

other, how two-dimensional representations are related to three-dimensional objects, and predicting appearances of objects after transformations (Pugalee et al., 2002). These images can be mental or created with the aid of paper and pencil, or technology.

In everyday life, we visualise three-dimensional objects and spatial relationships—for example, we interpret diagrams for assembling furniture and machines, we interpret plans and elevations for constructing buildings, we interpret patterns for constructing garments and packages, we use visual projection to create some styles of visual art, and we interpret maps to travel to particular locations. These are excellent contexts for student activities.

Difficulties in visual interpretation begin for students when they do not discern the same details of figures and objects as the teacher or other students. Johnston-Wilder and Mason (2005) recommend three teaching strategies to enhance students' visualisation and geometric reasoning: 'say what you see'; 'same and different'; and 'how many different'. For the first strategy, when considering a figure the teacher invites each student to 'say what you see' (see Figure 9.1). As each student says what he or she sees, the student or the teacher points to this detail. By sharing these multiple views of the figure, attention will be drawn to details that may otherwise be overlooked, and discussion can then proceed to focus on the detail that is most important for the problem being considered.

#### REVIEW AND REFLECT :



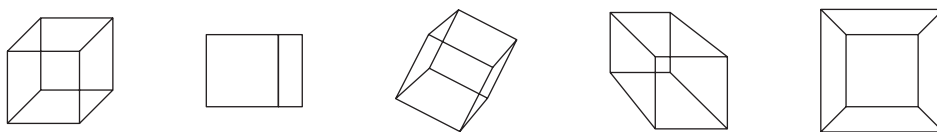
Source: Johnston-Wilder and Mason (2005, p. 36).

Figure 9.1 'Say what you see'

- In your group, consider each figure in Figure 9.1. Take it in turns to 'say what you see'. Reflect on your different responses and how they relate to geometric concepts.

- Reproduce each of the figures in Figure 9.1 on separate cards. For each card, ask some secondary students to ‘say what you see’. Record their responses. Compare their interpretations of these figures and assess their understanding of geometric concepts.
- Use these cards with pairs of secondary students. Ask one student to describe one figure to the other so that they can draw it without looking. Ask each pair of students to write a self-assessment about their interpretations and drawings. You could use these stimulus questions: What did you do well? What did you learn? What do you need to improve?

There are many contexts in which ‘what is the same and what is different’ is useful for developing visualisation and geometric reasoning—for example, establishing relationships between shapes, such as the families of quadrilaterals, and establishing the concepts of similarity and congruence through transformation. Figure 9.2 includes two-dimensional representations of a three-dimensional shape. You might ask ‘what is the same and what is different’ about these representations. In Figure 9.2, a cube is represented using different drawing techniques such as isometric and perspective drawing. Some of these depictions preserve parallel lines and some preserve equal lengths. Some are more familiar, yet we need to be able to recognise each as a representation of a cube.



Source: Adapted from Johnston-Wilder and Mason (2005, p. 59).

*Figure 9.2* **Many cubes**

‘How many different figures’ activities are also useful for establishing attributes of geometric shapes and concepts of congruence. Students can be challenged to find different shapes within shapes or to make shapes with given shapes. A range of materials is useful for these types of activities—for example, commercially produced geometric materials such as

Multi-link blocks, Polyhedra, commercial games such as *Tangrams*, *Soma Cubes*, *Kaleidoscope*, as well as geo-boards and paper for paper-folding (Burnett et al., 2005). Objects in everyday life are also very useful for these types of activity.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** The design on the walls of the buildings in Federation Square is made using right-angled triangles with sides in the ratio  $1:2:\sqrt{5}$ .



Figure 9.3 Federation Square, Melbourne

- How many different shapes are made using two congruent right-angled triangles on the Federation Square buildings?
- Describe the properties of the shapes formed.

Cut out any two congruent right-angled triangles and place them together along equal edges.

- Are different shapes possible other than those shown on the buildings in Federation Square?
- What if the triangles are scalene, isosceles, equilateral or obtuse-angled?
- Discuss with colleagues the possible learning outcomes for students.

Actually handling objects and materials is very helpful for developing geometric ideas and visualisation (Clements & Battista, 1992). In these tasks, students are challenged to determine what is the same and different about the possibilities that they consider. Teachers should encourage students to articulate these differences and justify their findings.

Imagining—that is, creating mental images and predicting change—is an important component of visualisation, and necessary for the development of reasoning (Borba & Villarreal, 2005; Johnston-Wilder & Mason, 2005). Imagining a construction, for example,

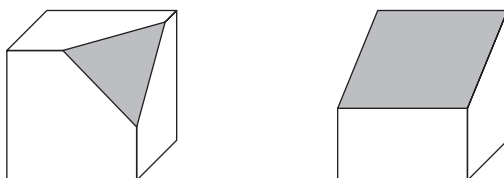
**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** The *Maths300* website (membership required for access) includes a number of problems that support the development of visualisation and geometric reasoning in three dimensions—for example, *Four-cube houses* (rotation of solids and isometric drawing), *Cube nets* (nets of solids and congruence of nets) and *Building views* (lateral, front and plan views of solids).

- Complete and analyse each of these, or similar, tasks: How do these tasks enhance students' visualisation skills? What geometric concepts are explored in these tasks? How do these tasks enhance the geometric reasoning of students?
- Prepare an assessment rubric for these tasks (see Chapter 6).
- Plan a follow-up task that would enable students to establish further the relevance of geometric concepts in a real-world context.

requires you to use relationships and properties, and hence to reason using this knowledge. Imagining cross-sections of three-dimensional shapes and transformations of three-dimensional shapes is especially challenging, and students need to test their conjectures using actual materials. In the problem depicted below, plasticine or cheese would be useful.

### Slicing a cube

Imagine slicing through a cube with a single plane. Two of the many possibilities are shown in Figure 9.4, giving cut faces of a triangle and a rectangle. What would the missing portions of the cubes look like? How many different polygons can be formed as the cut face of a cube?



Source: Johnston-Wilder and Mason (2005, p. 63).

Figure 9.4 Slicing a cube

## Language and communicating

There are many new terms for students to learn and use in geometry—not only the names of shapes, but also terms given to properties in geometry. One amusing example of confusion for some students is the idea of ‘left-angled’ triangles that some teachers have observed among secondary students (see Figure 9.5). However, students can be confused about the meaning of mathematical language—especially when the same term is used to mean something different in another context. For example, what does ‘corresponding’ mean in a definition of ‘congruent’ shapes?

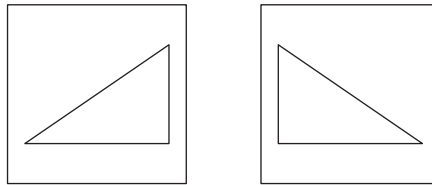


Figure 9.5 A right-angled or ‘left-angled’ triangle?

Failure to pay attention to language in geometry can obstruct students’ learning, as the following example shows. Students in a Year 9 class were given a worksheet that required them to use dynamic geometry to investigate exterior angles of polygons. A series of instructions on a worksheet (Rasmussen et al., 1995) required students to begin this task by constructing a pentagon with exterior angles (see Figure 9.6), then asked them to measure the angles before dragging the figure and forming a conjecture about the sum of exterior angles.

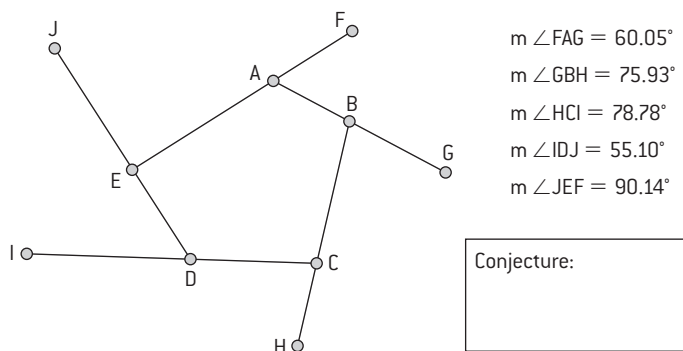


Figure 9.6 Sum of exterior angles in a polygon



Ellen, one of the high-achieving students in the class, expressed her frustration:

Are you enjoying this maths thing? [Reads from the sheet] 'Move parts of the pentagon to see if the sum changes. Make sure the pentagon remains convex.' How are we meant to know what to do when we don't even know what the words mean? Convex? Conjecture [conjecture]?

It is important to ensure that students know the meaning of terms in an investigation. In this case, the teacher needed to discuss the requirements of the task with the students before they began the investigation.

Discussion of concepts is important for developing meaning and geometric reasoning. Johnston-Wilder and Mason (2005) argue that a transmission model of teaching leaves some students trying to guess what is in the teacher's mind. A more successful approach involves collaboration among students about problems and discussion with students of the mathematical ideas and the terms used to describe, explain or make conjectures about these ideas, where students are challenged to consider alternative points of view in order to clarify the meaning of their ideas and to reach a common and shared meaning of these ideas.

The following episode, taken from the same lesson about exterior angles (see Figure 9.6), illustrates collaboration among students and the importance of language. It also illustrates the strategy 'do-talk-record' for investigations. In this episode, three boys discussed their results. Che had completed the task for homework and Lawrie asked him what he had written for the conjecture:

- Lawrie:** What do you do here, what did you write?
- Che:** Um, I wrote, um, I found out that all the angles equal up to 360 degrees.
- Lawrie:** Not matter what shape as long as its perimeter ... [interrupted].
- Che:** I found it for all pol, polygons or something like that equals up to ... [interrupted].
- Darren:** The hexagon equals up to ... [interrupted].
- Che:** It's not a hexagon. Do control later on. No, no you don't. You go to calculator. Where's your calculator?

- Lawrie:** I already calculated it. [Points to the result on the screen.]
- Che:** Yeah, well there you go. You done it all. Now you just write there [points to the screen] that all the angles equal up to 360 degrees. That's your conjuncture. [Waves his hands as if to say 'or whatever it is'.]

In their discussion, the boys argued about the name of the shape and the constraints to be included in their conjecture. They also use 'equal up' instead of 'equals' or 'adds up' (see Chapter 10 for more about this inaccurate use of language).

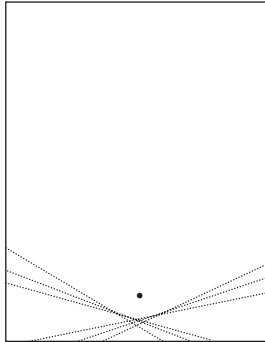
## Construction

Construction in geometry is the process of using tools to build models so that actions on these models result in expected observations (Duval, 1998). In the real world, it is not sufficient for builders to construct by eye or use insufficient criteria. For example, to ensure that their building is rectangular, builders do not rely on measuring the length of the sides only; they also measure the length of diagonals. They do this because they need to check that the walls will be constructed at right angles. Instead of measuring the angles, they measure the diagonals, because having diagonals of equal length is the necessary criterion to ensure that the parallelogram is a rectangle. The same requirements apply in geometry. It is important to distinguish between a drawing and figure. A figure is a theoretical object that is constructed using geometric properties (Hoyles & Jones, 1998).

Compass and straight edge are the traditional tools for constructing in geometry. Paper-folding is also useful (Burnett et al., 2005; Coad, 2006; Lowe, 1991a). Dynamic geometry software (*Autograph*, *Geometer's Sketchpad*, *Cabri Geometre II* and *Cabri3D*) and programming languages such as *Logo* and *Microworlds* are powerful tools for construction and the development of geometric reasoning. Coad (2006) argues that paper-folding should be used in conjunction with dynamic geometry software. Students enjoy paper-folding, and he wonders whether students will generate better understanding of geometric concepts through well-designed paper-folding activities (see Figure 9.7).

Certainly teachers need to be aware that students sometimes use the software tool to draw shapes 'by eye' or 'freehand' rather than using the geometer's tools embedded in the menus of the software to construct shapes (Hoyles & Jones, 1998; Mackrell & Johnston-Wilder, 2005; Vincent & McCrae, 1999). The shapes that they create 'by eye' do not stay intact

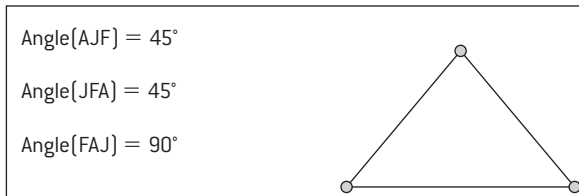
Mark a point in the centre of a page about 4 cm from the bottom. Fold the bottom edge of the paper so that it touches the point. Make another fold by starting from a different point along the bottom of the page. Repeat a number of times.



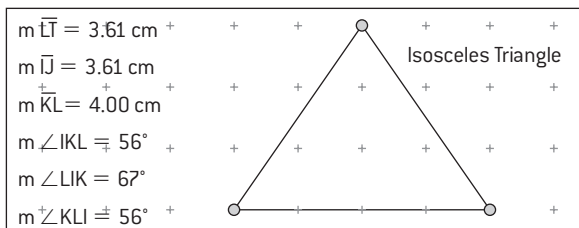
A parabola is a locus of points equidistant from a point and a line.

*Figure 9.7* Folding paper to form tangents to a parabola

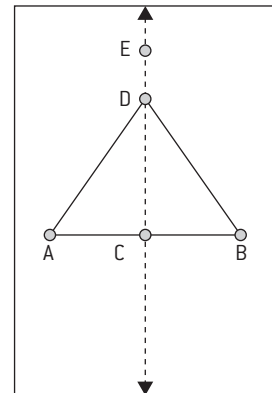
as squares or rectangles—for example, when sides or vertices are dragged. Their learning may therefore be limited because they can't then use the dynamic aspects of the software for investigating these shapes. See, for example, the isosceles triangles constructed using *Geometers Sketchpad* shown in Figure 9.8.



Ian's drawing



Ben's drawing



Construction using perpendicular bisector

*Figure 9.8* Isosceles triangles constructed using *Geometer's Sketchpad*

Ian was satisfied when his drawing looked like an isosceles triangle. The teacher had to remind him to check by measuring the angles or sides. Ben used the grid tool, and so used line-symmetry in the construction of his isosceles triangle. In the third example, the ‘perpendicular bisector’ tool was used. To construct the isosceles triangle, a perpendicular line is constructed (CE) after drawing a line for one side of the triangle (AB). Then two equal sides can be constructed from the end of side to the perpendicular line (AD and BD) to form the third vertex. These examples show that teachers need to assist students to distinguish between drawing ‘by eye’ and constructing shapes using the software tools. Familiarity with the software will improve students’ knowledge and skills with using the software, but these may need to be built up over a period of time. Initially teachers could provide pre-constructed shapes for students to use for investigations (Mackrell & Johnston-Wilder, 2005; Vincent & McCrae, 1999). Mackrell and Johnston-Wilder (2005) recommend using pre-constructed shapes or files:

- in the early stages of learning to use the software;
- when students are at the stage of recognising the shapes and properties but do not understand the relationship between them (van Hiele, level 2—see earlier in chapter);
- when it is not necessary for students to be able to construct the shape for the learning objectives to be achieved; or
- when the construction is too complex for students to achieve in the context of the lesson.

Students should be encouraged to construct:

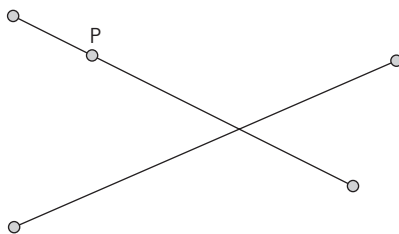
- when they have skills and confidence with the software;
- when they have some idea of the relationship between properties and understand that these properties need to be embedded in the shape;
- when the process of constructing the shape leads to learning outcomes planned for the lesson;
- when the construction provides a worthwhile challenge for the student; and
- for open-ended tasks.

## Reasoning

The main functions of reasoning are considered to be to understand, to explain and to convince (Hershkowitz, 1998). This means that teachers need to create a safe and supportive environment for talking, listening, questioning, challenging and convincing. Students need to be invited to make conjectures—that is, to make an assertion that something is reasonable or a property holds. They also need to be praised for making modifications to their conjectures following experimentation or challenging questions from peers. According to Johnston-Wilder and Mason (2005), mathematical thinking will flourish in such environments.

Sometimes, explanations of relationships just seem obvious or intuitive. Jones (1998) argues that intuitive reasoning precedes formal reasoning. Noticing elements and relationships can be developed into a chain of reasoning. According to Jones, intuitions are theories or coherent systems that support reaching a conclusion.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** You are given two intersecting straight lines and a point P marked on one of them. Show how to construct, using a straight edge and compass, a circle that is tangent to both lines and that has the point P as its point of tangency to one of the lines [see Figure 9.9].



Source: Jones (1998, pp. 80–81).

*Figure 9.9* **Construct a circle that is tangent to two lines**

- Work with another person and use dynamic geometry software to solve this problem.
- What processes did you follow? What strategies did you try? What knowledge did you use?
- Explain your reasoning—that is, justify your solution.

Jones recorded the following discussion between students about this problem:

Subject CR says: ‘Well, the tangent is perpendicular to the line of radius, isn’t it?’ so they constructed a perpendicular line through P and constrained the centre of the circle to lie on this perpendicular. Then subject CR suggested that they construct a perpendicular line to the lower of the two intersecting lines and move it into the correct place. At this point, TC wonders if the centre of the circle lies on the bisector of the angle between the two intersecting lines. With that, the problem was solved. (Jones, 1998, p. 81)

Hershkowitz (1998, p. 30) argues that ‘reasoning processes are now considered as a variety of actions that pupils take in order to communicate with, and explain to others, as well as to themselves, what they see, what they discover, and what they think and conclude’. Problems and investigations using paper-folding or dynamic geometry provide opportunities for students to communicate, explain, convince and develop the skills for proof.

## Aspects of geometry curricula

### *Lines, planes and angles*

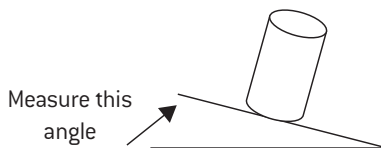
In Chapter 8, we discussed the difficulties that some junior secondary students have with identifying angles. With respect to geometry, the concepts of co-interior, alternate and corresponding angles are often introduced to secondary students in textbooks using a series of definitions and exercises. A more engaging way to introduce students to these concepts is through investigation. Paper-folding, pen and paper constructions and dynamic geometry are suitable tools for these constructions and suitable investigations can be found in various resources (e.g. Vincent, 2000; Rasmussen et al., 1995).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Develop or find an activity for investigating angle properties involving parallel lines using a dynamic geometry tool. Consider whether this task should involve construction by the students or use of a template.

The difficulties that some students have with angles became clear to James, a pre-service teacher, in a geometry lesson when students investigated the geometry of the Leaning Tower of Pisa. The students had been learning about the different types of angles. He decided that an investigation would show how these angles and relationships could be used for a real-world problem. For this task, the students worked in small groups and had to predict how long it would take for the Leaning Tower of Pisa to fall over after measuring the current lean of the tower from a photograph. James had gathered information from the internet to develop the materials for the task. He prepared a sequence of questions and an assessment rubric to guide the students in their investigation. He demonstrated and explained an experiment for them to find the angle at which a cylinder would topple over (see Figure 9.10), though he did not include a diagram of this experiment on the worksheet.



Place a cylinder on an inclined plane with a rough surface and measure the angle at which it topples over.



Source: <[www.kidsnewsroom.org/images/100299/pisa.jpg](http://www.kidsnewsroom.org/images/100299/pisa.jpg)>

*Figure 9.10* **Leaning Tower of Pisa and experiment**

Afterwards, James and his university supervisor discussed the lesson, and the students' problem-solving strategies and understanding of angle. They noted that some students had difficulty identifying the angle to measure on the photograph of the Leaning Tower of Pisa. The students did not know whether to measure the deviation from the vertical or the horizontal. It was also not clear that they understood why the angle that they were measuring in the experiment related to the angle at which the tower leaned.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :**

- What would you prepare for students if you were going to use the Leaning Tower of Pisa investigation in your classroom? Why?
- Design an assessment rubric for an authentic geometric problem that you would use in the classroom. Explain and justify your rubric according to the curriculum and models for assessing performance tasks in mathematics. [Refer to Chapter 6.]

Visualising angles between planes in three-dimensional objects is especially difficult for students. Students need experiences of physical models of these objects and virtual models are also useful (for example, *3D-XplorMath*, *Autograph*, *Cabri3D*, *Working Mathematically: Space*).

## Properties and relationships of two- and three-dimensional figures

The features of the boundaries, surfaces and interiors of two- and three-dimensional figures (closed curves, polygons and polyhedra) constitute a body of mathematical knowledge. Through investigation of these features and classification of shapes, students develop an understanding of uniqueness—that is, the information that is necessary and adequate for defining a shape and a class of shapes. It is in this part of the curriculum that students learn about Pythagoras' Theorem, the Golden Ratio, and other 'classics' of mathematics. Students will apply their knowledge of shapes in many other areas of mathematics and in practical situations. In this section, we have chosen to focus on quadrilaterals to illustrate three different approaches that can be used for investigating properties of figures.

The first approach is *analytic* and uses dynamic geometry software. Students are provided with a pre-constructed file of a shape and asked to analyse the features by 'dragging' vertices or sides (Rasmussen et al., 1995; Vincent, 2000). In the example shown in Figure 9.11 students use a pre-constructed file of a quadrilateral (ABDC) with an interior quadrilateral constructed from midpoints. They drag the vertices, or sides (in Figure 9.11, vertex A) to investigate the interior quadrilateral. They use the measure tools to form and test a conjecture about the interior quadrilateral.



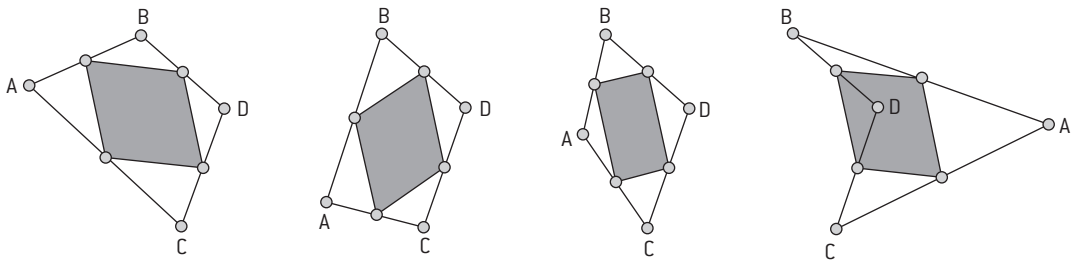


Figure 9.11 Midpoint quadrilaterals formed by dragging vertex A of a quadrilateral

Mackrell and Johnston-Wilder (2005) stress the importance of the questions that teachers use to scaffold students' learning for such investigations. Well-designed activities will draw students' attention to the aspects of the figure that are invariant (do not change) when it is 'dragged'. 'What is happening to the figure?' may produce descriptive accounts of a figure, but teachers need to use a more concise question: 'What stays the same and what changes?' This question leads students to look carefully to find the elements of the figure that do not change—that is, the essential properties of the shape. It also invites students to explain and perhaps to justify. 'If I change this, what else changes and what stays the same?' questions are useful for whole-class discussions of a projected figure.

Using dynamic geometry software or an expressive tool (such as turtle geometry with *Logo* or *MicroWorlds*) to construct shapes is the second approach for investigating the properties of shapes. David Leigh-Lancaster (2004) provides a dynamic geometry example. For this investigation, students start with two line segments of different lengths that intersect and construct a quadrilateral using these line segments as the diagonals (see Figure 9.12).

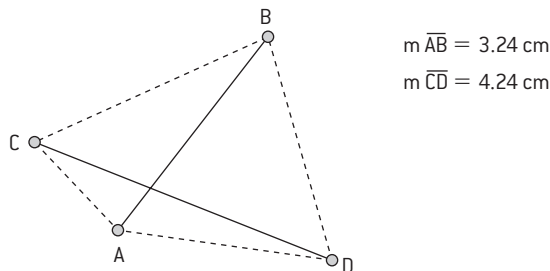


Figure 9.12 Constructing quadrilaterals from diagonals

Students are then invited to move one of these line segments and observe ‘what stays the same and what changes’. A more structured approach to this task would be to pose a series of ‘What if . . .?’ questions—for example, ‘What if the intersecting lines bisect each other?’ or ‘What if the intersecting lines are at right-angles?’ Teachers are not limited to computer-based activities for these investigations; for example, Lowe (1991a) and Antje Leigh-Lancaster (2004) suggest paper-folding activities. For one of these activities, students predict how to cut a piece of paper that has been folded twice at right angles in order to produce a rhombus, square, rectangle and octagon (Figure 9.13).

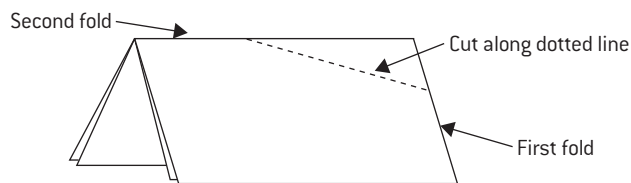


Figure 9.13 Cutting folded paper to construct quadrilaterals

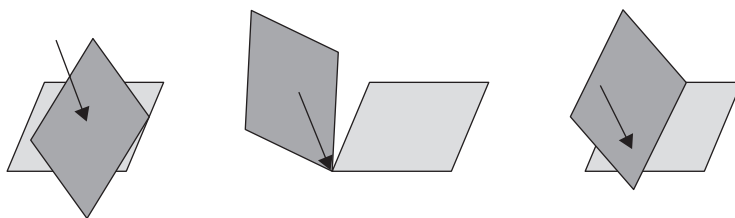
A third approach is through the use of *rich tasks* or *real problems*. Rich tasks represent the ways in which the knowledge and skills are used in the real world, address a range of outcomes in the one task, are open-ended, and encourage students to disclose their own understanding of what they have learned (Clarke, n.d.). *The shape we're in* (Department of Education, Queensland, 2004) is one example. For this task, students investigate the mathematical concepts of one container, one domestic object, one mechanical device and an object from nature. They also have to investigate the consequences—mathematically and practically—of changing the object in some way. Vincent (2005) includes structured investigations of the geometric features of buildings and objects in central Melbourne. Various places that provide a context for investigations are regularly described in *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*—for example, the parabola formed by the cable on the Golden Gate Bridge (Brinkworth & Scott, 2002). Pierce et al. (2005) describe how students can use digital photography in combination with dynamic geometry software to investigate geometric features of nature, architectural features and mechanical objects.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Work in a team to prepare a unit of work for a topic concerning the characteristics and properties of a particular polygon, closed curve, polyhedron or conic section.

- Use the learning cycle model for the unit [Frid, 2000a, see Chapter 7].
- Document learning objectives and include assessment tasks to use at the beginning and end of the learning cycle.
- Use technology or concrete materials for investigations.
- Explain how you would formalise these characteristics and properties with students following their investigation.
- Find, or design, tasks for students to apply these characteristics or properties to a real-world context.

## Isometric transformations

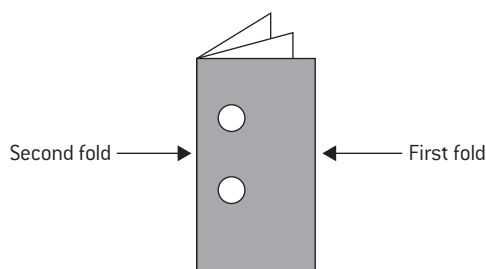
Transformations that keep shapes the same—that is, congruent—are called ‘isometries’. (Isometric means same measure.) They include reflecting (flipping), translating (sliding) and rotating (turning). According to Wesslen and Fernandez (2005), there are two key ideas about isometric transformations. The first is that only one transformation is needed to map one shape on to a congruent figure. The second is that two transformations are the same as making one other transformation. (A reflection followed by a translation is sometimes called a glide.) Some students have difficulties or misconceptions regarding transformations (Wesslen & Fernandez, 2005). They don’t realise that translating a shape with reference to one point (for example, on a point on one edge) is the same as translating with reference to another point (on another edge). Also, students are not confident rotating a shape where the centre of the rotation is not on the edge of the shape or in the centre of the shape—that is, they think that for all rotations the figure must stay on the same spot (see Figure 9.14).



*Figure 9.14* Rotation about the centre, the edge and a point not on the centre

Paper-folding and digital technology resources are useful media for developing students' understanding of transformations and addressing these misconceptions. Students can use technology to move (transform) one shape on to another (Johnston-Wilder & Mason, 2005; Vincent, 2000; Wesslen & Fernandez, 2005). Some computer-based games and interactive learning materials are available (for example, from The Learning Federation and the National Library of Virtual Manipulatives) and drawing tools in word processing software or pre-constructed figures using dynamic geometry software may be used. Students will need instruction on how to use the transformation menu in these tools. You may notice differences in learning preferences for media or resources among your students. Since different students will find different media easier to use, it is important to incorporate a variety of media and tools to support their learning.

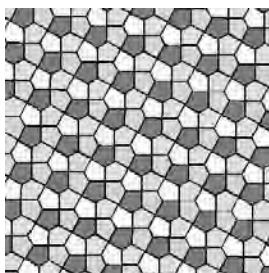
**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** An A4 sheet of paper has been folded in half lengthways and in half again. A hole-punch tool has been used to make two holes in the folded piece of paper, as shown in Figure 9.15.



*Figure 9.15* Transformation using folded paper and a hole punch

- Draw a rectangle to represent the unfolded piece of A4 paper and mark where you predict the holes will be when the paper is unfolded.
- Work with a partner and fold the paper in different ways; use a hole-punch and predict the placement of the holes.
- Design some other paper-folding tasks about reflection (see Johnston-Wilder & Mason, 2005).
- Investigate technology-based activities for isometric transformations.

Students learn about the properties of shapes through investigations of transformations. They also develop further understanding of congruence through explorations of tiling patterns and tessellation. They can be challenged to find which two-dimensional and three-dimensional shapes tessellate or find different tiling patterns using one or two shapes (see, for example, Figure 9.16).



*Figure 9.16 Cairo tiling (pentagons)*

For these explorations, students should be encouraged to describe the transformation used to create the tessellation and form conjectures about the properties of shapes, including irregular shapes that tessellate. Simply working with physical objects may not achieve the desired learning; students need to imagine in order to understand (Johnston-Wilder & Mason, 2005). Again, attracting attention to particular features and relationships is important for developing students' thinking.

Analysis, construction or rich tasks are suitable activities for teachers to use. Famous or well-known buildings may be the source of rich tasks, especially for unusual tiling patterns (see Eppstein, n.d. for examples). The particular tiling pattern of an irregular pentagon, shown in Figure 9.16, is called the Cairo tessellation because it appears in a famous mosque in Cairo. The buildings in Federation Square in Melbourne (see Figure 9.3 above) show an example of Pinwheel Aperiodic Tiling (Bourke, 2002; Vincent, 2005). This tiling pattern, made with right-angled triangles in the ratio 1:2:  $\sqrt{5}$ , can be constructed through a series of iterations. Five triangles can be transformed to make a similar right-angled triangle, and so on. It is aperiodic tiling because the tiling pattern is not repeated within a region bounded by a parallelogram.

## Non-isometric transformations

The tracking of transformations through a third dimension illustrates a different relationship between two-dimensional and three-dimensional shapes from that developed through a study of boundaries and nets. Drawing tools in word processing software can be used to show translations of two-dimensional shapes in the plane (x,y) through a third dimension (z) to create prisms and cylinders (see Figure 9.2). Three-dimensional dynamic geometry (*Autograph*, *Cabri3D*) permits rotations, reflections and translations to create three-dimensional figures. For example, a right cylinder can be constructed by rotating a rectangle around a line in the plane of the rectangle (see Figure 9.17).



Figure 9.17 Cylinder created by rotation of rectangle

Transformations that change distances between points in a shape produce different figures. Such transformations include dilation (or scaling), squeezing and stretching, and shearing. Dilating (or scaling) a figure uniformly in all directions produces similar figures. For dilations, students need to use proportional thinking and explore the ratios of the distances between points on the projected figures to answer the questions and determine scale factors. Contexts for studying dilation or scaling and similar figures include scale drawings and perspective drawing.

Trigonometry is a specific example of similar right-angled triangles (see Chapter 8). The focus in trigonometry is the constant ratio of the lengths of sides of similar right-angled triangles (and the pattern in the ratio of sides for different right-angled triangles as illustrated using a unit circle) rather than the ratio of corresponding sides of similar figures to show scale factors.

Dilating or scaling a figure non-uniformly does not produce similar figures. This occurs when you squeeze or stretch a figure by using different scale factors for the distances between points of a shape. So, for example, the length of one side of a parallelogram is stretched by one factor but the length of the other sides is stretched by a different factor. To

illustrate this concept, project an image of a shape using an overhead projector that is not parallel with the screen (Lowe, 1991a). Students can investigate ‘what stays the same and what is different?’ when shapes are squeezed or stretched.

Shearing of a polygon occurs when one line is invariant and every other point moves in proportion to the distance away from that line. So shearing a square produces a parallelogram with the same height (GHCD in Figure 9.18). This not the same as a square being pushed over (EFCD in Figure 9.18). It is stretched as well.

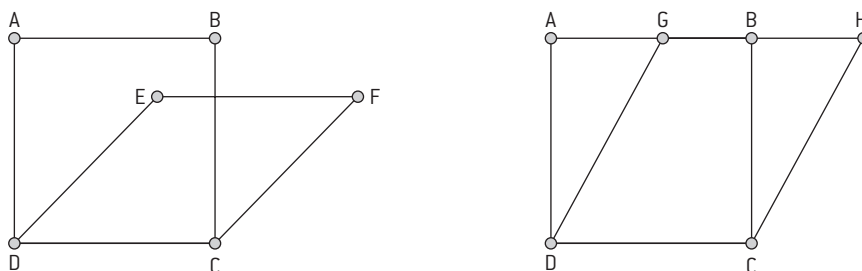


Figure 9.18 Pushed-over square (EFCD) and sheared square (GHCD)

Truncations of three-dimensional shapes are another type of transformation. Truncations occur when you slice off a section of a solid (see Figure 9.4). Students can investigate the solids produced when regular polyhedra are truncated using physical materials or dynamic geometry (for example, *3D-XplorMath* or *Cabri3D*).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Recall the task in Figure 9.4: cutting the vertex (corner) off a cube. The cut was made at an equal length on the three edges of the cube that met at the vertex. Now imagine cutting off each vertex of the cube.

- What shape do you imagine the remaining object to be? Make one of these shapes yourself.
- Now imagine cutting bigger and bigger slices from each vertex until the slices meet in the middle of each edge. What shape is left on the face of the cube? Make this polyhedron using 3D construction materials or modelling clay. Construct a net for this polyhedron. Find out what this polyhedron is called.
- Now use a dynamic geometry software to model this truncation.

## Location and spatial reasoning

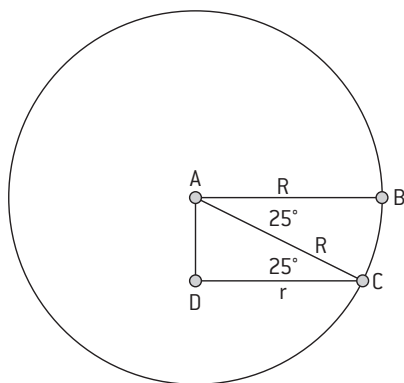
Rich tasks are suitable contexts for location and spatial reasoning. ‘To find their way, people have to take on board the links between the orientation of their body, that of the plan and that of real space, and sometimes the orientation of persons they are asking their way from.’ (Berthelot & Salin, 1998, p. 75) To extend students’ spatial reasoning, using either coordinate systems or directions and distances, they need to have experiences of unfamiliar situations—that is, places and buildings of which they have no mental images. Excursions and school camps are therefore ideal contexts for developing spatial reasoning. With the required levels of legal supervision, students should be provided opportunities to plan and/or follow routes on various types of maps: road maps using Cartesian systems, public transport maps using network diagrams, and topographical maps showing geographical features. See, for example, an investigation of the London Underground (Brinkworth & Scott, 2001). These tasks also involve the development of location and spatial language and communication skills.

In the junior secondary years, Cartesian coordinate systems and geometry are the focus of students’ learning and in the senior secondary years polar, spherical and navigational systems of spatial reasoning are developed (Day et al., 2001). Spherical geometry begins with a study of coordinates using latitude and longitude. Using a cross-sectional view of the globe, students consider problems of calculating distances on the surface of the globe between places with the same longitude and then places with the same latitude. Hence students encounter the meaning of a nautical mile and apply the spherical cosine rule to solve these problems (see, for example, Figure 9.19).

Interesting investigations of invariance are encountered when considering the mapping of the globe (map projection)—that is, transforming a spherical grid onto a rectangular grid for two-dimensional maps. Wilkins and Hicks (2001) discuss three commonly used map projections (Mercator, Robinson and Mollweide). Each of these map projections has preserved or distorted different properties of the spherical geometry: the distance between points, area, direction or shape or a combination of these. The problem that they pose for students is to calculate the area of the oceans on the earth for each of these maps. Johnston-Wilder and Mason (2005) propose a different approach to the problem of map projection.



Carnarvon ( $24^{\circ}53'S$ ,  $113^{\circ}40'E$ , in Western Australia and Bundaberg, ( $24^{\circ}52'S$ ,  $152^{\circ}21'E$ ) in Queensland are on opposite sides of Australia at approximately the same latitude ( $25^{\circ}S$ ). How far west is Carnarvon from Bundaberg?



Find angular separation between Carnarvon and Bundaberg:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Angular separation} &= 152^{\circ}21' - 113^{\circ}40' \\ &= 38^{\circ}41' \\ &= 2321'\end{aligned}$$

AB and AC are radii of the earth ( $R$ ) and DC is the radius of the  $25^{\circ}S$  parallel ( $r$ ).

$$\begin{aligned}\text{In } \triangle ACD \cos 25^{\circ} &= r/R \\ \Rightarrow r &= R \cos 25^{\circ} \\ &= 0.9063R\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Since } 1' \text{ of arc at } 0^{\circ}S &= 1 \text{ nautical mile, distance} = 2321 \times 0.9063 \text{ n miles} \\ &= 2104 \text{ miles} \\ &= 2104 \times 1852 \text{ m} \\ &= 3897 \text{ km}\end{aligned}$$

Source: Hodgson and Leigh-Lancaster (1990, p. 471).

*Figure 9.19 Distance at the same latitude*

They use a longitudinal cross-section of a globe to illustrate three possible projections of the globe: gnomonic, stereographic and orthographic. The implications of map projections for navigation provide a rich source for problem-solving tasks. For example, Hodgson and Leigh-Lancaster (1990) pose a series of navigation problems to illustrate the difficulties of charting a course using Mercator maps.

Network analysis is a relatively new area of school mathematics arising from the field of operations research and graph theory. A network diagram or graph is shown in Figure 9.20. Networks diagrams are constructed of points (vertices or nodes) and links (lines or edges) used to show connections between places on a map or nodes on a network (such as the internet). In some states, students begin to solve network problems, such as finding the shortest route, in the junior secondary years. Network analysis is included in some senior and vocational mathematics subjects.

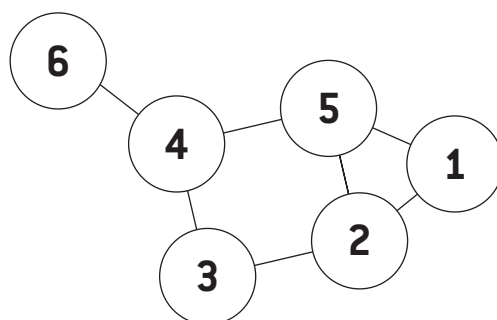


Figure 9.20 Network diagram or graph

#### REVIEW AND REFLECT :

- Use a map on the internet or *Google Earth* to find your home.
- Investigate different coordinate systems, map projections or network diagrams, and teaching materials for these location contexts and topics for learning (see Farmer, 2005; Faulkner, 2004; Hekimoglu, 2005 for senior secondary examples).
- Find or develop a rich task using topographical maps, network diagrams or Cartesian, polar or spherical coordinate systems.
- Identify the learning outcomes for mathematics and for other disciplines and generic skills in the case of junior secondary mathematics.

## Vectors

Vectors and matrices can be used to describe and investigate transformations and to solve a range of geometric problems involving magnitude and direction, with particular application to physics (Day et al., 2001). These topics are included in some senior secondary curricula. It is often assumed that students taking advanced senior mathematics subjects understand mathematics, but this is not necessarily the case, and the study of vectors illustrates some of the difficulties students encounter when their mathematical thinking is based on operational or procedural knowledge (Forster, 2000a, 2000b). Researchers and

experienced mathematics teachers agree that vectors are best introduced through problems based in a real-world context (Forster, 2000a, 2000b; McMullin, 1999; Nissen, 2000). Certainly, there are some interesting contexts that could replace the more predictable physics and navigation examples, including amusement park rides (McMullin, 1999) and cave exploration (Vacher & Mylroie, 2001). However, there is no consistent view on whether students are likely to have more success in solving problems using geometric, trigonometric or Cartesian component methods. There is some evidence that the use of graphics calculators can support the development of students' conceptual understanding of vectors (Forster, 2000b; Goos et al., 2000). In both these studies, students also worked with concrete aids and/or pen and paper diagrams. In the problem illustrated in Figure 4.10 in Chapter 4, the teacher used transparent grid paper, cut-out polygons and an overhead projector to demonstrate the matrix transformation problem. The students used the same materials to explore the problem and a graphics calculator for the matrix calculations.

## Conclusion

Too often, the geometry curriculum in secondary schools is implemented as a series of disconnected topics or 'fun' activities without careful consideration of the need to develop geometric thinking, connection of geometric ideas, and their application to real problems for students. Geometry lessons should connect with prior knowledge and engage students in creative thinking and problem-solving. Imagining and prediction are an important part of this process. Students should be encouraged to imagine a figure before sketching it, to sketch it before constructing it, and to make a conjecture about what will happen when investigating and problem-solving.

## Recommended reading

Coad, L. (2006). Paper folding in the middle school classroom and beyond. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 62(1), 6–13.

Day, R., Kelley, P., Krussel, L., Lott, J. & Hirstein, J. (2001). *Navigating through geometry in grades 9–12*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

**Johnston-Wilder, S. & Mason, J. (2005).** *Developing thinking in geometry*. London: Open University.

**Mackrell, K. & Johnston-Wilder, P. (2005).** Thinking geometrically: Dynamic geometry. In S. Johnston-Wilder & D. Pimm (eds), *Teaching secondary mathematics with ICT* (pp. 81–100). Maidenhead: Open University Press.

**Mammana, C. & Villani, V. (1998).** *Perspectives on the teaching of geometry for the 21st century*. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic.

**Pugalee, D., Frykholm, J., Johnson, A., Slovin, H., Malloy, C. & Preston, R. (2002).** *Navigating through geometry in grades 6–8*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

#### *Software and interactive manipulatives*

*3D-XplorMath*, <<http://vmm.math.uci.edu/3D-XplorMath/index.html>>.

*Autograph*, <[www.autograph-maths.com](http://www.autograph-maths.com)>.

*Cabri 3D*, <[www.cabri.com](http://www.cabri.com)>.

*Cabri Geometre II*, <[www.cabri.com](http://www.cabri.com)>.

*Geometers Sketchpad*. Key Curriculum Press, <[www.dynamicgeometry.com](http://www.dynamicgeometry.com)>.

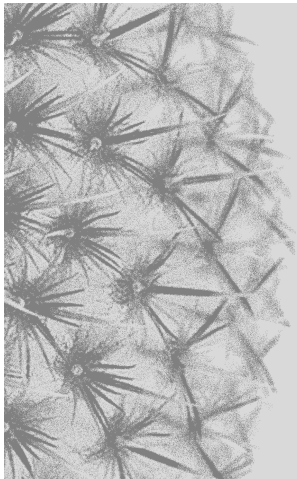
*Logo* (PC Logo, Logo Plus and Terrapin Logo versions), <<http://el.media.mit.edu/Logo-foundation/products/software.html>>.

*Micro Worlds*, <<http://el.media.mit.edu/Logo-foundation/products/software.html>>.

National Library of Virtual Manipulatives, <[www.matti.usu.edu/nlvm](http://www.matti.usu.edu/nlvm)>.

The Learning Federation, <[www.thelearningfederation.edu.au/tlf2](http://www.thelearningfederation.edu.au/tlf2)>.

*Working Mathematically: Space*, Department for Education and Children's Services, South Australia.



## CHAPTER 10

### Teaching and learning algebra

Perhaps more than any other area of school mathematics, the study of algebra is bound to change dramatically with the infusion of currently available and emerging technology. What was once the inviolable domain of paper-and-pencil manipulative algebra is now within the easy reach of school-level computing technology. This technology demands new visions of school algebra that shift the emphasis away from symbolic manipulation toward conceptual understanding, symbol sense, and mathematical modelling. (Heid, 1995, p. 1)

Algebra—particularly when interpreted as symbolic manipulation—has an image problem in secondary schooling, with many adults seeing it as the beginnings of their downward slide in school mathematics. Such mind-numbing activity is seen as having little relevance to everyday life, creating widespread disenchantment in mathematics classrooms in a context where increasing numbers of students complete secondary schooling (Stacey & Chick, 2004, p. 2). To combat this, Stacey and Chick suggest that algebra needs to be reconceptualised as a topic of relevance to students in such a way that they are able to recognise this relevance and immediate purpose for themselves.

There is a plethora of current approaches to the teaching of algebra: the generalisation approach (Lee, 1996; Mason, 1996; Mason et al., 2005); the problem-solving approach involving word problems (Bednarz, 2001; Bell, 1996); the functional approach (Yerushalmy, 2000; Yerushalmy & Gilead, 1999); the language approach (Padula et al., 2001, 2002); the modelling of physical and mathematical phenomena approach (Arzarello & Robutti, 2003; Borba &

Scheffer, 2003; Rasmussen & Nemirovsky, 2003); and the historical approach (van Amerom, 2002; V. Katz, 2006; Puig & Rojano, 2004; Radford & Grenier, 1996). It would be only fair to say, however, that a balanced approach in the classroom would involve some of these approaches at different times as the various approaches highlight the fundamental concepts of algebra in different ways.

In this chapter, we provide an overview of how early algebraic ideas are fostered in the primary school, identify the core ideas in school algebra, illustrate approaches to facilitate students' transition from arithmetical to algebraic thinking, briefly highlight language difficulties associated with translation of word problems, and look at generational and transformational activities in algebra. This is followed by a major focus on functions, and then finally the use of computer algebra systems and algebra.

## Early algebraic ideas fostered in the primary years

Currently, in the majority of curriculum contexts, the introduction of algebra begins in late primary school or the beginning of secondary school. As Kieran (2006) points out, even though algebra and arithmetic share the same signs and symbols, 'many conceptual adjustments are required of the beginning algebra student as these signs and symbols shift in meaning from those commonly held in arithmetic' (2006, p. 13). Warren (2003), in a study of Year 7 and 8 students in Queensland, found that many students are leaving primary school with limited notions of mathematical structure and arithmetic operations as general processes—a dubious foundation for secondary school mathematics courses introducing algebra. Calls to include algebra in the early primary school curriculum have not fallen entirely on deaf ears, as the National Council of Teachers of Mathematics [NCTM] in the United States has endorsed the early introduction of algebra recommending algebraic activities be nurtured from kindergarten and algebraic notation be introduced between Years 3 and 5 (NCTM, 2000). Proponents of early algebra inclusion in the lower years of primary school (e.g. Carpenter & Levi, 2000; Lins & Kaput, 2004) do not see arithmetic and algebra as distinct, arguing that 'a deep understanding of arithmetic requires certain mathematical generalizations' (Schliemann et al., 2007, p. 8) and algebraic notation facilitates young children's expression of such mathematical generalisations—just as it does for adolescents and adults. In the particular approach adopted by Schliemann and colleagues, for example,

algebra is seen as a generalised arithmetic of numbers and quantities. Their approach encompasses ‘a move from thinking about relations among particular numbers and measures toward thinking about relations among sets of numbers and measures, from computing numerical answers to describing relations among variables’ (2007, p. 10). Research findings from their studies in conjunction with other colleagues have shown that children as young as seven understand the equality principle of algebra, and children in Year 3 can develop consistent notations to deal with relationships involving known and unknown quantities.

## Core algebraic ideas

Kieran (2004) presents a model for conceptualising what she sees as the principal activities of school algebra—namely, *generational*, *transformational* and *global/meta-level* activities. The generational activities involve forming expressions and equations—the objects of algebra. The underlying objects of equations and expressions are variables and unknowns. Transformational or rule-based activities include such processes as collecting like terms and solving equations. A great deal of transformational activity concerns equivalent forms and relies on well-developed notions of equivalence. Global/meta-level activities involve algebra as a tool in problem-solving, modelling, noticing structure, studying change, generalising, analysing relationships, justifying and proving. According to Kieran (2004), these higher level activities cannot be separated from the generational or transformational activities without the purpose of learning algebra being lost. Thus algebraic thinking depends on the development of several core ideas, not the least of which are equivalence and variable (Knuth et al., 2005).

### *Equivalence*

Kieran (1992, p. 398) sees ‘a conception of the symmetric and transitive character of equality’ as one of the necessary ‘requirements for generating and adequately interpreting structural representations such as equations’. It is therefore imperative that students view the equal sign in algebra as a relational symbol indicating that two expressions are equivalent rather than as an operational symbol indicating that they should ‘do the sum’. Typical responses to the question ‘Explain the meaning of the “=” sign’, provided by a Victorian teacher’s Year 8 class, illustrate these respective viewpoints:

The  $=$  sign is used in equations to show that whatever is on the right of the ' $=$ ' sign is equal to whatever is on the left of the ' $=$ ' sign e.g.  $49 = 7 \times 7$ ,  $3 + 3 = 5 + 1$  etc.

The ' $=$ ' sign specifies that you are coming to the conclusion of a sum of something e.g.  $3 \times 2 = 6$ .  $=$  means you are going to have a total. (Baroudi, 2006, p. 28)

Much previous research has shown that many students hold an operational view of the equal sign (e.g. Falkner et al., 1999; Rittle-Johnson & Alibali, 1999), and this extends well into secondary school (McNeil & Alibali, 2005). Recently, Knuth and colleagues (2005, 2006) investigated sixth, seventh and eighth grade students' interpretations of the equal sign, their understanding of the preservation of the equivalence relation in the process of solving an equation, and the relation between students' equal sign understanding and their performance in solving algebraic equations. Three of the tasks used in these studies are shown in Figure 10.1.

**Task 1: Interpreting the equal sign.**

The following question asks about this statement:

$$3 + 4 = 7$$

↑

- a) The arrow above points to a symbol. What is the name of the symbol?
- b) What does the symbol mean?
- c) Can the symbol mean anything else? If yes, please explain.

**Task 2: Using the concept of mathematical equivalence.**

Is the number that goes in the  $[\ ]$  the same number in the following two equations? Explain your reasoning.

$$2 \times [\ ] + 15 = 31 \qquad 2 \times [\ ] + 15 - 9 = 31 - 9$$

**Task 3: Equation solving.**

What value of  $m$  will make the following number sentence true?

$$4m + 10 = 70$$

Source: Knuth et al. (2005, p. 70; 2006, p. 301).

Figure 10.1 Equivalence tasks



Knuth et al. (2005) found that students' views of the equal sign increased in sophistication from operational to relational as they progressed through the middle years; however, the majority of students at each level held an operational view with the percentage holding a relational view rising to only 46 per cent in Year 8. In Knuth et al. (2006), although there was a slight rise in the proportion of students exhibiting a relational view from Year 6 to Year 7, this fell away again in Year 8—this time to 31 per cent. These results are of some concern, as it was also reported by Knuth et al. (2005) that students who had a relational view of the equal sign outperformed their peers on the equation-solving task which requires use of mathematical equivalence. Knuth et al. (2006) conclude that 'a relational view of the equal sign is necessary not only to meaningfully generate and interpret equations but also to meaningfully *operate* on equations' (2006, p. 309). Thus spending time in Years 7 and 8 on ensuring students develop understanding of the equal sign indicating equivalence rather than as an operational symbol may pay dividends in better algebra performance, particularly in transformational activities.

### *Variable*

Variables provide the algebraic tool for expressing generalisations in mathematics. The notion of variable is fundamentally different from the concept of unknown. An unknown is a number that does not vary, whereas a variable denotes a quantity, the value of which can change. An often-quoted study in the United Kingdom by Küchemann (1978) highlights some of the many difficulties thirteen- to fifteen-year-old students have with the interpretation of literal symbols. Most students in Küchemann's study considered the symbols as objects. Few students considered them to be specific unknowns, and even fewer saw them as generalised numbers or variables. A worrying aspect of these students' misunderstanding of literal symbols was the potential for carryover of these misunderstandings into symbolising relationships in problems. When Knuth et al. (2005) investigated sixth, seventh and eighth grade students' interpretation of a literal symbol and use of the concept of a variable, their results were not as pessimistic as those of Küchemann. The two tasks used in this part of their study are shown in Figure 10.2.

**Task 4: Interpreting literal symbol.**

The following question is about this expression:

$$2n + 3$$

↑

The arrow above points to a symbol. What does the symbol stand for?

**Task 5: Using the variable concept.**

Can you tell which is larger,  $3n$  or  $n + 6$ ? Please explain your answer.

Source: Knuth et al. (2005, p. 70).

*Figure 10.2* Tasks investigating the notion of variable

The most common meaning that students at all grade levels provided for  $n$  in Task 4 was that it was a variable, with the percentages of correct responses ranging from just below 50 per cent in Year 6 to just over 75 per cent in Year 8.

In Task 5, an acceptable justified response would be: ‘No, because  $n$  is not a definite number. If  $n$  was 1,  $3n$  would be 3 and  $n + 6$  would be 7 so  $3n < n + 6$ . On the other hand, if  $n$  was 10,  $3n$  would be 30 and  $n + 6$  would be 16 so  $3n > n + 6$ . You cannot tell which is larger unless you know the value of  $n$ .’ Only 11 per cent of Year 6, 51 per cent of Year 7 and 60 per cent of Year 8 students provided a justification based on a variable interpretation of the literal symbol. Students who provided a variable interpretation were more likely than their peers to correctly respond ‘can’t tell’, and to provide correct justifications for Task 5 with the proportion who responded correctly increasing with the year levels. Different problem contexts did appear to activate different aspects of students’ knowledge, as 20 per cent of the students who provided a correct justification on Task 5 did not provide a variable interpretation for Task 4. Overall, it would appear that students’ improved understanding of variable (as compared with Küchemann’s results) was associated with better performance on the problem task. However, students’ knowledge of the concept of variable may take some time to stabilise, as the Year 6 students’ increased performance on Task 4 was not matched on Task 5.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Use the five tasks from these last two sections to investigate the understanding of equivalence and variables of a lower secondary student. Compare your findings with those obtained by other pre-service teachers in your class.

## The transition to algebraic thinking

Schliemann and colleagues (2007) see these difficulties for students beginning algebra as arising from teaching and learning experiences in arithmetic, not from their cognitive development. For them, the sources are threefold:

1. the use of restricted arithmetical word problem sets which focus on change problems (e.g. Joe has some marbles. He won three marbles. Now he has five marbles. How many marbles did Joe have at the start?), de-emphasising comparisons problems (e.g. There are eight riders but only three horses. How many riders won't get a horse?) and missing addend problems (e.g. Col has seven blue shirts and some brown shirts. She has eleven shirts altogether. How many brown shirts does Col have?);
2. the use of notation as a means of recording computation rather than as a description of what is known about the problem; and
3. focusing on computing particular values rather than on relations among sets.

As mentioned earlier, these researchers advocate the introduction of algebraic concepts and notation into the early primary years, and a different focus in arithmetic to address the difficulties highlighted above. However, several different approaches have been proposed by other researchers to facilitate students' transitions from arithmetical thinking to algebraic thinking.

### *An historical approach to transition*

An historical analysis of Medieval Italian algebra by Radford (1995) has inspired a three-phase teaching sequence developed by Radford and Grenier (1996), designed to facilitate the difficult conceptual shift from solving concrete problems using words and numbers to the more abstract problem of using letters to designate unknown quantities. The fourteenth century Italian mathematician Antonio de Mazzinghi explained the concept of unknown as a 'hidden' quantity, and it was thought that this notion would be a suitable means of helping students understand the role of letters as representing unknowns. In the first teaching phase, students were asked to solve word problems using manipulatives that

embodied the notion of hidden quantity. A hidden number of lollies in a bag or a hidden number of hockey cards in an envelope were used to represent the unknowns in the problems. The teaching sequence was structured to allow students to master the two algebraic operations associated with the solutions of equations in the ancient text *Hisab al-jabr w'al-muqabala* (*Calculation by Restoration and Reduction*), by ninth century Arab mathematician al-Kahwarizmi. Al-jabr, or *restoration*, was the operation of adding equal terms to both sides of an equation so as to remove negative quantities—or, less frequently, multiplying both sides of an equation by a particular number to remove fractions. Al-muqabala, or *reduction*, was the process of reducing positive quantities by subtracting equal quantities from both sides. (See Joseph, 1991 for a discussion of Arab algebra.) In the second phase of the teaching sequence, the manipulatives were replaced by drawings while in the third phase students used letters in place of the drawings of unknown quantities. Today, we know this method as the *balance method* of solving equations.

### *A generalisation and word problem-solving approach to transition*

Bednarz (2001) used a problem-solving context involving word problems to stimulate the emergence and development of algebraic procedures with thirteen to eighteen-year-old students who, at the beginning of the teaching sequences, displayed learning difficulties in mathematics. Three teaching sequences were developed where the letters used had different meanings, such as a generalised number in number pattern formulae and an unknown quantity in word problem-solving. The first sequence was designed to ensure that students understood the importance of a transition to algebra in a context of generalisation. This sequence involved the representation of number patterns by verbal descriptions, followed by a shift to symbolism. In the second teaching sequence, the students focused on arithmetical comparison word problems. The final sequence dealt with the solution of algebraic problems (see box below) focusing on mathematical generalisation and comparisons. In this sequence there was a starting situation for students to reflect on the choice of a generator, the writing of a verbal statement to account for how a quantity might be calculated and the changing of one of the quantities in the situation to reflect on its impact so students could see the applicability of the verbal description to a whole class of problems and also to reflect on the status of the numbers in the situation (i.e. were they generators or

parameters). The problems were then solved using the verbal description students had generated. The relations in these problems were then made more complex and finally there was extension to other problems.

### **Generalisation problem: The warehouse**

(The starting situation) A son, hired by his father to do an inventory, left him the following message: ‘Three types of articles were counted. There are two times more rackets than balls, and three times more hockey sticks than rackets.’

Do you think the father can get by with this message his son left him in order to find what is in the warehouse?

(The situation) Construct a verbal description of how you might calculate the number of articles in the warehouse.

(The problem) There are two times more rackets than balls and three times more hockey sticks than rackets. If there are 270 articles in the warehouse, can you find the number of balls, rackets and hockey sticks?

(Another more complex problem) There are three more rackets than balls and four times more hockey sticks than rackets. If there are 255 articles in the warehouse, how many balls, rackets and hockey sticks are there?

*Source:* Adapted from Bednarz (2001, pp. 74–6).

Students simultaneously used various modes of representation: (a) written natural language descriptions (e.g. ball plus ball plus 3 plus ball  $\times$  4 plus 12 equals number of articles); (b) iconic representations of quantities (e.g. drawings of two tennis rackets multiplied by 3 equated to drawings of 6 hockey sticks); and (c) an intermediary symbolic form of expression (e.g.  $H$  = number of hockey sticks,  $R$  = number of rackets  $R \times 3 = H$ ). These proved to be important transitional tools in finding solutions which Bednarz (2001) saw as ‘fundamental components of the transition to an algebraic reasoning and of the construction of a meaning surrounding algebraic symbolism and notation’ (2001, p. 76). Classroom discussion and validation were also essential in explaining students’ writing conventions and reasoning processes during this construction of meaning.

### *A quasi-variables approach to transition*

A third contrasting approach is suggested by Fujii and Stephens (2001), who propose the use of quasi-variables as a bridge between arithmetical and algebraic thinking which students need to cross frequently during their formative algebra years. Quasi-variables appear ‘in a number sentence or group of number sentences that indicate an underlying mathematical relationship which remains true whatever the numbers used are’ (2001, p. 259). The number sentence  $57 - 47 + 47 = 57$  belongs to the class of algebraic equations of the type  $a - b + b = a$ , which is true for all values of  $a$  and  $b$ . Fujii and Stephens claim that working with quasi-variables assists students in identifying and discussing ‘algebraic generalisations long before they learn formal algebraic notation’ (2001, p. 260). They focus on developing the concept of variable rather than the concept of an unknown. At the secondary level, there are many opportunities for using numerical expressions to signify variable quantitative relationships and to foster algebraic generalisation. We will look at an example from geometry involving shared diameters of semi-circles (see box below).

#### **Quasi-variable problem: Shared diameters of semi-circles**

- (a) Draw a semicircle of diameter 60 units. Divide the diameter equally into three. Use these divisions to draw three touching semi-circles of diameter one third of the diameter of the large semi-circle.
  - Write a number sentence to compare the length of the arc of the large semi-circle to the total length of the arcs of the three smaller semi-circles.
  - If there were four semi-circles dividing the diameter of the large semi-circle in the same manner, write a number sentence to show the total length of the arcs of the four smaller semi-circles.
  - If there were ten small semi-circles, write a number sentence to show the total length of the arcs of the ten smaller semi-circles.
  - Look at the four number sentences that you have written. In your own words, describe what you notice.
- (b) Now repeat for a large semi-circle with a diameter length of your own choosing. Compare your results with those of other students. In your own words, describe what you notice.

In part (a) of the above example, it is expected that students look across their series of number sentences to notice that, regardless of the number of identical smaller semi-circles used, the total sum of their arcs is equal to the length of the arc of the large semi-circle. These quasi-variable relationships allow students to understand the general relationship of the type  $\frac{60}{n} \times 3.14 \div 2 \times n = 94.2$  where  $n$  is the number of identical small semi-circles. The immediate goal is not for students to write this formally, but to be able to articulate the relationship in their own words.

In part (b), by considering other cases for the length of the diameter of the large semi-circle, students are helped to see the relationship holds for all semi-circles. There are many other topics (e.g. Pythagoras' Theorem with properties of tangents to circles) where the use of uncalculated numerical expressions as quasi-variables in number sentences can be used in this way to discover underlying relationships.

Fujii and Stephens (2001) are of the opinion that the introduction of variables should not wait until students have been taught formal algebraic notation. Many situations in number and geometry are fertile ground for using quasi-variables to deepen students' understanding of algebraic thinking and to facilitate their transition from working with unknowns to variables. However, the emphasis needs to be on looking for the relationships rather than calculating.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Design your own set of number tasks and one geometry task involving the use of quasi-variables to facilitate the understanding of variables by a lower secondary student.

### **Translation difficulties: Reversal error**

According to Drouhard and Teppo (2004, p. 238), 'algebraic thought is made overt through the three components of natural language, symbolic writings, and compound representations'. By 'compound representations', they mean illustrative elements of such classroom artefacts as textbooks which consist of symbolic writings such as numerals, drawings and natural language for labels and explanations. 'Acquiring a mastery of these components, however, is not straight forward', as the work of Padula et al. (2001) illustrates.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Select a junior secondary mathematics textbook series and examine the approach taken to teaching algebra. Also examine the algebra component of your local mathematics curriculum for the junior secondary years.

- Which approach to introducing algebra is taken in the series?
- What assumptions about the transition to algebraic thinking are evident in the textbooks? In the curriculum document?
- How do the textbooks deal with the concepts of equivalence and variable?
- What methods of equation-solving are included?
- To what extent are the ideas and teaching sequences presented in the textbooks and curriculum document consistent with the research discussed above?
- In what ways, and with what resources, would you need to modify or supplement the material in each textbook?

Padula and colleagues (2001) conducted an informal study of secondary students' ability to translate what appear to be simple word problem statements into equations. The results reported for 26 Year 9 girls show that this is not an easy task for students at this level, echoing earlier research results from MacGregor (1990) and others. The questions related to the three sentences that students had to translate were as follows:

4a 'The number of animals is equal to ten times the number of zookeepers.' Write this sentence in your own words.

4b Now use  $a$  for 'the number of zookeepers' and write an equation for: 'The number of animals is equal to ten times the number of zookeepers.' *Hint:* don't forget the equal sign.

5a 'There are seven times as many toys as children.' Write this sentence in your own words.

5b Now use  $t$  for 'the number of toys' and  $c$  for 'the number of children' and write an equation for: 'There are seven times as many toys as children.' *Hint:* don't forget the equal sign.



6a 'For every bus there are twenty passengers.' Write this sentence in your own words.

6b Now use  $b$  for 'the number of buses' and  $p$  for 'the number of passengers' and write an equation for: 'For every bus there are twenty passengers.' *Hint: don't forget the equal sign.* (Padula et al., 2001, p. 33)

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Examine these tasks in your groups. Give possible reasons why the most number of correct equations were generated for 5b whilst fewer than half the students could generate correct equations for the other two sentences.

## Generational activities: Expressing generality

Generational activities involve forming expressions and equations—the objects of algebra. Algebraic notations can be used to express the generality we see in situations or to enable us, at times, to see generalisations we did not perceive before. Algebraic expressions (e.g.  $5n + 3$ ) are the building blocks for the representations that we use for these expressions of generality. 'Expressing generality' has thus become a term given status in Australasian curriculum documents (e.g. Australian Education Council, 1991) when structuring the elements of the algebra curriculum. Generalisation as an approach to teaching algebra, particularly in the early phases in the lower secondary years, was given impetus in the Australasian region by the release of an Australian edition of the influential book *Routes to/Roots of Algebra* (Mason et al., 1987). Other resources have followed (e.g. 'Access to Algebra', *Maths300*), which have kept up the momentum of the approach. Recently, Mason and colleagues have released another book (Mason et al., 2005), which continues with this approach and is a ready source of activities.

One of the most important sources of generalisation is number patterns. The use of large numbers that are not easily computable (see the box below) is seen by Zazkis (2001) as a catalyst for young learners to become aware of generality as it takes their focus away from completing operations.

## Generalising from number patterns

Complete the next one in this sequence of number sentences:

$$(4 + 3) \times (4 - 3) = 4^2 - 9$$

$$(5 + 3) \times (5 - 3) = 5^2 - 9$$

$$(6 + 3) \times (6 - 3) = 6^2 - 9$$

$$(7 + 3) \times \dots\dots\dots$$

What would be the following number sentence?

What would be the number sentence that starts (59 . . . ?

What would be the number sentence that starts (1234567 . . . ?

Other sources of situations for expressing generality are diagrams and pictures. A typical introductory task would be to find a general rule for describing the number of tiles required to make cross patterns of varying size with tiles (see Figure 10.3). Students first express the rule in their own words (e.g. number of tiles is equal to four times arm length in tiles plus 1) and later in symbols (e.g.  $n = 4l + 1$ ).

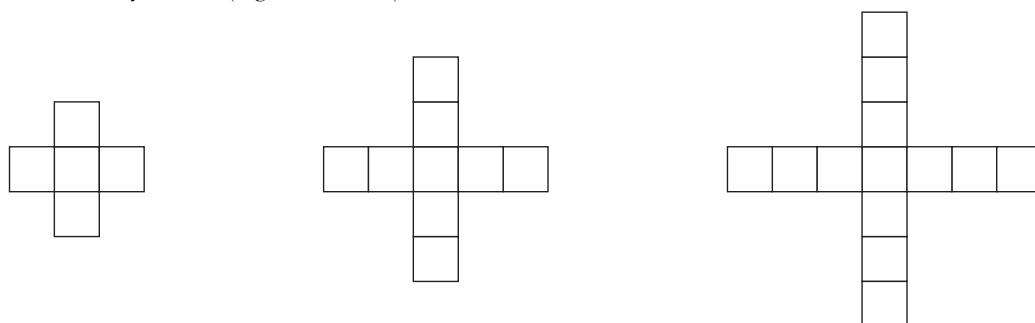


Figure 10.3 Generalising from geometric patterns

## Transformational activities in algebra

Secondary school textbooks usually place their major emphasis in algebra chapters on explication of the process of using the rules for manipulating algebraic expressions (e.g. collecting like terms) and equations (e.g. backtracking, balancing and transposing), followed by practice to develop automaticity rather than on conceptual notions underlying these rules or the structural features of the expressions and equations that are being

manipulated (Kieran, 2004). Concrete materials can often be used to model these processes. For example, Algebra Experience Materials provide a geometric model for expansion and factorisation of related expressions (Leigh-Lancaster & Leigh-Lancaster, 2002).

Rapid advances in technology have impinged on what students of today and in the future will need to know in order to live and work in a world equipped with technology. To be fully able to take their place as informed citizens of tomorrow ‘students no longer need a high level of technical skill’ with respect to algebraic methods, ‘but the need for fundamental understanding is not diminished’ (Ball & Stacey, 2001, p. 55). As an example, Ball and Stacey (2001) look at the area of equation-solving, pointing out that the use of electronic technologies such as computers and hand-held devices with spreadsheets and graphing software has already increased the efficacy of numerical and graphical techniques in secondary school classrooms (see Chapters 4 and 12 for examples), and also in workplaces. They list new elements of mathematical literacy for solving equations in such technological environments as:

- recognition that a range of equation-solving methods are available and reasonable including graphical and numerical methods;
- techniques for efficiently setting up and searching tables and lists;
- being able to choose an appropriate viewing window for a graph;
- appreciating there may be multiple solutions for an equation and knowing approximately where these might be;
- not succumbing to the pseudo-accuracy that technology gives. (Ball & Stacey, 2001)

Using technologies with computer algebra systems (CAS) which allow symbolic manipulation enables students to find exact solutions to algebraic equations, including those containing parameters (see Figure 10.4).

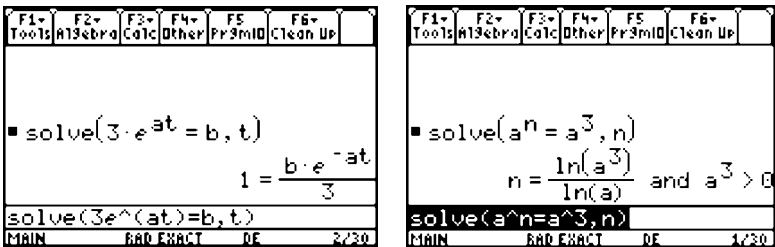


Figure 10.4 Solving equations in a computer algebra environment

Rather than such technologies signalling the demise of the teaching of algebra in secondary classrooms, Pierce and Stacey (2001) point out that they necessitate the development of what they term ‘algebraic insight’. Algebraic knowledge is needed to decide which techniques are appropriate, enter expressions in a form the system can handle, monitor the solution process for possible errors and interpret output in conventional format. The solving of the equation  $a^n = a^3$  for  $n$  as shown in Figure 10.4 is correct, but requires a knowledge of logarithms to realise that the answer is  $n = 3$  or what action you might take next with the calculator to arrive at such an answer.

Using the example of equation-solving, Ball and Stacey (2001) list the following elements as essential for mathematical literacy in a CAS environment:

- understanding basic equation-solving operations of using balancing, inverse operations and the null factor law;
- manipulation skills to modify an equation before input or recognise non-standard forms in calculator output as equivalent;
- ability to identify the form of an equation or set of equations;
- knowing the nature of the solutions of equations of various forms.

Neither of these lists gives a sense that transformative activities in algebra are being devalued; however, the current emphases within the implemented curriculum certainly appear to need rethinking and refocusing to support our growing reliance on technological environments. As pointed out earlier, many transformational activities rely on, and promote, the development of notions of equivalent forms, and this development is as important today as it ever was.

## The ascendancy of the function concept

Kieran and Yerushalmy (2004) point out that ‘construction of the function concept . . . is now widely considered to be part of the knowledge of algebra’ (2004, p. 115). Yerushalmy and Schwartz (1993, p. 41) see function as ‘the fundamental object of algebra’, imploring that ‘it ought to be present in a variety of representations in algebra teaching and learning from the outset’ in the instructional sequence of algebra. Many researchers espouse the importance of the function concept in secondary school mathematics. As Heid (1995) points out:

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Here are a number of solutions to the equation  $x^2 - 2x = -1$  presented by Year 10 learners to their class.

- Explain clearly which of these solutions is correct/incorrect and why.
- Explain how you would communicate the strengths, limitations or errors in each of these solutions to the students.
- What questions could you ask Clara to assist her to understand and be able to formulate a more general response?

Jim:  $x = 1$  because  $x^2 - 2x = -1$ , then  $x^2 = 2x - 1$  and  $x = \sqrt{2x - 1}$   
 $x$  can't be 0 because we get  $0 = \sqrt{-1}$   
 $x$  can't be negative because we get the square root of a negative  
 $x = 1$  works because we get  $1 = 1$  and no other number bigger than 1 works.

Jen:  $x = 1$  because if  $x^2 - 2x = -1$ , then  $x(x - 2) = -1$  and so  $x = -1$  or  $x - 2 = -1$ , which leaves us with  $x = 1$  (because  $x = -1$  does not hold true)

Mark:  $x = 1$  because if  $x^2 - 2x = -1$ , then  $x^2 - 2x + 1 = 0$  and this factorises to get  $(x - 1)(x - 1) = 0$ ; so  $x = 1$ .

Val:  $x = 1$ . I drew the graph  $y = -1$  and  $y = x^2 - 2x$ . They intersect in only one place, at  $x = 1$ .

Carla:  $x = 1$ . I substituted a range of values for  $x$  in the equation and 1 is the only one that works.

*Source:* Adapted from Adler & Davis (2006, p. 273).

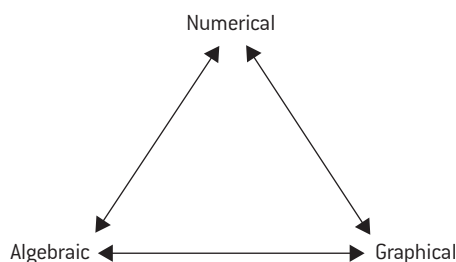
The language of technology quite naturally depends on the concepts of variable and function. But the concepts of variable and function in a technological world are much richer than those found in current school textbooks or in the minds of today's students. The search for variable values that satisfy equations need no longer be the unquestioned and primary goals of beginning algebra. (1995, p. 1)

In a technological world, both functions and variables take on new meanings as they are no longer seen as mere abstract notions in the classroom—especially in the context of exploring real-world phenomena. ‘Variables represent quantities that change, and algebra is the study of relationships among these changing quantities. What was the search for fixed values that fit statically defined relationships is now the dynamic exploration of mathematical relationships.’ (Heid, 1995, p. 1)

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** With other students, draw a concept map of your understanding of function as developed through secondary school. Make sure you label object and procedural links (e.g. a link from ‘graph of function’ to ‘gradient’ could be labelled as ‘graph of function’ HAS A ‘gradient’ [an object link] or IS USED TO FIND a ‘gradient at a point’ [a procedural link]).

Compare your completed maps to those of two secondary students and an expert in the paper by Williams (1998).

Functions are ‘multi-faceted’ (Lloyd & Wilson, 1998, p. 250) and cannot be fully understood within a single representation environment. Being able to make links between representations (Figure 10.5) is crucial to the underlying concepts of functions (Even, 1998).



*Figure 10.5* Function representations and the links to be developed between these

Function-graphing technologies provide students with the opportunities to make these links and to develop rich conceptual schemas but students do not necessarily make the links merely by using technology. When taking a multiple representation approach to teaching

function, it is often pointed out that students should do tasks or teachers provide teaching examples that necessitate linking across the various representations of functions. However, even with the best-designed tasks, there is always a place for teacher monitoring and possible intervention. Arcarvi (2003) reports how students do not always notice what an expert would expect in a graphing software environment, such as what the multiplier does or the common y-intercept in a series of graphs of the form  $y = ax + 1$  (see Figure 10.6). Instead, they can notice irrelevancies (such as the graphs starting at the bottom of the screen) which are ‘automatically dismissed or unnoticed by the expert’s vision’ (2003, p. 232).

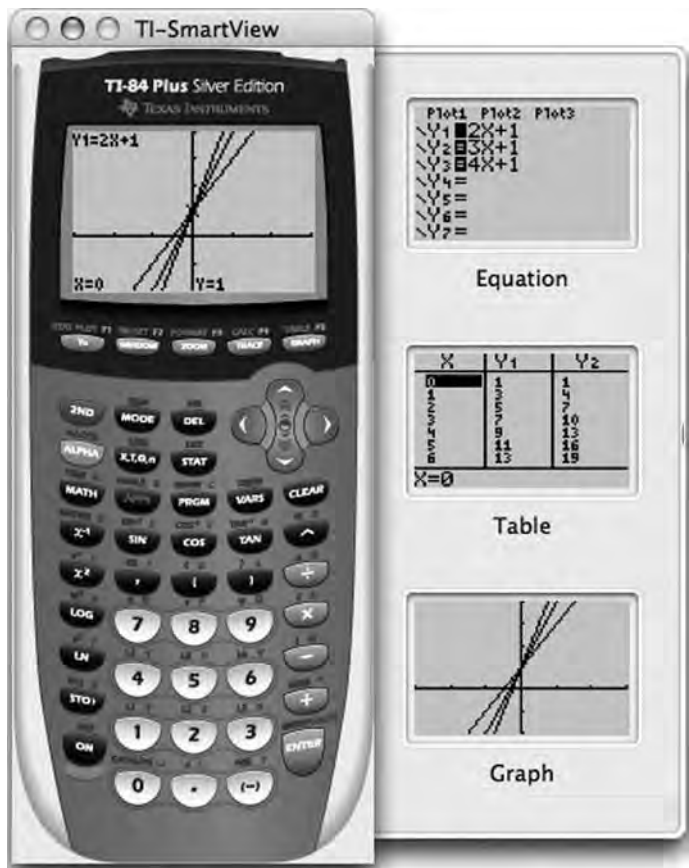


Figure 10.6 The family of graphs  $y = ax + 1$  in the multiple representation environment (View<sup>3</sup>) of the TI-SmartView

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Design three tasks which would require students to link across representations. Set at least one of these tasks in a real-world context. The tasks should be targeted for Year 11 where the students have covered the appropriate topics re functions. See *Graphic algebra: Explorations with a function grapher* (Asp et al., 1995), *Navigating through algebra in grades 9–12* (Burke et al., 2001), or *Developing thinking in algebra* (Mason et al., 2005) for starter ideas.

For each task, indicate which representations (e.g., algebraic [A] and graphical [G]) and links (e.g., from algebraic to graphical [ $A \rightarrow G$ ]) you would expect solvers of the task to be able to use.

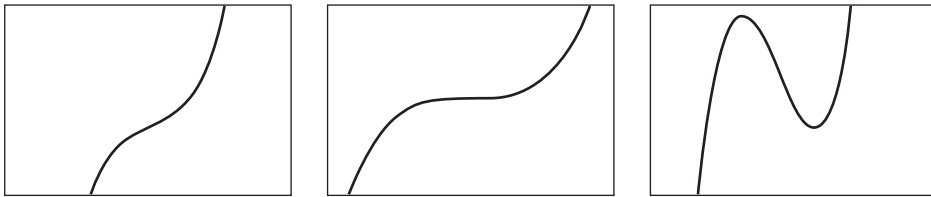
## Families of functions

Functions-based approaches to algebra in secondary schools often focus on polynomial and rational functions, but emphasis is placed on the explicit study of just a few of the families within these, such as linear, quadratic, cubic and, to a lesser extent, quartic functions. In addition, exponential and trigonometric functions are often studied. From time to time, other functions are suggested (e.g. the Lambert W function—see Stewart, 2006), but these are yet to gain a toehold in Australian curricula. Unfortunately, this study of functions is fragmented over the years of secondary schooling, and often students develop deep understanding of particular aspects of one family of functions but fail to transfer this knowledge to other families.

The easy creation of graphs in a technological environment allows a large number to be observed and provides easy access to myriad function types. In addition, observing multiple views of a single function can—though does not necessarily—add to the development of a broad ‘concept image’ (Vinner & Dreyfus, 1989, p. 356) of the prototypical graphical representation of a particular function type. For example, the graphical representation of a cubic function has three possible ‘shapes’ (Figure 10.7), based on the number of stationary points.

However, when using graphing technology, only a portion of the graph can be seen—hence a cubic function can also appear linear (with positive, negative or zero gradient) if the viewing window of the technological tool is focused ‘closely’ on a part of the graph. An understanding of the effect of changes of scale, including where each axis has a different



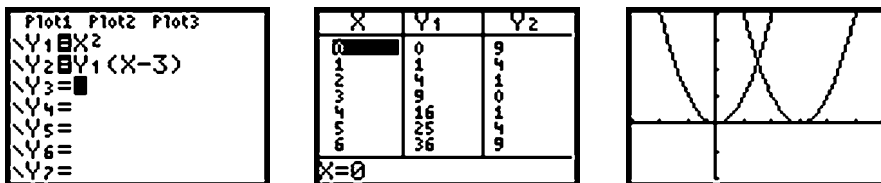


*Figure 10.7 Possible shapes for graphs of cubic functions*

scale (Zaslavsky et al., 2002), is essential for successful graphing technology use, and also helps further develop students' concept images for functions. A student's concept image is 'the set of all the mental pictures associated in the student's mind with the concept name, together with all the properties characterizing them' (Vinner & Dreyfus, 1989, p. 356). Using technology is one way to broaden students' experiences with the function concept (Zbiek & Heid, 2001), and some of the concept image held by students working in a technological environment will have formed as a result of being taught in such an environment and being active users of the technology (see Brown & Stillman, 2006; Schwarz & Hershkowitz, 1999). As Hershkowitz and Kieran (2001) point out in their report of a case study of Year 10 students using multiple representation and regression tools on graphing calculators, the crucial pedagogical questions for teachers are: 'How much should the tool be used?' and, 'In what way should the tool be used?' The properties of the software and the tasks for which they are used can lead to the formation of different knowledge.

## Manipulating functions as entities

Hand-held function graphers allow the function to be entered and modified via the algebraic (e.g.  $y = f(x) = x^2$ ) and numeric representations (e.g. a list of ordered pairs), and the resultant graphical representation can be viewed but not directly manipulated (see Figure 10.8).



*Figure 10.8 Algebraic transformation with resulting numerical and graphical representations using a function grapher*

However, on computer programs such as *Function Probe* (Confrey, 1992), *TI-Nspire CAS* (Texas-Instruments, 2006), and new generation calculators such as TI-Nspire, graphs can also be manipulated enactively by translating, stretching and reflecting (see Figure 10.9). The graph is treated as a single object to be transformed. Enactive representations are those to which human actions give a sense of change (Tall, 1996). Such technology highlights difficulties in linking enactive and symbolic representations (i.e. the algebraic form of the function) as an observed horizontal shift to the right by a constant, say  $+2$ , changes the entered function, say,  $y = f(x) = x^2$  to  $y = f(x-2) = (x-2)^2$ . Shifting the graph to the right is equivalent to shifting the domain to the left and the latter is reflected in the mathematical notation, a source of confusion for some students.

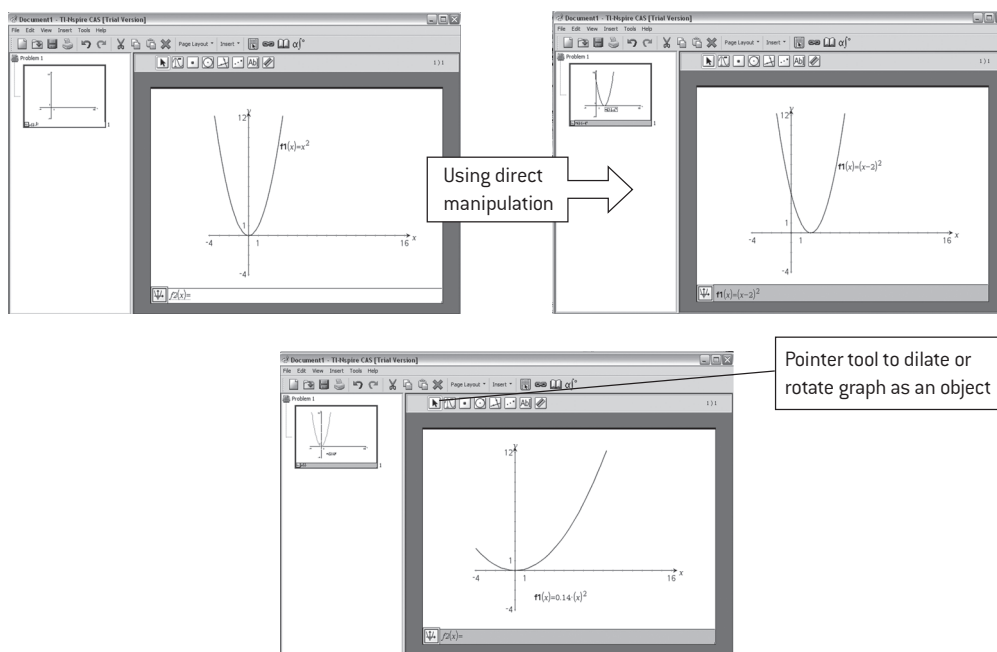


Figure 10.9 Translation and dilation of function using a function as object manipulator

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Examine the chapters on functions in a senior secondary mathematics textbook series. To what extent are the ideas and tasks presented in these chapters consistent with the research findings discussed above?

## Computer Algebra Systems (CAS) and algebra

Computer Algebra Systems (CAS) have untapped potential for changing the teaching and learning of algebra and the doing of mathematics, but what directions and forms this will take are still unanswered questions (Thomas et al., 2004). From an algebra perspective, the algebraic thinking that underpins the use of CAS in secondary classrooms is of paramount importance, whether CAS be a supplement to other technologies within the classroom or the first choice of technology. Pierce and Stacey's (2001) notion of algebraic insight being the subset of symbol sense that enables effective use of CAS in the solution of a formulated mathematical problem is useful in considering what the implications of the ready availability of CAS in secondary classrooms might be for change in emphasis in the implemented algebra curriculum. Algebraic insight has two components—algebraic expectation and the ability to link representations:

The term *algebraic expectation* is used here to name the thinking process which takes place when an experienced mathematician ponders the result they expect to obtain as the outcome of some algebraic process. Skill in algebraic expectation will allow a student to scan CAS output for likely errors, recognise equivalent expressions and make sense of long complicated results . . . Algebraic expectation . . . [involves] noticing conventions, structure and key features of an expression that determine features which may be *expected* in the solution. (Pierce & Stacey, 2001, p. 420)

Algebraic expectation involves: (1) recognition of conventions (e.g. the meaning of operators and letters for parameters and variable names and the order of operations) and basic properties (e.g. the non-commutativity of the division operation); (2) identification of structure (e.g. objects, strategic groups of components or simple factors); and (3) identification of key features (e.g. form, dominant term and being able to link form to type of solution). If a student is solving a quadratic equation of the form  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ , for example, an expected possible form of the answer should be  $x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$ . Thus, when an equation like the one shown in Figure 10.10 is solved, it should be expected that the non-standard form of the output (from a by-hand perspective) should be equivalent to  $x = \frac{-5 - \sqrt{105}}{4}$  and  $x = \frac{-5 + \sqrt{105}}{4}$ .

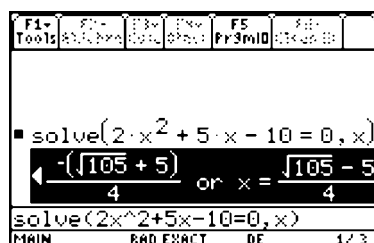


Figure 10.10 Algebraic insight needed to interpret unfamiliar form of solution

If algebraic expectation resulting from the symbolic representation is linked to the graphical and numerical representations, more algebraic insight is gained (Pierce & Stacey, 2001). This ability to link representations in a CAS environment is two-fold. First, it involves linking of symbolic and graphical representations (e.g. linking form to shape and linking key features to likely position and to intercepts and asymptotes). Second, there is the linking of symbolic and numerical representations (e.g. linking number patterns to form and linking key features to a suitable increment for the table or to critical intervals of the table).

The algebraic insight framework provides a structure for teachers to think about the algebraic thinking their students need to develop in using CAS. It highlights which areas of the algebra curriculum still need emphasis in teaching, and in formative and summative assessment.

## Conclusion

As Kendal and Stacey (2004) point out, algebra is a very large content area—far too large to fit into the school curriculum or a chapter in a text such as this, for that matter. Choices and focuses have had to be made selectively. However, we must not lose sight of the fact that algebra is ‘a rich field with many possibilities for applications and for addressing meta-mathematical goals, such as learning about problem solving, or axiomatics, or mathematical structure, or the benefits of an organised approach. Again this means that choices can and must be made.’ (2004, p. 345)

## Recommended reading

**Asp, G., Dowsey, J., Stacey, K. & Tynan, D. (1995).** *Graphic algebra: Explorations with a function grapher*. Melbourne: Curriculum Corporation.

**Burke, M., Eickson, D., Lott, J.W. & Obert, M. (2001).** *Navigating through algebra in grades 9–12*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

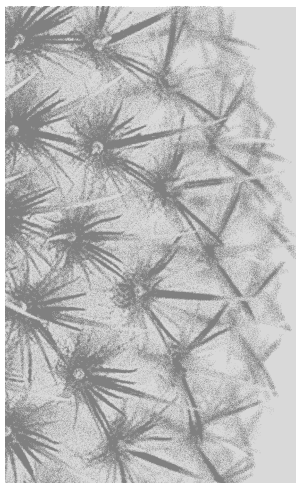
**Friel, S., Rachlin, S. & Doyle, D. (2001).** *Navigating through algebra in grades 6–8*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

**Lowe, I., Grace, N., Johnston, J., Kissane, B. & Willis, S. (1993–94).** *Access to algebra* [Series]. Melbourne: Curriculum Corporation.

**Mason, J., Graham, A. & Johnston-Wilder, S. (2005).** *Developing thinking in algebra*. London: Sage.

**Mason, J., Graham, A., Pimm, D. & Gowar, N. (1987).** *Routes to/roots of algebra* [Australian edition]. Milton Keynes: Open University.

**Stacey, K., Chick, H. & Kendal, M. (eds),** *The teaching and learning of algebra: The 12th ICMI study*. Norwell, MA: Kluwer.



## CHAPTER 11

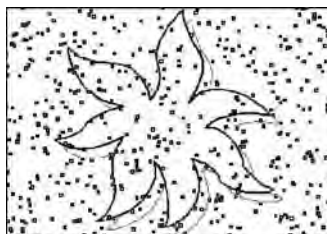
### **Teaching and learning chance and data**

Citizens today need to negotiate immense amounts of information and uncertainty in a complex society. Over the past decade, the school curriculum has responded dramatically to educate the public to be more critical consumers of information. Other factors have also played a part. Economic demands require workers to manage data-intensive problems in probabilistic processes. New technologies increase accessibility to large data sets and complex situations. Technology enables visual approaches to analysis which were once too technical for non-statisticians. Finally, an explosion of cognitive and classroom research in probability and statistics is changing the school curriculum (Burrill & Elliott, 2006; J. Watson, 2006; Garfield & Ben-Zvi, in press). Overwhelmingly, these influences argue for new learning environments emphasising a more inquiry-based approach to teaching chance and data.

Both chance and data use uncertainty and randomness. Chance topics—or probability—measure uncertainty while data-based or statistical processes examine patterns of variability in aggregating uncertain outcomes. Chance and data topics are usually taught in mathematics, but there are important differences that teachers need to know between mathematics and statistics. In mathematics, a major goal is to identify invariant properties and processes that generalise across different contexts, whereas statistics is concerned with understanding variation within a context. Statistical conclusions can be contentious and interpretive, requiring students to develop skills of building convincing arguments supported with data-based evidence.

Chance and data provide natural opportunities to integrate other topics in mathematics. For example, data can be used to teach functions through modelling and curve fitting, or

areas of unusual shapes can be estimated using randomisation (Figure 11.1). Using contexts from science, social studies, or health and physical education are ideal ways to integrate chance and data with other subject areas.



*Figure 11.1* Estimating unusual areas—the area of the figure can be estimated by calculating the proportion of random points in the rectangle that fall inside the figure

In primary school, learners examine randomness using coins and dice, organise data with graphs, and engage in statistical investigations by surveying classmates. During the secondary years, students extend these experiences with more complex situations, and link probabilistic and data-based phenomena via simulations.

At the heart of statistics is the ability to investigate: to formulate and test hunches, justify conjectures with evidence, and make inferences with a convincing argument. In this chapter, we discuss how teachers can develop students' probabilistic and statistical reasoning by engaging them in investigations using chance and data. We introduce a framework—statistical literacy, statistical reasoning and statistical thinking—for building different types of statistical skills (Garfield & Ben-Zvi, in press). Briefly, statistical literacy is aimed at creating 'statistically literate consumers of claims made in wider social contexts' (J. Watson, 2006, p. 23), developing students' ability to critique statistical information encountered in the media and daily life. Statistical reasoning is the ways in which people use statistical tools in the context of understanding a particular phenomenon, and statistical thinking includes the dispositions and skills needed to undertake statistical investigations in order to create, question and evaluate the processes and evidence used to make statistical claims. These levels are hierarchical in their increasing cognitive demands; however, rather

than teaching them in this order, we recommend embedding teaching statistical literacy and reasoning in the process of developing students' statistical thinking.

## Chance and data in the primary years

Until recently, students' main exposure to chance and data in the primary years was through collecting data on coin tosses or rolls of the dice to introduce tallying and elementary probability; data handling was limited to constructing bar charts or reading information in a graph or table. Over the past decade, however, shifts towards teaching higher order thinking have inspired the introduction of concepts like informal inference and statistical investigations early in the primary years, embedding skills like graph interpretation within mathematical investigations, and postponing teaching calculations of averages (mean, median and mode) to the end of the primary years.

### *Chance in the primary years*

Research documents that young children often hold deterministic beliefs about randomness. For example, children's ideas of destiny, personal preference, 'lucky' outcomes or unrealistic causes can influence their ability to conceptualise chance events. Teaching basic combinatorics (counting)—generating all possible outcomes of throwing two dice, or listing ways that three shirts and four pants can be combined into an outfit—can build ideas about sample space and promote systematic thinking vital for theoretical probability. The language of chance developed in primary school also assists students to begin to connect measures of likelihood with events—for example, expressing a certain outcome as having a probability of 1.

### *Data in the primary years*

An important shift in the primary years is moving students from a focus on individual data points ('Kym watches sixteen hours of TV per week') towards holistic descriptions of data to characterise a group ('Most of my classmates watch between ten and fifteen hours of TV per week'). While most children can calculate an average by the end of primary school, few consider applying an average as representative of a group in problem situations. Konold and Pollatsek (2002) argue that, by focusing early on the concept of data as a combination of signal (central tendency) and noise (variation), students build more robust understandings



of average. In contrast, if students learn algorithmic approaches early ('add 'em up and divide'), they see average only procedurally, and this can hinder later development.

### *Connecting chance and data in the primary years*

One of the main connections made between chance and data concepts in the primary grades is through linking experimental and theoretical probabilities. Although this is possible through games of chance, students also need experience with outcomes that are not equally likely to counter an intuition that if an event has two outcomes then the probability of each must be one-half. Concepts can be developed informally by performing empirical probability experiments, such as observing that in repeating independent trials, the relative frequency of an event approaches its theoretical probability. Connecting relative frequency proportions with likelihood in real-world events is another approach that provides opportunities to build informal concepts of sampling—for example, how would one estimate the proportion of the population with Type O blood, and how might hospitals use this information to plan surgery?

## **Challenges in understanding chance and data**

Research has identified a range of challenges students experience in understanding and using chance and data concepts as they move into the secondary years. These are related to ideas about randomness, the relative emphasis on conceptual versus procedural knowledge, the nature of statistical investigations, the need to view data from a global perspective rather than as a set of points, difficulties with graph interpretation, and the effect of real-life contexts on students' understanding of variability. Each of these challenges is discussed below.

### *Intuition about randomness*

Students' thinking about randomness is initially deterministic in nature; intuitions about randomness develop through experience and instruction (Batanero & Serrano, 1999). Misconceptions decrease with age in problems that are clearly probabilistic in nature (e.g. outcome of rolling a die), but not necessarily in problems that are set in a real-life context. Even with statistical training, students have difficulty letting go of strong personal beliefs; they frequently respond to teaching that opposes their intuition by holding dual beliefs (Fischbein

& Schnarch, 1997; Pfannkuch & Brown, 1996). A significant challenge in teaching probability and statistics is to pursue a gradual process of building students' intuition before jumping to what may appear to be more efficient formulas and procedures (Watson, 2005b). Even in secondary school, students should be encouraged to work with manipulatives or concrete materials to assist them in building intuitions about probability and data. Collecting their own data and working with simulations may also help with personal beliefs about randomness that run counter to statistical principles—for example, the belief in a 'hot hand' in basketball.

### *Procedural knowledge*

Research has clearly shown that computational and rote learning can shut down learners' meaning-making in mathematics (e.g. Boaler, 1997a; Schoenfeld, 1991). For example, teaching students how to calculate a probability or a mean before they build a strong and flexible conceptual understanding of these ideas can undermine their ability to build these notions later on. Plenty of research has pointed out that, while students are able to calculate averages, few students choose to make use of an average in applied problems—for example, when comparing two data sets (Gal et al., 1990; Watson & Moritz, 1999). For this reason, teachers are encouraged to hold off teaching students to calculate the mean until late in the primary years, after they have had multiple informal experiences developing and utilising concepts of central tendency. Similarly, if students are taught specific graphing skills before they develop a conceptual understanding of the purpose and utility of graphs to organise and display information, this conceptual understanding can be impaired. Instead, teachers are encouraged to provide students with repeated experiences handling and organising raw data to try to make meaning through sorting, stacking and ordering the data to communicate patterns. (A wonderful and classic publication that showcases humorous examples of misuses of averages and graphs is Darrell Huff's (1954) book *How to lie with statistics*.)

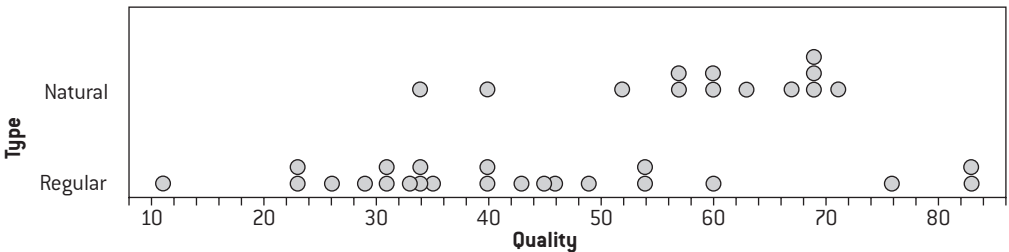
### *Statistical investigations*

Most students manage concepts of statistical literacy fairly well, but struggle with the higher order thinking skills required for statistical thinking. For example, several researchers have noted the difficulty students have in creating questions that can be addressed using statistics (Marshall et al., 2002; Confrey & Makar, 2002). Often questions are too narrow—requiring simple yes–no answers—or too broad—not measurable or

requiring data that are impractical to collect. Frequently, once they do collect and analyse their data, students find it challenging to connect their conclusions back to the question being investigated (Hancock et al., 1992). Most of the time in school is spent in the analysis phase, which is the least challenging part of the statistical investigation cycle (described in more detail later in the chapter). If students' experiences with statistics are imbalanced towards too much time on the calculations and procedures in the data analysis stage, this can reinforce a dichotomous view of statistics. In a dichotomous view, students perceive statistics as a field that responds to even complex questions with a definitive yes or no answer instead of a field primarily concerned with seeking evidence and one in which responses to questions must be tempered by articulating uncertainty. Developing students' statistical thinking involves a concerted effort by teachers to counter this dichotomous perspective of statistics by immersing students in all aspects of the statistical investigation cycle.

### *Aggregate perspective of data*

A major goal in elementary data analysis is to encourage students to move from a focus on seeing data as a set of individual points towards a more global, aggregate view of data where students see a distribution as an entire entity. For example, in Figure 11.2, the quality of 36 brands of peanut butter was rated. By comparing the ratings of 'Natural' peanut butter (no additional additives or sugar) with 'Regular' peanut butter, students who see data as individual points may conclude that Regular brands of peanut butter are higher in quality because the highest rating went to a Regular brand. However, a student with a global perspective of data would likely conclude that Natural brands are higher in quality because the bulk of the Natural brand data is higher than the bulk of the data in the Regular brands. Additionally, students may discuss whether Natural or Regular brands are more consistent in quality.



Source: Finzer (2005).

**Figure 11.2 Comparing the quality of brands of peanut butter**

### *Interpreting graphs*

In interpreting graphs, one of the major difficulties students have is that, rather than seeing a graph as a purposeful tool, they focus too much on learning the features of graphs. In research with secondary students in New Zealand, Pfannkuch and her colleagues (Pfannkuch et al., 2004) found that students frequently struggled to use appropriate features of graphs as evidence. Although students did learn the properties well, they lacked understanding of the *utility* of the graphs in applications. For example, when comparing the weather in two cities, many of the students in their study used the range of the data or compared upper with lower quartiles when this information was not evidence for which city had the hotter weather. The problem was that when students were learning about box plots, instruction focused on learning *features* of a box plot (e.g. locating the median, quartiles, five-number summary or interquartile range) rather than using the box plots as evidence for a particular *reason*. As a result, students didn't see the purpose in using the box plot and focused on what they presumed their teacher wanted—identifying properties.

Similar problems are often evident when students use software to generate different types of graph without making considered decisions about which type of graph is most appropriate for representing the data.

### *Integrating contextual knowledge*

The context within which chance and data topics are taught can affect students' understanding. It is a misconception that learning about randomness within probabilistic contexts (e.g. dice, coins) will transfer to understanding of randomness in real-life contexts. Research has shown that tolerating randomness in deeply contextual problems is much more challenging. (See example on p. 262.)

Several studies have shown that students interpret the variability in two problems very differently, even though the two situations are structurally identical (Makar & Canada, 2005; Pfannkuch & Brown, 1996). In the first example, most students interpret the lack of 1s, 2s and 6s as expected in such a small number of rolls of the die. The interpretation of randomness in the second problem was quite different, however. Note that, in the New Zealand context, the presence of abnormalities in six regions with similar populations is equivalent to six possible outcomes of the die, if each region is thought of as representing a particular outcome on the roll of a die. In this context, however, students often interpreted the unevenness of the random outcomes to be influenced by contextual

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Discuss the following two problems with a partner. Compare your solutions with others in the class.

*Dice problem*

A six-sided die is thrown seven times resulting in the following outcome: 3, 3, 3, 4, 4, 5, 5 (order is not important). Do you think there is evidence to suspect that the die is unfair? Why or why not?

*Media problem*

Every year in New Zealand, approximately seven children are born with a limb missing. Last year the children born with this abnormality were located in New Zealand as shown on the map below. Note that the population in each region below is approximately equal. A group of families in the central regions has filed a legal case claiming the incidence in their region is unusually high. Do the data support their claim? Why or why not?



information, such as a potential chemical plant in one of the central regions of the country. One research project reported that two-thirds of the subjects (secondary pre-service mathematics and science teachers) in the study attributed the imbalance of outcomes in the dice problem to the randomness expected from such a small sample whereas only one-sixth of them recognised this in the New Zealand problem (Makar, 2004).

## Chance and data in the secondary curriculum

Although chance and data are generally taught as distinct topics in primary school, by the secondary years they begin to merge with only some computational aspects of probability taught independently of statistics. For this reason, the emphasis in this chapter is on statistical reasoning processes, all of which involve basic concepts in probability and probabilistic thinking.

## Probability

Only a few topics in the chance strand are taught separately from data at the secondary level. All of these have to do with deductive probability concepts—that is, those in which probabilities are calculated based on other known values. In particular, topics such as calculations of compound events (addition, multiplication and conditional rules), marginal probabilities in two-way tables, independent and mutually exclusive events, expected values, counting principles, and sampling with and without replacement are taught at the secondary level. Students find probability a challenging topic, particularly if the emphasis is on isolating the calculations from a meaningful purpose. Therefore, when teaching probability, it is important for students to try to visualise the sample space. Graphic organisers such as a Venn diagram, tree diagram or two-way table often help clarify subtleties in problems.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** How could you use a graphic organiser to help students see the difference between the probabilities of the following two events (adapted from J. Watson, 2006):

- A randomly chosen man is a 'lefty' (left-handed).
- A randomly chosen 'lefty' is male.

With a partner, come up with three more examples of events that can be represented with graphic organisers. What observations do you have about the kinds of problems that lend themselves to using graphic organisers?

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Investigate the meaning of the term 'false positive' in medical screening tests in relation to probability. (For example, even if a person has a positive result in an HIV screening test, it's unlikely that they have the virus.)

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Punnett squares (see Figure 11.3) are used in genetics to determine the likelihood of genetic traits being passed from one generation to the next.

- Do some internet research to find out how Punnett squares work.
- Discuss with a partner the appropriateness of this application for junior and senior secondary school students.
- Create a set of questions using Punnett squares to help students understand the list of probability topics in the paragraph above. (You may want to include grandparents in your example for looking at compound events.)

		Male parent	
		T	t
Female parent	T	TT	Tt
	t	tT	tt

*Figure 11.3 A Punnett square showing the offspring of two pea plants, both heterozygous, with one dominant gene for tall plants*

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** It is always important to let students know how the mathematics they are learning is used in people's work. Make a list of professions that rely heavily on probability (an actuary is one example) and find out how they use probability in their work. Give an example and/or explain how these professions use probability in ways that secondary students will understand.

Although probability is an important concept in the chance and data strand, at the secondary level most chance concepts are taught in conjunction with statistics. This is largely because, while probability can help us to work out *expected* values and *theoretical* probabilities, most applications of probability involve empirical probabilities with data.

One reason for this is that, in using probability, we may not pick up the subtleties in the context that could influence whether variables are independent. We need statistics to help us decide whether our theoretical probabilities appear to be justified in an applied setting where variation adds a new level of uncertainty to problems. In new areas, where probabilities are often changing or unknown (such as in weather forecasting), data are used to generate probability estimates from empirical results. The real power of statistics lies in making predictions through statistical inference, a concept heavily influenced by probability theory.

### *Statistical literacy: Consuming statistical information*

Statistical literacy, although based on concepts currently in the school curriculum, goes beyond them to be embodied in a complex construct that weaves together literacy skills, critical thinking, contextual understanding, and motivation to be involved in decision-making. (J. Watson, 2006, p. 3)

Statistical literacy is a powerful tool that citizens need to interpret statistical information and critique statistical claims found in everyday contexts. At a content level, statistical literacy may only require that students be able to read and interpret graphs and tables, and understand fundamental ideas of average, variation, sampling and chance. Statistical literacy, however, extends beyond content to include the ability to debate and judge data-based information and claims. Jane Watson (2006) proposes six levels of appreciation of aspects of statistical literacy, from idiosyncratic to critical mathematical. These levels incorporate increasingly complex understandings of the context of a problem, sampling issues, data representations, the meanings of average, variation, chance and inference, and mathematical content (Watson, 2005a; J. Watson, 2006; Watson & Callingham, 2003).

Students have developed most of their basic statistical literacy skills during primary school, and this understanding is refined and deepened as they apply these skills to increasingly complex real-life problems. With the advent of powerful technologies accessible to school-age students for visualising and calculating large data sets (such as *Excel*, *Fathom*, *Tinkerplots*), less time need be spent on specifics of graph construction and hence the focus can be shifted to the more challenging and engaging process of utilising graphs, tables and



summary values. The difficulties students have with constructing and interpreting graphs or calculating appropriate summary statistics and probabilities are likely due to teaching which focuses more on attributes and calculations than on their utility and purpose as tools for communication and analysis (Pfannkuch et al., 2005). We therefore move on to the teaching of statistical reasoning.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Numeracy in the News (<http://ink.news.com.au/mercury/mathguys/mercindx.htm>) is a website for teachers in Australia, with newspaper articles and discussion questions that integrate literacy and numeracy with everyday events reported in the media. Most of the articles involve statistical literacy. Explore the site and some of the articles and activities posted. Work with a partner to find a current article that could be used to discuss statistical ideas with students and write a set of discussion questions for the article like those posted on the website.

### *Statistical reasoning: Utilising statistical information*

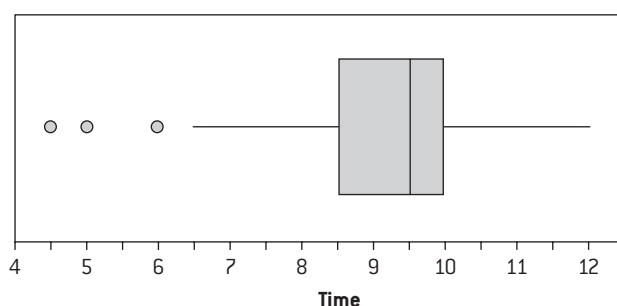
Statistical reasoning is ‘the way people reason with statistical ideas and make sense of statistical information’ (Ben-Zvi & Garfield, 2004, p. 7). The main focus is on how people *utilise* data, graphs and statistical information in the context of understanding a particular phenomenon, and how they integrate and explain probabilistic and statistical ideas within applied situations. This involves a higher level of cognitive demand and mathematical content than statistical literacy. This section focuses on Exploratory Data Analysis, developed by John Tukey (1977) to support ‘data sleuthing’ in descriptive statistics. Within this tradition, we will look at univariate (one variable) statistics as well as bivariate (two variables) statistics. Finally, we will look at the reasoning students use to integrate probability and statistics.

Exploratory Data Analysis (EDA) is ‘about looking at data to see what it seems to say’ (Tukey, 1977, p. v). It focuses on visual impressions of data as partial descriptions and supports attempts to ‘look beneath them for new insights. Its concern is with appearance,

not with confirmation.’ Using an EDA approach to learning statistics encourages students to be ‘statistical sleuths’. Although the processes involved in EDA support the development of statistical thinking, it is primarily a tool of descriptive statistics (describing the data in front of you), not statistical inference (making generalisations from a sample of data to a larger population or process). Here we will look at univariate statistics (one variable) and the more powerful tools of covariation (relationships between two or more variables).

### Univariate descriptive statistics

Univariate statistics is the description of the distribution of a single variable. The important aspects of working with univariate statistics are to focus on qualities of the distribution as an entity and the potential of descriptive statistics to describe and predict phenomena. In the CensusAtSchool program (Australian Bureau of Statistics, 2006), school students are surveyed and data are collected about multiple variables—for example, the number of hours of sleep. Figure 11.4 shows a box plot with a sample of 50 students from across Australia in Years 7–10 showing the number of hours of sleep they reported getting on a typical school night. In this sample, we can say that about half of the students slept between 8.5 and 10 hours at night and only a few of these students got less than 6.5 hours of sleep.



Source: ABS (2006).

Figure 11.4 Hours of sleep of Years 7–10 students

The limitation of working with a single variable is that it is very easy to lose sight of the *purpose* of describing the particular variable. In this example, it may be of use to have a feel

for the number of hours of sleep students report, but if too much time is spent decoding graphs, students lose sight of the purpose of their interpretation and which statistics might be useful to report as evidence in a particular situation. It would be more useful to look at relationships in variables by investigating their *covariation*. For example, did the amount of sleep differ between students in Year 7 compared with students in Year 10? Or is there a relationship between the amount of sleep students have and how much exercise they do?

### Covariation

Covariation is the comparison of relationships between variables. There are three distinct kinds of covariation that secondary students study depending on the types of variables being compared. When two numerical variables are compared (such as height vs armspan), students work with scatterplots to observe trends in the data. When two categorical variables are compared (such as whether accident victims wore seatbelts compared with the category of their injury), then association of the variables is investigated through the use of two-way tables and comparison of marginal probabilities. Finally, when one variable is numerical and the other is categorical, students use stacked graphs such as box plots or dot plots to compare the numerical data for each group. An example of each of these is given below.

The first type of covariation compares numerical data. For example, when archaeologists find human bones at a dig site, they use data that compares the length of the bones to heights of individuals, thus allowing them to predict the likely height of the person. The task below shows how students can participate in such an investigation by collecting this data themselves.

Another type of covariation examines associations between two categorical variables. Students will likely have some experience with representing categorical variables in two-way tables in primary school (Table 11.1), but may not have used them as a tool to investigate association. Because secondary students are more comfortable with proportional reasoning, they can begin to appreciate the power of proportions in working with unequal-sized groups.

## Comparing numerical data

Secondary school students were told that an archaeologist had discovered a human femur measuring 41 cm. They collected data on the lengths of their own femurs (measuring from the middle of the kneecap to the hip bone) and their heights, and produced the graph shown in Figure 11.5. Identify different techniques for predicting the height of the individual whose femur was found by the archaeologist. Discuss the appropriateness of using regression versus non-regression techniques with junior and senior secondary students.

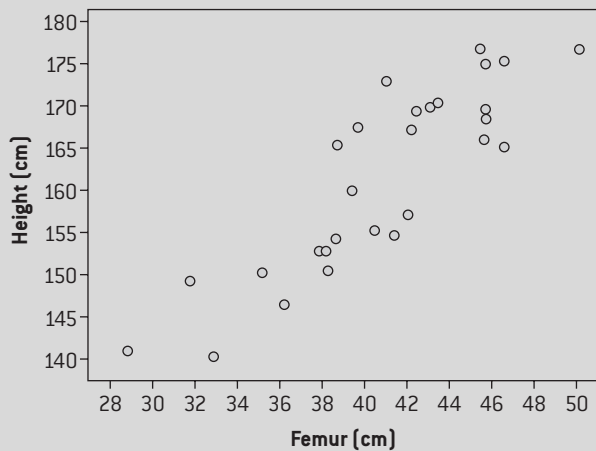


Figure 11.5 Association between lengths of femur bones and heights in humans

## Categorical variables

Table 11.1 Association between where UK citizens live and whether they smoke

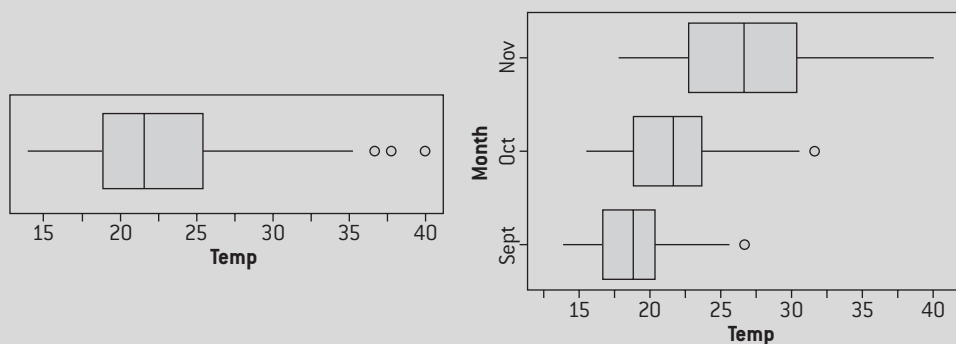
		Smoke?		
		Yes	No	Overall
Live in London?	Yes	5	25	30
	No	64	206	270
	Overall	69	231	300

A random sample of 300 residents from the United Kingdom is split according to whether or not they smoke (Table 11.1).

Do the data suggest that those living in London are more or less likely to smoke than those who live elsewhere in the United Kingdom? How is this problem similar to and different from establishing the concept of independence in probability? Can we use the formula for independence to help us decide whether these variables appear to be related?

Comparing groups has been found to be one of the most effective approaches for supporting students' understanding of statistical concepts. Because some learners find it difficult to move away from focusing on individual points in a distribution, group comparisons can be a way to support aggregate thinking.

### Comparing groups



*Figure 11.6* Spring temperatures for Perth (left), disaggregated by month (right)

With a partner, discuss the usefulness of the two graphs in Figure 11.6 for describing spring temperatures in Perth.

Discuss your interpretations of the graph on the right, noting any comparisons you make between the months. In which graph were your interpretations richer? Why?

The graph of the spring temperature for Perth (Figure 11.6, left) may be useful to describe the overall spring temperature, but it may also be difficult for students to know which aspects of the distribution to focus on. On the other hand, by comparing the temperatures by month (Figure 11.6, right), there is a more natural tendency to focus on interesting aspects of the distribution—for example, comparing how the median temperature changes in each month, giving a reason to look at the *centre*. There is a distinctive difference in variability as well, noting that the temperatures in September appear to be more consistent than in November, giving a reason to focus on aspects of *variability*. Finally, in all three distributions the data appear to be skewed to the right somewhat, meaning that higher temperatures are less likely within the monthly range than lower temperatures.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Use data from the CensusAtSchool website to devise a set of tasks that illustrates each of the types of comparison outlined above [comparing numerical data, covariation between two categorical variables and comparing groups].

### Combining probability and statistics

Simulations, whether manual or technological, are wonderful teaching tools that can be used to build reasoning about the interaction between probability and statistics. For example, theoretical probabilities can be estimated by conducting empirical experiments, as illustrated by the example below.

### Conducting empirical experiments

A family has four children. What is the probability that all four are girls? How common is it to have an even split between boys and girls?

Work in groups of three to tackle this task by generating a list of 100 families with four children. One person generates random four-digit numbers using a graphics calculator and the second person by using the list provided below, where an even number represents a female and an odd number represents a male. The third person conducts a manual simulation using coins, with heads representing females and tails representing males. Each person is to predict, then calculate, the empirical and theoretical probabilities of a family having two girls and two boys.

8964 8980 8093 5700 9531	6583 2680 2073 9480 2305	7918 8964 9808 9357 0845
2857 3513 8492 7826 7205	8671 4737 1522 0245 8697	2817 5221 9933 3689 2857
1407 3219 7389 9449 3743	3869 9967 6561 8568 8246	3115 4476 3475 9677 5654
7708 3740 0808 1393 7186	9698 9039 3129 4005 5176	9320 5222 7934 3220 5584
2277 3114 6911 3179 5559	0602 2061 2463 9173 2185	0966 6861 6773 9625 2628
2498 0654 4380 6536 0104	3471 7474 0857 0411 8525	7688 3727 7891 4668 8287
1263 4538 0665 6872 5648	5747 3306 8592 4513 5373	5235 6948 6462 6011 0108
4117 1872 7920 5900 3837	9097 0148 6428 0367 6885	7459 2427 9355 2148 3253
7589 2333 7300 6848 6784	4262 6646 5005 1333 6718	4138 4289 8752 9920 5183
2626 1016 1979 6818 2007	1471 3374 4121 0389 2012	7549 6245 0253 6509 9555

- How close were your empirical and theoretical results?
- How can you explain the difference in outcomes?
- In your group, compare the three approaches used to generate the list of families and discuss the advantages and disadvantages of each for classroom implementation.
- Extend this investigation to generate and answer your own questions (e.g. 'What is the likelihood of getting consecutive siblings with the same gender?').
- How could you adapt this problem for different age levels?

### *Statistical thinking: Creating statistical information*

Statistical thinking involves an understanding of why and how statistical investigations are conducted and the 'big ideas' that underlie statistical investigations. (Ben-Zvi & Garfield, 2004, p. 7)

The 'big ideas' of statistics involve understanding the nature and omnipresence of variation, how samples can be used to make inferences to populations, the utility of models to simulate random processes, the centrality of the context of a problem in drawing conclusions, and engagement with the process and limitations of a statistical investigation from problem conception to critiquing of outcomes. Statistical thinking entails a higher level of

cognitive demand than either statistical reasoning or statistical literacy. It includes both the knowledge and dispositions required to understand the underlying concepts of statistical investigations. A model of statistical thinking developed by researchers in New Zealand looks at both the investigative processes that engender statistical thinking and the kinds of dispositions critical to statistical thinking (Shaughnessy & Pfannkuch, 2002; Wild & Pfannkuch, 1999). Three critical aspects of statistical thinking will be discussed in this section: *dispositions* critical to statistical thinking; the *statistical investigation cycle*; and *informal statistical inference*. In the process of developing and supporting students' statistical thinking, there is an added benefit of simultaneously deepening their statistical reasoning and literacy skills.

### Dispositions for statistical thinking

Developing students' statistical thinking is an ongoing process requiring a classroom culture that encourages risk, collaboration, reflection and open debate. Wild and Pfannkuch list the following dispositions as critical to statistical thinking (1999, p. 233):

- *scepticism*—the ability to worry about potential pitfalls in reasoning or lack of justification for assumptions and claims;
- *imagination*—the realisation that statistics requires creativity often surprises people; however, understanding core leverages and dynamics of a problem, seeing a problem from multiple viewpoints, and generating possible explanations are deeply imaginative processes;
- *curiosity and awareness*—triggering and reacting to internal questions asking why;
- *openness to ideas that challenge preconceptions*—registering and considering new ideas, particularly when information conflicts with assumptions;
- *a propensity to seek deeper meaning*—looking beyond initial and superficial impressions, being prepared to dig deeper;
- *being logical*—being able to construct a valid, coherent and reasoned argument;
- *engagement*—intense interest heightens sensitivity and observation skills, and background knowledge of the context is one key to eliciting engagement;
- *perseverance*—trying new approaches, sticking with a problem when obstacles are encountered, and managing ambiguity all require perseverance.



In addition, Wild and Pfannkuch (1999) identify several types of thinking unique to statistics:

- *recognition of the need for data*—the understanding that personal experience and anecdotal evidence are inadequate for making decisions, leading to a desire to collect data;
- *transnumeration*—the process of finding ways of collecting data (through measurement or categories) that capture meaningful aspects of the phenomenon under investigation (in mathematics, this is similar to the process of mathematising a problem). Transnumeration also includes looking at several different representations or ways of organising and summarising data that give insight. This aspect of statistical thinking is where the creative insight lends particular power to statistics as a tool to understand the world;
- *consideration of variation*—statistics empowers one to be able to manage uncertainty, or variation, in data. If there were no variation, there would be no reason to do statistics. The ability to ‘see variation’ is absolutely fundamental to understanding statistics;
- *reasoning with statistical models (aggregate-based reasoning)*—this process develops more formally when students look at experimental design, but it can be included early when thinking about distributions as representing outputs of a process, as in considering why heights tend to follow a bell-shaped distribution. Models are used to think about statistical processes;
- *integrating the statistical and contextual*—statistics is meant to be strongly grounded in the context of the problem under investigation. Therefore, students need to be able to integrate statistical and contextual information fluidly. The context allows the data analysis to constantly check with meaning-making to generate conjectures, explain causes and seek further meaning in the data.

### Statistical investigation cycle

Statistical investigation is part of an information gathering and learning process which is undertaken to seek meaning from and to learn more about observed phenomena as well as to inform decisions and actions. The ultimate goal of statistical investigation is to learn more about a real world situation and to expand the body of contextual knowledge. (Australian Bureau of Statistics, 2006)



Source: <[www.censusatschool.org.nz](http://www.censusatschool.org.nz)>.

Figure 11.7 The statistical investigation cycle

The statistical investigation cycle (Figure 11.7) is a process for using data to learn about phenomena which models the practice used by statisticians in solving problems (Wild & Pfannkuch, 1999). Statistical investigations require a different kind of thinking from that used in mathematical problem-solving, and are ‘mastered only over an extended period and depend on thoughtful instructional support and repeated opportunities for practice and use’ (Lehrer & Schauble, 2000, p. 114). In addition, the first experience with statistical investigations can be frustrating for students and teachers alike because of the difficulty dealing with the multiple uncertainties encountered. Because statistical inquiry often generates more questions than it answers as the inquirer digs deeper into the data, the process is considered to be cyclic, sometimes stopping in the middle of a cycle to generate a new one if new questions are deemed to provide better insight or answer questions more efficiently as the inquirer gains deeper understanding of the problem at hand. This process can leave the learner a little overwhelmed at times, particularly in early experiences.

There are five steps involved in a statistical investigation: problem, plan, data, analysis, and conclusion (PPDAC).

- *Problem.* What is the question that is being investigated? Students must have an understanding of the context being investigated in order to come up with questions that make sense. Although it may seem trivial, generating measurable questions and conjectures has been shown to be extremely challenging for students (Marshall et al., 2002). Unfortunately, most learning experiences in statistics skip this critical step. Until students conduct their own investigations and gain multiple experiences working with data, they tend to either ask questions that are too simple (requiring a ‘yes’ or ‘no’ answer), questions for which data is not available or practical, or questions which are not measurable and generally cannot be answered using data (Confrey & Makar, 2002). Those inexperienced with data often believe that data analysis provides definitive answers to complex questions. Therefore, one of the goals of the statistical investigation cycle is to provide students with sufficient experience with data to break the black-and-white or overly relativistic mentality that statistics can ‘prove’ anything.
- *Plan.* Once the question under investigation is generated, students plan their investigation. This includes deciding what data will be useful in answering the question, finding out more about the situation to aid in understanding the data, and logistics of how the data will be collected and recorded. It is advisable for students to collect pilot data to check whether their data collection plan is viable. In upper secondary school, this may also include an appropriate experimental design needed to answer the question. Again, this step is often overlooked in school but includes multiple opportunities to discuss and gain insight into statistics.
- *Data.* Once a plan is in place, students collect and record their data. Often, during this process, there are ambiguities in data categories that require further discussion. For example, in an investigation of whether older classmates had healthier lunches at school than younger ones, the student investigators realised there was a dispute as to whether items such as cheese and muesli bars should be classified as ‘healthy’. The data stage also includes clarifying and ‘cleaning’ data to prepare it for analysis, such as deciding what to do about missing or omitted values as well as scrutinising outliers in the data.

- *Analysis.* The stage most commonly practised in school is the analysis phase of an investigation. This involves organising and summarising the data, and digging into the data to find meaning, investigating hunches that develop, following leads, and seeking to explain patterns observed. A goal during this stage is to answer the question being posed, but often new questions arise during this process and the inquirer goes back to collect more data or refine their original question based on a better understanding of the data. Often students realise that the data they have collected doesn't actually answer their original question. There is also difficulty—particularly if the investigation cycle is taught as a rote process—in seeing the analysis stage as an opportunity to generate evidence for the question under investigation (Hancock et al., 1992; Marshall et al., 2002).
- *Conclusion.* The conclusion stage is where final decisions are made about the interpretation of results and analysis, including inferences made to larger processes. Although this will often include communicating findings to address (completely or partially) the question initially posed, it is meant to include other elements, such as additional information that was learned during the investigation cycle about the phenomenon under study, limitations to the conclusions drawn, and ideas for potential further investigations based on what was learned.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Design a statistical investigation that engages students in all five steps as outlined in this section; discuss potential areas of difficulty students may have and how these difficulties can be addressed. Use your local mathematics curriculum document to identify strands or topics that are incorporated in your investigation. Here are some ideas:

- Find out the school's 'top ten' most popular songs.
- Investigate the sleep habits of students in your school—compare weekdays and weekends.
- How many hours in a week do students study (or watch TV, use a computer, spend outdoors)? *Note:* look at the data distributions, not just averages!
- Check online for ideas from your local curriculum authority or mathematics teachers' organisations.

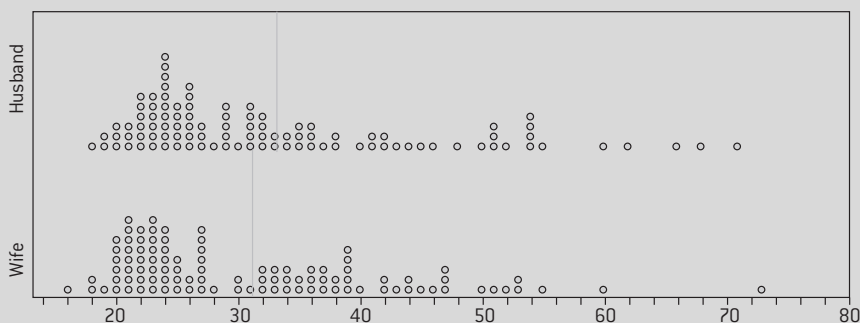
### Informal statistical inference

Statistical inference is the process of making a generalisation, with a level of uncertainty, to a population or mechanism based on sample data. Although formal hypothesis testing is not always part of the secondary mathematics curriculum, basic concepts of statistical inference should be taught during the school years. Research has shown that formal statistical inference (such as tests of significance and confidence intervals for population parameters) is very difficult for students to learn when they first encounter the topic in university (Gardner & Hudson, 1999). Developing a strong conceptual basis behind inference in school through less formal means can ease this difficulty. Building on work from primary school, junior secondary mathematics can use data with greater sophistication to make more subtle interpretations about the population from which data were collected. A benefit of focusing on inference is that it helps to refocus learning on the *purpose* behind the statistics—understanding the context; it makes little sense to draw inferences without bringing in the context. After all, statistics is meant to provide a set of tools to gain insight into a context through the use of data.

*Statistical inference* differs from *descriptive statistics*, where the given data are described and interpretations are made only about the given data. The following example (see box) demonstrates the distinction. Remember that, ideally, informal statistical inferences should be carried out within a statistical investigation cycle.

### Statistical inference

Data were collected on the ages of 100 couples when they got married. A graph is given in Figure 11.8 with the means of each group marked.



Source: Rossman, Chance & Locke (2001).

Figure 11.8 A comparison of the ages of 100 couples getting married

One could use descriptive statistics to describe this sample by making statements such as ‘The mean age of the husbands was 33 years and the mean age of the wives was 31’. Or, ‘On average, the men in the sample were two years older than their wives’, or ‘4 per cent of the women in this sample getting married were in their teens’. However, any generalisation made to all married couples (assuming this is a representative sample)—such as ‘From this sample, one can hypothesise that husbands tend to be older than their wives’—would be an inferential statement, the validity of which would likely need further analysis (formally or informally).

This is an important distinction, as the power of statistics lies in the ability to draw inferences about phenomena based on appropriately drawn samples. Descriptive statistics, while it does allow us to gain insight into patterns found in data, is limited to describing the data at hand. Of course, descriptive statistics forms the backbone of inferential statistics.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** A poll of 50 randomly chosen voters is taken to estimate how a local community will vote on a referendum to ban pets from the local park. Results of the poll are given in Figure 11.9.

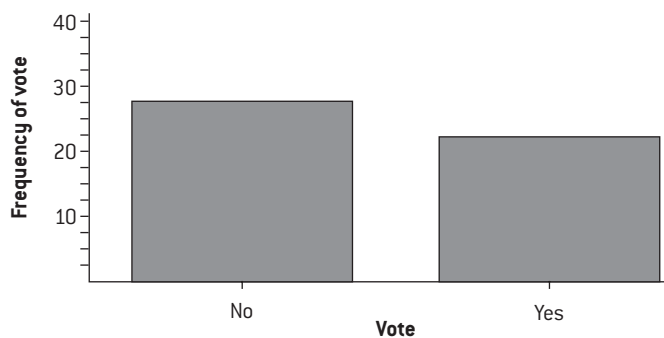


Figure 11.9 Random sample of 50 voters—22 in favour, 28 against

- Do you think the referendum will pass based on this poll? How sure are you?
- Use your response and the poll results to write one descriptive and one inferential statement about the data.
- Make up your own example to help students understand the difference between descriptive and inferential statistics.
- Compare your responses with a partner.

In the later secondary years, sampling distributions can be introduced to give an idea of how multiple samples can be used to provide more precise estimates of population parameters. The tools for inference draw on and extend earlier concepts related to probability, centre, variability and distribution. Sampling distributions present a number of conceptual challenges for students. In descriptive statistics, the data points generally represent a single measurement. Sampling distributions, however, are made up of a collection of data where each point represents an entire sample.

## Conclusion

Teaching chance and data provides many opportunities to implement the mathematical pedagogies and practices outlined in the chapters in Part II of this book. Problems in probability and statistics naturally incorporate context, and hence provide teachers with multiple opportunities to connect students' learning in school with those encountered in real life. By simultaneously developing students' statistical literacy, reasoning and thinking practices, teachers can prepare students for consuming, utilising and creating statistical information throughout their lives.

## Recommended reading

**Garfield, J. & Ben-Zvi, D. (in press).** *Developing students' statistical reasoning: Connecting research and teaching practice*. Emeryville, CA: Key College Publishing.

**Huff, D. (1954).** *How to lie with statistics*. London: Gollancz.

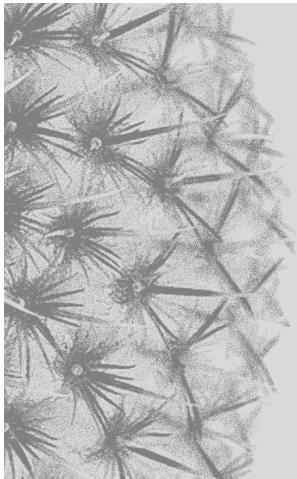
**Konold, C. & Pollatsek, A. (2002).** Data analysis as the search for signals in noisy processes. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 33(4), 259–89.

**Shaughnessy, M. & Pfannkuch, M. (2002).** How faithful is Old Faithful? *The Mathematics Teacher*, 95(4), 252–9.

**Watson, J. (2005a).** Is statistical literacy relevant for middle school students? *Vinculum* 42(1), 3–10.

**Watson, J. (2006).** *Statistical literacy at school: Growth and goals*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.





## CHAPTER 12

### Teaching and learning calculus

The ever-present temptation in teaching and learning mathematics is to succumb to the pressure to develop fluency and automaticity in techniques over the building of relational understanding of the underlying concepts and procedures and the ability to apply these concepts in a wide variety of task contexts (both real-world and purely mathematical). Nowhere is it more important to resist this temptation than in introductory calculus. Derivatives and differentiation and integrals and integration are central concepts and procedures, with very important underpinning notions which begin their formation in other areas of mathematics. Derivatives and differentiation link to the notion of gradient of a function which links to rates of change and so ratios of differences. Integrals and integration link to the notion of area under a curve which links to summation. According to Tall (1996), there is a:

spectrum of possible approaches to the calculus, from real-world calculus in which intuitions can be built enactively using visuo-spatial representations, through the numeric, symbolic and graphic representations in elementary calculus and on to the formal definition–theorem–proof–illustration approach of analysis which is as much concerned with existence of solutions as their actual construction. (1996, p. 294)

Recently, Tall (2004, 2006) proposed a categorisation of cognitive growth into three distinct but interacting developments which he calls worlds: the *conceptual-embodied world* growing out of our perceptions of the world; the *proceptual-symbolic world* of symbols which we use for

calculation and manipulation; and the *formal-axiomatic world* based on properties expressed in terms of formal definitions that are used as axioms to specify mathematical structures.

*Procept* is the term used by Gray and Tall (1994) to name the combination of process (e.g. differentiation) and the concept (e.g. derivative) produced by the process which may both be evoked by the same symbol (e.g.  $\frac{dy}{dx}$ ). In introductory calculus, three procepts are important: *function*, incorporating the notion of *change*; *derivative*, incorporating the notion of *rate of change*; and *integral*, which incorporates the notion of *cumulative growth*. This area of study, then, becomes a study of the *doing* and *undoing* of the processes involved with these procepts.

Tall (1996) takes the perspective that the building of concepts at the heart of introductory calculus should be grounded in enactive experiences of the conceptual-embodied world which ‘provide an intuitive basis . . . built with numeric, symbolic and visual representations’ (1996, p. 293). The concept of derivative, for example, is best approached initially through an embodied activity. Tall and Watson (2001) suggest that an appropriate introductory activity is to base ‘the idea of “rate of change” on “local straightness” of the graph, actually *seeing* the gradient of the graph change as one moves one’s eye along the graph from left to right’ (2001, p. 1). This activity provides a sequential process for sketching the gradient function of a graph.

The formal definitions and theorems of mathematical analysis belong to the formal-axiomatic world, and Tall (1996) sees these as requiring ‘subtly different cognitive qualities’ from those required in conceptual-embodied or proceptual-symbolic worlds, which are far better suited to introductory calculus. His theory suggests there is ‘a fundamental fault-line in “calculus” courses which attempt to build on formal definitions and theorems from the beginning’ (1996, p. 293).

Researchers such as Vinner (1989) claim that students tend to use algebraic representations and methods when solving calculus questions, avoiding the visual methods that would be expected to be associated with the conceptual-embodied world; however, research by Tall and Watson (2001) suggests this may be an artefact of the teaching and assessment the students have received, and the way they were encouraged to construct their knowledge. In their study of the manner in which students build up meaning to sketch the gradient graph of a given function, one teacher privileged ‘a visual-enactive approach’, whereby she followed the shape of graphs in the air with her hand, encouraging her students to follow her lead—thus building a physical sense of the changing gradient. Visual

and symbolic ideas were deliberately linked by the teacher. The students of this teacher outperformed the other students in the study who were taught by other teachers using a more traditional approach to graph sketching and development of gradient of these graphs.

In this chapter, we will examine the background students require for successful learning of calculus, key steps in the introduction of the calculus, and obstacles to learning that have been identified by researchers. Key notions in the teaching of differentiation and integration will then be addressed. In keeping with the tremendous changes that have been enabled in teaching by the advent of electronic technologies in classrooms of high mathematical capability, there is a focus on technology in addressing difficulties and introducing key ideas.

## **Background required for successful learning of the calculus**

### *Representational diversity, fluency and versatility*

Modern technology supports three (external) representations of function: the *numerical* representation (through tables of values); the *graphical* representation, and the *algebraic* representation (especially with the capability of computer algebra systems). The image digitiser GridPic (Visser, 2004), for example, allows photographs to be imported into the program then overlaid with a Cartesian coordinate grid where students can click on points on the image to collect a set of points (listed in a table of values) which form the basis for generating a graphical model of things of interest in the image such as the Gothic arch in Figure 12.1. By selecting a quartic polynomial from a number of options, students can use various strategies to refine the parameters of an algebraic model for the graph that best fits the points. The ability to establish meaningful links between representational forms and with the concept being represented—which Lesh (2000) calls representational fluency—is ‘at the heart of what it means to understand many of the more important underlying mathematical constructs’ (2000, p. 180) in areas such as calculus.

Heid’s (1988) work on student understanding of differentiation, for example, has shown that students who were exposed to meanings and concepts using a multiple representation approach for twelve weeks ( $2 \times 75$  minutes weekly) before a three-week diet of skill work, performed better than students taught in the reverse order. However, others such as Kendal and Stacey (2003) question the wisdom of such an approach, in the limited time available in an upper secondary curriculum, based on results from a teaching experiment involving the

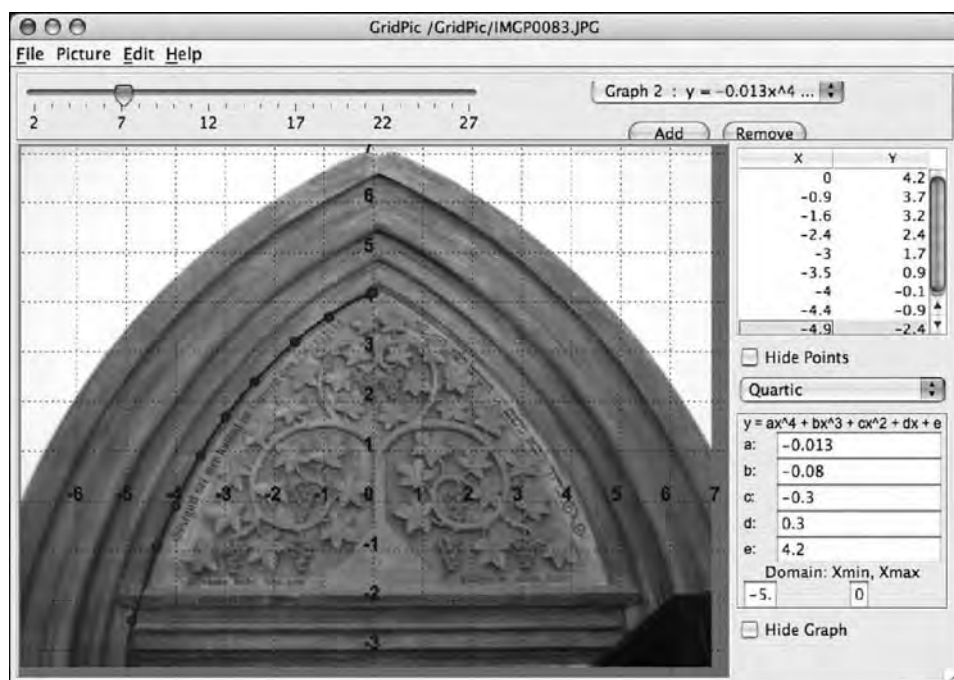


Figure 12.1 Use of GridPic to fit a quartic function to a Gothic arch

introduction of differential calculus over 22 lessons of 45 minutes each to two Year 11 classes. Even though both classes had access to CAS calculators, ‘only the most capable students developed an appreciation of the concept of derivative across all three representations and about half demonstrated mastery in at least two representations’ (2003, p. 38). Again, as in the Tall and Watson (2001) study, there is the question of whether or not teacher emphases and promotion of different representations and use of technology may have contributed to this finding. Aspinwall and Miller (2001) suggest that having students engage in mathematical writing in response to prompts intended to inform the teacher about students’ understanding of fundamental concepts in calculus can help students to make connections among different representations.

With rapid advances in the field of technology impinging on what happens in the mathematics classroom, it is important that students develop ‘representational diversity’ as well as ‘representational fluency’ because different technologies emphasise different aspects of a situation (Lesh, 2003). Both of these abilities are ‘critical abilities for success outside of

school' (2003, p. 48), as well as during their study of elementary calculus. Stewart and Thomas use the more expansive term 'representational versatility' to encompass 'the need for both conceptual and procedural interactions with any given representation and the power of visualisation in the use of representations' (2006, p. 488), as well as representational fluency. Thus one of the first prerequisites for the beginning calculus student is a well-rounded multiple representation understanding of function (see Chapter 10)—which will, of course, be developed further as elementary calculus ideas are developed. These understandings can, and should, be developed through tasks at the lower secondary level encompassing the use of multiple representations (see Figure 12.2).



*Figure 12.2* **Students linking numerical and diagrammatic representations in a real-world task**

### *The study of change*

From an early age, children recognise examples of change in their environment and describe change in qualitative terms such as a bucket becoming heavier as it fills with water or a pile of potato chips becoming smaller as more are eaten. They notice that the bucket becomes heavier more quickly as the tap is turned on further, but that the rate at which vegetables disappear from a dinner plate does not change if you continue to eat just as slowly as you

can. They become aware that some changes are increasing, others decreasing and yet others change at the same rate. By measuring and comparing quantities, children learn to quantify change and about the predictability of some change situations and the randomness of others.

Several important ideas are embedded in change situations, and these need to be addressed explicitly in the lower secondary years to lay a foundation for calculus:

- Change in one quantity may or may not be related to change in another quantity.
- The rate at which the change is occurring may be constant or may vary.
- How quickly or slowly the variation in the change occurs is important.

Change can be represented in many different ways (e.g. verbally, in a table, diagrammatically, graphically).

A graph shows the relationship of one quantity to another with the shape giving insight into the nature of the change. Although there have been many opportunities in the pre-calculus years to focus on interpreting and drawing graphs, as preparation for calculus it is important that students focus on global properties of graphs, such as whether a graph is increasing or decreasing, whether this is happening steadily, or where it is increasing/decreasing quickly or slowly. Sketching graphs of relationships (especially motion) described in words, interpreting graphs in this global sense, and matching graphs to situations described in words (see box below for examples)—*not* just drawing graphs from algebraic formulae—provide a firm foundation for rate of change. Excellent examples of such tasks are provided in Barnes (1991) and *The Language of Functions and Graphs* from the Shell Centre (1985).

### Examples of describing relationships verbally and graphically

#### *From graph to story*

**Australian Open Tennis Championship.** Centre Court in Rod Laver Arena is used for important matches which draw large crowds during the Open. Draw a graph showing how the number of people in the stands varies during the evening program. Write a brief story explaining the changes shown in the graph.

*From story to graphs*

**Petrol theft.** Non-payments by customers at self-service petrol bowsers were high at the beginning of the year when petrol prices were high because of high consumption overseas in a cold northern winter. These thefts dropped slowly during the next six months, then a fire at the refinery resulted in a 20 cent increase in petrol prices overnight and the thefts suddenly doubled. They stayed high for the next three months as petrol prices remained high while the refinery was repaired and after that gradually decreased as petrol prices dropped again. Draw a graph to illustrate the number of these petrol thefts over the time period. If you drew a graph of the petrol prices over the same period, how would it differ?

*Matching graphs to story*

**Aeroplane landing.** An aeroplane coming in to land at an airport has been put into a holding pattern while it waits to land. It is circling at a constant height and a fixed speed. At a particular moment, the pilot is informed it is safe to land and to taxi some distance to the allocated airport terminal gate to disembark passengers. Which graph in Figure 12.3 models most realistically the relationship between the speed of the aeroplane and the distance it travels to the disembarkment bridge at the terminal gate? Explain your choice. If none of the models is realistic, draw your own version and explain it fully.

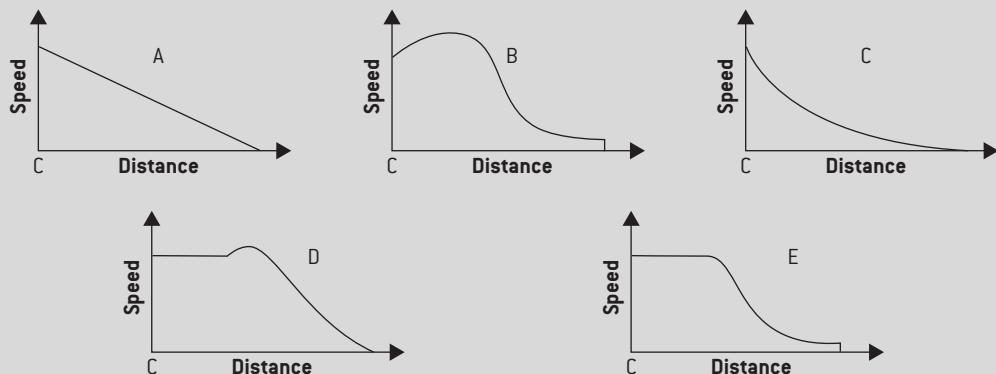


Figure 12.3 Aeroplane speed models

### Representing motion with graphs

The use of motion-sensing devices such as a data logger with students in the lower secondary years, in conjunction with distance–time graphs, is a valuable way of gaining a qualitative sense of the link between gradient and velocity. The following example (Figure 12.4) illustrates how walking or running rates can be used to explore rates of change, although students themselves could be asked to collect their own data using a motion-sensing device. Interpreting the area under a simple velocity–time graph as distance travelled can similarly be considered as preparation for the notion of integration.

On the weekend I was fortunate to see an emu running back and forth along a fence line.

Luckily I had both my Calculator-Based-Ranger (CBR) and graphics calculator with me, and was able to collect some data for today's lesson.

For the first run along the fence:

Initial distance from the CBR: 0.54 metres. Total time: 8.87 seconds.

Final distance: 4.71 metres.

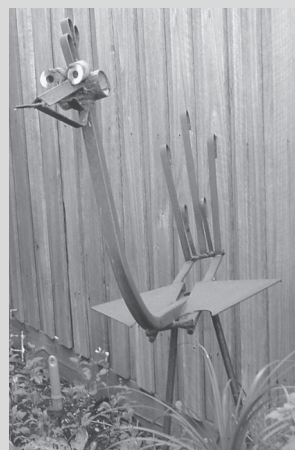
Here are some of the data I collected on the first run.

T1	D1	T2	D2
0.00	.54	0.00	
.16	.61	.20	
.32	.69	.40	
.48	.76	.60	
.65	.84	.80	
.81	.93	1.10	
.97	1.01	1.40	

T2 = (0.00, .20, .4...

T1	D1	T2	D2
7.90	4.29	10.19	
8.06	4.36	10.39	
8.22	4.44	10.59	
8.39	4.51	10.79	
8.55	4.58	10.99	
8.71	4.64	11.19	
8.87	4.71		

T2(56) =



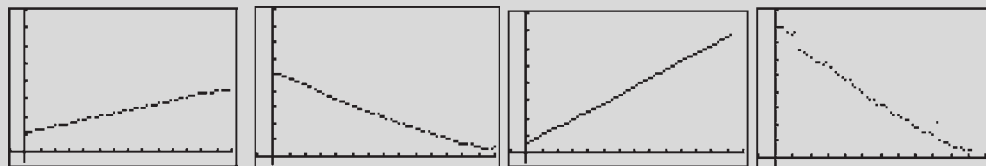
Was the emu running towards me or away from me? How do we know?

The rate at which the distance is changing with time is the emu's speed.

Is the emu running at a constant or variable speed? How do we know?

What was the emu's average speed for the first run? How do we know?

I collected four sets of data as the emu ran up and down the fence. I have drawn Distance (D)–Time (T) graphs of the emu running up and down the fence line with my calculator. The scale marks were set to 1 for all graphs.



Unfortunately, I have forgotten which graph matches which data set. Which graph best represents the data for the first run? How do we know?

Describe in words and with sample data a situation for the emu running to match the remaining three graphs. In particular focus on the rate of change of distance run with time.

Figure 12.4 The running emu



**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Devise a task for Year 10 students using a motion sensor that allows them to explore rates of change and velocity–time graphs.

### *Slope of secants*

Asiala and colleagues (1997) theorise, based on empirical evidence, that in order for students to follow a graphical path in constructing a schema for the concept of the derivative, the first step is ‘the action of connecting two points on a curve to form a chord which is a portion of the secant through the two points together with the action of computing the slope of the secant line through the points’ (1997, p. 426). Again, technology can help students interiorise these actions to a single process as the points get ‘closer and closer’ together—the second step on the graphical path to derivative. GridPic, for example, can be used to draw the tangent at a point, say  $(-3.5, 0.9)$  (see Figure 12.5) by selecting the straight line option and refining choices of values for parameters in  $y = ax + b$ . The picture can then be turned off to remove extraneous detail and the slopes of secants to a series of points approaching  $(-3.5, 0.9)$  can be computed and used to draw secants through these points and  $(-3.5, 0.9)$  as shown in Figure 12.6.

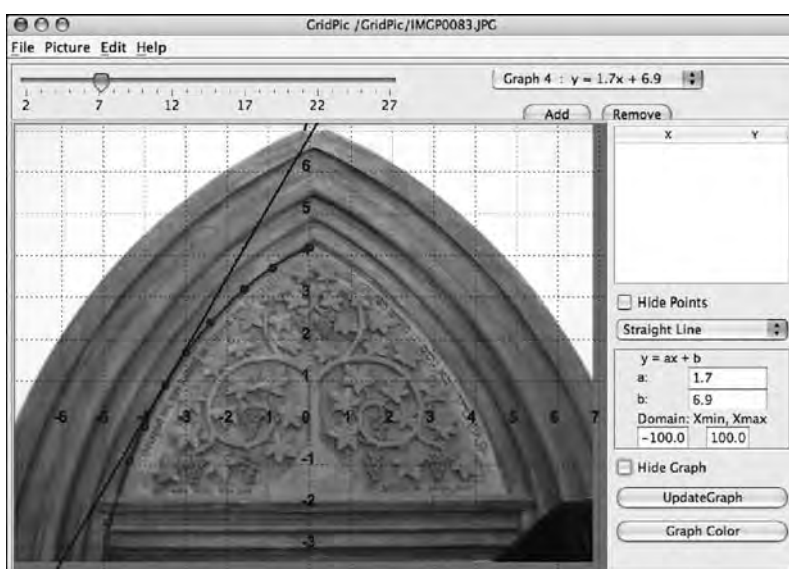


Figure 12.5 Use of GridPic to draw a tangent to the curve at the point  $(-3.5, 0.9)$

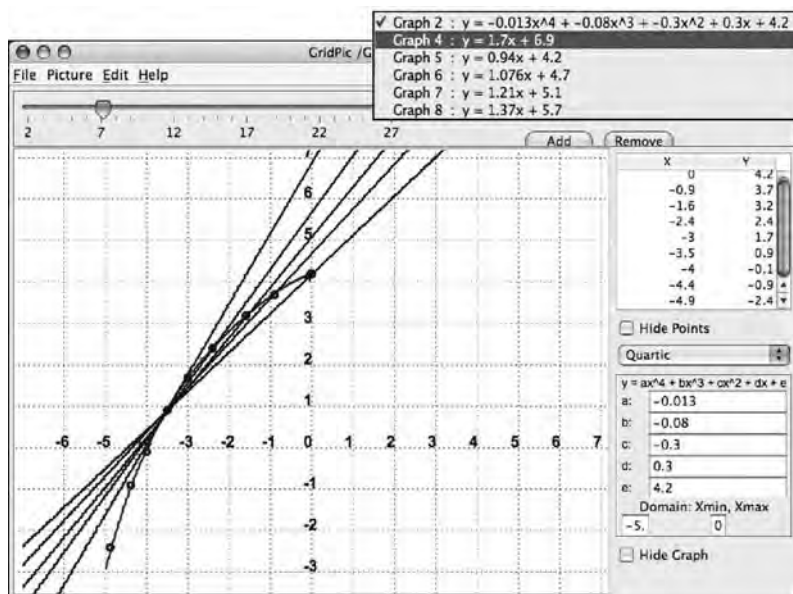


Figure 12.6 Use of GridPic to draw secants approaching the tangent to the curve at the point  $(-3.5, 0.9)$

### Rates of change

One of the key properties of any function is how it changes (or even whether it changes). This is referred to as the rate of change of the function. Rate of change is a very powerful tool, and one of the key concepts of calculus. Students need many early experiences with constant (e.g. stacking plastic cups, see Figure 12.7) and non-constant rates of changes (e.g. shortest path problems, see Figures 12.8 and 12.9) and being asked to distinguish between these, using information from all three representations.

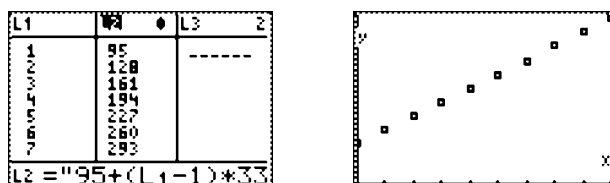


Figure 12.7 Constant rate of change of height of a stack of plastic cups, per cup

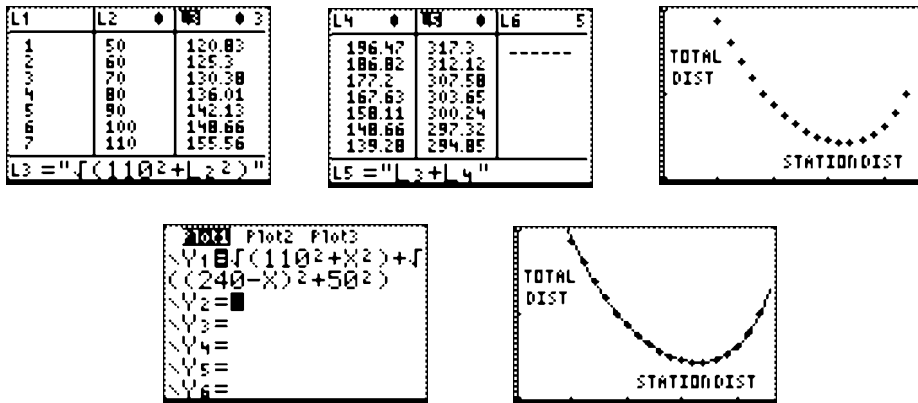


Figure 12.8 Varying rate of change of total distance run with station distance

The key question being asked is: *How does the rate at which the y values are changing compare with the rate at which the x values are changing?* Distinguishing between change (i.e.  $\Delta x$  or  $\Delta y$ ) and rate of change (i.e.  $\frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x}$ ) causes problems for students. They have difficulty understanding the difference between a *difference* and a *ratio of differences*.

In the following exchange, for example, the students are trying to answer a question about the rate at which the total distance travelled by a runner is changing as the runner traverses a field via one of eighteen equally spaced drink stations along one side of the field (Figure 12.9). The runner must travel via only one drink station after entering through one gate and leaving via a second gate.

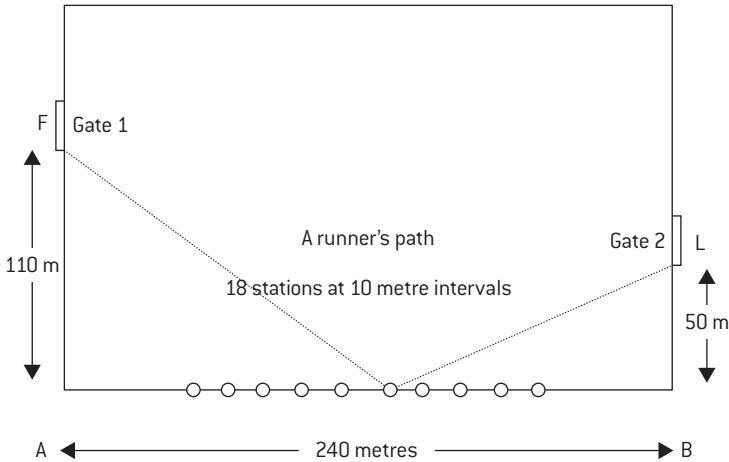


Figure 12.9 Task diagram

- Thomas:** Does the total distance change at the same rate as you travel via station 1, or 2 or 3 or 4 . . . ?
- Andrea:** Yes.
- Thomas:** No it doesn't. No it doesn't.
- Andrea:** Total distance so it does.
- Thomas:** It says, 'Does the rate change?' Look, it means if you go from 1 to 2 . . .
- Andrea:** No.
- Thomas:** . . . is it the same as going from 2 to 3?
- Andrea:** No, does the total distance at the same rate?
- Maddie:** [leaning towards the others] It is the amount, so it is increasing and decreasing.
- Andrea:** It means if you are running at 5 km/h, does it stay the same? No it doesn't stay the same.
- Thomas:** Does the total distance run change? I need to concentrate on this.
- Andrea:** [using scale plan and pointing to different drink stations] Does your total run, whether you go to that, to that, to that and to that change, if you are running at, if everyone is running at 5 km an hour, will it change? Yes, it will because the totals are different.

*Source:* Extract from RITEMATHS project (2006).

Maddie wrote as her answer: 'No, because it is a parabolic [sic] graph. The rate decreases then increases again once it has reached its lowest point.' In the follow-up interview, Thomas said he was still confused about which change it was, but when he was told he was considering the 'change as you go from one station to the next' he immediately said: 'Yeah, it does change. In between 1 and 2 there's a difference [meaning in the total distance run]. I think it is 4.9 and then it slowly decreases and then it increases again,' and indicated a varying gap with his fingers.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** After reading about the above situation, state what you know about each person's understanding of rate of change.

What questions could you ask that would give you the best information about the true understanding of rate of change in this situation for each individual?

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Devise a practical task for Year 9 students that will allow them to explore the differences between constant and varying rates of change. [See *Navigating Through Algebra* for examples.]

## Key steps in the introduction of differential calculus

A suggested sequence for the introduction of differential calculus is as follows:

1. *Rates of change* examples using motion detectors to look at positive, negative and zero constant rate examples and variable rate examples.
2. *Constant* rate of change  $\rightarrow$  linear graph  $\rightarrow$  rate of change = gradient.
3. *Variable* rate of change  $\rightarrow$  non-linear graph.
4. *Motion (distance–time) graphs.*
5. *Average rate of change* calculated numerically and graphically: to show it is the gradient of secant.
6. *Instantaneous rate of change* as successive numerical approximations using a spreadsheet or Lists in a graphics or CAS calculator and graphically to show it is the gradient of the limiting secant and use of local straightness to show it is the gradient of the tangent.
7. *Calculating instantaneous rate of change* by drawing the tangent by hand, and calculating the gradient or using a function grapher (e.g. use Draw Tangent with a graphics calculator and then find the gradient—see Figure 12.10, or use nDeriv pointwise).

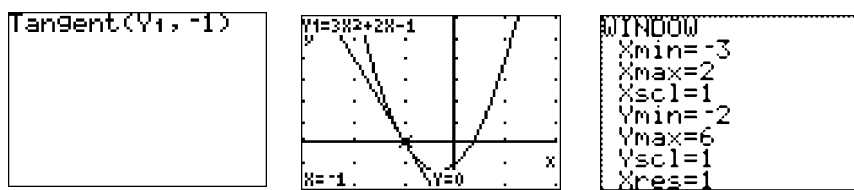


Figure 12.10 Using Draw Tangent and a judicious choice of window

8. *Drawing of gradient functions.* This can be a sketch using the 'ruler as tangent' approach deducing from global and local properties (i.e. where the gradient is positive the gradient function will be above the  $x$ -axis, where the gradient is negative it will be below the  $x$ -axis, and where the gradient is zero the gradient function will intercept the  $x$ -axis). On the graphics calculator, nDeriv can also be used to draw the gradient function (Figure 12.11), but this does not have the power of the previous activity.

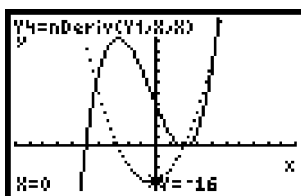


Figure 12.11 Use of numerical derivative to sketch gradient function  
of  $f(x) = (x - 2)^2(x + 5)$

### Velocity–time graphs

Finding the formula for the gradient function can be done using the difference quotient with a graphics calculator by entering any function as  $Y_1$  and setting  $Y_2$  as  $Y_2 = (Y_1(X + h) - Y_1(X))/h$  with a suitably small value of  $h$ . Students can then make links between the graph of a function, the graph of its gradient function and use their knowledge of functions to find the formula of the gradient function. By making links between the graphical and algebraic

representations of a function and its gradient function, students can ‘discover’ rules of differentiation for functions and families of functions.

### REVIEW AND REFLECT :

- Make up a set of cards with various functions with which you, but not necessarily secondary school students, would be familiar—for example:

$$f(x) = 2(x + 4)^3 - 3, f(x) = -\frac{1}{2}x^5, f(x) = \frac{2}{3}x + 5.2x^4, f(x) = 3\cos 2x.$$

Keep these functions hidden.

- Everyone enter  $Y_2 = (Y_0(X + h) - Y_0(X))/h$  into the function window of a graphics calculator.
- Choose and enter a value for  $h$ , such as 0.001.
- In pairs, each person selects a card and enters this function into  $Y_0$  of the function window of their partner’s graphics calculator without the partner seeing.
- Individually, graph  $Y_2$  and  $Y_0$  in a suitable viewing window of your calculator without viewing  $Y_0$  in your function window. Using your knowledge of functions, identify the algebraic function of the gradient function of the unknown function.
- When you think you have identified the function graphically, use the Table to check. If you are correct, use different coloured pens (e.g. red for  $Y_0$  and green for  $Y_2$ ) to draw your function and its gradient function for display on the wall.
- As a group, discuss what knowledge and understandings secondary students would be drawing on when they were conjecturing relationships between functions and their gradient functions when completing a similar task, but with a function such as  $y = x^3$ .

## Obstacles to learning calculus

Several obstacles lie in wait for the unwary student of calculus. Many of these difficulties that students encounter are analogous to those faced by mathematicians in the past as particular concepts in the calculus evolved. The formal definition of a limit, for example,

was not developed until the 1820s, around a century and a half after the basic concepts of the calculus were independently invented by Newton in 1665–66 and Leibniz in 1676. In the intervening years, mathematicians had to be content with imprecise definitions reflecting the status quo for upper secondary students today.

### *Difficulties with limits*

The limit concept is a sophisticated idea which is difficult to understand even at the tertiary level, and problems at this level are attributed to intuitive views of limits coming from secondary schooling (Przenioslo, 2004). There is also confusion caused by the everyday use of the word ‘limit’ (Monaghan, 1991). Students may have heard or seen such terms as height limits on traffic passing under bridges, legal blood alcohol limits for drivers or speed limits for traffic. These are all boundary values that must not be exceeded. This view of limit can constrain students’ thoughts about functions and ‘prevent them from understanding that functions can, for example, oscillate over and under the limit value and still tend to that limit’ (Juter, 2005, p. 78).

The limit concept can be dealt with explicitly by considering expressions such as  $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{(x+h)^2 - x^2}{h}$ . Informally, the limit can be considered at an intuitive level by considering what occurs as  $h \rightarrow 0$  when  $h$  is varied dynamically. For  $h \neq 0$  the rational expression simplifies to  $2x + h$ , and as  $h$  ‘tends to zero’, this expression visibly becomes  $2x$  as is seen in Figure 12.12 when the symbolic facilities of a CAS calculator are used.

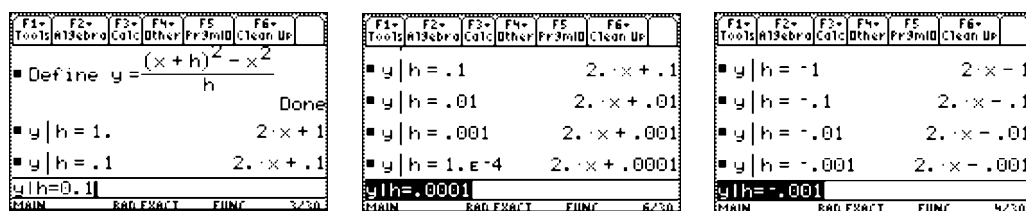


Figure 12.12 Finding the limit informally using a CAS calculator



This is confirmed graphically using the graphing facility with the graphs approaching the line  $y = 2x$  from above and below (Figure 12.13).

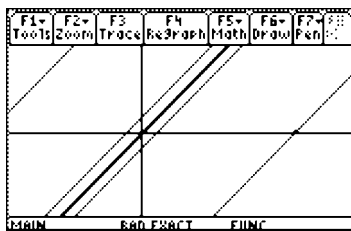


Figure 12.13 Finding the limit informally using a CAS calculator

Cottrill and colleagues (1996, p. 190) take ‘the position that the formal concept of limit is not a static one as is commonly believed, but instead is a very complex schema with important dynamic aspects and requires students to have constructed strong conceptions of quantification’. They conclude that ‘the difficulty in moving to a more formal conception of limit is at least partially a result of insufficient development of a strong dynamic conception’. Even the mathematical language used presents problems, as terms such as ‘tends to’ or ‘approaches’ suggest that limits are not attainable (Juter, 2005). Confusion between *the limiting process* and *the attaining of a limit* can lead to students simultaneously holding quite different conceptions in theoretical, as opposed to problem, situations (Juter, 2005; Williams, 2001). There are thus incompatibilities in seeing limits as a process and as an object. Many of the difficulties students experience with other concepts such as continuity, differentiability and integration can be related to their difficulties with limits, according to Tall (1992, 1996) and Williams (2001).

### *Misconceptions with tangents*

The description of the derivative as the gradient of the graph at a point is another cause of misconceptions. This is because the notion of tangency in many students’ concept images (Tall & Vinner, 1981) is related to the special case of tangent to a circle. The notion of a tangent touching at a single point and not crossing the curve is held in opposition to the notion of a secant cutting in two points. Giraldo et al. (2002) point out that ‘this leads to a narrowing of the concept image of a tangent that is not consistent with the notion of tangent in infinitesimal calculus’ (2002, p. 38).

Another misconception concerned with tangent is related to the ‘disappearing chord’ focus that students often take when the common textbook (Figure 12.14) and teacher explanation of the gradient at a point on a curve is used (Ryan, 1991; Tall, 1985). In Figure 12.14, the key idea to be accessed is what happens in the limiting process as  $Q$  moves closer to  $P$  along the curve, namely the secant (i.e. the *extended chord*) through  $P$  and  $Q$  becomes the tangent at the point  $P$ . Many students focus on the chord  $PQ$  (especially if this is being used instead of, or as, the secant as in Swedosh et al., 2006), which actually tends to zero length as the points become closer together. Other students see this as a static diagram and do not have the desired image when told to ‘imagine that we move  $Q$  closer and closer to  $P$ ’, according to Tall (1985).

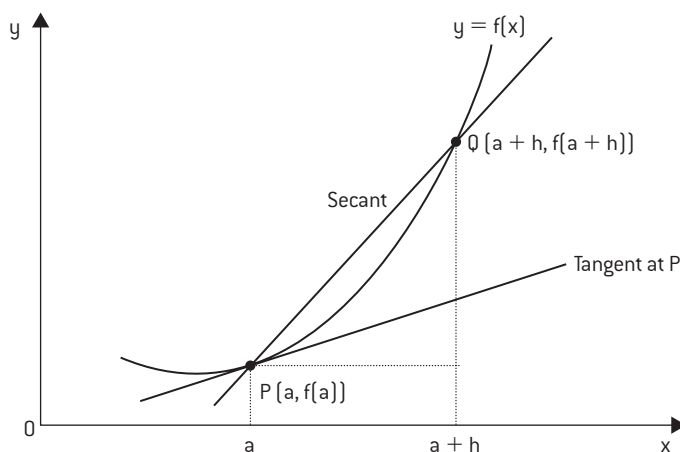


Figure 12.14 Common textbook diagram for gradient at a point

### Confusions with notation

There is quite an array of new notation that is associated with the study of calculus at the secondary level that students are expected to be able to give sense to and to use meaningfully, namely,  $f(x + h)$ ,  $f'(x)$ ,  $y'$ ,  $D_x f(x)$ ,  $\frac{dy}{dx}$ ,  $\frac{d}{dx}(f(x))$ ,  $\delta x$ ,  $\Delta x$ ,  $\int f(x)dx$ , to name but a few. Some textbook authors such as Barnes (1991) restrict notation for the derivative, for example, initially to  $f'(x)$  and  $y'$  deliberately leaving the introduction of the Leibniz notation of  $\frac{dy}{dx}$  until later in the development of calculus. The extent to which teachers have the freedom to do this is dependent on the requirements of the intended curriculum and how closely these are

followed, and the extent to which they use technological tools which use such notation as  $\frac{dy}{dx}$ . There are many sources of confusion here, so we will deal with only a couple. Students looking at

$$\lim_{\delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\delta y}{\delta x} = \frac{dy}{dx}$$

can think of  $\delta y$  tends to  $dy$  and  $\delta x$  tends to  $dx$  so they think of  $dy$  and  $dx$  as very small non-zero numbers. However, this conflicts with their being told that  $\frac{dy}{dx}$  is a single symbol and cannot be treated as a fraction or that  $\frac{d}{dx}$  is an operator. Further conflicts arise when they meet the chain rule, such as  $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$ , and are told that they cannot cancel the  $du$ s as  $du$  does not have a separate meaning but in anti-differentiation they must write  $dx$  in  $\int f(x)dx$  as  $dx$  means ‘with respect to  $x$ ’.

As alluded to above, the advent of calculators that are capable of carrying out numerical and symbolic differentiation and integration has meant that particular notations are being privileged and there is the increased cognitive load of learning new notation, the required inputs and what these mean, and in some cases the interpretation of output in non-standard mathematical forms. Consider the task,

$$f(x) = 3x^2 + 2x - 1 \text{ find } f'(-2.7)$$

Once the function has been entered in the function menu as  $Y_1 = 3x^2 + 2x - 1$ , a graphics calculator (see Figure 12.15), for example, can be used to find this using the numerical derivative function, nDeriv. This requires the inputs of the function or expression, the independent variable and the  $x$ -value; or use of  $\frac{dy}{dx}$  which requires selection of the function using up or down arrows once the graph screen is displayed and the setting of  $x =$  to the required value.

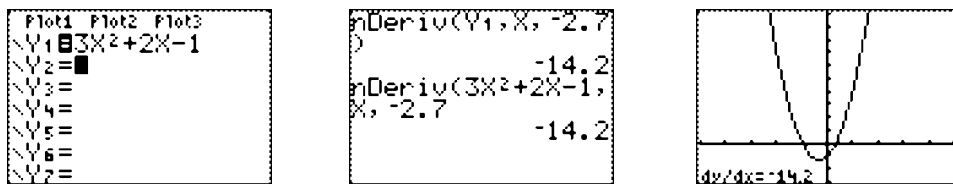


Figure 12.15 Calculator notation for finding gradient at a point

## Approaches to teaching calculus

All of these obstacles come together in the traditional ‘first principles’ approach often adopted in upper secondary school. Furthermore, White and Mitchelmore (2002) claim that ‘a high school introduction to calculus which focuses on symbolic definitions and manipulations results in an abstract-apart concept of derivative, and students have no sense as to what calculus is about’ (2002, p. 250). The term ‘abstract-apart’ is used to convey the idea of ‘concepts formed in isolation from the contexts in which they occur’, as opposed to abstract-general concepts which the learner is able to recognise in a variety of contexts and to abstract common properties from similarities in a variety of base contexts (2002, pp. 239–41). Alternatively, an intuitive understanding of instantaneous rates of change could be developed through familiar situations. This could be followed by the use of a graphical and numerical approach to the measurement of rates of change *with the aid of* technology such as graphics calculators, function-graphing software, animation software such as JavaMathWorlds (Herbert & Pierce, 2005) or lite applets available on the internet. These could then be justified, if need be, with first-principles derivations once the concepts have been established informally.

An investigative approach, such as the one outlined in the excellent series *Investigating Change* by Mary Barnes (1991), makes calculus accessible to a wider range of students. It develops a strong understanding of basic concepts while avoiding known conceptual obstacles. Both Barnes (2000a) and Williams (2000) give examples of students studying calculus at Year 11 and 12 level via a class collaboration approach (Williams, 2000, p. 658) experiencing ‘magical moments’ of excitement as they discover mathematical insights for themselves.

Recent advances in technology mean that technological approaches to teaching calculus can no longer be ignored. As computer software and hand-held calculators can perform most, if not all, of the skills and manipulative procedures that have dominated calculus areas of study in secondary school in the past, there appear to be three options for how these might be used: as a tool to perform all the procedures, freeing students to explore real-world and mathematical applications; as an integral part of a learning environment to deepen understanding of underlying concepts; and as a mixture of the first two options.

## Differential calculus

### *Differentiation*

Kendal and Stacey (2003) have taken a systematic approach to trying to identify ‘basic building blocks of competence in calculus’ (2003, p. 39) with respect to differentiation in the context of readily available technological tools. They have constructed a Differentiation Competency Framework guided by consideration of the cognitive demands required in learning about the concept of derivative (not merely the rules for differentiation). The framework is fully described in Kendal (2002), so only an overview will be given here. The focus of the framework is on students’ early understanding of the concept of derivative in different representations—namely, numerical (N), graphical (G) and symbolic (S). The framework is meant to help teachers make decisions about which representations need be emphasised in teaching, now that technology (including CAS) allows us to do so readily; the pairs of representations to be linked in a given context; and the balance that needs to be achieved between by-hand and technologically assisted techniques.

### Differentiation Competency Framework

As a first step to producing the framework, a concept map of differentiation (see Figure 12.16) was produced, linking these three representations as well as physical representations of rate of change which link most closely to the numerical representation as shown. Solid arrows show translations between representations. The heavy dotted lines within a representation circle separate situations where the limit has been taken (e.g. gradient of a tangent at a point) from those where it has not (e.g. gradient of a secant). Differentiating from first principles is shown as involving all three representations.

Since solving problems involving differentiation requires being able to work with all its common representations (N, G and S), and translating among these representations as identified in Figure 12.16, the Differentiation Competency Framework concentrates on these three external representations. Table 12.1 shows the set of eighteen competencies provided by the framework that reflect basic understanding of the concept of derivative.

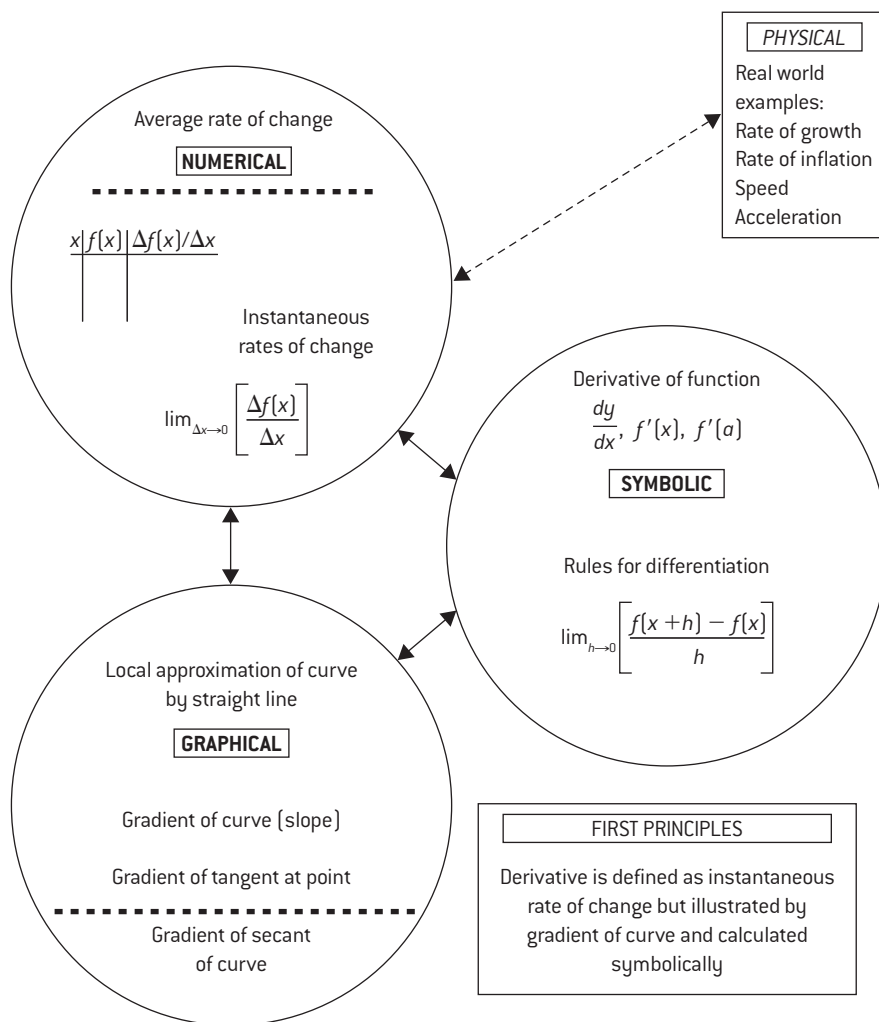


Figure 12.16 Kendal and Stacey's (2003) concept map of differentiation in numerical, graphical and symbolic representations

The first letter of the symbols used to designate a competency (in italic capitals) indicates the cognitive *process* needed to produce the output derivative. *Formulation* (*F*) is the process of recognising that a particular differentiation procedure is required, given the data in a question, and knowing how to calculate it. *Interpretation* (*I*) involves the processes of

**Table 12.1** Kendal and Stacey's Differentiation Competency Framework

Representations associated with differentiation			
Output derivative	Input derivative		
	Numerical (N)	Graphical (G)	Symbolic (S)
Numerical (n)	FNn	FGn	FSn
	INn	IGN	ISn
Graphical (g)	FNg	FGg	FSg
	INg	IGg	ISg
Symbolic (s)	FNs	FGs	FSs
	INs	IGs	ISs

reasoning about the input derivative supplied in the question, or explaining the input derivative in natural language, or engendering the input derivative with meaning including its equivalence to a derivative in a different representation. The second letter (in capitals, N, G, S) designates the *input* derivative representation and the third letter (in lower case, n, g, s) designates the *output* derivative representation. Thus FGs, for example, represents formulating (F) a graphical derivative (G) from the data and recognising that the resultant gradient of a tangent represents the ‘symbolic derivative’ (s). Six of these competencies (shaded in Table 12.1) occur within a single representation. The remainder involve translations from one representation to another.

Together, these eighteen competencies produce a way of assessing differentiation in a comprehensive and balanced manner. They also could be used to structure teachers’ topic development and monitor the learning that results. Kendal and Stacey (2003) have produced a test of the competencies. Illustrative examples (see box below) show the utility of the framework for designing questions for assessing students’ understanding of differentiation.

## Examples of Differentiation Competency Test items

**/Sn—Interpretation with translation between Symbolic and numerical representations:** Circle the letter corresponding to your answer: The derivative of the function  $g(t)$  is given by the rule  $g'(t) = t^3 - 5t$ . To find the rate of change of  $g(t)$  at  $t = 4$ , you should:

- (A) Differentiate  $g'(t)$  and then substitute  $t = 4.2$ .
- (B) Substitute  $t = 4$  into  $g'(t)$ .
- (C) Find where  $g'(t) = 0$ .
- (D) Find the value of  $g'(0)$ .
- (E) None of the above.

**FGg-Formulation within a Graphical representation:** Use a graph of  $y = x^2 + x - 10$  to find the gradient of the curve at  $x = 3$ .

**/Ns—Interpretation with translation from a Numerical representation to a symbolic representation:** An eagle follows a flight path where its height depends on the time since it flew out of its nest. The rule for finding the height of the bird ( $H$  in metres) above its nest is a function of  $H(t)$  of  $t$ , the flight time (in seconds). Five seconds after takeoff, the 4 kg eagle was observed to be 100 m above its nest and climbing at the rate of 3 metres per second. What is the value of  $H'(5)$ ?

*Source:* Kendal and Stacey (2003).

## Representational Framework of Knowing Derivative

Delos Santos and Thomas (2003) have developed a framework which maps students' dimensions of knowing derivative across their representational preferences (symbolic, graphical, numeric or tabular). The dimensions of knowing are procedure-oriented process-oriented, object-oriented, concept-oriented and versatile (see Table 12.2).



**Table 12.2 Delos Santos and Thomas's Representational Framework of Knowing Derivative**

Dimensions	Representations		
	Symbolic	Graphical	Numeric/Tabular
Procedure-oriented	Manipulate symbols according to rules.	Calculate from graphical forms.	Use procedures to obtain numerical results from tables.
Process-oriented	Interpret the meaning of symbols as a differentiation process.	Have a pointwise approach to derivative of graphs. Can understand second derivative as rate of change of gradient.	Understand and apply rate of change, differentiation and gradient processes in a tabular setting.
Object-oriented	Operate on the symbols for derivatives as objects. Interpret $n$ th derivatives as functions.	Interpret derivative graphs as representing functions. Operate on graphs as an entity.	Interpret a table of values as representing a discrete approximation to a continuous function.
Concept-oriented	Relate the differentiation procedures, and processes applicable in one representation to each other and to relevant concepts.		
	Make procedural and conceptual connections between corresponding differentiation procedures, processes and objects in different representations.		
	Identify and operate on conceptual objects such as derivative and function presented in different representational forms.		
Versatile	Have sufficiently well-formed differentiation procedure, process, object and concept oriented knowledge to be able to identify and use appropriate objects, processes and procedures in their various representational manifestations. Choose appropriate representational system perspectives to solve a differentiation problem. Move seamlessly and fluently between the chosen perspectives as required.		

Using this framework, delos Santos and Thomas (2003, 2005) analysed the changes in thinking and understanding of target students from Form 7 (eighteen years of age) from four New Zealand schools. Students were involved in an eight-week study of derivative using TI-83 graphics calculators.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Concept maps prepared by students are considered by many (e.g. delos Santos & Thomas, 2005; Williams, 1998) 'to be an externalisation of conceptual schemas' (delos Santos & Thomas, 2005, p. 378) and as such a useful tool to tap into students' current conceptual schemas and changes in these over time.

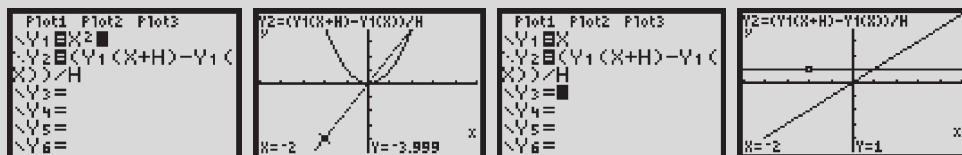
- Ask two senior secondary students to draw a concept map of their understanding of derivative. Emphasise that it is important for object and procedural links in the concept maps to be labelled (e.g. a link from, say, 'derivative' to 'rate of change' should be clearly labelled as meaning 'derivative IS A rate of change' or 'derivative IS USED TO FIND a rate of change').
- Use either Kendal and Stacey's Differentiation Competency Framework (2003) or delos Santos and Thomas's (2003) Representational Framework of Knowing Derivative to compare and contrast the students' concept maps.
- What insights have the concept maps given into the students' apparent understanding of derivative?

### Developing rules of differentiation

Once the notion of a derivative has been established, the rules for differentiation can be developed using an investigative approach involving the graphical representation and gradient functions or pattern searching with the algebraic representation. Both of these could be done by hand or with technology. In Figure 12.17, the rule for the derivative of the sum or difference of two functions is developed through a graphical approach using the difference quotient and a graphics calculator. In Figure 12.18 an algebraic pattern searching approach is used to find the product rule which is verified using CAS.

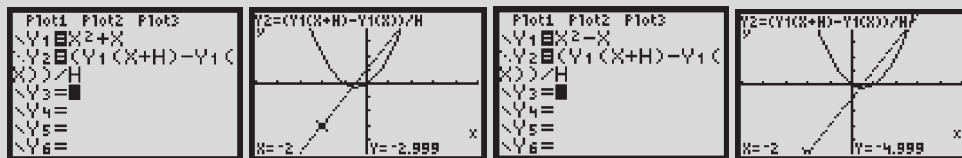
**Example—Adding and subtracting functions**  $\frac{d}{dx}[f(x) \pm g(x)]$

- (a) Using your graphics calculator, graph  $y = x^2$ ,  $x \in [-5, 5]$  and its gradient function then  $y = x$ ,  $x \in [-5, 5]$  and its gradient function as shown. Set  $h$  to 0.001.



What are the derivatives of  $f(x) = x^2$  and  $g(x) = x$ ?

- (b) Using your graphics calculator, graph  $y = x^2 + x$ ,  $x \in [-5, 5]$  and its gradient function then  $y = x^2 - x$ ,  $x \in [-5, 5]$  and its gradient function as shown. Set  $h$  to 0.001.



Compare the graphs of the gradient functions of  $y = x^2$ ,  $x \in [-5, 5]$ ,  $y = x^2 + x$ ,  $x \in [-5, 5]$  and  $y = x^2 - x$ ,  $x \in [-5, 5]$ . What do you notice?

What do you think is the derivative of  $f(x) + g(x) = x^2 + x$ ?

What do you think is the derivative of  $f(x) - g(x) = x^2 - x$ ?

- (c) Explain in words the connection between the derivatives in [a] and [b].

- (d) Repeat [a] to [b] for  $f_1(x) = x^3$  and  $g_1(x) = 2x$  using an appropriate viewing window.

- (e) Describe in words how you think you could find the derivative of the sum or difference of any two functions. Write this as a rule.

Use this to predict the derivatives for  $y = x^2 - 6x$  and  $y = x^4 + 2x$ . Check your prediction with your calculator. Modify your rule for finding the derivative of the sum or difference of two functions if need be.

**Figure 12.17** Developing a rule for the derivative of the sum or difference of two functions

### Anti-differentiation

Undoing or reversing the process of differentiation is called anti-differentiation. This process becomes necessary in situations where we know the rate at which something is changing but not the function itself. One way of doing this is by 'Guess and check'. You ask: *What function could be differentiated to give this result?* If you were given  $\frac{dy}{dt} = t$ , a possible candidate would be  $f(t) = \frac{1}{2}t^2$  as we know  $y = t^2$ ,  $\frac{dy}{dt} = 2t$ . However, it could also be that  $f(t) = \frac{1}{2}t^2 + 3$  or  $f(t) = \frac{1}{2}t^2 - 1$ . Geometrically, the set of anti-derivatives of  $2t$  represents a family of parabolas given by  $y = f(t) = \frac{1}{2}t^2 + c$ ,  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ . The curves have the same shape and can be obtained from each

**Example—Product of two functions**  $\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)]$

(a) Using a CAS calculator, find derivatives of  $f(x) = x + 1$  and  $g(x) = x + 2$  and  $h(x) = (x + 1)(x + 2)$ .

F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6
Tools	Algebra	Calc	Other	Pr3mID	Clean Up
$\frac{d}{dx}(x + 1)$					1
$\frac{d}{dx}(x + 2)$					1
$\frac{d}{dx}((x + 1) \cdot (x + 2))$					$2 \cdot x + 3$
$\frac{d}{dx}((x + 1)(x + 2), x)$					
MAIN	ERR EXACT	FUNC	2/20		

Can you see a relationship between  $\frac{d}{dx}h(x)$  and  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$ ?

Complete the following table using a CAS calculator.

$f(x)$	$g(x)$	$\frac{d}{dx}f(x)$	$\frac{d}{dx}g(x)$	$\frac{d}{dx}h(x) = \frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)]$
$x + 1$	$x + 2$	1	1	$2x + 3$
$x + 2$	$x + 3$			
$x + 3$	$x + 4$			
$x + 1$	$x - 2$			

Make a conjecture based on what you see in the table about the relationship between the derivative of a product of functions and its factors.

Use your conjecture to predict the derivative of  $h(x) = (2x + 1)(x + 1)$ . Use the CAS calculator to find the derivatives as before to check.

F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6
Tools	Algebra	Calc	Other	Pr3mID	Clean Up
$\frac{d}{dx}(2 \cdot x + 1)$					2
$\frac{d}{dx}(x + 1)$					1
$\frac{d}{dx}((2x + 1)(x + 1), x)$					
MAIN	ERR EXACT	FUNC	2/20		

F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6
Tools	Algebra	Calc	Other	Pr3mID	Clean Up
$\frac{d}{dx}(2 \cdot x + 1)$					2
$\frac{d}{dx}(x + 1)$					1
$\frac{d}{dx}((2x + 1)(x + 1))$					$4 \cdot x + 3$
$\frac{d}{dx}((2x + 1)(x + 1), x)$					
MAIN	ERR EXACT	FUNC	2/20		

If your conjecture is correct, use it to complete the table below; otherwise, complete the table using a CAS calculator as before writing the derivative for  $h(x)$  in terms of its factors as shown in the first row.

$f(x)$	$g(x)$	$\frac{d}{dx}f(x)$	$\frac{d}{dx}g(x)$	$\frac{d}{dx}h(x) = \frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)]$
$2x + 1$	$x + 1$	2	1	$4x + 3 = 2x + 1 + 2(x + 1)$
$x + 2$	$x + 3$			
$x + 3$	$x + 4$			
$x + 1$	$x - 2$			

Look for a relationship between  $f(x)$ ,  $g(x)$ , their derivatives and the derivative of the product  $h(x)$ . Describe in words how you think you could find the derivative of the product of any two linear functions. Write this as a rule for when  $f(x) = ax + b$  and  $g(x) = cx + d$ . Using a CAS calculator find derivatives of  $f(x) = ax + b$  and  $g(x) = cx + d$  and  $h(x) = (ax + b)(cx + d)$  to check your result.

A TI-89 calculator screen showing the following calculations:

- $\frac{d}{dx}(a \cdot x + b)$  resulting in  $a$
- $\frac{d}{dx}(c \cdot x + d)$  resulting in  $c$
- $\frac{d}{dx}(c \cdot x + d, x)$  resulting in  $c$

A TI-89 calculator screen showing the following calculations:

- $\frac{d}{dx}(c \cdot x + d)$  resulting in  $c$
- $\frac{d}{dx}((a \cdot x + b) \cdot (c \cdot x + d))$  resulting in  $2 \cdot a \cdot c \cdot x + a \cdot d + b \cdot c$
- $\frac{d}{dx}(a \cdot x + b)(c \cdot x + d, x)$  resulting in  $2 \cdot a \cdot c \cdot x + a \cdot d + b \cdot c$

Now continue your exploration for products where the factors are non-linear to see if you can develop a rule for derivatives of products of any functions. Write this rule in your own words. Predict the derivative for  $h(x) = (5x^2 + 2)(3x - 9)$  and check by using your calculator. Modify your rule if necessary. The rule can be expressed in a general form using  $\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)]$ . See if you can use your rule to work out the derivative. Finally, use your CAS calculator to check your general rule.

A TI-89 calculator screen showing the following calculations:

- $\frac{d}{dx}(f(x) \cdot g(x))$
- $\frac{d}{dx}(f(x)) \cdot g(x) + \frac{d}{dx}(g(x)) \cdot f(x)$
- $\frac{d}{dx}(f(x) \cdot g(x), x)$

A TI-89 calculator screen showing the following calculations:

- $\frac{d}{dx}(f(x) \cdot g(x))$
- $\frac{d}{dx}(f(x)) \cdot g(x) + \frac{d}{dx}(g(x)) \cdot f(x)$
- $\frac{d}{dx}(f(x) \cdot g(x), x)$

Figure 12.18 Developing a rule for the derivative of the product of two functions

other shifting up or down (i.e. translation). To find which particular curve was being targeted, we would need some more information such as an initial condition.

Another method to find anti-derivatives is to use *direction (slope) fields*. This can be done using the differential equation graphing facility of calculators such as the TI-89 Titanium, as in Figure 12.19. First, the slope field is drawn with no initial condition set. Short line segments are drawn at points all over the plane. The gradient of each is equal to the value of  $\frac{dy}{dt}$  at its midpoint. A diagram like this could be used to draw graphs of functions of the form  $y = f(t) = \frac{1}{2}t^2 + c$ ,  $c \in \mathfrak{R}$  which satisfy  $\frac{dy}{dt} = t$ . This can be done by hand or by setting initial conditions as has been done in Figure 12.19 where  $c$  is set to  $-1, 0, 1, 2, 3$ . Other activities related to investigating anti-derivatives can be found in Barnes (1991).

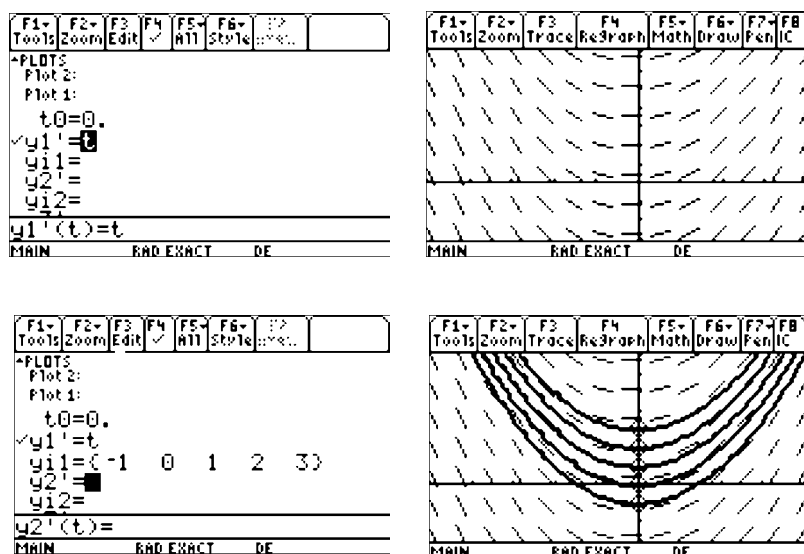


Figure 12.19 Use of slope diagrams to find anti-derivatives

The process of anti-differentiation is also known as integration, and then the anti-derivative is called an *indefinite integral*. Using function notation  $\int f(x)dx$  denotes the anti-derivative or integral of  $f(x)$  with respect to  $x$ . We can obtain rules for indefinite integrals (anti-derivatives) by reversing rules of differentiation, for example, if  $\frac{d}{dx}[f(x) \pm g(x)] = \frac{d}{dx}f(x) \pm \frac{d}{dx}g(x)$  then the reverse of this must be  $\int [f(x) \pm g(x)]dx = \int f(x)dx \pm \int g(x)dx$ .

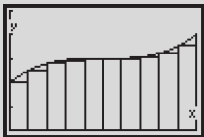
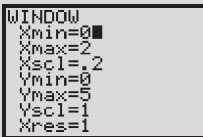
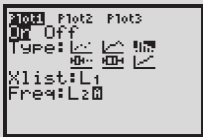
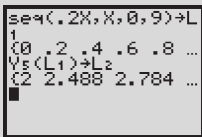
## Integration

The calculus had its origins in two problems, both of which were studied by mathematicians from ancient times. The first, which we have already met, was finding the unique tangent (if it exists) that can be drawn at a given point on a curve, and this problem led to the differential calculus. This problem was not solved as a general method for all curves until the seventeenth century. The second problem involved finding the area bounded by a given curve. The solution of this problem led to integral calculus. Archimedes solved the problem for particular curves such as the area of a parabolic segment using the method of exhaustion, so called because polygons are used to eventually 'exhaust' (use up) the area concerned. This method was the basis of more generalised approaches until Newton and Leibniz showed how calculus can be used to find the area bounded by the curve.

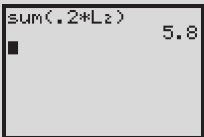
In integral calculus, the area of a region bounded by a curve can be found using the areas of polygons as an approximation. The example below in Figure 12.20 illustrates the procedure using upper and lower rectangles.

I have just leased an agistment block down by the river for my horses during the drought. I have been able to determine that the side of the block along the river can be modelled by the function  $f(x) = (x - 1)^3 + 3$ ,  $x \in [0, 2]$  where  $x$  is in kilometres. The side of the block opposite the river is 2 kilometres long and the other two sides are 2 and 4 kilometres in length.

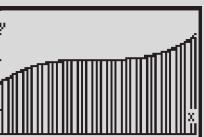
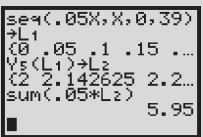
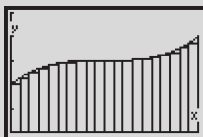
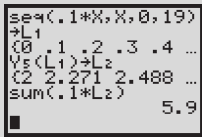
In order to find an approximate area for my block, I can use my graphics calculator to divide the block into a series of ten rectangles each 200 metres wide (0.2 km) and sum the areas. To do this I will use this function entered into my calculator as  $Y_5$  and use the sequence command to enter  $x$  values of the leading vertical side of my rectangles into List 1, followed by the lengths of the rectangles (given by  $Y_5(L_1)$ ) into List 2. I can then use this to draw a histogram. *Note:* I need to set the Xscale in the viewing window to the width of my rectangles.



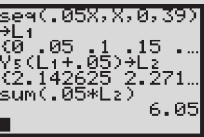
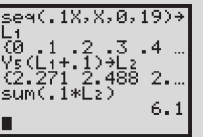
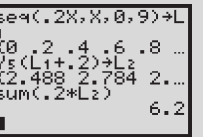
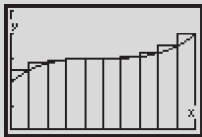
The area of each rectangle is the width (0.2 km) multiplied by the length,  $Y_5(L_1)$ . By using SUM I can add up the areas of all the rectangles to determine the total area enclosed by the rectangles. As the set of rectangles are all lower than the curve, I will call this sum  $S_L$  and expect this area of 5.8 km<sup>2</sup> to be less than the actual area of land, which I will call  $A$ .



To improve my estimate I can repeat my summation process using narrower rectangles (e.g. 100 m, 50 m, 25 m, ... wide).



These rectangles are all below the curve I have used to model the river bank. I could have used rectangles above the curve. This time my estimates, which I will call  $S_U$  as they are the sums of the upper rectangles, will be too high but will become closer to the actual area as the width of the rectangles is reduced. Thus,  $S_L < A < S_U$ .



By continuing this process we could show  $S_L \rightarrow 6$  and  $S_U \rightarrow 6$ .

Figure 12.20 Using summation to find area bounded by a curve

This example and procedure could then be linked to the notion of the definite integral defined as:

$$\int_a^b f(x)dx = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \sum_a^b f(x)\Delta x$$

provided the limit exists. The integral sign is an elongated S (from the German 'somme' for sum). The notation was introduced by Leibniz. This definition of the definite integral is called the *Riemann Integral* after the German mathematician Georg Riemann.

There have been reported student difficulties with this notion of using successive approximations with more and more rectangles. Schneider (1993), for example, reports that some students think 'as long as the rectangles have a thickness, they do not fill up the surface under the curve, and when they become reduced to lines, their areas are equal to zero and cannot be added' (1993, pp. 32–3). Tall (1996) suggests that a figure like that in Figure 12.21 be used instead.

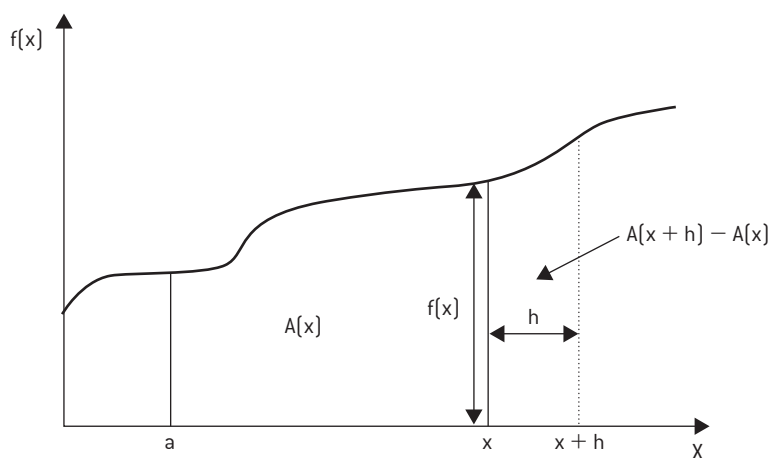


Figure 12.21 Area bounded by a curve

The Fundamental Theorem of Calculus says that, given an area  $A(x)$  from a fixed point  $a$  to a variable point  $x$ ,  $A'(x) = f(x)$ . The additional area under the curve from  $x$  to  $x+h$  is  $A(x+h) - A(x)$ . In this figure there is now only one strip which tends towards a rectangle and it is clear visually that as  $h \rightarrow 0$



$$\frac{A(x+h) - A(x)}{h} \rightarrow f'(x).$$

Students still, however, face the usual obstacles associated with limits that an approximation becomes an equality in the limiting case. Historically, integral calculus and the process of integration were developed using this summation approach, not as the undoing of differentiation—that is, anti-differentiation. It was not until differential calculus was developed in the seventeenth century that the relationship between these two branches of calculus became apparent.

Rules for integration can be developed using investigative graphical and algebraic methods with technology support similar to developing rules for differentiation.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Examine textbooks from two different textbook series. Compare the extent to which the authors attempt to address the difficulties that students are known to have with introductory calculus concepts, and then adopt a multiple representation approach.

## Conclusion

Despite predictions in the 1980s that calculus would wither and die in secondary schools, calculus and the underpinning concepts of function still hold a central place in most mathematical subjects in the upper secondary curriculum. With ever-increasing access to technological tools which are rapidly advancing in their mathematical capabilities for teaching, learning and doing mathematics, calculus appears to be becoming stronger as it becomes more accessible to more students because emphases have changed.

## Recommended reading

**Barnes, M. (1991).** *Investigating change: An introduction to calculus for Australian schools*. Melbourne: Curriculum Corporation.

**Burke, M., Eickson, D., Lott, J.W. & Obert, M. (2001).** *Navigating through algebra in grades 9–12*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

**Friel, S., Rachlin, S. & Doyle, D. (2001).** *Navigating through algebra in grades 6–8*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

**Kendal, M. & Stacey, K. (2003).** Tracing learning of three representations with the differentiation competency framework. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 15(1), 22–41.

**Shell Centre for Mathematical Education (1985).** *The language of functions and graphs*. Nottingham: Joint Matriculation Board and Shell Centre for Mathematical Education.

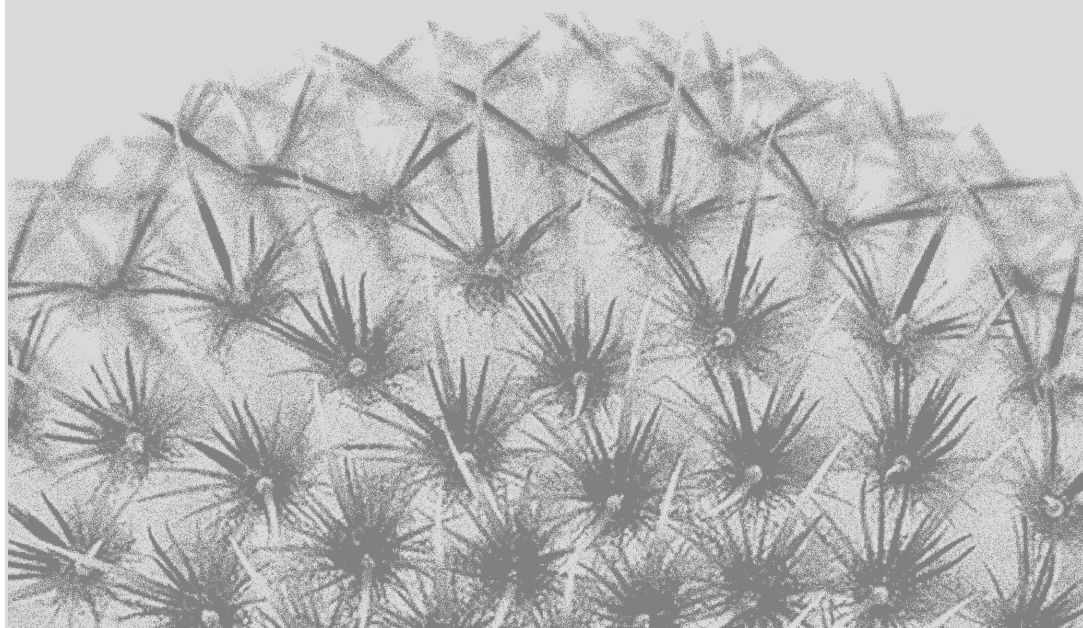
**Tall, D. (1996).** Functions and calculus. In A.J. Bishop, K. Clements, C. Keitel, J. Kilpatrick & C. Laborde (eds), *International handbook of mathematics education* (Vol. 1, 289–325). Dordrecht: Kluwer.

**White, P. (1995).** An introduction to teaching calculus. In L. Grimson & J. Pegg (eds), *Teaching secondary school mathematics: Theory into practice* (pp. 165–85). Sydney: Harcourt Brace.

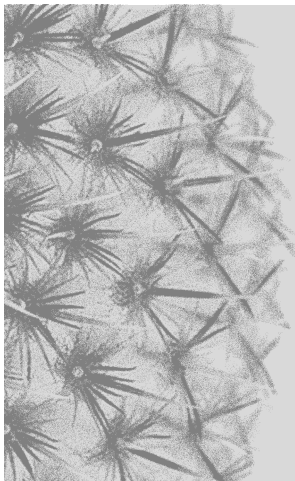
This page intentionally left blank

Part IV

# **EQUITY AND DIVERSITY IN MATHEMATICS EDUCATION**



This page intentionally left blank



## CHAPTER 13

### **Gender issues in mathematics learning**

You may be wondering why, early in the twenty-first century, we are including a chapter on gender. Women and men are equal, aren't they? And in the schools and classrooms around the world, both girls and boys are studying mathematics to the highest levels, girls are achieving as well as boys, and girls and boys have similar attitudes towards mathematics. However, careful reading of the research shows that these beliefs—often portrayed in the media—are not necessarily the case (Vale et al., 2004). They are certainly not the case in all countries, at all levels of education, for all types of mathematics, or for all socioeconomic groups of girls and boys.

It is important to remember that the debate and research concerning gender equity have an international context. Indeed, at the beginning of the twenty-first century, two-thirds of the world's population who do not have access to, or are excluded from, a basic education are girls (UNESCO, 2003). In the developed nations, the gap is closing but equity has not yet been realised (Vale et al., 2004). Globally, of the 27 OECD countries participating in a study of mathematical literacy for fifteen-year-olds in 2000, boys outperformed girls in all but two countries, Iceland and New Zealand (McGaw, 2004).

At the turn of the century, the Australian government shifted its policy focus from improving the education of girls to consider the needs of boys (Parliament of Australia, 2000). For many social researchers, this signalled 'the end of equality' (Summers, 2003) and the advent of more conservative social policies. The final report from this inquiry did identify teaching strategies appropriate for boys in some fields of study, but it also stated that 'it is important to remember that while improvements to education outcomes for some

groups of girls are real they have eluded many other girls' (Parliament of the Commonwealth of Australia, 2002, p. 18). We are coming to understand gender issues in mathematics as both complex and multi-faceted. Ongoing attention to them is needed if we are to achieve gender justice.

In this chapter, we describe the gender gaps in access to, and outcomes of, mathematics education, and present some of the explanations for these gaps. We will take an historical approach to present the explanations of gender differences and the strategies developed and used by teachers. We explore practices in mathematics classrooms and curricula that affect the ways boys and girls see themselves as learners of mathematics, with consequent implications for attitudes, achievement and participation. Current understandings of teaching and learning practice that promote gender equity in mathematics are presented at the end of the chapter. We begin the chapter by defining equality and equity.

## **Definitions of gender equality and gender equity**

Fennema (1995) describes three aspects of equality: equal opportunity, equal treatment and equal outcomes.

### *Equal opportunity*

Equal opportunity is about access. Both girls and boys need to be able to participate in mathematics. This involves removing external barriers to girls' participation in schooling, as well as barriers constructed by schools, such as streaming or setting policies, and timetable structures that restrict girls' access to mathematics learning. It also means providing equal resources for mathematics learning in terms of learning time, teachers' time, materials and equipment, such as computers or hand-held calculators, graphic calculators and computer algebra systems.

### *Equal treatment*

During the 1980s, researchers were occupied with equal treatment. They began to look closely at classrooms and discovered that teachers did not interact with girls and boys for the same amount of time, nor in the same way (Jungwirth, 1991; Leder, 1993). They interacted more often with boys than girls, they were more likely to ask boys higher order

questions, and their interactions with students were modelled on masculine norms of communication. This finding showed how girls were excluded from the important learning opportunities offered by discussion in mathematics lessons.

Researchers also analysed curriculum materials and found that males and females, and their interests and occupations, were not equally represented in materials and problems, and were typically represented in gender stereotyped scenarios. A study of textbooks used in secondary schools in Victoria at the turn of the century found that references to males outnumbered references to females in two out of the three textbooks analysed (McKimmie, 2002).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Analyse the content of a current mathematics textbook for gender bias. Collect and present data on:

- the number of males and females as protagonists in problems and examples;
- the number of photographs and drawings of males and females;
- the occupations of males and females in problems (are they stereotyped or non-stereotyped?); and
- the race and ethnicity of males and females depicted in the textbook.

Other studies have shown that equal treatment is more complex than the number and nature of interactions between the teacher and the student. Boaler (1997b, 2002) has found that particular teaching approaches have different effects on the attitudes and performance of girls and boys. Vale (2003), Walkerdine (1990), Chapman (2001) and Barnes (2000b) have examined the norms and behaviours of teachers and students in mathematical classrooms. Their findings, which are discussed in more detail later in this chapter, show that the culture of mathematics and mathematics classrooms in the main advantages boys, and particular groups of boys, and disadvantages girls, and particular groups of girls.

### *Equal outcomes*

Fennema (1995) argues that equal access and equal treatment were not sufficient for gender equity. The pursuit of equity also involves a commitment to ‘closing the gap’ in outcomes, where outcomes include mathematical achievement, participation, retention and attitudes.



*Equitable practice*

More recently educators and researchers have also argued that equal access and equal treatment are not sufficient to overcome gender gaps and social injustices in schooling (Anthony & Walshaw, 2007; PCA, 2002; Vale et al., 2004). A variety of approaches are needed to meet the needs of learners; one single approach will not suit all:

Setting up equitable arrangements for learners means different pedagogical treatment and paying attention to different needs resulting from different home environments, different mathematical identifications and different perspectives. (Anthony & Walshaw, 2007, p. 10)

**The gender gaps**

In this section, we present a summary of the findings from recent studies into gender differences in achievement, attitude and participation. Researchers are now mindful that gender gaps in mathematical outcomes may vary for students of different socioeconomic backgrounds.

*Mathematical achievement*

Until recently, gender differences in mathematics achievement favoured boys, especially in secondary education. A trend towards equal outcomes in mathematics achievement can be seen in studies of gender difference in achievement in developed nations towards the end of the twentieth century (Lokan et al., 1996, 1997). However, the most recent review of Australasian studies of performance at the beginning of the twenty-first century reported inconsistent findings regarding gender differences in mathematics achievement (Vale et al., 2004).

At the secondary level, the findings varied according to age group, but also for different studies of the same age group. The trend towards closing the gap and towards girls' equal or superior performance is supported by some studies. For example, girls performed better than boys in a Victorian study of numeracy in the middle years of schooling (Years 5 to 9) (Siemon et al., 2001). However, the Third International Mathematics and Science Study

(TIMSS) reported no significant gender differences in mathematics achievement among Australian thirteen-year-olds (Lokan et al., 1997). Moreover, the Program of International Assessment (PISA) study of mathematical literacy among fifteen-year-olds also found no significant gender difference for Australian students, although boys did record higher performance levels than girls (Lokan et al., 2001). However, gender differences favoured boys and were significant in an Australian study of mathematics achievement for Year 9 students (Rothman, 2002).

At the post-compulsory level, Leder (2001) reviewed Victorian Year 12 mathematics results over a number of years and found that the average performance of girls in VCE mathematics could be regarded as superior to males. Yet Australian Year 12 males performed better than females in a large international mathematical numeracy test (Mullis et al., 2000), and Year 12 boys performed better than girls on tasks using graphics calculators in an advanced mathematics subject in Western Australia (Forster & Mueller, 2001; Haimes, 1999).

Boys are more highly represented than girls among the highest achievers in mathematical literacy (McGaw, 2004), post-compulsory mathematics (Leder, 2001) and mathematics competitions (Leder, 2006). Fennema (1995) notes that the learning and participation of the lowest achieving females has not advanced in spite of the gains made towards equity in the past twenty years, a phenomenon supported by the recent Parliamentary Inquiry (PCA, 2002).

The type of mathematics that was being assessed may in part explain the reason for the inconsistencies in findings from these studies. For example, since girls generally outperform boys in literacy, Siemon and colleagues (2001) proposed that the significant difference in favour of girls may have been due to the increased focus on the language, or discourse, elements of the middle years numeracy program in their study. The PISA study, which measured mathematical literacy, also required students to be familiar with the discourse of mathematics as the tasks were designed to test ability to interpret context and model situations as well as to test knowledge of content. In this study, boys did significantly better than girls on the questions that required them to interpret information that was presented in diagrams (Lokan et al., 2001).

Fennema and Tartre (1985) first identified a gender difference in spatial visualisation, and these differences are still evident in contemporary studies (Casey et al., 2001). A high

demand on graphical interpretation was also a characteristic of the problems in which Year 12 boys performed better than girls when using graphics calculators in the Western Australian study (Forster & Mueller, 2001, 2002), while girls did better on the algebra-based questions that did not require the use of graphics calculators.

The type of assessment also appeared to have a major influence on gender differences. In post-compulsory mathematics, males perform better than females on timed short-answer questions, while extended problem-solving assignment tasks favour females; this pattern of gender difference is consistently reported in the literature (Leder, 2001).

Teese (2000) argues that patterns of participation in post-compulsory mathematics by students from different socioeconomic backgrounds disguise gender differences in mathematics achievement. He found that both boys and girls from high socioeconomic (SES) backgrounds enrol in less demanding subjects to improve tertiary entrance scores, resulting in what appears to be more equitable achievement outcomes in the least demanding subjects.

The question of gender difference in mathematics achievement is thus a complex one. It depends on the content of the assessment tasks, the nature of mathematics knowledge and the mathematical skills being assessed, and the conditions under which assessment is completed. The inconsistencies in gender differences within age groups and across cultural groups show that the gap in achievement is not explained by sex alone.

### *Attitudes to mathematics*

The various measures of attitudes have played a key role in research in gender and mathematics. Attitudes have been investigated in order to explain gender differences in performance and achievements, but they are an outcome of mathematical learning as well. Studies by Fennema and Sherman (1977) pioneered research into gender differences in attitudes, and their research has been replicated in many studies since.

One attitude that Fennema and Sherman initially explored was the idea that students gender-stereotyped mathematics as masculine or a 'male domain'. Some recent research in Australia indicates that this may no longer be the case.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** For each of the statements below, state whether you think males (M) or females (F) are more likely to display the particular belief or behaviour. Use ND if you think there will be no difference.

Item	M or F or ND
Think it is important to understand the work.	
Think maths will be important in their adult life.	
Are asked more questions by the maths teacher.	
Maths teacher thinks they will do well.	
Find maths difficult.	
Think maths is interesting.	
Parents think it is important to do well.	
Teachers spend more time with them.	
Are good at using computers for learning maths.	
Think it is important for their future jobs to be able to use computers for mathematics learning.	

*Source:* Selected items from Leder and Forgasz (2000) and Forgasz (2002).

Compare your responses with those of other colleagues and with the findings reported by Leder and Forgasz (2000) and Forgasz (2002), summarised below.

Leder and Forgasz (2000) asked students to indicate whether they believed boys or girls were more likely to display the particular belief or behaviour. They surveyed a large number of students in Years 7–10 and found that most students did not gender-stereotype mathematics. Students considered mathematics to be important and interesting for both girls and boys, that parents believed in the importance of mathematics for girls and boys and that teachers spend the same time with girls and boys in classrooms. Girls were considered more likely to be good at mathematics, to enjoy it and to think it important to understand the work. Students also thought that their teacher expected girls to do well. These results, which have been confirmed by other recent Australian research (Watt, 2000), indicate that

there has been a shift in beliefs over the past twenty years. However, some male stereotyped beliefs remain—for example, students believed that teachers asked boys more questions, and that boys were good at using computers in mathematics, and thought it was important to do so for their future (Forgasz, 2002).

Fennema and Sherman (1977) also investigated secondary students' self-reported attitudes towards mathematics, and here researchers have continued to find gender differences that favour males. These attitudes include confidence in mathematics, perceived usefulness of mathematics, perception of ability, interest, persistence, and intention to continue further study (Bornholt, 2001; Forgasz, 1995; Watt, 2000). However, differences are diminishing, and in some studies they are not statistically significant. The reasons that students give for their success or failure have also been researched. Males are more likely than females to attribute their success to ability, and females more likely than males to attribute their failure to lack of ability or task difficulty (Leder, 1993).

Australian researchers have also explored attitudes regarding the use of technology in mathematics (Dix, 1999; Forgasz, 2003; Vale, 2001, 2003; Vale & Leder, 2004). They have found a gender-stereotyped view that technology in mathematics in general, and computer technology in particular, is a male domain. Furthermore, students from both the highest and lowest socioeconomic groups held this gender-stereotyped view more strongly than students from middle socioeconomic backgrounds. Boys were also more likely to believe that computers would aid their mathematics learning and to enjoy the use of computers in mathematics. The positive attitude that boys display toward the use of computers is more strongly correlated with the aspiration to do well with technology than to excel in mathematics.

These studies show that, even though students do not stereotype mathematics as a male domain, boys remain more positive about mathematics and their own mathematical abilities than girls.

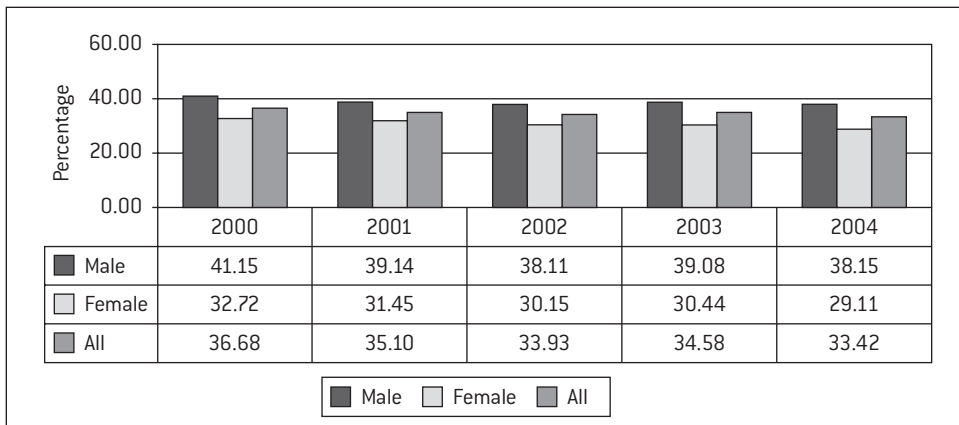
### *Participation in mathematics*

Gender inequities in mathematics are perhaps most obvious in the difference in participation rates for males and females for some mathematics courses in secondary schools and in tertiary mathematics courses (Cobbin, 1995; Forgasz, 2006; Teese, 2000). Women's increasing participation in non-traditional tertiary courses, including mathematics, appears

to have reached a plateau, leaving a large gender gap. In 2000, 51.2 per cent of Australian males and 20.7 per cent of females studying undergraduate courses were enrolled in courses classified as either engineering or science.

In Australia in 2000, boys (93.1 per cent) were more likely than girls (82.5 per cent) to study a mathematics subject in Year 12 (MCEETYA, 2003). Gender differences in participation in mathematics subjects in Australia that prepare students for tertiary studies are not improving (Forgasz, 2006) (see Figure 13.1). In 2004, more males than females were enrolled in an intermediate level mathematics (such as Mathematics [two-unit] in NSW,

### REVIEW AND REFLECT :



Source: Forgasz, 2006.

**Figure 13.1 Enrolments in Year 12 intermediate level mathematics expressed as percentages of Year 12 cohort by gender, Australia, 2000–04**

- Compare the participation and trends in enrolment of males and females in Year 12 'intermediate' level mathematics over time.
- Discuss possible explanations for this trend with colleagues.
- Use the internet to locate the enrolment data for Year 12 mathematics subjects in your state. How do the participation rates for males and females differ according to the level of difficulty of the mathematics subject?

Mathematical Methods in Victoria and Applicable Mathematics in Western Australia). Overall enrolments declined by 5.2 per cent from 2000 to 2005. The decline for females (8.7 per cent) has been more dramatic than for males (2.1 per cent). Gender differences in participation are even greater in the most demanding mathematics subjects offered at Year 12.

Forster and Mueller (2001) proposed that changes to content, and in particular the emphasis given to the use of technology in mathematically demanding subjects, may have contributed to the drift away from participation in the calculus subject in Western Australia, especially by girls. Teese (2000) has shown that the patterns of participation in mathematics subjects are also strongly influenced by socioeconomic background, and are sensitive to changes in curriculum and assessment methods in post-compulsory schooling.

## Theories of gender equity and practice

Over the decades, many researchers have sought explanations of gender differences in mathematics outcomes and identified approaches for gender equity. By tracing the historical development of gender awareness and theories to explain gender differences, we can show how current gender equity practice has evolved and what this practice involves. We have used the historical and theoretical schema of Kaiser and Rogers (1995) and Jungwirth (2003) to organise the main ideas regarding gender equity in Table 13.1. The dates in the table are a rough guide to the period in which these ideas and practices were being explored. The theories recorded in the table are the ideas being proposed to explain gender differences at the time, and the paradigms refer to the beliefs held by researchers and educators. The classroom practices—intervention programs, gender-inclusive and gender-sensitive—summarise the curriculum, materials or teaching approaches that were being developed and trialled.

In the following sections, we elaborate on each of these theories and classroom practices by discussing research studies and examples of curriculum and teaching practice.

**Table 13.1 Historical development of theories and practices for gender equity**

Period	Theory	Paradigm	Classroom practice
Before 1975	Deficit theory <i>Women have less talent, skills and interest for mathematics than men.</i>	Gender stereotyping <i>Mathematics is a male domain.</i>	Traditional <i>Little awareness and attention given to gender difference.</i>
1975–1980s	Deficit theory <i>Women have less talent, skills and interest for mathematics than men.</i>	Liberal progressive <i>Women are equal to men if given an educational environment to develop talent, skills and interests.</i>	Intervention programs <i>Single-sex classrooms and programs such as maths camps for girls. Focus on particular knowledge and skills for women, especially spatial skills. Equal treatment in co-educational settings.</i>
1980s–1990s	Difference theory <i>Women have different experiences, skills and interests with respect to mathematics from men.</i>	Radical feminist <i>Women's experience and knowledge of mathematics should be acknowledged and valued.</i>	Gender-inclusive <i>Change the curriculum and classroom practice so that the things women and girls know about and are good at are included and women and girls can build on their strengths.</i>
1990s–2000s	Gender construction <i>Gender identity and the distribution of power is constructed through our social interactions; this may change in different environments.</i>	Post-modern <i>Gender is learned but not fixed, and there are differences among women and among men.</i>	Gender-sensitive <i>Learner-centred practice so that the learners' interests and needs drive the teaching and learning program in a non-violent and supportive environment.</i>



### *Intervention programs*

Researchers argued that the reason why girls had low self-concept, a lack of mathematical reasoning skills, including spatial visualisation, and limited knowledge of career opportunities was because the socialisation of girls denied them appropriate experiences to develop these skills and attitudes. The examples of socialisation typically include gender-stereotyped patterns of play, gender stereotyping of roles and careers, and lack of opportunity to engage in higher order thinking in interactions in the mathematics classroom. So attention was given to developing curriculum materials and programs to address these deficits in girls' experience and knowledge, and supported by the liberal progressive ideas that women can be equal to men in mathematics if given the opportunity to do so.

Curriculum materials were developed to improve girls' spatial visualisation—for example, *Space to Grow* (Whettenhall & O'Reilly, 1989). 'Girls can do anything' and 'Maths multiplies your choices' were typical of the slogans used in mathematics and careers programs that were developed specifically for girls (for example, Barnes et al., 1984; Fowler et al., 1990). They appeared on stickers, badges and in advertising and curriculum materials about careers. Biographies of eminent female mathematicians were published (e.g. Kennedy, 1983).

Co-educational schools also implemented single-sex mathematics classes, and these became the subject of a number of research studies. Forgasz et al. (2000) reviewed these studies and reported that single-sex interventions, in themselves, did not achieve equity. Rather, teachers' beliefs and behaviours were more important. The views of parents about these programs were conflicting. Some parents were concerned that these programs were disadvantaging their boys, whereas other parents viewed them as an opportunity to improve the outcomes for their sons.

Over time, we have come to appreciate that these programs were important for raising awareness of gender issues in mathematics and were responsible for removing barriers to access and improving participation rates in mathematics at the end of the last century. However, intervention programs were not sufficient to achieve gender equity.

### *Gender-inclusive curriculum*

In spite of the advances made as a result of intervention programs, the deficit view of girls was criticised for making the assumption that there must be something wrong with girls.

Instead, researchers argued that the curriculum and teachers' practices explained gender inequities, in that the content, methods of teaching and assessment practices favoured males. It was argued that the culture of mathematics itself was a barrier to women and girls (Burton, 1995). Furthermore, feminist researchers observed that women and men learned in different ways (Belenky et al., 1986), and so mathematics pedagogy should take into account these gender differences in ways of learning. In this period, girls' experiences of learning and learning preferences were investigated. The findings resulted in attempts to change the curriculum in ways that would include women and girls.

In Chapter 2, we discussed two different pedagogical approaches investigated by Boaler (1997a). One classroom followed a traditional approach, the other an inquiry approach where students worked on projects at their own pace. Boaler also examined the responses of girls and boys to these approaches and, as a result, argued that the mathematics curriculum was the cause of girls' disaffection with mathematics. She found that both boys and girls preferred the mathematics program that enabled them to work at their own pace, but their reasoning was different. Boys emphasised speed and accuracy, and saw these as indicators of success. Girls, on the other hand, valued experiences that allowed them to think, develop their own ideas and work as a group; they were concerned with achieving understanding. She argued that boys' preferences made them more able to adapt to the competitive environment of a traditional text-based mathematics classroom.

Gender equity policy in Australia has required the use of gender-inclusive curriculum materials for some time (Australian Education Council, 1993b). Burton (1995) argued that inclusive mathematics would be humanising and value cultural, social and personal connections, as well as value different methods of solution and forms of proof and different ways of thinking.

Teachers have become more aware of gender bias in the content of mathematics curriculum and alternate materials and assessment methods, although traditional practices of rigidly timed tests still dominate the high-stakes assessment of Year 12 mathematics. Some of the early efforts to develop inclusive curriculum focused on developing units of work where the content, language used and methods were consistent with the research on girls' preferences. Examples included *Investigating Change* (Barnes, 1991) and *Up, Up and Away* (Vale, 1987). A key feature of these materials was an emphasis on groupwork, discussion and explanations of concepts, and relating mathematics to real situations. These materials were

consistent with the development of problem-solving and modelling in mathematics and constructivist approaches to teaching and learning. One example of inclusive materials that were developed in the 1980s is provided in the box below.

### **Baby and the heatwave**

It was a February heatwave. Michael Jones was driving to the shops with his six-month-old son. He parked his car, grabbed the shopping list, looked at his son who was now asleep and thought: 'I'll only be about twenty minutes, I won't wake him, I'll leave him in the car.' So he wound up all the windows, locked the doors and went off to do his shopping.

A little while later, on returning to the car, he saw someone smashing in the side window. He ran to the car. 'What do you think you are doing,' he cried, 'trying to steal my son?'

'Steal him?' said the stranger. 'I'm trying to save his life.'

Why did the stranger think the baby's life was endangered? Was he? If so, would Michael Jones have been as unsafe in the car under the same conditions? To answer this question you will model a baby's body and adult's body to find out about the relationship between volume and surface area.

*Source:* Year 11 modelling, Curriculum Branch, Department of Education, Victoria

### *Gender-sensitive curriculum*

Difference theory has been criticised for essentialising women and girls—that is, for assuming that their interests and preferred ways of learning are homogenous. The use of real applications in mathematics was thought to be universally attractive for girls, but this does not accord with the actual preferences of successful female research mathematicians (Day, 1997). These women were drawn to mathematics because of the creative and intuitive aspects of the discipline. Some were attracted to the abstract concepts of mathematics, and others to the applicability of mathematics to problems with social benefit.

Post-modernist researchers argue that there are multiple masculinities and femininities. Connell (1996) explains that, where multiple masculinities coexist, there is a hierarchy, and hegemonic (that is, dominant) masculinity 'signifies a position of cultural authority and leadership' and subordinates women (1996, p. 5). A number of studies have observed differences among girls and boys in mathematics classrooms (Barnes, 2000b; Chapman, 2001; Vale, 2002a, 2003). Each of these studies showed how the behaviours of a particular group of boys dominated the classroom and were supported by the practices of the teacher.

In one classroom where students were using laptop computers regularly in mathematics, the teacher interpreted one group of boys' interest and competence with computers as achievement in mathematics, while other boys and girls felt 'overpowered' by them (Vale, 2003). These boys competed for attention in general classroom discussions led by the teacher, denigrated girls' and boys' mathematics and computer achievements, took over other students' computers to solve the problem or do it for them, and harassed students verbally and physically. In another classroom, where students were using computers in small groups, Barnes (2000b) found that the attitude and behaviour of the dominant boys obstructed the learning of others, including the girls, and limited their capacity to learn in a small group on collaborative tasks. In the same classroom, another group of boys, who had the 'power' of technical and mathematical competence, could not take advantage of the cooperative learning environment because of their poor communication skills. Chapman (2001) shows that 'triadic dialogue'—that is, the question–answer–feedback (see Chapter 3 for an example) commonly used in a traditional classroom—advantages the dominant boys and disadvantages many other boys in the classroom. She advocates that teachers ought to adopt a 'language-sensitive approach' and use a range of literacy strategies and language representations in mathematics in order to include all boys and girls.

Walden and Walkerdine (1985) argue that girls are often placed in a 'no-win' situation because their success is taken to be achieved in the wrong way—that is, through rote learning, hard work, perseverance and carefulness rather than natural talent, flexibility and risk-taking. Girls with these 'masculine' attributes are judged, or perceive themselves to be judged, as not feminine. The following case study (see box) illustrates this point. It is taken from a study of a mathematics class that worked in a computer laboratory for one of their mathematics lessons each week (Vale, 2002a). The girls in this class were not homogenous and had differing attitudes to the use of computers in mathematics. Beckie was one of the

girls who took risks and interacted with the computers in ways more usually associated with masculine culture, but she resisted a 'geek girl' identity and challenged the passive 'good girl' feminine identity.

## Beckie

Beckie, the only Year 8 girl in the class who owned a laptop computer, sat with the boys who owned and brought their laptops to class. She did not, however, bring her laptop to school but used a PC in the laboratory. She tutored other students about the software and mathematics, and also collaborated with them to solve problems they encountered. For example, on one occasion, Beckie argued with Colin about the order of operations for solving the equation that was set for their slide show presentation. Instead of allowing them to work it out together, the teacher intercepted their argument and told them the answer to silence their noisy debate.

During off-task interactions with other students—and especially with boys—Beckie exchanged negative personal insults. The teacher monitored and managed Beckie's behaviour: 'Beckie, sit down and do some work.' She was one of two girls in the class to dominate the requests for assistance by the teacher. She would interrupt and call out on numerous occasions during the lessons that were observed. The teacher also held extended interactions with Beckie in which they argued about the mathematics or the software functions. For example, in the following episode Beckie wanted to know whether she needed to record on a slide the next operation in the solution of the equation:

**Beckie:** Yeah, is that right?

**Teacher:** Yeah, that's right. Now you do that. Let's go back and highlight that little bar there and click on the underline.

**Beckie:** OK.

**Teacher:** Yeah. Is that the first step?

**Beckie:** Yep.

**Teacher:** If you want to put something down the bottom, you can write 'add 5 to both sides'.

**Beckie:** But that's what I did.

**Teacher:** No you just write it. Add 5 to both sides.

Beckie was confused by the teacher's instruction. The teacher emphasised aesthetics in the presentation and description of the solution process, but Beckie was concerned with the method of solution and the number of steps to be included in the slide show.

Beckie appeared to enjoy the lessons and to be confident using computers. During off-task activity, she accessed and used other software. On three occasions during one lesson, Beckie praised her own work and sought praise from the teacher: 'My presentation's fantastic sir.' On each of these occasions, there was no response from the teacher.

Later, during an interview, the teacher revealed that he regarded Beckie as a low achiever who required more of his attention.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Why might the teacher have formed these views about Beckie? How else could the teacher have responded to Beckie's behaviour and needs?

The studies discussed in this section have shown that the beliefs of the teacher, the nature of classroom tasks, the nature of mathematical discourse and the practices of the immediate working group often place males in an advantageous or privileged position within the mathematics classroom and the discipline. Teachers need to be aware of the needs and preferences of all students and sensitive to between- and within-gender differences.

## Gender equity in practice

The Australian Parliamentary Inquiry into the education of boys in Australia recommended that ‘the major focus of pre-service and in-service teacher education should be on equipping teachers to meet the needs of all boys and girls’ (PCA, 2002, p. 86). Hence a learner-centred practice is implied. Given that a range of needs and learning preferences exist among the boys and girls in the classroom, teachers need to find out about the learners and to be flexible and use various approaches in their teaching. Also teachers need to be aware of the learning behaviours that they value and to be explicit about the mathematical understandings and practices to be learned and demonstrated in the classroom. They also need to employ effective classroom management strategies to ensure that everyone in the classroom is supported and valued.

In practice, equity will come about through the adoption of the various practices that have been developed over time to address gender inequities. Goodell and Parker (2001, pp. 419–21) list twelve practices for teachers and curriculum designers to follow to create a ‘connected equitable mathematics classroom (CEMC)’:

- All students have access to academically challenging mathematics curricula.
- Students are encouraged to develop confidence in their mathematics ability and positive attitudes to mathematics.
- Basic skills are developed that will enable students to be mathematically literate in the world outside school.
- The learning environment encourages students to develop their own voice and construct their own knowledge.
- Teachers have high expectations of all their students.
- Teachers connect mathematics with the real world.
- Teachers are able to recognise and act on inequities in their classroom.
- Teachers use a variety of teaching and assessment practices.
- The curriculum is designed within a social and cultural context, challenges stereotypes and values the contributions of women and minority groups.
- The curriculum includes real-world problems.
- The curriculum includes a focus on issues of social justice and world problems.
- The curriculum explicitly states equity goals.

You will notice that these practices draw heavily on the ideas and approaches discussed in this chapter: intervention strategies to address specific learning needs of students; inclusive practices that relate mathematics to the experiences of girls and boys in the classroom; and learner-centred practices that build on students' prior understanding through a range of inquiry-based activities. In the next chapter, we consider other sociocultural factors in the learning of mathematics, and discuss equity in this broader social context. We will revisit these teaching practices and present a model of socially just curriculum.

## Recommended reading

**Anthony, B. & Walshaw, M. (2007).** *Effective pedagogy in mathematics/pāngarau: Best evidence synthesis iteration [BES]*. Wellington: New Zealand Ministry of Education.

**Boaler, J. (1997b).** Reclaiming school mathematics: The girls fight back. *Gender and Education*, 9(3), 285–306.

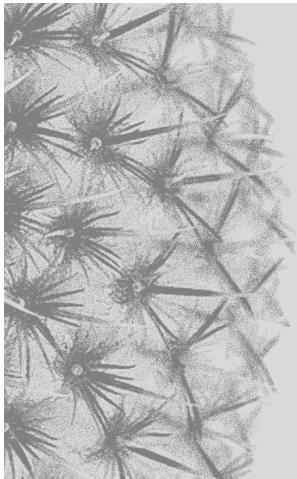
**Burton, L. (2003).** *Which way social justice in mathematics education?* Westport, CT: Praeger.

**Goodell, J. & Parker, L. (2001).** Creating a connected, equitable mathematics classroom: Facilitating gender equity. In B. Atweh, H. Forgasz & B. Nebres (eds), *Sociocultural research on mathematics education: An international perspective* (pp. 411–31). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.

**UNESCO (2003).** Summary report. *Gender and education for all: The leap to equality*. Paris: UNESCO.

**Vale, C., Forgasz, H. & Horne, M. (2004).** Gender and mathematics: Back to the future? In B. Perry, C. Diezmann & G. Anthony (eds) *Review of Research in Mathematics Education in Australasia 2000–2003* (75–102). Flaxton, Qld: Post Pressed.





## CHAPTER 14

### **Social and cultural issues in mathematics learning**

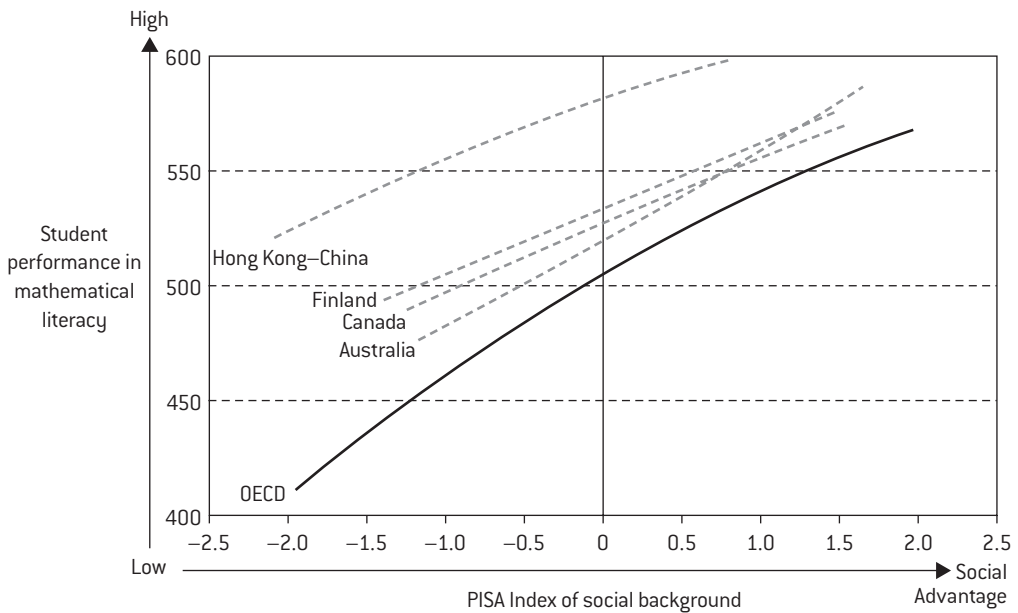
In Chapter 13 we discussed gender issues and the way that teachers can work towards gender equity. Mathematics teachers also recognise the diverse social and cultural experiences and identities of students in their classroom. The cultural heritage and social backgrounds of students are related to advantages (and disadvantages) in schooling, and hence educational success. The rhetoric of Western countries is that mathematics learning is to prepare students for active citizenship, but often the reality is that mathematics education maintains the social order (Skovsmose & Valero, 2002). Mathematics achievement is a significant factor affecting success in schooling (Rothman, 2002). In this chapter, we discuss social and cultural issues and the ways these issues are related to students' mathematics learning. Different interpretations are then presented of socially just curriculum and teaching strategies that enable success in mathematics for all students and reduce the inequities in our society.

#### **Sociocultural factors and students' mathematics learning**

In this section, we will discuss the relationship between various sociocultural factors and mathematics participation and achievement. These factors include socioeconomic status, ethnicity and language spoken at home. We also consider these factors in relation to the sociocultural norms of the mathematics classroom and practices of mathematics teachers.

### *Socioeconomic status and mathematics achievement*

National and international studies of Australian students at different levels of secondary schooling show that there is a significant relationship between socioeconomic background and mathematics achievement (Lokan et al., 2001; Rothman, 2002). The findings from the Program of International Student Assessment (PISA) study, illustrated in Figure 14.1, show the positive relationship between social background and mathematical literacy for fifteen-year-old students in Australia and other countries (Thomson et al., 2004). The regression line for Australia is steeper than for other OECD countries, indicating that socioeconomic status has a larger effect on mathematical literacy achievement in Australia than in these other countries. For Australia, the regression line is also straighter, showing that this effect increases as socioeconomic status rises.



**Figure 14.1** Regression of mathematical literacy on social background by country

Given these results, it is not surprising that participation and achievement in post-compulsory mathematics in Australia is also related to socioeconomic background. Analysing Year 12 mathematics results from Victoria, Teese (2000) found that:

In the urban regions [of Melbourne] where working-class and migrant families are highly concentrated, every third girl can expect to receive fail grades in the least demanding mathematics subject. Among boys—whose attraction to mathematics is even more fatal—failure strikes more than 40 per cent. The better students gravitate to the mathematics subjects that lead to university. But here too failure awaits them, one in three. (2000, p. 2)

Social capital is one explanation for the relationship between socioeconomic status and achievement. This notion embraces not only the availability of economic resources within the family to support learning (such as internet access from home), but also the cultural knowledge of education within the family, such as parents' level of education—including level of mathematics learning—and other community and cultural connections of the family that support academic success. Teese found that, as mathematics curriculum changed over the years, students of low socioeconomic status (SES) were also disadvantaged because of lower levels of experience and qualifications among their post-compulsory mathematics teachers. He also found that, over time, just as low SES students started to improve their relative performance in mathematics, a curriculum change restored the socioeconomic class differences in achievement.

Cooper and Dunne (2000) investigated how socioeconomic status influenced students' learning outcomes in mathematics. They analysed the responses of students to 'real-world' worded problems. They found that, on average, students from a working-class background scored lower on these problems than other students. They observed that working-class students often used their personal experiences of these 'real' problems when providing solutions. For example, when solving a problem about a bus timetable schedule, some working-class students explained that the bus didn't run on a Saturday at that time. Middle-class students, on the other hand, recognised that the context of the problem was irrelevant to the solution (i.e. a 'wrapper problem'—see Chapter 3), and were able to interpret the problem and provide the correct solution. As discussed in Chapter 3, teachers therefore need to be careful in selecting problems, and they need to assist students' interpretation of problems and focus their attention on the mathematical ideas.

McGaw (2004) and others have argued that the learning of marginalised students is not prioritised in Western developed countries. Commenting on the findings from the PISA study, he says:

Australia has celebrated its high average performance and noted the problems of its 15-year-olds from socially disadvantaged backgrounds but does not appear to have addressed the causes of its inequitable results in any systematic way. There is a tendency in Australia to dismiss attempts to redress inequities in education as likely to result in ‘dumbing down’ of the system . . . ‘Leveling up’ is clearly an alternative. (2004, p. 10).

### *Indigenous students*

While the gap in participation and achievement between Indigenous students and non-Indigenous students was closing at the turn of the century, it remains wide. In 1996, only 54 per cent of Indigenous students participated in secondary schooling, compared with 84 per cent of non-Indigenous students. Only 32 per cent of Indigenous students who commence secondary schooling complete Year 12, compared with 73 per cent of non-Indigenous students (Buckskin, 2000). Participation rates in secondary schooling for Indigenous students vary across Australia. While many Indigenous people live in highly populated locations, the reality for Indigenous students living in remote communities is that they must leave home if they want a secondary education. Data from the PISA study, which tested fifteen-year-old students, showed that the mathematical literacy of Australian Indigenous students was significantly lower than non-Indigenous, although some Indigenous students performed at the highest level (Lokan et al., 2001). The geographic isolation of Indigenous students does not explain these results.

Unfortunately, many Indigenous students experience school differently from non-Indigenous students. They may be stereotyped and marginalised in classrooms by teachers, by teaching practices, by the curriculum and by the culture of schooling (see box).

### Che: A case study

Che, a Koori student, was a member of a multi-ethnic Year 9 class, and the only Indigenous student in an urban government school. The class was studying geometry and the students used their laptop computers and *The Geometer's Sketchpad* during five lessons in the period that I observed the class. Che showed a lot of interest in the computer-based mathematics lessons. He collaborated with other students to learn how to use the animate function in the software and discover some mathematical ideas. Like other students in the class, Che was sometimes off-task. He used the computer to do things other than the set mathematics task, and sometimes moved around the room to talk to other students. On one of these occasions, he collaborated with other students to load other software (*Microworlds*) from one laptop to another. In the following extract of the transcript of the lesson about the sum of exterior angles in polygons, Che discussed the results of the guided investigation with two other students, Lawrie and Darren. They had been following instructions for this investigation from a worksheet. Che was the first student to complete the task. He had completed the task for homework, and Lawrie asked him what he wrote for the conjecture:

**Che:** I done all that. I done all the way to here.

**Lawrie:** What do you do here, what did you write?

**Che:** Um, I wrote, um, I found out that all the angles equal up to 360 degrees.

**Lawrie:** Not matter what shape as long as its perimeter . . .

**Che:** I found it for all pol . . . polygons or something like that equals up to . . .

**Darren:** The hexagon equals up to . . .

**Che:** It's not a hexagon. Do control later on. No, no you don't. You go to calculator. Where's your calculator?

**Lawrie:** I already calculated it (points to the result on the screen).

**Che:** Yeah, well there you go. You done it all. Now you just write there (points to the screen) that all the angles equal up to 360 degrees. That's your conjuncture (*sic*). (Waves his hands as if to say 'or whatever it is'.)

**Lawrie:** Where's the text box?

**Darren:** (At the same time) Conjunction.

**Che:** You go (he points to the tool bar) text box.

In a subsequent lesson, students were constructing a series of geometric shapes. Some students constructed by eye and did not measure lengths or angles. Those who did measure angles tended to erase incorrect line segments and try again. No students were observed using the parallel line tool in the construct menu. Che was the only student who used the drag facility to make changes to his shapes.

#### REVIEW AND REFLECT :

- Discuss this case with colleagues.
- What surprises you about this case? How is this case similar to, or different from, your knowledge or expectations of Indigenous students?
- Interactions between the student and the teacher have not been included in this case. What do you think would be the likely content of the interactions between Che and the teacher? What feedback would you give Che?
- What advice would you give a pre-service teacher colleague who was teaching Che?

#### *Language and language background*

With the exception of Indigenous students, mathematical achievement is not related to cultural background or language spoken at home (Lokan et al., 2001). Differences within and between cultures with regard to socioeconomic status and study habits explain more of the variation in achievement than does non-English language background. Nevertheless, we know that language plays an important role in mathematics learning, and so we can expect that, when teachers and learners do not share the same language or culture or system of reasoning, mathematical learning will be impeded (Ellerton & Clarkson, 1996).

In Chapter 2, we indicated that language and communication are important aspects of constructivist and sociocultural theories of learning, and in Chapter 3 we showed how language is important for establishing meaning in mathematics and making connections between concepts, symbols and real situations.

Even though language background is not related to achievement, the vocabulary and grammar in problems and textbooks can be difficult for students whose first language is not English, and especially for students who are recent migrants to Australia and still learning the language. MacGregor and Moore (1991) explain that the language of counting, measuring and comparing, the meaning of articles and prepositions, and the verb 'to be' are particularly difficult. Furthermore, some problem-solving tasks and investigations place a high level of demand on comprehension and writing skills. Students need to be able to formulate conjectures, explain and justify their methods of solution, and pose mathematical problems. These skills are especially demanding for students whose first language is not English.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Consider the following problem.

Emma wants to buy a car for \$28 000. She plans to pay a deposit and makes equal monthly payments over four years. If she pays a deposit of \$3000 how much will her monthly payments be?

- Compare your interpretation of this problem with that of a colleague. What difficulties do you think students would have with the language in this problem? Rewrite this problem so that it could more easily be interpreted.
- Compare and discuss the vocabulary and structure of the language used in the explanations, examples and problems of two different textbooks for the same mathematical topic.

*Sociocultural norms and teachers' practices*

The sociocultural norms of the classroom refer to the language, styles of communication and classroom rules used by teachers and learners that convey meanings about mathematics, what it is and how it is practised. In Chapter 3, we discussed the different approaches that

teachers use to control or direct the discussion of mathematics. A number of researchers have observed the kinds of questions and styles of communication that include or exclude students (e.g. see Chapman, 2001). In the previous chapter about gender, we discussed the way that language and the nature of interactions in the classroom can exclude particular girls and boys. Similarly, sociocultural norms may exclude particular cultural or ethnic groups. For example, students whose first language is not English may be reluctant to respond to questions in a public forum or contribute to discussion in small-group tasks. Furthermore, a teacher may not accept a method of solution that is commonly used and taught in another country.

The assessment of students' work is another element of teachers' practice that may unconsciously be influenced by the sociocultural background of students. Morgan and Watson (2002) conducted a study of teachers' assessment of students' mathematical learning in informal classroom assessment and formal written responses to mathematical problems in high-stakes assessment tasks. They found that teachers often based their evaluation of students' work on surface features of the work and their prior expectations of students. As a consequence, teachers awarded low grades to work that was produced by students from socially disadvantaged backgrounds and of whom they had low expectations.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Observe a teaching episode and write a record of the teachers' questions and students' reactions and response. Alternatively, videotape (or audiotape) one of your teaching episodes. Use the following prompts to reflect on the sociocultural norms and inclusion of students in this lesson:

- What were the rules (explicit or implicit) for engagement in this lesson?
- Who participated and who did not participate?
- What language knowledge did students need in order to participate?
- What types of questions were used?
- How did the teacher control the discussion?
- How do you think the students felt about their inclusion or exclusion?
- What would you change about this teaching episode and how would you manage the discussion? Why?



## Equity and social justice

Teachers of the most disadvantaged students are often acutely aware of the difficulties they face. Sometimes these students are from a non-Western cultural background, they may be Indigenous and/or English is not the language spoken at home. Perhaps they are refugees with interrupted schooling. Almost certainly, the most marginalised students are also from low-income families. A mathematics teacher in a school with many students from disadvantaged backgrounds recently described the way in which these sociocultural factors affected her students' mathematics learning:

I always use the analogy that we're all running the same race in the end, but our kids are jumping hurdles. Some kids are running flat races. If you're at [a private school in an affluent suburb], you've got a pretty easy hundred metre run. Our kids tend to fall because they're jumping over stuff. So to me the school has to make up for that, so [social justice is] about taking away those hurdles. (Mathematics teacher, western suburbs school, Melbourne)

This teacher believed it was the school's and teachers' responsibility to 'pre-empt what the barriers are going to be and teach kids how to go round them, go over them, or knock 'em down'.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** What does equity and social justice mean to you? Discuss with your colleagues in a small group and write a definition upon which you can all agree.

In the Adelaide Declaration on National Goals for Schooling in the Twenty-First Century (MCEETYA, 1999), the governments of Australia agreed that all students should be numerate and literate. Particular reference to the needs of Indigenous students was included in the statement:

Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander students [should] have equitable access to, and opportunities in schooling so that their learning outcomes improve and, over time, match those of other students.

In Chapter 13, we defined equal opportunity, equal treatment, equal outcomes and equity. Equitable practice concerns paying attention to the different needs of students and teaching to these needs. Equity and social justice, therefore, do not mean equal treatment, but must embrace fairness and mutual respect in response to difference. A secondary mathematics teacher explained it this way:

If you are fair to everyone and if you are just to everyone then they respect you ... [The students] should have a feeling that they are in a very just society and that in the classroom they should find justice everywhere. (Mathematics teacher, western suburbs, Melbourne)

Social justice is about ‘closing the gap’, ‘levelling up’ and empowering students. Teaching mathematics well gives students access to knowledge of mathematics, and the power and success in society that this elicits. That is, learners are empowered by their mathematical literacy so that they can function effectively and critically as citizens of a democratic society, and be agents in their own use and learning of mathematics (Steen, n.d.). Skovmose and Valero (2002) argue that teachers should use mathematical contexts of social significance to teach students about decision-making.

The following sections of this chapter examine the approaches that teachers have taken for ‘closing the gap’ or ‘levelling up’. We will show that teaching mathematics well involves making connections between mathematics and real situations so that students can use mathematics to understand and improve their position in society.

## Approaches to equity and social justice

Teachers have developed a number of different approaches for taking into account the social and cultural factors influencing the performance of disadvantaged students, and to resolve the conflict between their experiences of mathematics outside and inside the classroom. Bishop (1994) provides a framework with which to describe and discuss these different approaches, which he calls *assimilation*, *accommodation*, *amalgamation* and *appropriation*. For each of these approaches, Bishop summarises the assumptions about the role of culture in determining the mathematics curriculum, the nature of the curriculum, teaching approach and the language of instruction. Using the curriculum headings from his framework (see

Table 14.1), each approach is described and examples are provided in the remainder of this chapter. We have included a separate discussion on teaching Indigenous students.

**Table 14.1 Approaches to social justice**

Approach	Assumption	Curriculum	Teaching	Language
Traditional	No issues	<i>Traditional</i>	No modification	English
Assimilation	Student's culture should be useful for examples	<b>Multicultural:</b> Some cultural contexts included	Caring approach with some group work	English plus ESL teaching
Accommodation	Student's culture should influence education	<b>Ethnomathematics:</b> Restructured according to child's culture	Modified to style preferred by students	English language support and acceptance of home language in the classroom
Amalgamation	Cultures adults share significantly in education	<b>Democratic</b> (or critical): Jointly organised by teachers and community	Shared or team teaching, bi-cultural teaching	Bi-lingual

Source: Adapted from Bishop (1994).

### *Multicultural curriculum*

Characteristic of a multicultural approach is a caring environment and the use of contexts and problems with cultural significance to students. Strategies to support the learning and use of English in mathematics are also important to the multicultural approach.

Knowing one's students is an expectation for quality in mathematics teaching (Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers, 2006). In a multicultural classroom, teachers need to know about students' prior mathematics knowledge and skills, and also their language knowledge. Getting to know students also enables teachers to make connections to contexts that have meaning for them. Equally important is some understanding of the values and attitudes that the students have about learning, and learning mathematics in particular. If they have had some schooling in other countries, they may have different expectations

about how a mathematics lesson should be conducted. Students may also be accustomed to presenting solutions to problems in a different way. These differences need to be celebrated rather than minimised in a mathematics classroom, as they illustrate the richness of mathematical knowledge and the flexibility involved in making sense of mathematics.

It is important not to stereotype students of particular ethnicities. Knowing one's students enables teachers to remain sensitive to their needs and to engage them more effectively in the mathematics lesson. Teachers are thus able to select problems and contexts that are more engaging for students, as well as select content and tasks that address their mathematical learning needs.

Furthermore, mathematics may have a very rich history in students' cultures. Investigating the origins and historical development of mathematical ideas and algorithms is one way of including and valuing the mathematics of various cultures. It also enables teachers to challenge the Eurocentric historical record of mathematics (Shan & Bailey, 1994). For example, the Chinese had documented Pythagorean triples long before Pythagoras, and the earliest known proof appears in an ancient Indian text.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** In their book, *Multiple factors: Classroom mathematics for equality and justice*, Shan and Bailey (1994) document a number of examples of non-Western mathematics—for example, the number patterns of Shakuntala Devi and the Chinese Triangle (known in Western culture as Pascal's triangle).

- Use the internet to investigate the history of a mathematical idea from a non-European country (for example, Hindu arithmetic, Babylonian methods of multiplication, the Chinese Triangle, 'Al-jabr').
- Develop student materials for a mathematical investigation that includes the use of material from the internet.

MacGregor and Moore (1991) provide advice on designing teaching and assessment materials for students whose first language is not English. They advise that teachers should read the materials with students and make sure that terms and instructions are understood. Teachers should also train students in techniques for completing assignments, problem-solving tasks and investigations, including the writing styles and formats. Student work

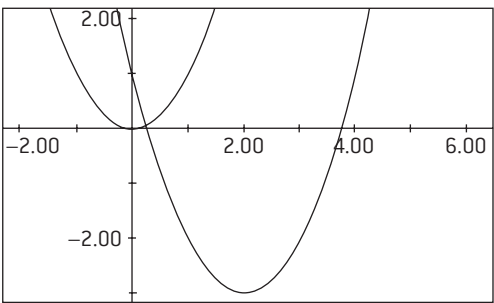
from previous years can provide invaluable examples for students. They emphasise the need to teach vocabulary (such as *parallelogram* or *domain*) and terms that inform processes to be followed (such as *evaluate*, *simplify* and *factorise*). Key mathematical terms should be written down and visible, not just spoken. They also recommend that teachers assist students to comprehend and interpret word problems and diagrams. MacGregor and Moore document strategies and activities for developing mathematical language, based on the practices of teachers of English as a second language. Some examples include:

- labelling exercises using key terms on cards;
- true/false exercises for mathematical statements written in words;
- cloze exercises where sentences are completed using a list of words (see Figure 14.2);
- problem reconstruction, where steps in the solution process are written separately on cards using symbols and words and students arrange both sets of cards to show the solution process;
- mix-and-match cards—for example, cards to match graphs with written descriptions of their features, or mathematical vocabulary and their meaning; and
- cooperative learning problems, where clues or pieces of information about the problem are written on separate cards, and distributed among a group of students who have to share their information by reading and explaining and not showing, to solve the problem together (see Gould, 1993).

Fill the blanks by choosing the correct words from the list.

Word list: **dilated** **reflected** **rotated** **translated** **vertically** **horizontally**

The basic parabola  $y = x^2$  is shown in each picture as a reference.



The graph of the basic parabola

has been .....

3 units .....

and 2 units .....

Source: MacGregor and Moore (1991, p. 89).

Figure 14.2 Cloze task

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Use the strategies suggested by MacGregor and Moore above to design a set of language-support activities for a mathematics topic.

### *Ethnomathematics*

The essence of ethnomathematics is that mathematical knowledge is culturally developed. Mathematics has developed differently in different cultures and throughout history according to ‘the techniques, modes, arts, and styles of explaining, understanding, learning about, [and] coping with the reality in different natural and cultural environments’ (D’Ambrosio, 1998). Ethnomathematics has been investigated from three approaches: the mathematical knowledge of traditional cultures; the mathematical knowledge in non-Western societies; and the mathematical knowledge of different groups in society (Bishop, 1994). An ethnomathematics curriculum differs from multicultural curricula because it is reconstructed from cultural knowledge rather than just including some examples.

When teaching students from a particular cultural group, studying the mathematics of their culture can give them a sense of ownership and provide a bridge to Western mathematics. Barton (2001) argues that it is important for Indigenous students to understand the quantity, relationship and space (QRS) system of their own culture in order to appreciate and understand another system—that is, the dominant system of Western mathematics. This involves teachers working with communities to understand their mathematical thinking and how it is involved in the things that are important in their culture. Harris (1991) documents some of the traditional knowledge of Indigenous Australians, such as the art of the Western Desert people, their kinship systems and spatial awareness. However, a school-based curriculum that includes examples from traditional culture runs the risk of not only trivialising the mathematics but, more importantly, embarrassing the students from ethnic minorities because they are made to feel primitive rather than engaging their interest and valuing their culture (Lerman, 1994). So this approach needs to be used judiciously in a multicultural classroom. Examples of non-Western mathematics were present in the previous section. Approaches for teaching Australian Indigenous students are discussed in the next section.

*Indigenous students*

Mathematics educators who have worked closely with Indigenous people in Australia all make the point that it is important not to stereotype or essentialise Indigenous students—that is, think that all Indigenous students are the same (Matthews et al., 2003; Matthews et al., 2005). In order to teach Indigenous students, teachers need to learn about Indigenous people, their culture and their ways of knowing, and to examine their own attitudes, beliefs and values about mathematics (Perso, 2003). These principles apply to teachers of Indigenous students in urban and regional Australia as well as in remote communities.

Thelma Perso (2003), who conducted a study into ‘the gap’ between Indigenous and non-Indigenous student achievement in mathematics and numeracy tests, argued:

I now believe that the notion of ‘closing the gap’ is arrogant and misguided. It carries with it a sense of ‘let’s do what we can to make these people like us’—in other words, this closing of the gap is about Western society remaining constant and Aboriginal society moving along the continuum to join it.

My personal view is that, until we as a society can view ‘closing the gap’ as being one of both groups—Aboriginal and non-Aboriginal—moving closer together *and learning from each other*, little will be accomplished in this area. There is a need for teachers in our schools to move beyond ‘tolerance’ to ‘respect’. This will only occur if teachers learn to understand the Aboriginal children (and children of other minority groups) that they teach. (2003, pp. vii–viii)

Perso proposes that three aspects of practice need to be included and synchronised for the effective learning of Indigenous students: Indigenous people and their culture; the mathematical understandings of Indigenous students; and explicit teaching of mathematics.

Cultural inclusion is clearly important for enhancing the learning of Indigenous students. Peter Buckskin (2000) explains that the principle of inclusion involves flexibility, participation of Indigenous people in educational management and delivery, teaching Indigenous languages, and increasing the cultural relevance of mathematics curriculum. He argues that flexibility in content, pedagogy and credentialling is important for Indigenous students who are a minority in the classroom, who have had unsuccessful or damaging experiences of school, or who live in remote communities or in communities

with high mortality rates. Formal involvement of Indigenous people in the school as teachers or tutors or mentors, and Elders passing on their knowledge, has improved the educational outcomes of students.

Jan McCarthy (2002) describes a Year 10 numeracy project, *Where in the world is Spinifex Longifolious?* She was teaching at Tennant Creek, a small town in the Northern Territory, in a school where half the students were Indigenous. After asking her students to tell her what they thought was missing from their mathematics lessons, she concluded: 'We needed something outdoors, involving technology, that would foster working in teams, something that supported and extended students' literacy skills development, that would make them aware of other cultures around them and that would keep them amused (2002, p. 25)'. The unit that she designed required the active involvement of Indigenous women from the local Tennant Creek community, respect for Indigenous knowledge of medicine, and was based on the needs and interests of the students. The project is outlined in the box below.

### Where in the world is Spinifex Longifolious?

The desired outcomes for the project were:

1. Students will identify the position of and best route to locations of local bush medicines.

*The project involved learning to navigate with a hand-held global positioning system (GPS) and then using the information from the unit to produce both formal and informal (mud) maps.*

2. Using appropriate hardware and software, students will produce an information package that will communicate the results to different audiences.

*This was suitably vague so as to give the students the opportunity to produce a package with which they were comfortable. Some of the options would be to produce a web-based presentation, a pictorial presentation, a highly literate or formal presentation and some students would produce an audio commentary.*

3. The package will include charts, scale maps, diagrams, transcripts, photographs and video footage.

Source: McCarthy (2002, p. 25).



Peter Buckskin (2000) recommends that teachers adopt particular practices when teaching Indigenous students. These include working with smaller class sizes, small groups, or individually with some Indigenous students, ensuring that grouping and withdrawal practices allow Indigenous students to re-enter the mainstream classroom, and encouraging students to work cooperatively.

When working with Indigenous students, explicit teaching of mathematics involves paying attention to language, building bridges with their cultural context, and modelling and explaining mathematics. As many Indigenous students—especially in remote communities—have a non-English-speaking background or use Aboriginal English in their community, teachers need to carefully explain the language of mathematical symbols and concepts. Furthermore, some Western mathematics ideas are not consistent with the cultural knowledge of Indigenous students, and the contexts of mathematical problems may not be familiar to them. Teachers therefore need to provide a context for a mathematical task, such as measuring or estimating, so that the purpose of learning the mathematics is clear (Perso, 2003). On the other hand, the spatial concepts of Indigenous students may be well advanced (Harris, 1991), as Indigenous people tend to use cardinal direction and landmarks very effectively for location and orientation, and spatial awareness is developed in children from a young age. Even so, the mathematics teacher needs to build bridges between the students' cultural use of spatial location and orientation and the Western, textbook meanings of these concepts.

Modelling and explaining with concrete materials is important. Teachers also find that games—especially those that are familiar and played in their community—are especially engaging for students. For example, students could be taught to play purposeful mathematical games (e.g. see Swan, 1997), or teachers could learn the intricacies of Indigenous students' card games to gain some insight into their mathematics. Similarly, problem-solving tasks, such as *Maths300* tasks (Curriculum Corporation), some of which also include computer simulations of problems, have been used very successfully with Indigenous students (*Improving Outcomes in Numeracy: The INISSS Project*).

### *Democratic or critical curriculum*

In Chapter 2 we described Boaler's (1997a) research on a project approach to teaching and learning mathematics. The students in this classroom completed mathematical investigations

of phenomena or topics that were connected to their experiences and environment. In various countries around the world, teachers have adopted this method of teaching mathematics to engage students and enable them to develop and use mathematical knowledge to solve problems that they will encounter at school, at work and in the community (Boaler, 1997a, 2002; Borba & Villarreal, 2005; Franklin, 1997, 2001; Gutstein, 2003; Ladson-Billings, 1995; Skovmose & Valero, 2002).

Gutstein (2003) found that using mathematics to examine social issues in the community, including racism and discrimination, can be particularly empowering for marginalised students. He used projects in his middle years classroom to gather data about issues of personal and social relevance to his students, such as teenage pregnancy and local housing programs (see Gutstein & Peterson, 2006 for an excellent collection of teaching resources based on this work). Some other examples are provided in Table 14. 2. The content of mathematical inquiry consistent with a democratic or critical curriculum approach contributes to the development of critical mathematical literacy for active citizenship.

**Table 14.2 Mathematics problems of personal or social relevance**

---

***Maths and booze***

If you were planning to drive to and from a party and stay from 8.00 p.m. to 1.00 a.m., what number, capacity and strength of alcoholic drinks could you drink in that time and have a blood alcohol content (BAC) below 0.05 any time after leaving the party? Explain. Show your working. Illustrate your BAC level over the time period in a graph.

---

***Home loan interest rates***

Some political commentators claimed that the strong campaign on interest rates conducted by the Coalition parties was responsible for their success in the 2004 federal election. Why do interest rates have such a strong influence on election outcomes?

Investigate the effect of interest rates on weekly payments for home loans. Compare the proportion of average weekly income paid in home loan repayments over the last fifteen years.

---

Frankenstein (1997, 2001) is another US educator who has taught mathematics for social justice at the college level for many years. Her students are mainly working-class adults who failed to achieve success in secondary school mathematics. She defines her curriculum

goals in terms of developing students' ability to pose mathematical questions in order to deepen their appreciation of social issues and to challenge people's perceptions of those issues. One of the real-world issues investigated by Frankenstein's students involves challenging official interpretations of the unemployment rate. We have adapted this investigation by providing recent data from the Australian Bureau of Statistics in Table 14.3. The ABS uses the following definitions in determining the unemployment rate:

- *Employed*: persons aged fifteen years and over who worked for any length of time during the reference week for pay, profit, commission, payment in kind or without pay in a family business, or who had a job but were not at work.
- *Unemployed*: persons aged fifteen years and over who were not employed during the reference week, but who had actively looked for work and were available to start work.
- *Labour force*: all persons aged fifteen years and over who, during the reference week, were employed or unemployed.
- *Marginally attached to the labour force*: people who wanted to work and were either actively looking for work but not available to start work in the reference week, or people available to start work within four weeks but not actively looking for work.
- *Discouraged jobseekers*: people who were marginally attached to the labour force, wanted to work and who were available to start work within four weeks but whose main reason for not taking active steps to find work was that they believed they would not be able to find a job for reasons of age, language or ethnicity, schooling, training, skills or experience, no jobs in their locality or line of work, or they considered that there were no jobs at all available.
- *Unemployment rate*: the number of unemployed expressed as a proportion of the labour force.
- *Participation rate*: the labour force expressed as a percentage of the civilian population.

**Table 14.3 Civilian population aged 15–69 years, labour force status, September 2004**

	Males '000s	Females '000s	Persons '000s
Civilian population aged 15–69 years	6,989.9	7,081.4	14,071.3
Persons in the labour force	5,631.6	4,600.5	10,232.1
Employed	5,321.1	4,348.5	9,669.6
Unemployed	310.5	252.0	562.5
Persons not in the labour force	1,358.3	2,480.8	3,839.2
With marginal attachment to the labour force	269.5	585.8	855.3
Wanted to work and were actively looking for work	28.9	36.5	65.4
Were available to start work within four weeks	20.4	26.3	46.6
Were not available to start work within four weeks	8.6	10.2	18.8
Wanted to work but were not actively looking for work and were available to start work within four weeks	240.6	549.3	789.9
Discouraged jobseekers	28.4	53.6	82.0
Other	212.2	495.8	707.9
Without marginal attachment to the labour force	1,088.9	1,895.0	2,983.9
Wanted to work but were not actively looking for work and were not available to start work within four weeks	120.4	213.0	333.4
Did not want to work	857.8	1,618.3	2,476.1
Permanently unable to work	110.7	63.7	174.4

Source: *Persons Not in the Labour Force*, Australia, September 2004 (*Yearbook Australia 2006*, 6220.0).

### REVIEW AND REFLECT :

1. Calculate the participation rate and unemployment rate using Table 14.3 and the official definitions provided above.
2. In your opinion, which groups listed in Table 14.3 should be considered unemployed? Why? Which should be considered as part of the labour force? Why?
3. Given your selections from Question 2, recalculate the participation and unemployment rates and compare your answers with those obtained in Question 1. Explain how changes in the numerator and denominator affected the answers.

An important aspect of the democratic approach is student involvement in making decisions about their learning, as illustrated in the *Where in the world is *Spinifex Longifolious*?* example above. Typically, the teacher involves the students in making decisions about the topic for the project and the selection of a problem, or works through a process of investigation with the students to generate and pose a problem for solving. The teacher may negotiate with the students the means for conducting the project, and in this way students will learn about the process of mathematical inquiry—including problem-solving, research and mathematical reasoning. They will also discuss with students their expectations, the assessment criteria and the ways in which to demonstrate their mathematical understanding.

Teachers who use this approach observe that their students show improved engagement with their mathematics learning. Use of projects or extended problems can produce equitable outcomes (Boaler, 2002). Boaler, who studied teachers using this approach in the United Kingdom and the United States, found that successful teachers—that is, teachers who produce equitable outcomes—use particular practices in conjunction with this approach. These practices include:

- discussing the problems or project thoroughly with students when they are introduced so that the vocabulary and meaning of the problem or inquiry is understood;
- encouraging students to explain and justify their thinking; and
- making real-world contexts accessible to students—that is, recognising that girls and boys from different social, cultural and linguistic backgrounds encounter contexts differently, and taking this into account when explaining the problem.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Work in a group to develop an open-ended investigation or design a problem about a social issue that is relevant to a group of students. Identify the resources and materials needed and design an assessment rubric.

## Conclusion

To enable social justice in mathematics learning and teaching, education policy and mathematics curricula must recognise the needs of the most marginalised members of the community, and resources must flow to groups of social disadvantage. Teaching and learning approaches should enable learners to be empowered through mathematical literacy and to develop agency as mathematicians. This requires teachers to be reflective and reformist.

The model described below draws together the ideas that have been discussed in this chapter. Perhaps the most familiar model currently in use in Australia is the Productive Pedagogies framework (Hayes et al., 2000), which forms the basis for the New Basics curriculum in Queensland. Other states in Australia have also developed policies for teaching and learning with a social justice goal. We propose that there are six main attributes of an equitable classroom:

- *Equal access.* This concept includes access to the classroom, resources and materials, and also to the discourse of the mathematics lesson—that is, the language and norms of mathematical practice and thinking—such that no one feels left out or marginalised in the classroom.
- *Connected learning.* The teaching and learning program builds on prior knowledge and experiences of students. The program is negotiated with them, and the contexts of mathematical applications and investigations are socially, culturally and politically relevant and empowering for them.
- *Collaborative methods.* The practices of the classroom recognise the importance of discussion and social interaction for the learning of mathematics. Hence collaborative tasks and practices are valued, and students are encouraged to share their knowledge and skills and to explain their thinking.
- *Supportive environments.* Teachers construct an environment based on the belief that everyone can learn mathematics and establish classroom norms so that students feel safe, free from abuse and respected. They make explicit their expectations for mathematical thinking and practices, and they model and scaffold mathematical thinking in the classroom.

- *Intellectual quality.* Teachers in equitable classrooms have high expectations of their students and engage them in meaningful mathematical thinking. Through the mathematical skills and concepts that they learn, students are empowered to use mathematics in ways that enable them to participate effectively in school, work and the community.
- *Respect for difference.* Materials, problems and tasks reflect the gender, cultural and social diversity of the students in the classroom. The materials are free of gender and cultural bias. They are relevant and respectful of the students' interests, and teachers understand that the real contexts of mathematical problems may be experienced differently by girls and boys and by students from varying social and cultural backgrounds.

## Recommended reading

**Boaler, J. (2002).** Learning from teaching: Exploring the relationship between reform curriculum and equity. *Journal of Research in Mathematics Education*, 33(4), 239–58.

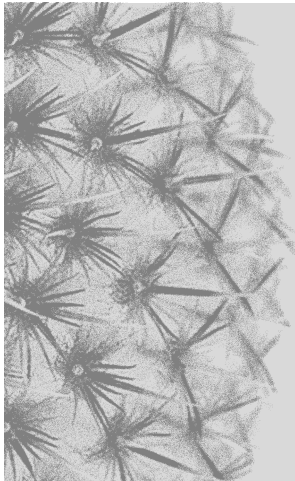
**Gutstein, E. & Peterson, B. (eds), (2006).** *Rethinking mathematics: Teaching social justice by the numbers*. Milwaukee, WI: Re-thinking Schools Ltd.

**Hayes, D., Lingard, B. & Mills, M. (2000).** Productive pedagogies. *Education Links*, 60, 10–13.

**Perso, T. (2003).** *Improving Aboriginal numeracy: A book for education systems, school administrators, teachers and teacher educators*. Perth: Mathematics, Science and Technology Education Centre (MASTEC), Edith Cowan University.

**Shan, S. & Bailey, P. (1994).** *Multiple factors: Classroom mathematics for equality and justice*. Oakhill: Trentham Books.

**Teese, R. (2000).** *Academic success and social power: Examinations and inequality*. Melbourne: Melbourne University Press.



## CHAPTER 15

### **Teaching students with diverse learning needs**

In the previous two chapters, we discussed catering for the diverse interests and needs of students in mathematics classrooms from the point of view of gender, and of socioeconomic and cultural factors. In this chapter, we consider what is probably the most vexatious issue and the most difficult task for teachers of mathematics: teaching students with diverse mathematical knowledge and skills. Teachers can expect students' mathematics achievement to span seven years of schooling in their junior secondary classrooms (Siemon et al., 2001) and we know that students at both ends of the achievement spectrum (low achievers and high achievers) are at risk of under-achieving (Diezmann et al., 2003). Teachers most readily recognise the classroom management problems that arise, and the subsequent impact on the learning of students, when not everyone is engaged. Of equal concern is the sense we have of failing our students when we don't cater for their needs.

Often mathematics teachers talk about teaching a 'mixed-ability' class. However, using the term 'ability' to describe differences among students is contentious since it implies differences in potential to learn. Our focus in this chapter is on the belief—held by excellent teachers of mathematics—that all students can learn mathematics (Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers, 2006). We will discuss the meaning of terms used to describe students with different learning needs (students with mathematics learning difficulties and those with mathematical talent), methods used to identify these students and their needs, and approaches and programs designed for these students. While we pay particular attention to teaching strategies that are effective for students with learning difficulties and those with mathematical talent, these strategies can and should be integrated into the practice of



teachers with mathematics classes that include students with a range of learning needs. Finally, we examine the practice of ‘streaming’ students, and consider alternative approaches for organising the learning of students with diverse needs.

## Students with learning difficulties in mathematics

### *Defining and identifying students with learning difficulties*

Teachers and schools use various terms to identify students who have difficulty learning mathematics. These terms include ‘students with learning difficulties’, ‘students with learning disabilities’, ‘low-achieving students’, ‘students at risk of failure’, ‘students at educational risk’ and ‘students with special needs’ (Louden et al., 2000).

Students with learning difficulties in mathematics are generally understood to be those students who require extra assistance with mathematics due to their lack of, or failure to use, mathematical knowledge and skills. In some schools, this term is used to describe students who are performing below, or well below, the average level for students of their age (Van Kraayenoord & Elkins, 2004; Louden et al., 2000). Students with learning difficulties may also be described as ‘maths-phobic’, as they dislike and dread mathematics, experience anxiety in mathematics classrooms and have difficulty establishing trust with their mathematics teachers (Ocean & Miller-Reilly, 1997).

Westwood (2003) makes a distinction between students with learning difficulties and the much smaller proportion of students (about 3 per cent) with learning disabilities in mathematics, sometimes called *dyscalculia*. These students exhibit chronic problems in mastering the basic skills in mathematics, and their difficulties cannot be traced to any lack of intelligence, sensory impairment, cultural or linguistic disadvantage or inadequate teaching. It is beyond the scope of this book to consider the special needs of these students, although some educators argue that the strategies we can use for students with dyscalculia are similar to the strategies we can use for students with learning difficulties.

Between 10 and 30 per cent of primary students have difficulty learning mathematics (Rohl et al., 2000). A Victorian study revealed that approximately 9 per cent of Year 8 students and 8 per cent of Year 9 students were assessed as performing at or below the standard expected for Year 4 students (Siemon et al., 2001). A further 11 per cent of Year 8 students and 10 per cent of Year 9 students were achieving below the standard expected for Year 6 students.

Students with learning difficulties typically have under-developed knowledge, or gaps or misunderstandings in mathematical concepts and skills, poor motivation (including lack of persistence), problems recalling information and facts, difficulties in recalling and using problem-solving strategies, limited vocabulary and low levels of metacognition—that is, the students do not recognise that they have a problem with their learning and attribute their failure to a lack of ability (Chan & Dally, 2000; Kroesbergen & van Luit, 2003; Westwood, 2003). Their mathematics work is likely to indicate:

- reliance on inefficient counting strategies for computation, such as counting on by ones using fingers or tally marks (a strategy used by students in the early primary years prior to learning basic facts);
- lack of partitioning (or decomposition) strategies for computation—that is, students have not extended facts from basic facts (e.g. have not developed knowledge of pairs of numbers that total 100);
- poor understanding of the structure of the number system—that is, place value of large numbers and decimals;
- that their knowledge of multiplication is limited to a repeated addition concept, and does not include the use of the commutative and distributive law for deriving number facts and mental computation;
- that their knowledge of division is limited to sharing by ones and does not include understanding of quotient; and
- poor understanding of fractions (for example, students do not use equal partitioning when representing fractions) (Anthony & Walshaw, 2002; Hopkins, 2000; McIntosh, 2002; Department of Education and Training, New South Wales, 2002; Perry & Howard, 2001; Siemon et al., 2001; Vale, 2002b, 2004).

These difficulties with number concepts and skills contribute to the problems that students experience when applying number to measurement and developing algebra skills. Furthermore, while inefficient computational strategies can often result in the correct answer, students have expended so much effort in completing the trivial computational tasks that they are unable to progress to more advanced concepts or complete multi-step or complex problems (Department of Education and Training, New South Wales, 2002).

Some recent research on the learning difficulties of children in the early years has underlined the importance of structural understanding (Mulligan et al., 2006). These findings suggest that, unless children have developed spatial and patterning skills, they will have difficulty using the visual and concrete aids used to introduce students to number, measurement, geometry and algebra concepts during the primary years. A lack of spatial and patterning skills may have significance for upper primary and junior secondary students experiencing difficulties in mathematics that have not yet been explored by researchers.

While some children begin school with very limited experiences of mathematical concepts and learning in their early childhood, and so start schooling a long way behind other students, many of the causes of learning difficulties in mathematics can be attributed to insufficient or inappropriate instruction (Carroll, 2006; Westwood, 2003; A. Watson, 2006). We know that the achievement gap between the lowest and highest achievers widens during secondary schooling, and that inappropriate teaching and curriculum contribute to this widening gap. The following set of learning obstacles for students applies in both primary and secondary classrooms:

- The curriculum proceeds too quickly and students are not ready to assimilate new concepts and procedures.
- The teacher's language when explaining concepts or asking questions does not match the students' level of comprehension.
- Abstract concepts are introduced too early without the support of concrete materials, visual aids or real-life examples.
- Concrete or visual aids may have been removed too soon or created confusion rather than clarity.
- Mathematical investigations and experiential learning are not followed up with carefully structured activities for consolidating concepts and skills.
- Students with reading difficulties are given pure arithmetic or algebra exercises only, and are neither presented with nor taught how to solve worded and non-routine problems.
- There is an emphasis on teaching of procedures and tricks which are rapidly forgotten because they do not enable meaningful learning.

- Mathematics is taught in a linear sequence with inadequate time devoted to each topic, and to revisiting and reviewing of concepts and processes at regular intervals.
- There is insufficient guided practice.
- There is too little corrective feedback (Chan & Dally, 2000; Siemon & Virgona, 2002; Westwood, 2003).


### Diagnostic tools

A variety of assessment tools have been developed to assist teachers to identify the particular misconceptions and needs of students who have difficulties with mathematics. These include pen-and-paper diagnostic tests, clinical interviews and rich assessment tasks. The use of metaphors (see examples in Chapter 1) is also helpful, not only to find out students' attitude to mathematics, but in providing teachers with information about students' preferred approach to learning mathematics (Ocean & O'Reilly, 1997).

Pen-and-paper diagnostic tests such as the *Progressive Achievement Test in Mathematics* (Australian Council for Educational Research, 1997) assess content and procedural knowledge and assist teachers to construct a student profile. Clinical interview instruments, such as the *Counting On Intensive Assessment Interview* (Department of Education and Training, New South Wales, 2002), *Initial Clinical Assessment Procedure Mathematics Tasks—Upper Primary* (Hunting et al., 1995), and the *Middle Years Numeracy Intervention Interview* (Vale, n.d.) allow teachers to probe students' thinking by inviting them to express their ideas verbally in one-to-one or conferencing interactions. An example of an item and the criteria for recording the student's response are provided in Figure 15.1. Clinical interviews are used to find out how students think about and solve a problem and whether they use inefficient strategies, rather than only focusing on right or wrong answers and procedural errors.

To find out about students' problem-solving strategies and their understanding of mathematical concepts in context, it is necessary to use application and problem-solving tasks (e.g. see *Medicine doses* in Chapter 4 of Beesey et al., 2001). When analysing students' mathematical work, teachers should find out whether these errors are:

Worded problem: Subtraction  $\$50 - \$32.95 =$

<i>Instruction</i>	<i>Recording sheet</i>
<p>'Read the problem and work out the answer.'</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <p>How much change would you get from \$50 if you bought a shirt for \$32.95?</p> <p>'Explain how you worked out your answer.'</p> <p>If the student is not able to work it out mentally, tell them that they can use pen and paper.</p>	<p><input type="checkbox"/> uses written decomposition algorithm</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> uses written equal addition algorithm</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> mentally subtracts hundreds then tens then ones</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> adds on to find the difference (+ 5c + \$?)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> other (specify):</p>

*Figure 15.1 Sample clinical interview item*

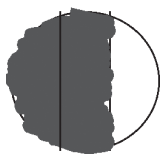
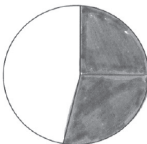
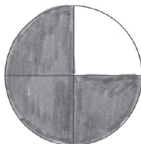
- random or repetitive, and in what circumstances they occur;
- general or conceptual errors, or errors relating to particular cases;
- based on weak recording skills, or misuse of equipment;
- based on inappropriate generalisation, or using rules adapted from elsewhere;
- based on unhelpful images of the concept;
- based on faulty memory (A. Watson, 2006, p. 65).

Watson (2006) reminds us to be careful about the judgments we make when assessing students. As we noted above, poor instruction is often the cause of students' learning difficulties, so we must not 'blame the victim' and assume that they have 'low ability'. A range of assessment tools and information from a number of sources, such as the student's previous teachers in primary and secondary school and other education specialists in the school, will provide teachers with the best insight into the needs of students who have difficulty learning mathematics. With the information gathered from diagnostic assessment, it is possible to plan learning activities to improve students' mathematics learning and achievement.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :**

Three Year 7 students were shown a flashcard with the fraction  $\frac{2}{3}$  written on it and asked to 'Draw a diagram to show what this card means' and then to 'Explain your diagram in words'. Copies of drawings produced by three students are shown in Figure 15.2.

*Figure 15.2* Three students' drawings of  $\frac{2}{3}$

Student A	Student B	Student C
		

- How do you think they would have explained their diagram?
- In what way are these representations similar and different?
- What do their representations suggest about how each of these students thinks about and understands fractions?
- What other questions would you like to ask these students to find out what they know about fractions and how to represent them?

### *Teaching students with learning difficulties*

In some primary schools learners were seen to be deficient but curable, and they did return to mainstream classes. In secondary schools, learners are more likely to be seen as deficient and incurable. (A. Watson, 2006, p. 65)

Teachers neglect students who struggle with mathematics because, in our community, it is acceptable 'not to be good at' mathematics (Carroll, 2006). Unfortunately, teachers—both

primary and secondary—contribute to this cultural belief because they also accept that some children will not be able to do mathematics (Milton, 2000; A. Watson, 2006). Teachers sometimes use the notion of different learning styles—especially the multiple intelligences literature (Gardiner, 1993)—to justify this belief, rather than developing a balanced learning program that builds on students' strengths or preferences while also addressing their weaknesses.

### Intervention programs

Targeted intervention early in schooling and for a relatively short period has proved to be effective for primary school children with learning difficulties. However, there is no agreement on the relative merits of 'in-class' or withdrawal programs for students (Carroll, 2006). Fewer resources have been devoted to the development of intervention programs for students in the middle years or in junior secondary school, although some do exist.

*QuickSmart* (Pegg et al., 2005) is a withdrawal program for students in the middle years, conducted with pairs of students with similar learning difficulties. The program runs for five 30-minute sessions over 25 weeks. The focus of the program is on learning basic facts and extended basic facts with whole numbers for the four operations, and the objective is to improve the speed and accuracy of automatic recall of these facts. Each 30-minute session has four components: revision of the previous session; guided practice activities featuring overt self-talk and the modelling of strategies to develop and extend basic facts; discussion and practice of strategies for memory and retrieval; and specially targeted games or worksheet timed activities.

The *Middle Years Numeracy Intervention Program* (Vale, 2002b, 2004) also focuses on the development of number facts and extended number facts. However, the objective here is to apply these known facts to mental computation rather than merely focusing on speed of automatic recall. Each session involves revision, modelling of mental computation strategies for arithmetic in real contexts, and a selection of guided practice, open-ended problems to extend number facts and number sense or problem-solving activities (for example, *Four-arm tiles* and *Multo* from the *Maths300* website).

Middle years students in withdrawal programs have been found to enjoy skill-building activities, and have improved and developed mastery of basic skills (Pegg et al., 2005; Perry & Howard, 2002). However, withdrawal programs often do not include applications for real-world contexts that enhance mathematical literacy (Dole, 2003). Dole argues that

application problems provide the motivation for students to learn basic skills, and students with learning difficulties need support to develop and communicate mathematically using multiple representations (e.g. see Clausen-May, 2005).

Stephens (2000) also criticises withdrawal programs as an intervention method, arguing that such programs remove the classroom teacher from the picture and hinder their ability to monitor students with learning difficulties and provide adequate follow-up and support during mainstream classes. He also claims that withdrawal programs undervalue the contribution that the classroom teacher can make in detecting and overcoming difficulties in the classroom. Another problem occurs when staff allocated the task of teaching students in these withdrawal programs are not appropriately trained or do not like teaching students with learning difficulties (Walshaw & Siber, 2005). It is surprising how often pre-service teachers are assigned the role of providing additional support or conducting intervention programs during practicum experience when it would be far more appropriate for the experienced teacher of mathematics to take on this role.

#### REVIEW AND REFLECT :

- Investigate an intervention program—for example:
  - *Counting On* [Department of Education and Training, New South Wales];
  - *QuickSmart* [SiMMER, University of New England];
  - another published intervention program;
  - an electronic tutorial program; or
  - an intervention program used by your school.
- For whom is this program designed? How are students selected for the program? How is the intervention program related to the mainstream mathematics class and program?
- Note the objectives, structure, content, materials and teaching approaches used in the program. Comment on the strengths and weaknesses of the program.
- Compile an annotated portfolio of resources that you could use with students with learning difficulties. The annotations could include reflection on your experience of trialing these resources.



### Teaching strategies for students with learning difficulties

Students with learning difficulties have traditionally been excluded from learning mathematics or had limited access to the domain of mathematics (Diezmann et al., 2004; Dole, 2003; A. Watson, 2006). Diezmann and colleagues (2004) argue that there has been a shift in approach from the medical model of diagnosis and remediation towards making the curriculum accessible to all by designing effective pedagogies.

The following ten teaching strategies have been useful for primary school-aged children with learning difficulties, and are equally appropriate for implementation with secondary students by teachers in heterogeneous classrooms (Steele, 2004).

- Use advance organisers about the purpose of the lesson.
- Provide additional review of prerequisite skills and knowledge needed.
- Prioritise frequent teaching and review of major concepts.
- Teach generalisations and applications to real-life situations.
- Model sequential procedures at a slow pace and with extra clues.
- Present new skills using concrete materials, then pictures, and finally abstract explanation.
- Provide additional practice in small steps with sufficient guidance.
- Ensure instructions are clear before starting independent practice.
- Teach students to keep track of their progress with charts and graphs.
- Check for error patterns when providing guidance.

When students experience difficulties in mathematics, teachers too often re-teach the whole process or procedure or do the exercise for them. This fails to help the student identify the exact point of difficulty and overcome the problem. Westwood (2003) stresses the importance of probing students' thinking when checking for errors, monitoring progress and providing feedback. He proposes the following four-point process:

1. Why did the student get this item wrong?
2. Can he or she carry out the process if allowed to use concrete aids or a computational tool?
3. Can he or she explain to me what to do?
4. Ask the student to work through the item step by step. At what point does the student misunderstand? (Westwood, 2003, p. 189)

Sullivan and colleagues (2006) stress the importance of anticipating potential difficulties that students may have with problem-solving tasks and open-ended questions. They found that successful teachers plan and use ‘enabling prompts’ in their classrooms. These prompts, prepared in advance by the teacher:

- reduce the required number of steps (e.g. make the problem simpler or provide a drawing);
- reduce the required number of variables (e.g. make the problem simpler);
- simplify the modes of representing results (e.g. provide a recording format);
- reduce the written elements in recording (e.g. provide alternative medium for recording);
- make the problem more concrete (e.g. provide materials or drawings of representations);
- reduce the size of the numbers involved;
- simplify the language; or
- reduce the physical demands of manipulatives (2006, pp. 502–3).

Westwood (2003) proposes that teachers use a mnemonic to assist students in problem-solving tasks (see Figure 15.3).

R = Read the problem carefully.

A = Attend to the key words that may suggest the process to use.

V = Visualise the problem, and perhaps make a sketch or diagram.

E = Estimate the possible answer.

Then:

C = Choose the numbers to use.

C = Calculate the answer.

C = Check the answer against your estimate.

*Source:* C. Westwood (2003, p. 200).

*Figure 15.3 The RAVE CCC mnemonic for problem-solving*

Watson's (2006) approach with low-achieving students is to prompt discussion of mathematical investigations to promote exemplification, symbolisation and structure. She provides the following examples of questions that she uses in the classroom:

'What is the same or different about . . .?' (encouraging learners to give attention to pattern and classification)

'Describe what happens in general.' (nudging learners through generalisation towards abstraction)

'Can you give me an example from your own experience . . .?' (prompting exemplification)

'Can you show me one which does not work?' (prompting counter-exemplification)

'Show me . . .' or 'Tell me . . .' (eliciting information about images and other aspects of their understanding)

'Can you show me this using a diagram/letters/numbers/graphs?' (prompting flexible use of representations)

'If this is an answer, what might the question be?' (shifting the focus on to structures rather than answers) (A. Watson, 2006, p. 109)

Ocean and Miller-Reilly (1997) propose a connected knowing model for teaching students with learning difficulties. Their model focuses on developing confidence, encouraging students to discuss their ideas, and providing first-hand experience through the use of materials. They recommend that teachers:

Discover and affirm what the student already knows, respect the students' existing ideas . . . ask students for explanations even when they are right, so that question-asking does not become synonymous with doubt, assume the students have reasons for their opinions and listen to them, and ask for details (p. 19).

The strategies that we have presented in this section will be effective not only for students with learning difficulties but also for the broad range of students in mainstream classrooms that we sometimes refer to as those ‘in the middle’.

## Students with mathematical talent

### *Defining and identifying students with mathematical talent*

Students who are capable of high-level performance in mathematics are described as ‘gifted’, ‘mathematically talented students’, ‘highly able students’, ‘promising students’ and students with ‘a mathematical cast of mind’ (Gagne, 2003, cited in Moss et al., 2005). Researchers have estimated that between 10 and 15 per cent of the student population is gifted (Gagne, 2003, in Moss et al., 2003). The Australian Senate Inquiry into the Education of Gifted and Talented Children reported that often teachers think the gifted or talented students are the high achievers, and they fail to identify gifted and talented students among the under-achievers, divergent thinkers, visual-spatial learners and children who mask their ability (Collins, 2001). It is important to realise that gifted or talented girls and boys have diverse cultural characteristics: they may live in a family of low socioeconomic status, be an Indigenous person, have a physical disability or live in a geographically isolated place.

Attempts to define ‘giftedness’ need to go beyond notions of general intellectual ability or specific academic aptitude. Mathematically talented students also demonstrate creative and divergent thinking skills, demonstrated through responses that display fluency (a large number of responses), flexibility (a variety of representations and the ability to readily change between these), originality (unusual or uncommon responses) and elaboration (embellishment or expansion of ideas). Additionally, they may display the following cognitive behaviours (Williams, 1993, cited in Moss et al., 2005):

- risk-taking—willingness to try different or difficult things;
- curiosity—ability to seek alternatives and study in depth;
- complexity—capacity to explore and discover;
- imagination—power to visualise or conceive symbolically.

In mathematics, these attributes are normally manifested through the approach to and strategies used on non-routine problems or modelling tasks (Neiderer & Irwin, 2001; Sriraman, 2003). Talented mathematics students take longer to orientate themselves to the problem and understand the problem situation than other students. They develop a plan that is more general. They use mathematical reasoning rather than the application of routine algorithms, draw on many strategies and, depending on the characteristics of the problem, will begin with simpler cases to control the variability, or systematically explore a large number of possibilities for open-ended problems. These students seek to form generalisations—that is, they look for similarities, structures and relationships by abstracting from the content of the problem. Studies have also shown that students with mathematical talent have strong spatial-visualisation skills (Diezmann et al., 2004).

### Assessment tools

Unfortunately, there is no readily available assessment tool that teachers can use to identify gifted or talented mathematics students. Routine mathematical problems and standard mathematics tests (such as the *Progressive Achievement Test in Mathematics*, Australian Council for Educational Research, 1997) do not enable students to display the creative and reasoning skills listed above, and teachers' assessments of students' mathematical talent have also been found to be unreliable (Neiderer et al., 2003). Assessment should include challenging problem-solving tasks and analysis of students' spatial ability (Diezmann et al., 2004).

The *Australian Mathematics Competition* (AMC, Australian Mathematics Trust) provides an opportunity for students from Years 3 to 12 to engage with a range of mathematical problems, including problems that are challenging for the most able students. Results from this competition indicate the suitability of curriculum content for students with different mathematical abilities. Leder (2006) analysed the results for the items that were common to papers for more than one secondary year level in the AMC. She was able to identify different types of problems. For one group of items, performance steadily improved over the secondary year levels, with most of the top 2 per cent of students already able to complete this problem in Year 7. A second group of items could be correctly solved by about half the top 2 per cent of students irrespective of the year level. An example of these two kinds of problems and a description of the level of thinking needed to solve these problems are shown in Table 15.1.

**Table 15.1** Items from the *Australian Mathematics Competition*

Category of item	Example item	Level of thinking required
Solved correctly by top 2 per cent of Year 7 students; performance by all students improved with higher grade level	Seven consecutive integers are listed. The sum of the smallest three is 33. What is the sum of the largest three? (A) 39; (B) 37; (C) 42; (D) 45	Sequential multi-step problem.
Solved by most of top 2 per cent of students irrespective of grade level; little improvement in performance by all students with higher grade level	A $3 \times 3$ square is divided into nine $1 \times 1$ unit squares. Different integers from 1 to 9 are written into these unit squares. Consider the pairs of numbers in squares sharing a common edge. What is the largest number of pairs where one number is a factor of the other number? (A) 7; (B) 8; (C) 9; (D) 10; (E) 12.	A lot of integration and synthesis of information required.

Source: Leder (2006).

Studies of the highest performing students in mathematics have consistently reported a gender difference in favour of males. One of the significant findings of Leder's (2006) study was that, in the *Australian Mathematics Competition*, boys outnumber girls three to one in the top 2 per cent of students. Explanations for gender differences in achievement were discussed in Chapter 13. Teachers need to ensure that they do not apply gender stereotyped attributes for 'high-achieving girls' and 'high-achieving boys' when assessing students to identify students with mathematical talent.

### *Teaching mathematically talented students*

[Gifted] children have special needs in the educational system; for many their needs are not met; and many suffer underachievement, boredom, frustration, and psychological distress as a result . . . The common belief that the gifted do not need special help because they will succeed anyway is contradicted by many studies of underachievement and demotivation among gifted children. (Collins, 2001, p. xiii)

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Complete the two problems in Table 15.1. Record all your thinking and working. Share your approach, strategies and solution with your peers. Compare your approaches with respect to the four phases of problem-solving:

- orientation (understanding the problem);
- organisation (setting goals and planning);
- execution (carrying out the plan); and
- verification (evaluating and reflecting on your solution).

Identify any instances of creative and divergent thinking (fluency, flexibility, etc.). To what extent were you able to generalise during the process of finding a solution to these problems?

In our community, there are negative attitudes about people who are talented or gifted mathematically, and unfortunately little attention is given to their needs (Collins, 2001; Diezmann, et al., 2004). Important for the development of mathematical talent is the provision of immediate and long-term extrinsic rewards, together with enjoyment when doing mathematics and support from teachers and the school (Csikszentmihalyi et al., 1997). Parents also play an important role as motivator, mathematics content adviser, resource provider, monitor and learning counsellor to their gifted and talented children (Bicknell, 2006).

In spite of the lack of attention to mathematically talented students, structured programs of various kinds have been designed and used to develop autonomy, self-reliance and social skills. These programs, organised by schools, mathematical organisations or education systems, include selective schools (such as the selective high schools in New South Wales), accelerated class groups of mathematically talented students within a comprehensive school (such as the *Students with High Intellectual Potential*, or *SHIP*, classes in South Australian secondary schools), enrichment programs typically involving part-time withdrawal from mainstream classes for gifted students, and a differentiated curriculum to cater for students with diverse learning needs in a heterogeneous mathematics class.

We consider enrichment and accelerated programs below in the context of provision for talented students, and differentiated curriculum later in the chapter when discussing responses to diversity.

### Enrichment programs

Enrichment programs often involve one-off activities, or a withdrawal program for a defined period of time, conducted by the school or mathematics associations at the local, state or national level. They include competitions, after-school and holiday programs, and mathematics camps or activities, often conducted in cooperation with university mathematics departments. In some cases, withdrawal programs for individuals or small groups of students are delivered online, especially to cater for gifted and talented students in isolated locations (e.g. see Clarke & Bana, 2001).

Some withdrawal enrichment programs have been criticised as time wasting and trivial, designed to occupy the highest achieving students while the rest of the class catches up (Collins, 2001). Enriching mathematical activities involving problem-solving and application are appropriate tasks for talented students, but these tasks should be part of the curriculum for all mathematics students, not just the gifted and talented. The Australian Senate Inquiry into the Education of Gifted and Talented Students concluded that ad hoc enrichment activities were insufficient, and that gifted and talented students needed a differentiated curriculum (Collins, 2001). Provided that they are emotionally and socially ready, these students also benefit from accelerated programs.

### Accelerated programs

Accelerated programs enable students to complete the required curriculum in a shorter time span—for example, they might complete the work normally covered in three years of the mathematics curriculum in only two years. Students in an accelerated class program work on a different curriculum, one or more years ahead of the students at the same age. Diezmann and colleagues (2004) acknowledge that there had been little research on the short-term and long-term effects of accelerated programs for students in Australasia. Students in the ‘top’ group, or an accelerated program, may simply be experiencing a mainstream curriculum of the next year level, rather than having their mathematical understanding and thinking challenged with higher order tasks.



The curriculum for talented students in accelerated programs (and other differentiated curriculum programs) should involve more advanced content, delivered at a faster rate, and activities that require higher order, abstract thinking and the connection of mathematical ideas in ways that would not normally be expected of students at that particular age level (Anthony et al., 2002; Diezmann et al., 2004; Landvogt et al., 2001; Moss et al., 2005). Challenging tasks involve complexity, and creative and critical thinking; they may also be open-ended and require group interaction and real-world deadlines for real-world problems and audiences. Suitable tasks involving mathematical reasoning, conjecture and verification or proof can be found in a variety of resources (e.g. Fisher, 1982; Holton, 1998; *Maths 300*).

### Teaching strategies for talented students

Teachers should not assume that gifted and talented students will enjoy all mathematics tasks and work productively in mathematics lessons. These students still need instruction, but it needs to move quickly without unwanted repetition. Nor should teachers suppose that gifted and talented students will want to collaborate with peers, because these students usually see no benefit in working with others on exercises or trivial and routine application problems. They are more likely to collaborate and use higher order thinking skills when working on challenging problems (Diezmann et al., 2004). However, higher order thinking does not come automatically, even among gifted students, and the use of mathematical argument to explain and justify a solution is often preceded by the use of more pragmatic reasoning, such as trial and error, and systematic reasoning, such as the organisation of information, data or strategy (Lee, 2005). Interaction with other students in a small-group setting is crucial for advancing to these sophisticated levels of mathematical thinking, and discussion with other students also provides an opportunity to understand why verification and proof are needed in mathematics. Teachers are responsible for helping all students develop the social skills required for collaboration, and this is especially relevant in the light of Barnes's (2000b) observation that some talented mathematics students do not have the language skills to take advantage of collaborative learning settings.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Investigate an enrichment or accelerated program for gifted and talented mathematics students—for example, the *Australian Mathematics Competition*, the *Young Australian Mathematical Challenge*, the *International Mathematics Olympiad*, the *Mathematics Talent Quest*, or other competition or program for talented students. [Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers, <[www.aamt.edu.au](http://www.aamt.edu.au)>, Australian Mathematics Trust, <[www.amt.canberra.edu.au](http://www.amt.canberra.edu.au)>]

- For whom is this program designed? How are students selected for the program? How is it related to the mainstream mathematics program?
- Note the objectives, structure, content, materials and teaching approaches used in the program. Comment on the strengths and weaknesses of the program for gifted and talented students.
- Compile an annotated portfolio of resources that you could use with gifted and talented students of mathematics. The annotations could include reflection on your experience of trialling these resources.

## Responding to the diverse needs of students

### *Streaming*

Some schools choose to respond to the diversity of students' mathematical achievement by implementing a streaming policy—that is, sorting students into mathematics class groups according to mathematics achievement. (Different terms are used to describe such policies in other countries—for example, 'setting' in the United Kingdom and 'tracking' in the United States.) Rarely do these policies provide for and enable students to move between groups once the groups have been set (Zevenbergen, 2001). Often the sorting of students in their first year of secondary schooling is based on the results of a single written mathematics test. Because a single 'snapshot' of student achievement using one instrument does not provide a complete picture of a student's understanding and achievement in mathematics, some students will be inappropriately allocated to groups.

Tate and Rousseau (2002) reviewed the use of streaming in the United States and found a wide achievement gap between students in the lowest and highest streams. This happens because teachers have different expectations—and therefore goals—for students in the high- and low-achieving groups, and consequently they offer different and more intellectually demanding learning experiences to the higher stream students while tending to set routine computational tasks for students in the lower stream. Hence streaming of students in this way is reinforcing, rather than removing, existing achievement differences between top and bottom streamed students (Bartholomew, 2003; A. Watson, 2006; Zevenbergen, 2001, 2003a).

Because streaming can deny low-achieving students access to a rich and challenging mathematics curriculum in the junior secondary years, they gain only limited experience of the mathematical content needed in a range of higher education and vocational education programs beyond secondary schooling. Accelerated programs for talented students, unless designed and conducted along the principles outlined above, may become just another form of streaming that excludes capable mathematics students from successfully completing the required curriculum for their year level, and from continuing participation and success in mathematics.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Research the policy and practice of streaming in a secondary school by scrutinising relevant school policy and planning documents [including the school website], observing lessons for students in different groups in the same year level, and interviewing the teachers.

*Policy and planning*

- What is the school's rationale for streaming?
- How does it work? What information does the school use to assign students to groups? What is the policy and practice about movement between groups?
- What is the curriculum for the different groups and what resources do they use?

*Lesson observation*

- Compare the content, teaching and learning activities, and student engagement and learning, in the different classes.

*Teacher interviews*

- What are the teachers' attitudes to streaming and expectations of their students?

### *Differentiated heterogeneous mathematics classrooms*




A heterogeneous classroom is more commonly known as a 'mixed' or 'mixed-ability' classroom, comprising students in the same age cohort and year level. A differentiated curriculum for a heterogeneous class has multiple learning programs and different approaches and activities for the students to meet their particular needs, interests and preferred ways of learning (Clausen-May, 2005; Moss et al., 2005; Tomlinson, 1999, 2003, 2005). Differentiated curriculum may include various pathways, perhaps involving choice of activities for students, different tasks or levels of depth and engagement for students, various models and representations for working with mathematical ideas, various tools for aiding mathematical work and learning, or various media for recording and reporting mathematical learning.

Teachers can use a number of models to develop and deliver differentiated curriculum (Moss et al., 2005):

- compacted curriculum for gifted and talented students;
- tiered instruction, in the form of a series of activities hierarchical in nature and complexity offered to students at the level appropriate for their needs;
- individual contracts, which involve students working independently on a program with defined targets and varying levels of guidance from the teacher;
- independent study or research projects, enabling students to develop independent learning and research skills;
- paired or small-group work, with students working together to investigate mathematical concepts and solve problems, and the teacher offering slower instruction and more guidance to the group of students with learning difficulties;
- negotiated curriculum, in which students participate in defining their topic, setting their challenge and determining the way they will present their work.

Figure 15.4 illustrates one secondary school's use of a tiered instruction model for a Year 7 mathematics topic. The number of stars represents the level of challenge. The teachers work as a team in an open plan area with all the Year 7 classes. Each lesson includes a ten-minute session of explicit teaching of a skill or concept for all students and independent, paired or small-group work. Teachers also conduct ten-minute clinics for small groups of students to consolidate or teach mathematical skills, individual and group learning skills, and information and communication technology skills (for example, there is a clinic on 'Choosing a

clinic that helps my learning’). The underlined tasks in the topic menu are compulsory for all students, and the teacher assists students to choose among the remaining tasks.

			
<b>Hands on/ games</b>	Polygon mobile construction p.39 ( <i>3D shapes</i> ) Taylors Lakes mapping ( <i>Coordinates/scale</i> ) Batty Lizards ( <i>Semi-regular tessellations</i> ) Numeracy game	<u>Exercise 2.04 qn 1–10</u> ( <i>3D shapes</i> ) <u>Exercise 11.05 qn 1–4</u> Taylors Lakes mapping ( <i>Coordinates/scale</i> ) Batty Lizards ( <i>Semi-regular tessellations</i> ) Numeracy game	Platonic Solids rich task page 49 ( <i>Polygons</i> ) Orienteering Adventure ( <i>Compass directions, coordinates, scale and distance</i> ) Taylors Lakes mapping ( <i>Coordinates /scale</i> ) Batty Lizard ( <i>Semi-regular tessellations</i> )
<b>ICT</b>	Plot plans and silhouettes ( <i>2D and 3D structures</i> ) What's the point ( <i>Coordinates</i> ) Planet Hop 1 ( <i>Coordinates</i> ) Building Houses ( <i>3D shapes</i> ) Tangrams	What's the point ( <i>Coordinates</i> ) Planet Hop 2 ( <i>Coordinates</i> ) Building Houses 4–7 ( <i>3D shapes</i> )	What's the point ( <i>Coordinates</i> ) Planet Hop 3 ( <i>Coordinates</i> ) Building Houses 8–10 ( <i>3D shapes</i> )
<b>Worksheet</b>	Describe that shape ( <i>3D shapes</i> ) Name that shape ( <i>3D shapes</i> )	Welcome to Springfield ( <i>Ratio/coordinates</i> ) Ratio Problems ( <i>Ratio</i> )	Ratio and Proportion—Difficult ratio problem. ( <i>Ratio</i> )
<b>Text tasks</b>	<u>Exercise 12.01 on 1–4</u> ( <i>Ratio</i> ) <u>Exercise 2.02 on 1</u> ( <i>2D shapes</i> )	<u>Exercise 12.01 on 5–7</u> ( <i>Ratio</i> ) <u>Exercise 12.02 on 1–4</u> ( <i>Proportion</i> ) <u>Exercise 12.06 1–3</u>	<u>Review Chapter 2 on 11–13</u> <u>Exercise 12.02 on 5–9</u> ( <i>Proportion</i> ) <u>Page 367 on 7</u> ( <i>Ratio</i> )
<b>Homework</b>	Summarise notes p.40 Shape Riddle Spelling Championship Puzzling Pantry Problem Who is Escher? Vocab Challenge		

Source: N. Claxton & J. Postema, Taylors Lakes Secondary College.

Figure 15.4 A tiered curriculum

In a mainstream classroom, students with diverse learning needs—at either end of the spectrum—may at first resist differentiated curriculum. The teacher needs to prepare all students, and to explain that the curriculum and expectations are designed to meet the needs of each student. For gifted and talented students, the principle of ‘different’, not ‘extra’, work should apply for small-group and individual work. Mentoring programs involving older students can be used to support differentiated classrooms, and staff resources committed to withdrawal and intervention programs can be redeployed to assist with classroom activities.

Studies of classroom organisation do not show that one form of classroom organisation is best for all. Rather, employing a range of organisational settings is most effective, since different arrangements will suit particular students at different stages of their learning or for specific mathematical tasks. The teacher’s role is important in each of these organisational settings. As Walshaw and Anthony (2006) explain, quality teaching provides a space for:

the individual, partnerships, small groups and whole class arrangements . . . [All] students need some time alone to think and work quietly away from the demands of a group . . . Teachers who make a difference to all learners work at establishing a web of relationships within the classroom community. They do this to encourage active participation, taking into account the different purposes of, and roles within, the particular social arrangements they establish for their students. Organisational structures are established with a view towards the potential of those arrangements in developing students’ mathematical competencies and identities and in providing other positive outcomes for students in particular contexts. But more significantly . . . the effective teacher constantly monitors, reflects upon, and makes necessary changes to, those arrangements on the basis of their inclusiveness and effectiveness for the classroom community (p. 533).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Plan a lesson or unit of work for a mathematics class that is known to you comprising students with diverse needs.

- Choose an appropriate model to engage and cater for their diverse needs.
- Explain how the lesson(s) and activities will engage all students in mathematical activity to improve skills, challenge their intellect, build knowledge, generate understanding and achieve success in mathematics.

## Conclusion

In Chapter 14, we presented a model of an equitable mathematics classroom. The principles and practices described there involved equal access, connected learning, collaborative methods, supportive environments, intellectual quality and respect for difference. In this chapter we have shown that these principles do not imply that all students do the same work. They should be used as guidelines to plan differentiated curriculum for teaching students with different learning needs.

## Recommended reading

**Anthony, G., Rawlins, P. & Winsley, J. (2002).** Accelerated learning in New Zealand secondary school mathematics. *Australasian Journal for Gifted Education*, 11(2), 11–17.

**Clausen-May, T. (2005).** *Teaching maths to pupils with different learning styles*. London: Paul Chapman Publishing.

**Collins, J. (Chair) (2001).** *The education of gifted and talented children*. Canberra: Commonwealth of Australia.

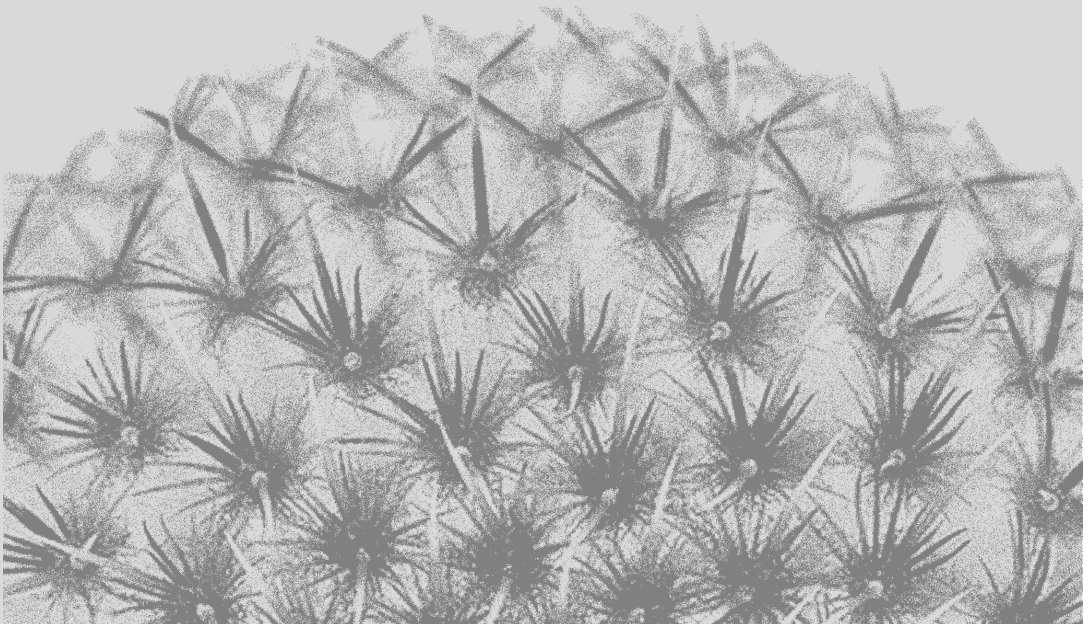
**Moss, M., Merrick, C., Targett, R., Chaffey, G., MacLeod, B. & Bailey, S. (2005).** *Gifted education professional development package*. Canberra: Department of Education, Science and Training, <[www.dest.gov.au/sectors/school\\_education/publications\\_resources/profiles/Gifted\\_Education\\_Professional\\_Development\\_Package.htm](http://www.dest.gov.au/sectors/school_education/publications_resources/profiles/Gifted_Education_Professional_Development_Package.htm)> (23 January 2007).

**Ocean, J. & Miller-Reilly, B. (1997).** Black holes and beginning teachers: A connected approach to teaching mathematics. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher* 53(4), 17–20.

**Watson, A. (2006).** *Raising achievement in secondary education*. Maidenhead: Open University Press.

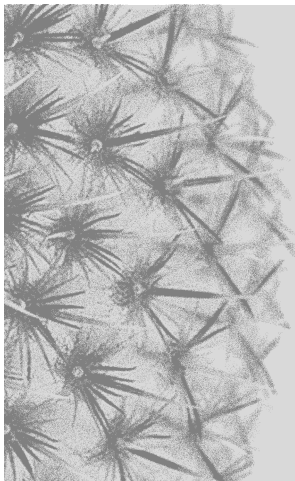
Part V

# **PROFESSIONAL AND COMMUNITY ENGAGEMENT**





This page intentionally left blank



## CHAPTER 16

### **Working with parents and communities**

Mathematics teachers who are doing their job well know that their responsibility extends beyond the mathematics classroom and the school to include interaction with other professionals, students' families and the community surrounding the school, and advocacy for mathematics and its learning in the wider community. This chapter looks more closely at the nature of educational partnerships between schools, parents and communities that support students' mathematics learning. We begin by examining parental and community attitudes towards mathematics, and ways in which mismatches between home and school cultures can create barriers to partnerships. Next we outline a theoretical framework for comparing school-centred, family-centred and community-centred perspectives on mathematics education partnerships, and explore its implications for extending the often-limited ways in which schools and teachers view their interactions with parents. The final part of the chapter offers some guidelines for working productively with parents and communities.

#### **Parental and community attitudes towards mathematics**

It often seems to teachers that parental and community attitudes towards mathematics are at odds with contemporary views about mathematics learning and effective teaching practices (such as those presented in this book), or that many parents are simply uninterested in becoming involved in their children's schooling.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Read the following pairs of quotes and discuss your immediate reaction with a peer or small group.

[A1] *School Principal:* Our parents here now still want these rows of algorithms and closed tasks and what we do here is catering for the differing abilities of our children . . . and we've had teachers very rudely spoken to by parents about 'Who designed these?'—it was a maths homework task to do with looking at snowfalls and look at the weather map you know, 'Who designed this—stupid! We want REAL maths, we want real maths.' (Goos et al., 2004)

[A2] *Parent:* I don't feel that [the teachers and administration are] always ready to listen to ideas that we might have . . . I think [it's] because they're trained, they've done their degrees and they know what they're doing about that kind of thing. Sometimes some of them feel that we're not qualified to offer that kind of advice. (Mills & Gale, 2004, p. 275)

\*\*\*\*\*

[B1] *Teacher:* The students come from families that really don't care about school. Most of them are dropouts themselves, so school has no place in their lives. Many of the kids will say that their parents hated school and were no good at maths, so they believe it is their gene pool. (Zevenbergen, 2003b, p. 141)

[B2] *Parent:* I don't know why [other parents don't get involved]. I don't know whether it's their own experience at [secondary] school was pretty horrible when they were kids, but they do seem to be a lot less willing to be involved in the [secondary] school than they are with the primary school. (Mills & Gale, 2004, p. 272)

\*\*\*\*\*

[C1] *Employer*: Young people do not seem to have the ability to calculate [mentally] things like we used to. They need to use a calculator to work out change when the cash register does not work. They do not know when the change they are giving is incorrect. (Zevenbergen, 2004, p. 108)

[C2] *Trainee draftsman*: The boss went ape at me the other day. He just bought this new computer software package and had it installed. I started playing with it and he told me I have to wait till the expert from the company came or I might crash the computer. As if! He has got no idea and the company is ripping him off as it is pretty basic. I had it going in no time. (Zevenbergen, 2004, p. 112)

According to the AAMT (2006) *Standards*, excellent teachers of mathematics are 'positive advocates for mathematics and its learning in the school and the wider community. They ensure effective interaction with families including provision of information about students' learning and progress.' How might such a teacher respond to the people who made the comments quoted above?

Cairney (2000) suggests that educators and parents (and, we might add, employers) need to go beyond the kind of deficit views of each other illustrated in the quotes provided above. He defines two types of deficit views in relationships between the school and the home. The first—the *family deficit view*—perceives the homes of children from diverse social and cultural backgrounds as providing limited learning environments and placing little value on education (quote B1). The second—the *educational inadequacy view*—suggests that differential achievements are largely due to the failure of school to develop students' skills (quotes A1, C1). Cairney argues that neither of these two explanations is helpful because deficit views fail to recognise that much of the variability in student achievement reflects discrepancies, not deficiencies, between school resources, teaching approaches and the cultural practices of the home.

## The roles of parents and communities in educational partnerships

When considering the nature of parents' involvement in their children's schooling, it is important for teachers to understand the variety of different family types and the major social changes affecting families and young people's home environments. Families are becoming more diverse in their composition, their ways of living and their cultural backgrounds (Australian Bureau of Statistics, 2000). Although the 'nuclear family', consisting of two biological parents and their children, is still the most common family model, a significant proportion of Australian children under eighteen live with only one of their natural parents, in step- or blended families, or in extended and same-sex parent families.

Funkhouser and Gonzales (1997) argue that developing effective partnerships with families requires a shift from policies and practices oriented to the typical (middle-class, monocultural, 'nuclear') family to those that are inclusive of greater social and cultural heterogeneity. The recognition of parental diversity can help overcome barriers to partnerships, such as the construction of 'good' and 'bad' parents (Crozier, 2000). Often this conception is based on the socioeconomic status of parents. Some people claim that low-income and single parents are uninterested in school and unsupportive of children's learning, which implies that the academic achievement of children is directly influenced by the socioeconomic status of the family. While low-income or single-parent status can create additional constraints on parental involvement, researchers who analysed parent participation policies found that poor parents and single mothers valued education as much as other parents (Reay, 1998). Further, the researchers suggest that it is too simplistic to blame low-income parents for not helping their children with homework. They point out that parents who have not had much formal education themselves, and those from non-English-speaking backgrounds, often do not know how to help with school work (McNamara et al., 2000; Pena, 2000).

Sarason (1995) argues that the present governance structures of schools can also limit the nature and scope of parental involvement. Parents are usually invited by schools only when it is necessary, and staff of some schools want parents to be involved only in specific ways and at times determined by the staff. In the United States, Peressini (1998) found that accepted roles for parents ranged from spectator to partner and from the deterrent to catalyst of mathematics education reforms. Immigrant parents—particularly those lacking

English language skills and social support networks—face real challenges in engaging with their children's schooling if they have limited understanding of the curriculum and organisation of schools in the host country and limited knowledge of the invisible structures of power embedded in school cultures (Pérez Carreón et al., 2005).

Communities can become involved in the education of children and young people by offering a wide range of resources that are valuable to schools and the families they serve. These resources include people who volunteer their time in the school, organisations that offer enrichment opportunities, businesses that offer career-related information and workplace experiences, and agencies that provide various social services for students and families. However, in any of these types of collaborations, teaching and learning must be a central focus, and community involvement must not be activated only when the students are in trouble (Epstein, 2001).

Communities are powerful learning environments, creating potential for young people's development as they engage in social practices with others. This approach to learning suggests that teachers need to understand their students' communities and acknowledge the learning that takes place there (Saxe, 2002). Drawing on communities' funds of knowledge can capitalise on the diverse cultures often found in mathematics classrooms, and overcome any mismatch between students' home environments and the culture of school (Peressini, 1997).

The *Values in Mathematics Project*, conducted by researchers at Monash University (Bishop, 2001; Fitzsimons et al., 2001) supports these ideas. These researchers have examined teachers' awareness of what values they teach in their mathematics instruction, how this teaching takes place and, perhaps most importantly, what values students are learning from their mathematics teachers. All mathematics teaching practices—planning curriculum, choosing textbooks, assigning homework, and so on—embed sociocultural values. Because mathematics teaching is a form of cultural induction, teachers must be aware of cultural difference in the classroom.

Not all students' cultural communities share the same values, and this has implications for how students and their families might respond to unfamiliar teaching practices. Wong and Veloo (2001) highlighted the potential for mismatches in cultural values when they examined how national ideologies have been incorporated into school curricula in Brunei, Malaysia and Singapore. In these countries, respect for authority and for one's elders

contributes to social cohesion, and teachers are traditionally held in high esteem. A strongly hierarchical social structure places the teacher in an authoritative position, so it is not surprising to find that whole-class teaching is common, with students sitting in neat rows paying careful attention to the teacher's explanations at the blackboard. Given these differences in cultural norms, teachers in Australian classrooms must be sensitive to values they teach in a class in which some students do not share the mainstream culture. Such students may feel uncomfortable—for example, in explaining their ideas to others. Thus the classroom approach should focus on the notion of difference, rather than deficit, in learning.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** List any examples of parent and community participation in students' mathematics education you observed during your practice teaching, or experienced during your own schooling. What roles were parents and community members or organisations expected to play? Who initiated these interactions or relationships? What value did the students, parents and communities gain from these interactions? What barriers to partnerships were evident? Discuss and compare your experiences with a peer or in a small group. If you have few or no experiences of parent or community participation to share, consider why this may be so.

## Why are partnerships important for mathematics education?

The arguments presented above may well apply to teaching in all school subjects, not just mathematics. However, there are good reasons why mathematics teachers in particular need to be aware of issues affecting parent and community participation in the mathematical education of young people.

Many adults have developed negative attitudes towards mathematics as a result of their experiences at school (Ewing, 2004), and this in turn can have a detrimental effect on their children's attitudes (Horne, 1998).

Because of recent changes in mathematics curricula, teaching methods, and assessment, many parents are unfamiliar with current classroom practices (e.g. emphasising collaborative groupwork, use of manipulatives and technology), and may question or criticise the approaches taken by the teacher (Peressini, 1998).

Common perceptions of mathematics as consisting only of number and computation can lead to distorted views about which aspects of mathematics are important in the workplace, often expressed as criticism about the use of calculators eroding mental computation abilities (Zevenbergen, 2004).

Families from different cultural backgrounds may have expectations regarding mathematical content, teaching and assessment methods that differ from those now common in Australian classrooms, and these parents may be accustomed to playing different roles in supporting their children's mathematics learning in the home setting (Cai, 2003).

Another important reason why mathematics teachers need to engage with parents and community members relates to the current emphasis on numeracy education in Australia. Numeracy has become a high priority for national and state/territory governments, and policies formulated to address this area typically capitalise on the need to build partnerships with homes and communities to support numeracy learning (e.g. DETYA, 2000a, 2000b). This position on partnerships is consistent with the definition of numeracy proposed by leading Australian mathematics educators: 'to be numerate is to use mathematics effectively to meet the general demands of life at *home*, in paid *work*, and for participation in *community and civic life*' (DEETYA, 1997, p. 15, emphasis added). Such an approach to numeracy implies that it is the responsibility of all members of society—schools, families and communities—to ensure that young people gain not only mathematical knowledge and skills, but also a repertoire of problem-solving and decision-making strategies needed for intelligent citizenship in a rapidly changing world.

However, while government policies aim to encourage schools to develop partnerships with families and communities in their local educational contexts, there are often discrepancies between the rhetoric of policy documents and the practice of family and community involvement in education. For example, a recent national research project investigating home-school-community partnerships that support primary school children's numeracy development found only limited evidence of parents and communities taking a leading role in shaping numeracy education partnerships (Goos, 2004a). It was also clear that most participants in the study held a narrow view of numeracy as school mathematics or 'number' learning, and this meant that the rich variety of numeracy learning opportunities in everyday (non-school) settings often remained invisible to teachers, parents and community members. Nevertheless, one significant and consistent finding from this project



concerned the central role of teachers in either enabling or hindering the formation of partnerships. To develop good relationships with students' parents and communities, it is vital for teachers to have a clear understanding of the nature of 'partnerships' and how the participants view their roles.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Search the website of your state or territory's Education Department for information and policies on *partnerships* or *networks* involving *parents* and *communities*. In discussion with peers, decide how well you think this information:

- addresses the importance of positive attitudes towards mathematics;
- explains current mathematics teaching and assessment practices;
- presents a broad view of mathematics that extends beyond number and calculation;
- acknowledges the diverse cultural backgrounds and educational experiences of Australian families.

## Stakeholder perspectives on partnerships

Epstein (1995) defines home–school–community partnerships as exemplifying a relationship between 'three major contexts in which students live and grow' (1995, p. 702). In Figure 16.1 we have represented this relationship as a network with student learning at its centre. We will use this model to analyse different kinds of activities described in the literature on home, school and community connections, to investigate these activities in practice, and to consider how teachers and schools might use these ideas to improve relations with parents and communities.

Some activities take place at the school and represent a typical vision of parental involvement from the perspective of the school (parental attendance at school open days, parent–teacher conferences, and so on). Other activities take place in the home and can represent either parents' response to school initiatives (such as checking that homework is done) or their response to the demands of larger social practices and cultural values

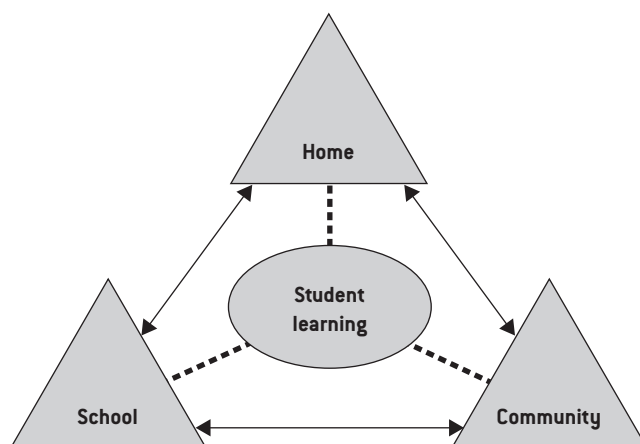


Figure 16.1 Network model for home–school–community partnerships

(e.g. involvement driven by parent aspirations for a child’s education and well-being). Yet other activities represent community-centred connections between home and school, ranging from informal ties to formal partnerships (e.g. sponsorship of mathematics competitions, provision of work experience placements). Therefore, we can classify these links as being school-centred, home-centred or community-centred according to the different perspectives of the stakeholders (Goos, 2004a; Goos et al., 2004).

### *School-centred perspectives on partnerships*

Epstein (1995) has defined six dimensions of home–school partnerships: parenting, communicating, volunteering, learning at home, decision-making and collaborating with the community.

*Parenting* refers to the support provided to families to develop parenting skills that prepare children for school and to build positive home conditions that support learning. This type of involvement is most often outside the classroom teacher’s realm and is usually not a component of a mathematics teacher’s parent-involvement strategies unless the focus is specifically on creating supportive environments for doing homework in mathematics.

*Communicating* involves establishing effective forms of interaction between school and home. This type of connection is perhaps the most common way in which teachers have

traditionally involved families of students in education, and is especially needed in situations when parents feel uncomfortable in school, do not speak English well or come from different cultural backgrounds from teachers. Teachers can set up effective communication with parents by publishing mathematics newsletters, establishing networks of families to share information about their children's mathematics education, organising back-to-school nights at the start of the school year, offering formal and informal teacher–parent conferences and workshops, sending home mathematics portfolios, and telephoning or visiting families regularly to understand the cultural background and experiences of students and families (Barber et al., 2000; Miedel & Reynolds, 1999).

The most common way of communicating with students' parents and families is via telephone. Teachers often dread phoning home because it means telling parents about problems with their child's academic work, classroom behaviour or attendance. To initiate positive relationships with parents, it is better to take a proactive approach by calling parents *before* problems arise. One beginning teacher of mathematics described how she developed an index card system to keep track of these telephone calls (Brader-Araje, 2004). This systematic approach proved to be useful for several reasons. First, it provided evidence to address problems in meetings with parents and the school administration. Second, telephone calls often headed off potential problems because the teacher was able to discuss concerns before they escalated. Finally, the system ensured that parents received positive feedback about their child's successes, and demonstrated to them that the teacher genuinely cared about all of her students.

*Volunteering* expresses parents' and families' support for school programs by working with students on learning activities in classrooms, and participating in other activities outside the classroom or outside the school. While encouraging parents to become active in the mathematics classroom is a powerful way of helping them understand the changes in their children's mathematics education, this type of participation is probably more common in primary than secondary schools. Nevertheless, parents can be encouraged to volunteer their time and expertise in many other ways, such as through acting as guest speakers about their jobs and career opportunities in mathematics, excursion chaperones, and tutors or mentors to students.

*Learning at home* can involve parents in monitoring and assisting their children with homework and other mathematical activities, and this might be the most common way

that parents expect to be involved in mathematics education. However, as mathematical content and pedagogy continue to develop and change, parents may find themselves on unfamiliar ground when they attempt to work with their children on school mathematics tasks. Organising and offering activities that are meant to be completed by both the parent and the student can make parents' efforts to be involved at home more productive (Ehnebuske, 1998).

*Decision-making* refers to parents' participation in school decisions and advocacy activities through curriculum committees, school councils and Parents' and Citizens' (P&C) associations (Horne, 1998). Involvement in decision-making is viewed by many to be the most empowering and productive type of parental involvement; however, it is also the most challenging type to organise and implement. This situation is particularly true for mathematics education because the mathematics community has made great efforts to enhance its professional status, and parental involvement in decision-making activities may be perceived as challenging the professional position of mathematics teachers and educators. Nevertheless, Horne argues, 'the involvement of parents in these roles can mean that the school becomes more responsive to the needs and culture of the local community' (1998, p. 117). This is especially important for Indigenous communities, where cultural negotiation can make explicit the hidden values and processes of the school while at the same time valuing the community's knowledge and the goals it holds for its children (Meaney & Fairhall, 2003).

*Collaborating with the community* reflects the increasing interest of many schools in making connections with local businesses, higher education institutions and community-based agencies. For example, schools might solicit financial or material support from the business community to provide computers, mathematics software, calculators, manipulatives and other materials for hands-on activities. Schools can also be involved in raising community awareness of the importance of all students developing numeracy abilities by participating in National Literacy and Numeracy Week or mathematics carnivals and Olympiades in which students showcase their achievements and demonstrate mathematics projects and activities. Schools can approach local universities to become involved in such events by providing intellectual and material support for teachers of mathematics, or by working directly with students on enrichment activities.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :**

- Parents often ask how they can help their children with mathematics at home. It is not necessary for parents to be expert in the mathematical content being taught; instead, the best way they can help is by asking leading questions that build students' confidence and encourage mathematical thinking and communication. Design a handout to distribute to parents at the beginning of the school year, or at the first parent–teacher evening, with suggestions on how to help their child with mathematics learning at home. Include sample questions they could ask to help their child get started on a problem, represent and organise the information, deal with obstacles when they are 'stuck', and reflect on their solution. (See Mirra, 2004 for examples.)
- Work with a group of colleagues to design a mathematics newsletter to send home to parents of classes you teach. You could include items such as a description of topics the classes have been studying, together with information about their historical development or relevance to everyday life or careers; examples of the types of mathematical activities and problems that students have worked on in different subjects and year levels; simple projects or data collection activities that students and their families could work on together; information about mathematics competitions or other extra-curricular activities; and articles that explain the philosophy of the classroom (e.g. use of calculators or groupwork).
- Search the internet to find mathematics activities offered through National Literacy and Numeracy Week (<[www.literacyandnumeracy.gov.au](http://www.literacyandnumeracy.gov.au)>). Design a week of school-based activities that develop family and community awareness of the importance of numeracy.

*Family-centred perspectives on partnerships*

We can also ask how families see their roles in connecting with schools and communities to support their children's mathematics education. Although there has been much less work undertaken from this family-centred perspective, we can identify the following six categories:

- creating supportive learning environments at home;
- parental support for the child;
- parents as role models for the value of education;
- home practices that support numeracy development;
- parent-directed activities that connect children to out-of-school opportunities for numeracy development;
- parent–child discussions and interactions about school-related issues and activities (James et al., 2001; Jordan et al., 2001; Y. Katz, 2000).

*Creating supportive learning environments at home* includes the supervision and structure that parents give children to support their education—for example, by providing time and space for homework and limiting the time spent watching television and playing computer games.

*Parental support for the child* includes emotional and academic support, and the expression of parental aspirations and expectations regarding a child's current school performance. Research in this area shows that parents' educational aspirations are stable, high and certain over the pre-primary and primary years of schooling, but expectations can become lower, less stable and subject to considerably more uncertainty by the start of secondary school.

*Parents as role models for the value of education* refers to ways in which parents can model why school is important and share their own experiences that reinforce the value of education. Literature that describes this dimension of family involvement in children's education is rich in examples of the traditional (middle-class) mediation of educational values. It also shows that the vast majority of marginalised families fall into the 'uninvolved' category, and hence parents are represented as uncaring and as failing to provide a positive model for their children. Current research into practices of disadvantaged families illustrates that parents often engage in activities that are outside conventional understanding of involvement. For example, they may show the value of education to their children through the medium of hard work, thus teaching 'real-life' lessons that such work is both difficult and without adequate compensation and that without education they may end up working in a similar type of job (Lopez, 2001).

*Home practices that support numeracy development* refer to such activities as parents doing problem-solving tasks and engaging in mathematical games. Studies in this area typically highlight the role that parents play in their children's early numeracy and literacy learning prior to school entry and in the primary school years, and less attention has been given to

the numeracy learning opportunities available for secondary school-aged children in the everyday activities of families and communities (such as budgeting, shopping, scheduling, playing sport, travelling, measuring or building things).

*Parent-directed activities that connect children to out-of-school opportunities for numeracy development* may involve private tutoring, enrolment in different enrichment programs run by after-school and church organisations, museums and libraries, and community schools that teach migrant children about their home culture and language. Studies show that parents with higher levels of education (and predominantly mothers) are more likely to initiate these kinds of connections.

*Parent-child discussions and interactions* about school-related issues and activities involve parents in asking their children what mathematics they learned in school that day. Very often this kind of discussion drives parental activism with regard to their involvement in school policies, representing and advocating for the interests and needs of their children. Interesting cultural differences have been found in the ways that parents interact with their children about their mathematics learning at school—for example, Lapointe and colleagues (1992) note that Chinese parents are more likely than US parents to ask their children about their mathematics classes than to help them with homework, while the reverse is true for US parents.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** As part of the Australian government's Numeracy Research and Development Initiative, the Western Australian Department of Education and Murdoch University were engaged to develop a poster and three brochures aimed at promoting the importance of numeracy to parents. Brochures titled 'Numeracy: families working it out together, the opportunities are everywhere' were produced to illustrate numeracy learning opportunities for families with children in the early, middle, and later primary years.

- Download the brochures from either <[www.dest.gov.au/sectors/school\\_education/publications\\_resources](http://www.dest.gov.au/sectors/school_education/publications_resources)> or <[www.gu.edu.au/school/cls/clearinghouse](http://www.gu.edu.au/school/cls/clearinghouse)>. Design a corresponding brochure for families of lower secondary students or a poster that could be displayed in classrooms.
- Find out about mathematics enrichment programs in your local area run by after-school organisations, museums and libraries, and community schools.

### *Community-centred perspectives on partnerships*

Analysing numeracy learning in communities is very complex because of the multiple communities (social, cultural, religious, economic) in which a young person may participate. The literature in this area suggests the following ways in which communities may form educational partnerships with schools and families (Jordan et al., 2001; Keith, 1999):

- community-driven school reform and curricular enrichment efforts;
- business–school partnerships;
- university–school partnerships;
- community service learning programs;
- after-school programs;
- more extended programs that target family numeracy.

*Community-driven school reform and curricular enrichment efforts* use community resources to overcome the view of the school as the sole transmitter of knowledge. Horne (1998) illustrates this dimension of community–school connections in schools where Mathematics Task Centres operate, involving parents and community members as mathematics tutors.

*Business–school partnerships* may provide schools with resources, expertise and volunteers. Peressini (1998) argues that resources provided to schools should not be limited to financial help only—for example, local businesses can supply teachers with such resources as restaurant menus and grocery flyers to develop classroom mathematics tasks in lifelike contexts. Organisations may also establish partnerships with schools so that students can spend a day at the particular business and observe how mathematics is applied in the real world.

*University–school partnerships* may provide expertise, resources and professional development to schools while schools participate in research studies or other collaborative projects. These partnerships can serve as a catalyst for mathematics educational reform where resources and expertise for change are lacking.

*Community service learning programs* link academic content with activities that allow students to contribute to the well-being of the community. Through service learning, the community enriches the students' education by providing real-world learning opportunities outside the classroom; simultaneously, the students and school contribute to the community as they perform needed service for individuals, organisations and wider community purposes.



*After-school programs* provide help with homework, or remedial and enrichment learning activities. Many community after-school programs also fulfil parents' needs for childcare and other social services.

*More extended programs that target family numeracy* are exemplified by the Family Mathematics Program, which originated in the United States but also flourished in Australia (Horne, 1998). These programs place parents and their children together in workshops with stimulating joint activities to learn and use at home. Trainers include other parents, school personnel and volunteers from community organisations. Studies show that most parents who have participated in Family Maths Programs engage in more learning activities at home with their children, and that more student participants enjoy mathematics classes. Schools, too, have changed their approach to communication with parents after being involved in offering such programs. The fact that these programs are more common in primary than secondary schools suggests that teachers may see less need to involve parents in mathematics education as their children get older and begin to study more specialised mathematical topics.

## **How can families and communities contribute to young people's mathematics education?**

The Australian Education Council (1993a) has published guidelines for parents and the community explaining why mathematics is important and why school mathematics is changing. These guidelines also describe the active role that families can take in their children's mathematics education by:

- encouraging their children to talk about what they are doing in mathematics at school;
- listening carefully and with interest to the explanations of their children about mathematics;
- reassuring and encouraging their children when they face difficulties;
- taking opportunities to practise leisure mathematics learning in the home and the community (for example, playing games requiring strategies);
- engaging children in discussions about the useful aspects of mathematics at home and at work;

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :**

- Search the internet for information about the Family Maths Program and sample activities families can work on together. Browse the National Council of Teachers of Mathematics *Figure This!* website, which offers mathematical challenges for families of middle years students [[www.figurethis.org](http://www.figurethis.org)].
- Find out what kind of involvement local businesses and community organisations have in providing resources or expertise to your school's mathematics department, or work/service placements for mathematics students. What benefits do the teachers, students, and businesses and community organisations see in these arrangements?
- Investigate the role of Homework Centres in providing after-school support for Australian Indigenous students and Pacific Island students in New Zealand.

Refer to the Whole of School Intervention Strategy supported by the Department of Education, Science and Training [[www.dest.gov.au/sectors/indigenous\\_education/programmes\\_funding/whole\\_of\\_school\\_intervention\\_strategy.htm](http://www.dest.gov.au/sectors/indigenous_education/programmes_funding/whole_of_school_intervention_strategy.htm)] and the Pacific Islands School Community Parent Liaison Project Case Study [[www.minedu.govt.nz/index.cfm?layout=document&documentid=10720&indexid=6191&indexparentid=5871#P23\\_240](http://www.minedu.govt.nz/index.cfm?layout=document&documentid=10720&indexid=6191&indexparentid=5871#P23_240)].

- talking to their teachers about their child's progress in mathematical development and recognising what is a reasonable expectation of their performance;
- participating in school-based family mathematics evenings;
- seeking information about the school's mathematics curriculum (1993a, pp. 12–13).

Members of the broader community can also enhance the learning of mathematics in schools by:

- talking about how mathematics is used in their particular fields;
- being involved in discussions about the school curriculum;

- being prepared to have an active role within the school (for example, talking and working with groups of students both at the school and outside school, or helping to devise materials and activities that have a local application);
- participating in work experience programs, community placements and other outside-school experience programs for students;
- explaining, discussing and providing training in areas which have specialised mathematical needs;
- becoming informed about specific mathematics problems and school practices;
- developing informed expectations of individual students' capacities (1993a, p. 13).

## Conclusion

When teachers and schools work with families and communities to enhance young people's mathematics learning, we would warn against inferring that the term *partnership* implies there should be similar contributions from, and roles for, all participants. This is especially important when considering the roles of parents and teachers in educational partnerships. While research has found plenty of evidence that parents genuinely care about their children's education, it is equally clear that not all parents want to be actively involved in all aspects of schooling, and many see their role primarily as a supportive one. Perhaps the most productive way forward is to focus on what each participant—parent, teacher, community member—can bring to the partnership that will make best use of their diverse expertise, backgrounds and interests in supporting students' learning.

## Recommended reading

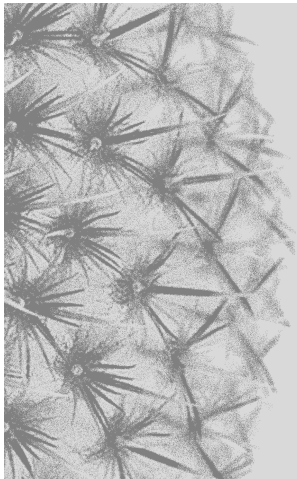
**Horne, M. (1998).** Linking parents and school mathematics. In N. Ellerton (ed.), *Issues in mathematics education: A contemporary perspective* (pp. 115–35). Perth: Mathematics, Science and Technology Education Centre, Edith Cowan University.

**Meaney, T. & Fairhall, U. (2003).** Tensions and possibilities: Indigenous parents doing mathematics curriculum development. In L. Bragg, C. Campbell, G. Herbert & J. Mousley (eds), *Mathematics education research: Innovation, networking, opportunity* (Proceedings of the 26th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 507–14). Sydney: MERGA.

**Mirra, A. (ed.) (2004).** *A family's guide: Fostering your child's success in school mathematics*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

**Peressini, D. (1997).** Parental involvement in the reform of mathematics education. *Mathematics Teacher*, 90(6), 421–7.

**Wong, K.Y. & Veloo, P. (2001).** Situated sociocultural mathematics education: Vignettes from southeast Asian practices. In B. Atweh, H. Forgasz & B. Nebres (eds), *Sociocultural research on mathematics education* (pp. 113–34). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.



## CHAPTER 17

### Continuing professional learning

The idea of lifelong learning is highly relevant to teachers' professional lives. Graduation from a pre-service teacher education program is an important moment in your teaching career, but this does not mark the end of professional growth as a teacher. Qualified professionals are expected to take responsibility for their own *continuing* development as mathematics teachers. This requires a shift in the common view of professional development from a one-shot, short-term experience towards a commitment to long-term, incremental improvement. In this chapter, we discuss approaches to career-long professional learning and development that bring together critical self-reflection and collaborative interaction with others. These approaches are interpreted in the context of beginning teachers' professional socialisation and development of a professional identity. We also explore the professional standards framework developed by the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers to consider issues involved in planning for continuing professional learning.

#### Dimensions of professional practice

A significant concern in contemporary professional development programs is the need to foster teachers' reflection on their practice so they continue to learn about themselves as teachers and their students as learners. However, professional development activities can do more than promote the growth of individual teachers' knowledge about their practice by also encouraging collegiality amongst groups of teachers within and beyond their schools. For example, in telling the story of a mathematics teacher and her struggle for professional

growth throughout her career, Krainer (2001) comments on the transition of the group of teachers with whom she worked ‘from an *assembly of lone fighters* to a *network of critical friends*’ (2001, p. 287, original emphasis). This change highlights what Krainer refers to as the four dimensions of teachers’ professional practice: action, reflection, autonomy and networking. While each of these dimensions is important, he explains that it is necessary to achieve a balance between *action and reflection*, and also between *autonomy and networking*. Krainer claims that the practice of most teachers and schools does not achieve this balance: there is a lot of action and autonomy (hence the ‘lone fighters’), and not much reflection and networking (as in ‘critical friends’). Thus promoting the latter practices represents a powerful intervention strategy for the further development of teachers. In the following sections, we discuss the meanings of ‘reflection’ and ‘networking’, and consider how mathematics teachers can become reflective individuals within a networked professional community.

## Becoming a reflective teacher of mathematics

Pre-service teachers are routinely urged to ‘reflect’ on their lessons, but what does this really mean? Artzt and Armour-Thomas (2002) describe reflection as thinking about teaching before, during and after enactment of a lesson. Because the purpose of reflection is to evaluate the effectiveness of one’s teaching in order to bring about improvement, it is important that reflection involves analysis rather than description, and uses information from a variety of sources instead of relying only on introspection. Sources of data for reflection include the teacher’s own self-analysis of lessons, comments made by students and feedback from colleagues.

### *Self-analysis of lessons*

In Chapter 2, we presented a classroom scenario involving Damien, a pre-service teacher, and his Year 10 mathematics class. Damien’s post-lesson debriefing notes—the reflections he recorded during an interview with his university supervisor—illustrate a framework for self-analysis of lessons. The prompt for self-analysis was a *reflection card* similar to that shown in Figure 17.1. The rows correspond to important lesson features for the students in the classroom: engagement and involvement; learning processes; progress made during the lesson; and the social context in which they learned. The columns refer to a selected set of

lesson features of importance to a pre-service or beginning teacher: expectations and actions concerned with teaching approaches; and student actions that the teacher noticed during the lesson as a form of immediate feedback. The reflection card was designed for use in a research project where a mentor, such as a university supervisor or supervising teacher, elicited the pre-service teacher’s reflections in each of the cells (Goos, 1999). However, the reflection card can also be used independently for lesson self-analysis. This is not a strategy that needs to be applied to every lesson taught. Instead, it may be helpful to either decide on a regular schedule for reflection on lessons (e.g. once per fortnight) or select a sequence of lessons with a particular class that might present specific challenges.

Student learning	Lesson features		
	Teacher expectations	Teacher actions	Student actions
<i>Engagement and involvement</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• attitude to learning</li></ul>			
<i>Learning process</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• how students learn</li></ul>			
<i>Progress</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• how well students learn</li></ul>			
<i>Social context</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• social environment for learning</li></ul>			

Figure 17.1 Reflection card

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** *Before a lesson*, record your *expectations* in the first column of the reflection card by responding to the following questions (adapted from Artzt & Armour-Thomas, 2002):

*Engagement and involvement*

What do you know about your students in terms of their prior knowledge, achievements and experiences, attitudes and interests? How will you use your knowledge of students to engage them in the lesson?

### *Learning process*

What pedagogical approaches might be suitable for this topic and this class? How have you decided which approach to use? What resources and modes of representation (symbols, diagrams, manipulatives, technology) have you considered? What forms of teacher–student and student–student interaction have you planned?

### *Progress*

What do you know about the mathematical content of the lesson? What is the level of difficulty? How should tasks be sequenced? How does the content connect with the mathematics students have already learned and with content to be taught in future? What difficulties do you anticipate the students might have and how have you prepared for these?

### *Social context*

How will you establish a positive social and intellectual climate? What administrative and organisational routines will be important in this lesson?

*After the lesson*, record the *actions* you took to ensure students were engaged in the lesson (*engagement and involvement*), to help them learn in the ways you envisaged (*learning process*), to help them achieve the progress you wanted (*progress*), and to establish a productive learning environment (*social context*).

Also record the *student actions* you observed in each of these areas. That is, how did you know that the students were (or were not) engaged, that they were (or were not) learning in the ways you had expected, that they were (or were not) making the progress you anticipated, that the learning environment was (or was not) as you desired?

Your self-analysis concludes by answering the following questions:

- Do you think your expectations for this lesson were appropriate? Why/why not?
- Do you think that your actions were consistent with your expectations? Why/why not? If not, what could you have done differently?
- What actions do you plan on taking in future lessons as a result of your reflection?



*Feedback from students*

Students can also provide valuable feedback on the effectiveness of your teaching. Good teachers monitor their students for informal feedback during lessons, such as by noticing students' level of interest and understanding, and adjust their teaching actions accordingly. More formal feedback can also be obtained from students through the use of surveys or questionnaires.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Close to the end of his first semester of secondary mathematics teaching, a beginning teacher emailed fellow graduates with the following request:

I want to get some feedback from my students about how they perceive my teaching strengths and weaknesses. Does anyone have a questionnaire that they have used or can you suggest some questions that I could ask?

What advice would you give him? What questions would you suggest he ask his students? Why do you suggest these questions?

One of the authors of this book recalls seeking feedback from a class by designing a survey based on the needs students expressed in the first lesson of the year. In this lesson, the teacher wanted to establish her expectations of students, but decided first to ask them what they needed from her in order to develop the idea that teacher–student relationships should be based on mutual respect and involve mutual obligations. She asked students to complete the sentence 'I need a teacher who . . .' Their responses included:

- explains things simply;
- I can get along well with;
- treats me like a human being;
- helps when needed;
- is understanding;
- I can have a joke with;
- makes class interesting and fun;
- teaches!

- is encouraging;
- tolerates 'dumb' questions;
- allows students to help each other.

The teacher recorded these responses because they corresponded closely to her own personal goals, and at the end of Term 1 she administered a survey that asked students to rate the extent to which she had demonstrated these qualities, using a five-point scale ranging from 'Never' to 'Always'. Not surprisingly, students were impressed that the teacher had taken their opinions seriously and had tried to meet their expectations.

Teachers can also seek regular written feedback from students to help identify difficulties they may be experiencing, and thus plan more effective methods of instruction. The IMPACT procedure (Clarke, 1988) provides a way of discovering students' concerns and opinions by administering a simple questionnaire during class (see Figure 17.2). Administration should be regular (e.g. once per fortnight), and students' responses can be stored in a class folder in order to identify trends. Teachers have found this procedure very useful, but its success depends on respecting the confidentiality of student responses and acting on these responses where appropriate to improve students' experiences of learning mathematics.

	Name: .....
	Class: .....
	Teacher: .....
	Date: .....

Write down the two most important things you have learnt in maths during the past month.

Write down at least one sort of problem which you have continued to find difficult.

What would you most like more help with?

How do you feel in maths classes at the moment? (Circle the words that apply to you.)

a) Interested	b) Relaxed	c) Worried
d) Successful	e) Confused	f) Clever
g) Happy	h) Bored	i) Rushed

j) Write down one word of your own .....

What is the biggest worry affecting your work in maths at the moment?

How could we improve maths classes?

*Figure 17.2 The IMPACT procedure*

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Below are some sample student responses using the IMPACT procedure.

- *What is the biggest worry affecting your work in maths at the moment?*  
Homework, because at home hardly anyone knows what to do because it is just as new to them as it is to me.
- *Write down at least one sort of problem which you have continued to find difficult.*  
Algebra a bit, because I don't understand why we don't just use numbers. It would be simpler.
- *How do you feel in maths classes at the moment?*  
Bored. Angry. (If you're wondering why I'm angry, it's because I don't like being bored.)
- *How could we improve maths classes?*  
By using some other method of learning instead of these boring textbooks.  
Have less work and more learning.

What information do these comments provide about the students' concerns and classroom learning experiences? If you were the teacher, what actions would you take to follow up on these comments?

### *Feedback from colleagues*

Beginning teachers of mathematics and other teachers who lack formal qualifications in mathematics education often find it helpful to work with a mentor—a trusted colleague who is willing to observe lessons and to be observed in his or her classroom, to share resources, and to help less experienced teachers to develop their own teaching style (Zagorski, 2004). Observing lessons taught by others remains a powerful way to learn about teaching throughout your career. The relationship between observer and observed need not be hierarchical (e.g. expert and novice), and teachers who are equally experienced but still consider themselves learners will benefit from mutual observations and sharing of practice (Tanner & Jones, 2000).

In preparing to be observed, it is important to be specific about the kind of feedback desired for the particular lesson and how this feedback can contribute to achieving longer term goals for improving practice. The reflection card shown in Figure 17.1 and the reflective questions that accompany it can help the beginning teacher identify lesson objectives, pedagogical strategies and anticipated problems, and can also provide a focus for post-lesson discussion with the mentor. This discussion could explore options for developing specific teaching strategies or for finding solutions to problems experienced with a particular group of students.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Zagorski (2004, p. 6) lists the following qualities to look for in a mentor:

- a knowledgeable teacher who is committed to the profession;
- a teacher who has a positive attitude toward the school, colleagues and students, and is willing to share his or her own struggles and frustrations, avoiding the naysayer who constantly complains in staff meetings;
- a teacher who is accepting of beginning teachers, showing empathy and acceptance without judgment;
- a teacher who continuously searches for better answers and more effective solutions to problems rather than believes that he or she already has the only right answer to every question and the best solution to every problem;
- a teacher who leads and attends workshops and who reads or writes for professional journals;
- an open, caring, and friendly individual who has good communication skills;
- someone who shares your teaching style, philosophy, grade level or subject area;
- a teacher who is following the path you want to follow, someone with whom you can relate and with whom you share mutual respect;
- someone who is aware of his or her own biases and opinions, and encourages you to listen to advice but also to form your own opinions.

Discuss this list of qualities with a partner and rank them in order of importance to you. Add any other qualities you agree are important. Compare your list with those produced by others in your class.

## **Collaborative professional learning**

Collaboration is regarded as central to all professional learning (Loucks-Horsley et al., 2003). Collaborative structures can bring together teachers within a school or across schools to work towards a common learning goal. Professional networks and action research are two common ways of engaging teachers in collaborative professional learning experiences.

### *Professional networks and action research*

Loucks-Horsley et al. (2003) define a professional network as ‘an organised professional community that has a common theme or purpose’ (2003, p. 146). Networks typically bring together teachers and other educators across school boundaries—for example, through school–university partnerships, school clusters (including those that link primary and secondary schools), mathematics teacher associations or partnerships with community organisations. Often these networks are formed for specific purposes, such as to improve teaching of particular subject-matter or to support particular school or curricular reforms. For example, mathematics teachers from secondary schools in a geographically defined district might form a network in order to investigate effective ways to implement a new curriculum. A challenge for networks is to keep members engaged, connected and informed, and electronic communication methods such as email lists and websites are increasingly used for this purpose.

Action research is another form of practice-based collaborative inquiry that provides teachers with opportunities for deep analysis and reflection on critical questions they face in their work. Action research is ‘an ongoing process of systematic study in which teachers examine their own teaching and students’ learning through descriptive reporting, purposeful conversation, collegial sharing, and critical reflection for the purpose of improving classroom practice’ (Miller & Pine, 1990, cited in Loucks-Horsley et al., 2003, p. 162). Although there are many different forms of action research, this approach is often considered to have the following key elements:

- Teachers contribute to or formulate their own questions, and collect the data to answer these questions (e.g. by observing or videotaping lessons, interviewing students or teachers, conducting surveys, collecting student work).
- Teachers use an action research cycle, comprising planning, observing, acting and reflecting.
- Teachers are linked with sources of knowledge and stimulation from outside their schools, such as professional associations or university researchers.
- Teachers work collaboratively.
- Learning from research is documented and shared.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Browse the reports of action research projects carried out in South Australian schools as part of the Strategic Directions for Science and Mathematics initiative: <[www.scimas.sa.edu.au/scimas/pages/Projects/p4213](http://www.scimas.sa.edu.au/scimas/pages/Projects/p4213)>. Choose one project and look for evidence of the key elements of action research listed above. What benefits and hindrances were experienced by teachers and students in this project?

### *Working in professional communities*

In recent years, there has been much interest in the idea of teacher professional communities as a means of supporting teacher networks that promote continuing inquiry into practice. Secada and Adajian (1997) define four characteristics of such communities: a shared sense of purpose in committing to common educational values and goals for student learning; coordinated effort to improve students' mathematics learning by examining curriculum across grade levels and by accessing parental support and community resources; collaborative professional learning to improve mathematics teaching practices; and collective control over important decisions affecting the mathematics program. Mathematics teacher professional communities with these characteristics can support experienced teachers learning to teach in new ways so they continually improve their practice (Stein et al., 1998).

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Discuss your own professional experience in terms of the four characteristics of teacher professional communities outlined above. To what extent are these present or absent in your school, and how does this affect formation of a professional community of mathematics teachers?

## Understanding professional socialisation

Not only is learning to teach a lifelong process, but teachers also learn from experience in many different contexts. It can be challenging for beginning teachers to reconcile what they learn about teaching from their own schooling, the university pre-service program and practicum sessions, and initial professional experiences—especially if these produce conflicting images of mathematics teaching. This challenge is often associated with the perceived gap between the decontextualised knowledge provided by university-based teacher education and the practical realities of classroom teaching. As a result, many beginning teachers find it difficult to implement innovative approaches they may have learned about during their pre-service program while trying to cope with the demands of the early years of full-time teaching. It is common for beginning teachers to give up their innovative ideas in the struggle to survive, and instead conform to institutional norms of traditional practices. Teachers at later stages of their careers may experience similar challenges if they are required to implement new teaching approaches, curricula or assessment techniques.

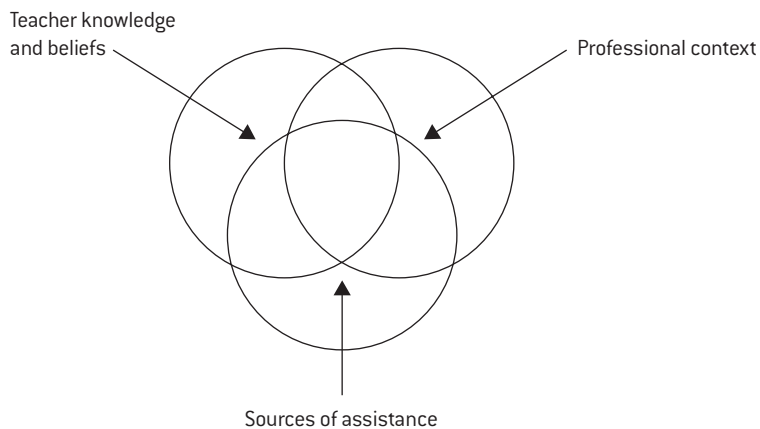
Instead of viewing teachers as being passively moulded by the forces of professional socialisation and reliant on short-term coping strategies for survival, we prefer to take the view that they can take action to shape their own development. To show what this might look like, we present a theoretical model for teachers' learning (more fully discussed by Goos, 2005), illustrated by a case study of a beginning teacher.

### *A theory of teacher learning and development*

Researchers have identified a range of factors that influence teacher learning and development. Rather than considering each separately, it is helpful to organise these factors into three 'zones of influence'. The first zone represents *teacher knowledge and beliefs*, and represents

the *potential for development*. This zone includes teachers' disciplinary knowledge, pedagogical content knowledge (knowledge of how to represent concepts and to use examples and analogies, as described by Shulman, 1986), and beliefs about their discipline and how it is best taught and learned. The second zone represents the *professional context*, which defines the teaching actions *allowed*. Elements of the context may include curriculum and assessment requirements, access to resources, organisational structures and cultures, and teacher perceptions of student background, ability and motivation. The third zone represents the *sources of assistance* available to teachers in *promoting* specific teaching actions, such as that offered by a pre-service teacher education course, supervised practicum experience, professional colleagues and mentors in the school, or formal professional development activities.

To understand teacher learning, we need to investigate relationships between these three zones (represented by the overlapping circles in Figure 17.3). Professional learning is most effective when teachers experience enough challenge to disturb the balance between their existing beliefs and practices, but also enough support to think through the dissonance experienced and either develop a new repertoire of practice or a new way of interpreting their context that fits with their new understanding.



*Figure 17.3 Relationships between the three ‘zones of influence’ in teacher learning*



*A case study of learning to teach*

The case study in the box below illustrates how the ‘three zone’ model can be used to understand the professional socialisation of beginning teachers.

**Adam’s pre-service practicum**

Adam was enrolled in a pre-service course that emphasised technology as a pedagogical resource. His practicum placement was in a large suburban school that had recently received funding to refurbish the mathematics classrooms and buy technology resources. All senior students had their own graphics calculators, and there were also sufficient class sets of these calculators for use by junior classes. Some of these changes had been made in response to new senior mathematics syllabuses that mandated the use of computers or graphics calculators in teaching and assessment programs.

Adam had previously worked as a software designer. Although he had not used a graphics calculator before starting the pre-service course, he quickly became familiar with its capabilities and incorporated this and other technologies into his mathematics lessons, with the encouragement of his supervising teacher. However, at this stage Adam had only ever used technology in his teaching, or observed its use by other teachers, as a tool for saving time in plotting graphs and performing complicated calculations, or for checking work done first by hand.

Table 17.1 identifies relevant aspects of Adam’s *knowledge and beliefs*, *professional context* and *sources of assistance*, and indicates that all of these were likely to positively influence his professional socialisation and learning. Adam’s practicum experience could be represented by the relationships (overlap) between the zones shown in Figure 17.3 (above).

**Table 17.1 Adam's practicum experience****Knowledge and beliefs**

- ✓ Skilled/experienced in using technology
- ✓ Student-centred pedagogical beliefs
- ✓ Developing pedagogical content knowledge regarding technology integration

**Professional context**

- ✓ Syllabuses mandated use of technology
- ✓ Access to well-equipped classrooms, computers and graphics calculators

**Sources of assistance**

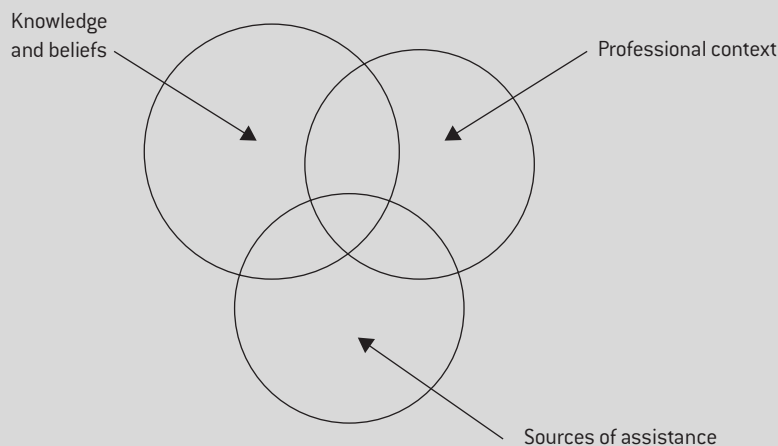
- ✓ Pre-service course emphasised technology
- ✓ Supervising teacher encouraged use of technology

**Adam's first year of teaching**

After graduation, Adam was employed by the same school where he had completed his practicum. Although the school environment and mathematics teaching staff were the same, Adam's experience of teaching changed dramatically. By now he had developed a much more flexible teaching approach, and he encouraged students to use their graphics calculators as a learning tool to explore new mathematical concepts and model real-world situations. However, he discovered that many of the other mathematics teachers were unenthusiastic about using technology and favoured very structured lessons that left students with few opportunities to investigate mathematical ideas for themselves. Because he disagreed with this approach, conflicting pedagogical beliefs became a source of friction in the staffroom, and this was often played out in arguments where Adam was accused of not teaching in the 'right' way. He realised that as a pre-service teacher he had not noticed the 'politics of teaching' because he had the luxury of focusing on a small number of classes and his relationship with a single

supervising teacher. He now found himself in a more complex situation that required him to defend his instructional decisions while negotiating harmonious relationships with several colleagues who did not share his beliefs about learning.

Because Adam's knowledge of technology integration had developed since the practicum, his knowledge and beliefs are represented by a larger circle in Figure 17.4. However, the extent of overlap between his sources of assistance and the other two zones has decreased, because his teacher colleagues did not hold views compatible with either the teaching context (high access to technology) or Adam's potential for development.



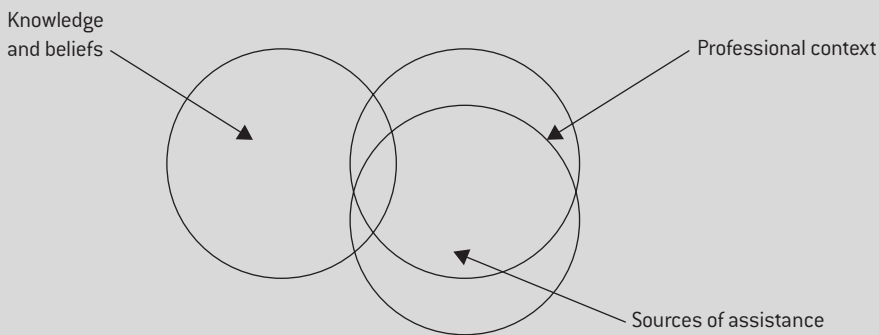
*Figure 17.4 Adam's first year of teaching*

- How should Adam respond to this situation so that the overlap between the zones is restored?

Adam realised that this was the way he was comfortable teaching, and he refused to be drawn into arguments with other teachers. He interpreted his technology-rich context as *affording* his preferred teaching approach, and decided to pay attention only to those sources of assistance within the Mathematics Department that were consistent with his own beliefs and goals and the approaches that he experienced in his pre-service course.

## Adam's second year of teaching

The following year, Adam was transferred to a different school where there was limited access to computer laboratories and only one class set of graphics calculators. The students were poorly motivated and unruly, and the school administration provided little support in managing the learning environment. None of the mathematics teachers was interested in using technology, and they preferred the same kind of teacher-centred, textbook-oriented teaching approaches as Adam's colleagues in his previous school. His experience as a second-year teacher is represented by Figure 17.5. The other teachers, through their lack of interest in technology, promoted approaches that were consistent with this technology-poor environment, but not with Adam's own beliefs and aspirations.



*Figure 17.5 Adam's second year of teaching*

- What actions might Adam take to increase the overlap between the three zones?

Because no other teacher wanted to use the class set of graphics calculators, Adam found he had unlimited access to the calculators for all of his classes. In other words, reinterpreting the context increased its overlap with his own beliefs and goals. He also joined the mathematics teachers' professional association and

started to attend their professional development workshops and conferences. This brought him into contact with many other like-minded teachers and ideas for developing his teaching, and made available new sources of assistance that met his need for professional growth.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Analyse your own professional experience using the approach illustrated above. Begin by creating a table like Table 17.1 to list aspects of your knowledge and beliefs, professional context and sources of assistance. Use this information to draw a diagram like those in Figures 17.4 and 17.5. Describe the relationships between the three zones. What action could you take to reinterpret your teaching context or seek assistance from other sources in order to increase the degree of alignment between them?

Compare your analysis and zone diagram with that of a peer who has professional experience in a different school.

## Planning for continuing professional learning

There is no doubt that mathematics teachers need to know mathematics and constantly update their mathematical knowledge, especially when curriculum change brings new topics into school mathematics. However, mathematical content knowledge alone is not enough. Many professional development activities in mathematics education combine two core kinds of teacher knowledge—*mathematical knowledge* and *pedagogical content knowledge*—by immersing teachers in situations that require both mathematical and pedagogical problem-solving, thus encouraging teachers to reflect on their practice and on their own understanding of the mathematics they teach (Zaslavsky et al., 2003).

Research on the effectiveness of professional development programs concludes that the following five features are significant (Little, 1988; Putnam & Borko, 1997; Wilson & Berne, 1999). Effective professional development:

- is ongoing and provides adequate time and follow-up support;
- is collaborative and aims to connect participants in learning communities;
- focuses on student learning and student-centred approaches to teaching;
- treats teachers as professionals who are active learners and takes into consideration individual teachers' contexts;
- enhances pedagogical content knowledge for teaching.

In Australia, teacher registration authorities are moving towards requiring evidence of continuing professional learning by teachers to maintain their registration. Instead of participating randomly in professional development activities to comply with renewal of registration policies, it is better to create a longer term plan for career development and seek out professional learning opportunities with the characteristics described above to help achieve desired goals. Frameworks that set out professional standards for teaching can lay the groundwork for this plan by specifying what teachers should know, understand and be able to do.

#### **REVIEW AND REFLECT :**

- Locate the website of your state's or territory's teacher registration authority (it may be a Teacher Registration Board, or a College or Institute of Teachers). Does renewal of registration require evidence of continuing professional learning (CPL)? What forms of CPL are recognised or approved? What kind of evidence is accepted?
- Find out whether your teacher registration authority has developed a professional standards framework for teaching. What domains or elements of practice are identified? Are there separate standards for graduate teachers and registered teachers? If so, how do they differ?

Unlike the generic standards developed by teacher registration authorities, the professional standards published by the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers (2006) relate to the specialised work of teaching mathematics, describe characteristics of best teaching practice rather than competence, and provide a framework for teachers' career-long

professional growth. The *Standards for Excellence in Teaching Mathematics in Australian Schools* were collaboratively developed by mathematics teachers and researchers from Monash University to describe what mathematics teachers who are doing their job well should know and do. The AAMT *Standards* are arranged into the three domains shown in Table 17.2.

**Table 17.2. Domains of the AAMT Standards**

Domain 1 Professional knowledge	Domain 2 Professional attributes	Domain 3 Professional practice
1.1 Knowledge of students	2.1 Personal attributes	3.1 The learning environment
1.2 Knowledge of mathematics	2.2 Personal professional development	3.2 Planning for learning
1.3 Knowledge of students' learning of mathematics	2.3 Community responsibilities	3.3 Teaching in action
		3.4 Assessment

Teachers can use the standards statements for each of these domains, and the elaborations in the *Standards* document itself, to audit their professional knowledge, attributes and practice, and identify areas for further development. The domains and their related standards also provide a way of organising a professional portfolio that can be maintained and updated throughout your teaching career. A portfolio is more than a scrapbook of lesson plans and classroom artefacts; instead, it assembles evidence of professional learning in the form of annotated materials that relate explicitly to a professional standards framework (Campbell, 2004; Reese, 2004). Annotations should explain *why* each item was selected for inclusion and *how* each item is linked to one or more elements of the portfolio's organising framework. For example, one reason for including a particular lesson plan might be that use of collaborative learning strategies and a task that applied mathematics to a real-world problem succeeded in engaging students who had previously showed little interest in learning. The annotations could explain how this lesson provides evidence of knowledge of students (AAMT Standard 1.1), knowledge of students' learning of mathematics (AAMT Standard 1.3), and planning for learning (AAMT Standard 3.2). Some thought also needs to be given to the format of the portfolio to ensure that the contents are appropriately indexed and cross-referenced, even when the materials included in the portfolio change over time to reflect continuing development as a teacher. Electronic portfolios have several advantages

in this regard: they are portable rather than bulky, easy to modify, and the contents can be hyperlinked to the organising framework in multiple ways to illustrate the richness of professional experience.

**REVIEW AND REFLECT :** Download the AAMT *Standards* from <[www.aamt.edu.au/standards](http://www.aamt.edu.au/standards)> and read the elaborations for each domain and standard. Discuss with peers how you could select material for inclusion in a professional portfolio organised around the *Standards*. Materials could include: annotated lesson plans and student work samples; teaching resources you have created or selected together with an indication of their purpose and effectiveness; sample pages from websites used in your teaching; photographs of your classroom or of student work; feedback from students and colleagues on your teaching; messages from parents; journal articles and other samples of professional reading; evidence of participation in professional development activities and how this influenced your teaching.

Make a list of materials you have already collected in your pre-service course and classify these as providing evidence against one or more of the ten standards. Identify any standards for which you presently have little evidence of accomplishment: these represent opportunities for planning further professional learning.

## Conclusion

A range of professional development opportunities is available specifically for mathematics teachers. Joining the local mathematics teachers' professional association provides access to journals, newsletters, workshops, and information about new curricula and assessment policies. (Details of state- and territory-based associations affiliated with the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers can be found on the AAMT website.) Annual conferences organised by these professional associations offer a wide choice of sessions for teachers of mathematics across all levels of schooling, as well as opportunities to interact with colleagues from other schools. Professional journals and resource books published by these associations are also an excellent source of practical teaching ideas and summaries of



research findings that can be used to improve students' learning. As knowledge is continually changing, it is also worth considering postgraduate study to keep abreast of developments in mathematics education and to explore areas of interest in greater depth than is possible in a pre-service program. Finally, participation in university-based research and teacher development projects can be an energising experience that encourages teachers to analyse and reflect on their own practice and students' learning. Many of the examples of practice we present in this book have come from projects where we have worked in partnership with teachers interested in trying out new approaches. Involvement in research grounded in classrooms allowed them to develop their personal professional knowledge while contributing to knowledge about mathematics teaching and learning more generally through publication of journal articles and presentation of conference papers. Taking this path has introduced many teachers to the exciting world of education research, and reinforced their commitment to lifelong learning.

## Recommended reading

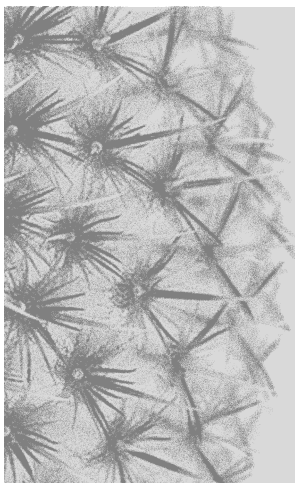
**Artzt, A. & Armour-Thomas, E. (2002).** *Becoming a reflective mathematics teacher: A guide for observations and self-assessment*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.

**Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers (2006).** *Standards for Excellence in Teaching Mathematics in Australian Schools*. <[www.aamt.edu.au/standards](http://www.aamt.edu.au/standards)> (10 April 2007).

**Campbell, D.M. (2004).** *How to develop a professional portfolio: A manual for teachers*. Boston, MA: Pearson, Allyn and Bacon.

**Chappell, M., Choppin, J. & Salls, J. (eds) (2004).** *Empowering the beginning teacher of mathematics in high school* (pp. 6–7). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

**Tanner, H. & Jones, S. (2000).** *Becoming a successful teacher of mathematics*. London: Routledge Falmer.



## REFERENCES

- ACT Board of Senior Secondary Studies (2006). *BSSS Online Guide*. <[www.bssss.act.edu.au](http://www.bssss.act.edu.au)> (28 August 2006).
- Adler, J. & Davis, Z. (2006). Opening another black box: Researching mathematics for teaching in mathematics teacher education. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 37(4), 270–96.
- Alejandre, S. (2005). The reality of using technology in the classroom. In W. Masalski & P. Elliott (eds), *Technology-supported mathematics learning environments* (pp. 137–50). Reston VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Anderson, J. & White, P. (2004). Problem solving in learning and teaching mathematics. In B. Perry, G. Anthony & C. Diezmann (eds), *Research in mathematics education in Australasia 2000–2003* (pp. 127–50). Flaxton, Qld: Post Pressed.
- Anthony, G. & Walshaw, M. (2002). Swaps and switches: Students' understanding of commutativity. In B. Barton, K. Irwin, M. Pfannkuch & M. Thomas (eds), *Mathematics education in the South Pacific* (Proceedings of the 25th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 91–9). Sydney: MERGA.
- (2007). *Effective pedagogy in mathematics/pāngarau: Best evidence synthesis iteration [BES]*. Wellington: New Zealand Ministry of Education.
- Anthony, G., Rawlins, P. & Winsley, J. (2002). Accelerated learning in New Zealand secondary school mathematics. *Australasian Journal for Gifted Education*, 11(2), 11–17.
- Arcarvi, A. (2003). The role of visual representations in the learning of mathematics. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 52, 215–41.
- Arnold, S. (2001). Thinking irrationally. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 57(1), 38–41.

- (2004). Mathematics education for the third millennium: Visions of a future for handheld classroom technology. In I. Putt, R. Faragher & M. McLean (eds), *Mathematics education for the third millennium: Towards 2010* (Proceedings of the 27th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 16–28). Sydney: MERGA.
- Artzt, A. & Armour-Thomas, E. (2002). *Becoming a reflective mathematics teacher: A guide for observations and self-assessment*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Arzarello, F. & Robutti, O. (2003). Approaching algebra through motion experience. In N.A. Pateman, B.J. Dougherty & J.T. Zilliox (eds), *Proceedings of the 27th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 1, pp. 111–15). Honolulu: PME.
- Asiala, M., Cottrill, J., Dubinsky, E. & Schwingendorf, K.E. (1997). The development of students' graphical understanding of the derivative. *Journal of Mathematical Behavior*, 16(4), 399–431.
- Asp, G., Dowsey, J., Stacey, K. & Tynan, D. (1995). *Graphic algebra: Explorations with a function grapher*. Melbourne: Curriculum Corporation.
- Aspinwall, L. & Miller, L.D. (2001). Diagnosing conflict factors in calculus through students' writings: One teacher's reflections. *Journal of Mathematical Behavior*, 20(1), 89–107.
- Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers (1996). *Statement on the use of calculators and computers for mathematics in Australian schools*. <[www.aamt.edu.au/about/policy/tech\\_st.pdf](http://www.aamt.edu.au/about/policy/tech_st.pdf)> (12 December 2005).
- (2000). *Graphics calculators and school mathematics: A communiqué to the education community*. <[www.aamt.edu.au/about/policy/gc-com-2.pdf](http://www.aamt.edu.au/about/policy/gc-com-2.pdf)> (12 December 2005).
- (2006). *Standards for excellence in teaching mathematics in Australian schools*. <[www.aamt.edu.au/standards](http://www.aamt.edu.au/standards)> (10 April 2007).
- Australian Bureau of Statistics (2000). *Australian social trends 2000*. Cat. no. 4102.0. Canberra: ABS.
- (2006). *Census at school*. <[www.abs.org.au](http://www.abs.org.au)> (19 June 2006).
- Australian Council for Educational Research (1997). *Progressive Achievement Test in Mathematics*. Camberwell: ACER.
- Australian Curriculum, Assessment and Certification Authorities (ACACA) (1996). *Guidelines for assessment quality and equity*. <[www.acaca.org.au/pdf/guidelines.pdf](http://www.acaca.org.au/pdf/guidelines.pdf)> (12 April 2007).
- Australian Education Council (1991). *A national statement on mathematics for Australian schools*. Melbourne: Curriculum Corporation.
- (1993a). *Mathematics in our schools: A guide for parents and the community*. Melbourne: Curriculum Corporation.

- (1993b). *National action plan for the education of girls 1993–1997*. Melbourne: Curriculum Corporation.
- (1994). *Mathematics: A curriculum profile for Australian schools*. Melbourne: Curriculum Corporation.
- Australian Mathematics Competition*, Australian Mathematics Trust. <[www.amt.canberra.edu.au](http://www.amt.canberra.edu.au)> (23 January 2007).
- Ball, L. & Stacey, K. (2001). New literacies for mathematics: A new view of solving equations. *The Mathematics Educator*, 6(1), 55–62.
- (2003). What should students record when solving problems with CAS? In J. Fey, A. Cuoco, C. Kieran, L. McMullin & R. Zblek (eds), *Computer algebra systems in secondary school mathematics education* (pp. 289–303). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- (2005a). Middle School CAS: Opportunities and challenges for teachers and students. In J. Mousley, L. Bragg & C. Campbell (eds), *Mathematics—Celebrating Achievement* (MAV annual conference 2005, pp. 25–34). Melbourne: MAV.
- (2005b). Students' views on using CAS in senior mathematics. In P. Clarkson, A. Downton, D. Gronn, M. Horne, A. McDonough, R. Pierce & A. Roche (eds), *Building connections: Theory, research and practice* (Proceedings of the 28th annual conference of the Mathematics Research Group of Australasia, pp. 121–8). Sydney: MERGA.
- Barber, J., Barakos, L. & Bergman, L. (2000). *Parent partners: Workshops to foster school/home/family partnerships*. Berkeley, CA: Lawrence Hall of Science, University of California.
- Barkatsas, A. & Malone, J. (2005). A typology of mathematics teachers' beliefs about teaching and learning mathematics and instructional practices. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 17, 69–90.
- Barnes, H. (n.d.) Effectively using new paradigms in the teaching and learning of mathematics: Action research in a multicultural South African classroom. <<http://dipmatmath.unipa.it/~grim/SiBarnes.PDF>> (12 April 2007).
- Barnes, M. (1991). *Investigating change: An introduction to calculus for Australian schools*. Melbourne: Curriculum Corporation.
- (2000a). 'Magical Moments' in mathematics: Insights into the process of coming to know. *For the Learning of Mathematics*, 20(1), 33–43.
- (2000b). Effects of dominant and subordinate masculinities on interactions in a collaborative learning classroom. In J. Boaler (ed.), *Multiple perspectives on mathematics teaching and learning* (pp. 145–69). Westport, CT: Ablex.

- Barnes, M., Plaister, R. & Thomas, A. (1984). *Girls count in maths and science: A handbook for teachers*. Sydney: Mathematical Association of NSW.
- Baroudi, Z. (2006). Easing students' transition to algebra. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 62(2), 28–33.
- Bartolini Bussi, M. & Boero, P. (1998). Teaching and learning geometry in contexts. In C. Mammana & V. Villani (eds), *Perspectives on the teaching of geometry for the 21st century* (pp. 52–62). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Barton, B. (2001). Mathematical ideas and Indigenous languages. In B. Atweh, H. Forgasz & B. Nebres (eds), *Sociocultural research on mathematics education: An international perspective* (pp. 135–49). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Batanero, C. & Serrano, A. (1999). The meaning of randomness for secondary school students. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 30(5), 558–67.
- Batholemew, H. (2003). Ability grouping and the construction of different types of learner in mathematics classrooms. In L. Bragg, C. Campbell, G. Herbert & J. Mousley (eds), *Mathematics education research: Innovation, networking, opportunity* (Proceedings of the 26th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 128–35). Sydney: MERGA.
- Bednarz, N. (2001). A problem-solving approach to algebra: Accounting for the reasonings and notations developed by students. In H. Chick, K. Stacey, J. Vincent & J. Vincent (eds), *The future of the teaching and learning of algebra: Proceedings of the 12th ICMI Study Conference* (Vol. 1, pp. 69–78). Melbourne: University of Melbourne.
- Beesey, C., Clarke, B., Clarke, D., Stephens, M. & Sullivan, P. (2001). *Effective assessment for Mathematics CSF Levels 4–6*. Melbourne: Longman.
- Belenky, M.F., Clinchy, B.M., Goldberger, N.R. & Tarule, J.M. (1986). *Women's ways of knowing: The development of self, voice and mind*. New York: Basic Books.
- Bell, A. (1996). Problem-solving approaches to algebra: Two aspects. In N. Bednarz, C. Kieran & L. Lee (eds), *Approaches to algebra: Perspectives for research and teaching* (pp. 167–85). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Ben-Zvi, D. & Garfield, J. (2004). Statistical literacy, reasoning, and thinking: Goals, definitions, and challenges. In D. Ben-Zvi and J. Garfield (eds), *The challenge of developing statistical literacy, reasoning and thinking* (pp. 3–15). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Berthelot, R. & Salin, M. (1998). The role of pupils' spatial knowledge in the elementary teaching of geometry. In C. Mammana & V. Villani (eds), *Perspectives on the teaching of geometry for the 21st century* (pp. 71–78). Dordrecht: Kluwer.

- Beswick, K. (2005). The beliefs/practice connection in broadly defined contexts. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 17, 39–68.
- Bicknell, B. (2006). Investigating parental roles of mathematically gifted students. In P. Grootenboer, R. Zevenbergen & M. Chinnappan (eds), *Identities, cultures and learning spaces* (Proceedings of the 29th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 76–84). Adelaide: MERGA.
- Biggs, J. & Collis, K. (1991). Developmental learning and the quality of intelligent behaviour. In H. Rowe (ed.), *Intelligence: Reconceptualisation and measurement* (pp. 57–76). Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Bishop, A. (1994). Cultural conflicts in mathematics education: Developing a research agenda. *For the Learning of Mathematics*, 14(2), 15–18.
- (2001). What values do you teach when you teach mathematics? *Teaching Children Mathematics*, 7(6), 346–52.
- Blum, W. & Kaiser, G. (1984). Analysis of applications and of conceptions for an application-oriented mathematics instruction. In J. Berry, D.N. Burghes, I.D. Huntley, D.J.G. James & A.O. Moscardini (eds), *Teaching and applying mathematical modelling* (pp. 201–14). Chichester: Ellis Horwood.
- Boaler, J. (1997a). *Experiencing school mathematics: Teaching styles, sex and setting*. Buckingham: Open University Press.
- (1997b). Reclaiming school mathematics: The girls fight back. *Gender and Education*, 9(3), 285–306.
- (1998). Open and closed mathematics: Student experiences and understanding. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 29, 41–62.
- (1999). Participation, knowledge and beliefs: A community perspective on mathematics learning. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 40, 259–81.
- (2000). Mathematics from another world: Traditional communities and the alienation of learners. *Journal of Mathematical Behavior*, 18(4), 1–19.
- (2002). Learning from teaching: Exploring the relationship between reform curriculum and equity. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 33(4), 239–58.
- Board of Studies New South Wales (2002). *Mathematics Years 7–10 Syllabus*. Sydney: Author.
- Booker, G., Bond, D., Sparrow, L. & Swan, P. (2004). *Teaching primary mathematics* (3rd edn). Sydney: Pearson Education Australia.

- Borba, M.C. & Scheffer, N. (2003). Sensors, body, technology and multiple representations. In N.A. Pateman, B.J. Dougherty & J.T. Zilliox (eds), *Proceedings of the 27th Conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 1, pp. 121–8). Honolulu: PME.
- Borba, M.C. & Villarreal, M.E. (2005). *Humans-with-media and the reorganisation of mathematical thinking: Information and communication technologies, modelling, experimentation and visualization*. New York: Springer.
- Bornholt, L.J. (2001). Self-concepts, usefulness and behavioural intentions in the social context of schooling. *Educational Psychology*, 21(1), 67–78.
- Bourke, P. (2002). Pinwheel aperiodic tiling. <[http://local.wasp.uwa.edu.au/~pbourke/texture\\_colour/nonperiodic/](http://local.wasp.uwa.edu.au/~pbourke/texture_colour/nonperiodic/)> (12 April 2007).
- Brader-Araje, L. (2004). Calling home: Keeping in contact with students' families. In M. Chappell, J. Choppin & J. Salls (eds), *Empowering the beginning teacher of mathematics in high school* (pp. 52–3). Reston VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Brinkworth, P. & Scott, P. (2001). The place of mathematics: The London Underground. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 57(1), 2–5.
- (2002). The place of mathematics: San Francisco—the Golden Gate to geometry. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 58(3), 2–5.
- Brown, G. & Quinlan, R. (2006). Algebra students' difficulty with fractions: An error analysis. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 62(4), 28–40.
- Brown, J. & Stillman, G. (2006). Defining moments in the graphing calculator solution of a cubic function task. *Nordic Studies in Mathematics Education*, 11(3), 57–84.
- Buckskin, P. (2000). Achieving educational equality for Indigenous Australians: A pathway of hope. Paper presented at the Curriculum Corporation Conference, 2000.
- Burke, M., Eickson, D., Lott, J.W. & Obert, M. (2001). *Navigating through algebra in grades 9–12*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Burnett, J., Irons, C. & Turton, A. (2005). *GEO paper polygons* (rev. edn). Brisbane: ORIGO Publications.
- Burns, B. & Brade, G. (2003). Using geoboards to enhance measurement instructions in the secondary mathematics classroom. In D.H. Clements (ed.), *Learning and teaching measurement: 2003 Yearbook* (pp. 25–272). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Burrill, G., Allison, J., Breaux, G., Kastberg, S., Leatham, K. & Sanchez, W. (2002). *Handheld graphing technology in secondary mathematics: Research findings and implications for classroom practice*. Dallas, TX: Texas Instruments.

- Burrill, G. & Elliott, P. (2006). *Thinking and reasoning with data and chance*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Burton, L. (1995). Moving towards a feminist epistemology of mathematics. In P. Rogers & G. Kaiser (eds), *Equity in mathematics education: Influences of feminism and culture* (pp. 209–26). London: Falmer Press.
- Bush, W. & Greer, A. (eds) (1999). *Mathematics assessment: A practical handbook for grades 9–12*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Cai, J. (2003). Investigating parental roles in students' learning of mathematics from a cross-national perspective. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 15, 87–106.
- Cai, J. & Sun, W. (2002). Developing students' proportional reasoning: A Chinese perspective. In B. Litwiller & G. Bright (eds), *Making sense of fractions, ratios and proportions: 2002 Year Book* (pp. 195–205). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Cairney, T. (2000). Beyond the classroom walls: The rediscovery of the family and community as partners in education. *Educational Review*, 52(2), 163–74.
- Callingham, R. & McIntosh, A. (2002). Mental computation competence across Years 3 to 10. In B. Barton, K. Irwin, M. Pfannkuch & M. Thomas (eds), *Mathematics education in the South Pacific* (Proceedings of the 25th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 155–62). Sydney: MERGA.
- Callingham, R. & Watson, J. (2004). A developmental scale of mental computation with part whole numbers. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 16(2), 69–86.
- Campbell, D.M. (2004). *How to develop a professional portfolio: A manual for teachers*. Boston, MA: Pearson, Allyn and Bacon.
- Carpenter, T. & Levi, L. (2000). *Developing conceptions of algebraic reasoning in the primary grades* (Research report 00-2). Madison, WI: National Centre for Improving Student Learning and Achievement in Mathematics and Science. <[www.wcer.wisc.edu/ncisla/publications/reports/RR-002.PDF](http://www.wcer.wisc.edu/ncisla/publications/reports/RR-002.PDF)> (12 April 2007).
- Carroll, J. (2006). Working with primary school students who struggle with mathematics. Paper presented at the annual conference of the Australian Association for Research in Education, Adelaide, 27–30 November.
- Casey, N.B., Nuttall, R. & Pezaris, E. (2001). Spatial-mechanical reasoning skills versus mathematics self-confidence as mediators of gender differences on mathematics subtests using cross-national gender-based items, *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 32(1), 28–57.



- Chan, L.K.S. & Dally, K. (2000). Review of literature. In W. Louden, L.K.S. Chan, J. Elkins, D. Greaves, H. House, M. Milton, S. Nichols, J. Rivalland, M. Rohl & C. Van Kraayenoord (eds), *Mapping the territory: Primary students with learning difficulties—Literacy and numeracy* (Vol. 2, pp. 171–358). Canberra: Department of Education, Training and Youth Affairs.
- Chapman, A. (2001) Maths talk is boys' talk: Constructing masculinity in school mathematics. In W. Martino & B. Meyenn (eds), *What about the boys? Issues of masculinity in schools* (pp. 199–210). Buckingham: Open University.
- Chick, H., Baker, M., Pham, T. & Cheng, H. (2006). Aspects of teachers' pedagogical content knowledge for decimals. In J. Novotna, H. Moraova, M. Krátka & N. Stehlikova (eds), *Proceedings of the 30th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 2, pp. 297–304). Prague: PME.
- Clarke, D.J. (1988). *The Mathematics Curriculum and Teaching Program professional development package: Assessment alternatives in mathematics*. Canberra: Curriculum Development Centre.
- (1996). Assessment. In A. Bishop, K. Clements, C. Keitel, J. Kilpatrick & C. Laborde (eds), *International handbook of mathematics education* (Vol. 1, pp. 327–70). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- (1997). *Constructive assessment in mathematics: Practical steps for classroom teachers*. Berkeley, CA: Key Curriculum Press.
- Clarke, D.M. (n.d.). Assessment for teaching and learning. <[http://cme.open.ac.uk/Clarke\\_on\\_tasks1.htm](http://cme.open.ac.uk/Clarke_on_tasks1.htm)> (12 April 2007).
- (1996) The triple jump. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 52(2), 4–7.
- Clarke, L. & Bana, J. (2001). Phantom classmates: A case study of talented mathematics students learning via telematics. In J. Bobis, B. Perry & M. Mitchelmore (eds), *Numeracy and beyond* (Proceedings of 24th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 163–9). Sydney: MERGA.
- Clatworthy, N. & Galbraith, P. (1987). Mathematical modelling: Innovation in senior mathematics. *Australian Senior Mathematics Journal*, 1(2), 38–49.
- (1989). Mathematical modelling: An attack on conformity. *Australian Senior Mathematics Journal*, 3(2), 38–49.
- Clausen-May, T. (2005). *Teaching maths to pupils with different learning styles*. London: Paul Chapman Publishing.
- Clements, D.H. & Battista, M.T. (1992). Geometry and spatial reasoning. In D.A. Grouws (ed), *Handbook of research on mathematics teaching and learning* (pp. 420–64). New York: Macmillan.

- Clements, M.A., Grimison, L. & Ellerton, N. (1989). Colonialism and school mathematics in Australia 1788–1988. In N. Ellerton & M.A. Clements (eds), *School mathematics: The challenge to change* (pp. 50–78). Geelong: Deakin University Press.
- Clements, R.R. (1989). *Mathematical modelling: A case study approach*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Coad, L. (2006). Paper folding in the middle school classroom and beyond, *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 62(1), 6–13.
- Cobb, P. (1994). Where is the mind? Constructivist and sociocultural perspectives on mathematical development. *Educational Researcher*, 23(7), 13–20.
- Cobbin, D. (1995). *Women's participation in non-traditional fields of study at the undergraduate level of higher education 1989–1993*. Canberra: Commonwealth of Australia.
- Collins, J. (Chair) (2001). *The education of gifted and talented children*. Canberra: Commonwealth of Australia.
- Collis, K.F. (1994). Mathematics and cognition. In H. Chick & J. Watson (eds), *Mathematics and teaching*. Adelaide: AAMT.
- Confrey, J. (1992). *Function Probe* (V. 2.3.5) [computer software]. Ithaca, NY: Cornell University.
- Confrey, J. & Kazak, S. (2006). A thirty-year reflection on constructivism in mathematics education in PME. In A. Gutierrez & P. Boero (eds), *Handbook of research on the psychology of mathematics education: Past, present and future* (pp. 305–45). Rotterdam: Sense Publishers.
- Confrey, J. & Makar, K. (2002). Developing teachers' statistical inquiry through immersion in high-stakes accountability data. In D.D. Mewborn, P. Sztajn, D. Y. White, H.G. Wiegel, R.L. Bryant & K. Nooney (eds), *Proceedings of the 24th annual meeting of the North American Chapter of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education (PME-NA24)* (Vol. 3, pp. 1267–79). Columbus, OH: ERIC Clearinghouse, Mathematics and Environment Education.
- Connell, R. (1996). Teaching the boys: New research on masculinity, and gender strategies for schools. *Teachers College Record*, 98(2), 206–35.
- Cooney, T., Badger, E. & Wilson, M. (1993). Assessment, understanding mathematics, and distinguishing visions from mirages. In N. Webb & A. Coford (eds), *Assessment in the mathematics classroom* (pp. 239–47). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Cooper, B. & Dunne, M. (2000). *Assessing children's mathematical knowledge: Social class, sex and problem-solving*. Buckingham: Open University Press.

- Cottrill, J., Dubinsky, E., Nichols, D., Schwingendorf, K., Thomas, K. & Vidakovic, D. (1996). Understanding the limit concept: Beginning with a coordinated process scheme. *Journal of Mathematical Behavior*, 15(2), 167–92.
- Crozier, G. (2000). *Parents and schools: Partners or protagonists?* Stoke on Trent: Trentham Books.
- Csikszentmihalyi, M., Rathune, K. & Whalen, S. (1997). *Talented teenagers: The roots of success and failure*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Cunningham, K.C. (2006 [1956]). Mathematics as a subject in the school curriculum. In M. Stephens (ed.), *Master classes in mathematics* (Centenary publication of the Mathematical Association of Victoria, pp. 26–39). Melbourne: Mathematical Association of Victoria.
- Curriculum Branch, Education Department of Western Australia (1984). *Applying mathematics*. Perth: Author.
- Curriculum Corporation (2006). *Assessment for learning: Aspects of strategic questioning* (DVD). Melbourne: Author.
- D'Ambrosio, U. (1998). *Ethnomathematics: The art and technique of explaining and knowing* (P.B. Scott, trans.). Las Cruces, NM: International Study Group of Ethnomathematics (original work published in 1990).
- Davis, R.B., Maher, C.A. & Noddings, N. (eds) (1990). *Constructivist views on the teaching and learning of mathematics* (pp. 19–29). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Day, M. (1997). From the experiences of women mathematicians: A feminist epistemology for mathematics. Unpublished doctoral thesis, Massey University, New Zealand.
- Day, R., Kelley, P., Krussel, L., Lott, J. & Hirstein, J. (2001). *Navigating through geometry in Grades 9–12*. Reston: VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- De Bock, D., Van Dooren, W. & Verschaffel, L. (2005). Not everything is proportional: Task design and small-scale experiment. In H. Chick & J. Vincent, *Proceedings of the 29th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 1, pp. 97–102). Melbourne: PME.
- delos Santos, A. & Thomas, M. (2003). Representational ability and understanding of derivative. In N.A. Pateman, B.J. Dougherty & J. Zilliox (eds), *Proceedings of the 27th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 2, pp. 325–32). Honolulu, HI: PME.
- (2005). The growth of schematic thinking about derivative. In P. Clarkson, A. Downton, D. Gronn, M. Horne, A. McDonough, R. Pierce & A. Roche (eds), *Building connections: Research, theory and practice* (Proceedings of the 28th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 377–84). Sydney: MERGA.

- Dengate, R. (2001). Pedagogical integrity and the internet. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 57(2), 8–15.
- Department of Education and Children's Services, South Australia (2001). *South Australian curriculum standards and accountability framework*. <[www.sacsa.sa.edu.au/index\\_fssrc.asp?t=EL](http://www.sacsa.sa.edu.au/index_fssrc.asp?t=EL)> (13 December 2005).
- Department of Education and the Arts, Queensland (2004). *The New Basics research report*. <<http://education.qld.gov.au/corporate/newbasics/html/library.html>> (7 September 2005).
- Department of Education and Training, New South Wales (1998). *Count me in too: Professional development package*. Sydney: Author.
- (2002). *Counting on: Re-connecting conceptual development*. Sydney: Author.
- Department of Education, Queensland (2004). *The shape we're in*. <<http://education.qld.gov.au/corporate/newbasics/pdfs/yr9rt7a.pdf>> (12 April 2007).
- Department of Education, Training and Youth Affairs (DETYA) (2000a). *Numeracy, a priority for all: Challenges for Australian schools*. Canberra: Commonwealth Government.
- (2000b). *National Indigenous English literacy and numeracy strategy 2000–2004*. Canberra: Commonwealth Government.
- Department of Employment, Education, Training and Youth Affairs (DEETYA) (1997). *Numeracy = everyone's business* (Report of the Numeracy Education Strategy Development Conference). Adelaide: Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers.
- Diezmann, C., Faragher, R., Lowrie, T., Bicknell, B. & Putt, I. (2004). Exceptional students in mathematics. In B. Perry, G. Anthony & C. Diezmann (eds), *Research in mathematics education in Australasia 2000–2003* (pp. 175–196). Flaxton, Qld: Post Pressed.
- Diezmann, C., Thornton, C. & Watters, J. (2003). Addressing the needs of exceptional students through problem solving. In F. Lester & R. Charles (eds), *Teaching mathematics through problem solving* (pp. 169–82). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Dix, K. (1999). Enhanced mathematics learning: Does technology make a difference? In J. Truran & K. Truran (eds) *Making the difference* (Proceedings of the 22nd annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 192–9). Sydney: MERGA.
- Dole, S. (1999). Successful percent problem solving for Year 8 students using proportional number line method. In J.M. Truran & K.M. Truran (eds), *Making the difference* (Proceedings of the 22nd annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 43–52). Sydney: MERGA.

- (2003). Questioning numeracy programs for at-risk students in the middle years of schooling. In L. Bragg, C. Campbell, G. Herbert & J. Mousley (eds), *Mathematics education research: Innovation, networking, opportunity* (Proceedings of the 26th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 278–85). Sydney: MERGA.
- Dole, S., Cooper, T.J., Batur, A.R. & Conpolia, Z. (1997). Year 8, 9 and 10 students' understanding and access of percent knowledge. In F. Biddulph & K. Carr (eds), *People in mathematics education* (Proceedings of 20th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 147–54). Rotorua: MERGA.
- Dreyfus, T., Hershkowitz, R. & Schwarz, B. (2001). The construction of abstract knowledge in interaction. *Cognitive Science Quarterly*, 1, 307–68.
- Drouhard, J-P. & Teppo, A.R. (2004). Symbols and language. In K. Stacey, H. Chick & M. Kendal (eds), *The teaching and learning of algebra: The 12th ICMI study* (pp. 227–64). Norwell, MA: Kluwer.
- Duval, R. (1998). Geometry from a cognitive point of view. In C. Mammana & V. Villani (eds), *Perspectives on the teaching of geometry for the 21st century* (pp. 37–52). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Ehnebuske, J. (1998). In the comfort of their own homes: Engaging families in mathematics. *Teaching Children Mathematics*, 4(6), 338–44.
- Ellerton, N. & Clarkson, P. (1996). Language factors in mathematics teaching and learning. In A. Bishop, K. Clements, C. Keitel, J. Kilpatrick & C. Laborde (eds), *International handbook of mathematics education* (Part 2, pp. 987–1034). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Eppstein, D. Tiling: The geometry junkyard. <[www.ics.uci.edu/~eppstein/junkyard/tiling.html](http://www.ics.uci.edu/~eppstein/junkyard/tiling.html)> (12 April 2007).
- Epstein, J. (1995). School/family/community partnerships: Caring for the children we share. *Phi Delta Kappa*, 76(9), 701–12.
- (2001). *School, family, and community partnerships: Preparing educators and improving schools*. Boulder, CO: Westview.
- Ernest, P. (1989). The impact of beliefs on the teaching of mathematics. In P. Ernest (ed.), *Mathematics teaching: The state of the art* (pp. 249–53). New York: Falmer.
- Even, R. (1998). Factors involved in linking representations of functions. *Journal of Mathematical Behavior*, 17(1), 105–21.
- (2005). Using assessment to inform instructional decisions: How hard can it be? *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 17(3), 45–61.

- Ewing, B. (2004). 'Open your textbooks to page blah, blah, blah': So I just blocked off! In I. Putt, R. Faragher & M. McLean (eds), *Mathematics education for the third millennium: Towards 2010* (Proceedings of the 27th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 231–38). Sydney: MERGA.
- Falkner, K.P., Levi, L. & Carpenter, T.P. (1999). Children's understanding of equality: A foundation for algebra. *Teaching Children Mathematics*, 6(4), 56–60.
- Farmer, J. (2005). The volume of a torus using cylindrical and spherical coordinates. *Australian Senior Mathematics Journal*, 19(2), 49–58.
- Faulkner, P. (2004). Notes for applied mathematics in trigonometry and earth geometry/navigation. *Australian Senior Mathematics Journal*, 18(1), 55–9.
- Fennema, E. (1995). Mathematics, gender and research. In B. Grevholm and G. Hanna (eds), *Gender and mathematics education: An ICMI study in Stiftsgården, Akersberg, Hoor, Sweden, 1993* (pp. 21–38). Lund: Lund University Press.
- Fennema, E. & Sherman, J. (1977). Sex-related differences in mathematics achievement, spatial visualization, and affective factors. *American Educational Research Journal*, 14(1), 51–71.
- Fennema, E. & Tartre, L. (1985). The use of spatial visualization in mathematics by boys and girls. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 16(3), 184–206.
- Fine, A.E. & Fleener, M.J. (1994). Calculators as instructional tools: Perceptions of three preservice teachers. *Journal of Computers in Mathematics and Science Teaching*, 13(1), 83–100.
- Finzer, W. (2005). *Fathom Dynamic Data Software*, Version 2.0 [Computer Program]. Emeryville, CA: Key Curriculum Press.
- Fischbein, E. & Schnarch, D. (1997). Brief report: The evolution with age of probabilistic, intuitively based misconceptions. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 28(1), 96–105.
- Fisher, L. (1982). *Super problems*. Palo Alto, CA: Dale Seymour.
- Fitzsimons, G., Seah, W.T., Bishop, A. & Clarkson, P. (2001). Beyond numeracy: Values in the mathematics classroom. In J. Bobis, B. Perry & M. Mitchelmore (eds), *Numeracy and beyond* (Proceedings of the 24th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 202–9). Sydney: MERGA.
- Flores, A. (2002). Profound understanding of the division of fractions. In B. Litwiller & G. Bright (eds), *Making sense of fractions, ratios and proportions: 2002 Year Book* (pp. 237–46). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.

- Flynn, P. & Asp, G. (2002). Assessing the potential suitability of 'show that' questions in CAS-permitted examinations. In B. Barton, K.C. Irwin, M. Pfannkuch & M.O.J. Thomas (eds), *Mathematics education in the South Pacific* (Proceedings of the 25th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 252–9). Sydney: MERGA.
- Flynn, P. & McCrae, B. (2001). Issues in assessing the impact of CAS on mathematics examinations. In J. Bobis, B. Perry & M. Mitchelmore (eds), *Numeracy and beyond* (Proceedings of the 24th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 210–17). Sydney: MERGA.
- Forgasz, H. (1995). Gender and the relationship between affective beliefs and perceptions of Grade 7 mathematics classroom learning environments. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 28, 219–39.
- (2002). Computers for the learning of mathematics: Equity considerations. In B. Barton, K. Irwin, M. Pfannkuch & M. Thomas (eds), *Mathematics education in the South Pacific* (Proceedings of the 25th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 260–67). Sydney: MERGA.
- (2003). Equity and beliefs about the efficacy of computers for mathematics learning. In N.A. Pateman, B.J. Dougherty & J. Zilliox (eds), *Proceedings of the 27th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 2, pp. 381–8). Honolulu, HI: PME.
- (2006). Australian Year 12 'intermediate' level mathematics enrolments 2000–2004: Trends and patterns. In P. Grootenboer, R. Zevenbergen & M. Chinnappan (eds), *Identities, cultures and learning spaces* (Proceedings of the 29th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 211–20). Adelaide: MERGA.
- Forgasz, H., Leder, G.C. & Vale, C. (2000). Gender and mathematics: Changing perspectives. In K. Owens & J. Mousley (eds), *Mathematics education research in Australasia: 1996–1999* (pp. 305–40). Sydney: MERGA.
- Forman, E.A. (2003). A sociocultural approach to mathematics reform: Speaking, inscribing, and doing mathematics within communities of practice. In J. Kilpatrick, W.G. Martin & D. Schifter (eds), *A research companion to principles and standards for school mathematics* (pp. 333–52). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Forster, P. (2000a). Patterns on a graphics calculator: Using vector components or trigonometry. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 56(1), 8–9.
- (2000b). Process and object interpretations of vector magnitude mediated by use of the graphics calculator. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 12(3), 254–68.

- Forster, P.A. & Mueller, U. (2001). Outcomes and implications of students' use of graphics calculators in the public examination of calculus. *International Journal of Mathematical Education in Science and Technology*, 32(1), 37–52.
- (2002). What effect does the introduction of graphics calculators have on the performance of boys and girls in assessment of tertiary entrance calculus? *International Journal of Mathematical Education in Science and Technology*, 33(6), 801–18.
- Forster, P., Flynn, P., Frid, S. & Sparrow, L. (2004). Calculators and computer algebra systems. In B. Perry, G. Anthony & C. Diezmann (eds), *Research in mathematics education in Australasia 2000–2003* (pp. 313–36). Flaxton, Qld: Post Pressed.
- Fowler, R., Holland, A., Prelaz, S. & Groves, U. (1990). *The sky's the limit: Broadening career prospects for girls*. Melbourne: Technical Skills for Girls, Women's Employment Branch, Department of Labour, Victoria.
- Frankenstein, M. (1997). In addition to the mathematics: Including equity issues in the curriculum. In J. Trentacosta & M.J. Kenny (eds), *Multicultural and gender equity in the mathematics classroom: The gift of diversity* (pp. 10–22). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- (2001). Reading the world with math: Goals for a critical mathematical literacy curriculum. In B. Lee (ed.), *Mathematics shaping Australia: Proceedings of the 18th Biennial Conference of the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers* (pp. 53–64). Adelaide: Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers.
- Frid, S. (2000a). Constructivism and reflective practice in practice: Challenges and dilemmas of a mathematics educator. *Mathematics Teacher Education and Development*, 2, 17–33.
- (2000b). Using learning cycles in mathematics. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 56(4), 32–37.
- (2001). Food for thought. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 57(1), 12–16.
- Friedlander, A. & Arcavi, A. (2005). Folding perimeters: Designer concerns and student solutions. In H. Chick & J. Vincent, *Proceedings of the 29th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 1, pp. 108–14). Melbourne: PME.
- Frykholm, J. & Meyer, M. (2002). Integrated instruction: Is it science? Is it mathematics? *Mathematics Teaching in the Middle School*, 7(9), 502.
- Fujii, T. & Stephens, M. (2001). Fostering an understanding of algebraic generalisation through numerical expressions: The role of quasi-variables. In H. Chick, K. Stacey, J. Vincent & J. Vincent (eds), *The future of the teaching and learning of algebra: Proceedings of the 12th ICMI Study Conference* (Vol. 1, pp. 258–64). Melbourne: University of Melbourne.



- Funkhouser, J. & Gonzales, M. (1997). *Family involvement in children's education: Successful local approaches*. Washington, DC: US Department of Education.
- Gaffney, J. & Treilibs, V. (1982). *Mathematical modelling*. Adelaide: Education Department of South Australia.
- Gal, I., Rothschild, K. & Wagner, D. (1990). Statistical concepts and statistical reasoning in school children: Convergence or divergence? Paper presented at the Annual Meeting of the American Educational Research Association, Boston.
- Galbraith, P. (1987). Modelling: Teaching modelling. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 43(4), 6–9.
- (1995). Assessment in mathematics: Purposes and traditions. In L. Grimson & J. Pegg (eds), *Teaching secondary school mathematics: Theory into practice* (pp. 271–88). Sydney: Harcourt Brace.
- (1996). Modelling comparative performance: Some Olympic examples. *Teaching Mathematics and Its Applications*, 15(2), 67–77.
- Galbraith, P.L. & Stillman, G.A. (2001). Assumptions and context: Pursuing their role in modelling activity. In F.J. Matos, S.K. Houston, W. Blum & S.P. Carreira (eds), *Modelling and mathematics education: Applications in science and technology* (pp. 317–27). Chichester: Horwood.
- (2006). A framework for identifying blockages during transitions in the modelling process. *ZDM*, 38(2), 143–62.
- Galbraith, P.L., Stillman, G. & Brown, J. (2006). Identifying key transition activities for enhanced engagement in mathematical modelling. In P. Grootenboer, R. Zevenbergen & M. Chinnappan (eds), *Identities, cultures and learning spaces* (Proceedings of the 29th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 237–45). Adelaide: MERGA.
- Galbraith, P., Stillman, G., Brown, J. & Edwards, I. (2007). Facilitating middle secondary modelling competencies. In C. Haines, P. Galbraith, W. Blum & S. Khan (eds), *Mathematical modelling (ICTMA12): Education, engineering and economics* (pp. 130–40). Chichester: Horwood.
- Gardner, H. (1993). *Multiple intelligences: The theory in practice*. New York: Basic Books.
- Gardner, H. & Hudson, I. (1999). University students' ability to apply statistical procedures. *Journal of Statistics Education* 7(1), <[www.amstat.org/publications/jse/secure/v7n1/gardner.cfm](http://www.amstat.org/publications/jse/secure/v7n1/gardner.cfm)> (12 April 2007).
- Garfield, J. & Ben-Zvi, D. (in press). *Developing students' statistical reasoning: Connecting research and teaching practice*. Emeryville, CA: Key College Publishing.
- Geiger, V., McKinlay, J. & O'Brien, G. (eds) (1997). *The AToMIC Project: Applications to mathematics incorporating calculators*. Brisbane: Queensland Association of Mathematics Teachers.

- Geiger, V., McKinlay, J. & O'Brien, G. (eds) (1999). *The Sub-ATOMIC Project: Subsequent applications to mathematics incorporating calculators*. Brisbane: Queensland Association of Mathematics Teachers.
- Giraldo, V., Carvalho, L.M. & Tall, D. (2002). Descriptions and definitions in the teaching of elementary calculus. *Proceedings of the British Society for Research into Learning Mathematics Conference*, 22(3), 37–42.
- Goodell, J. & Parker, L. (2001). Creating a connected, equitable mathematics classroom: Facilitating gender equity. In B. Atweh, H. Forgasz & B. Nebres, (eds), *Sociocultural research on mathematics education: An international perspective* (pp. 411–31). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Goos, M. (1999). Scaffolds for learning: A sociocultural approach to reforming mathematics teaching and teacher education. *Mathematics Teacher Education and Development*, 1, 4–21.
- (2001). *Numeracy and curriculum integration: The case of mathematics and history*. Paper presented at the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers Virtual Conference, 18 May– 25 June.
- (ed.) (2002). *Techno Maths: Technology enriched activities for the mathematics classroom*. Flaxton, Qld: Post Pressed.
- (2004a). Home, school and community partnerships to support children's numeracy. *Australian Primary Mathematics Classroom*, 9(4), 18–20.
- (2004b). Learning mathematics in a classroom community of inquiry. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 35, 258–91.
- (2005) A sociocultural analysis of learning to teach. In H. Chick & J. Vincent (eds), *Proceedings of the 29th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 3, pp. 49–56). Melbourne: PME.
- Goos, M. & Askin, C. (2005). Towards numeracy across the curriculum: Integrating mathematics and science in the middle years. In R. Zevenbergen (ed.), *Innovations in numeracy teaching in the middle years* (pp. 125–41). Canberra: Australian Curriculum Studies Association.
- Goos, M. & Cretchley, P. (2004). Teaching and learning mathematics with computers, the internet, and multimedia. In B. Perry, G. Anthony & C. Diezmann (eds), *Research in mathematics education in Australasia 2000–2003* (pp. 151–74). Flaxton, Qld: Post Pressed.
- Goos, M., Galbraith, P. & Renshaw, P. (2000). A money problem: A source of insight into problem solving action. *International Journal for Mathematics Teaching and Learning*. <[www.cimt.plymouth.ac.uk/journal/pgmoney.pdf](http://www.cimt.plymouth.ac.uk/journal/pgmoney.pdf)> (2 February 2007).
- (2002). Socially mediated metacognition: Creating collaborative zones of proximal development in small group problem solving. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 49, 193–223.

- Goos, M., Galbraith, P., Renshaw, P. & Geiger, V. (2000). Re-shaping teacher and student roles in technology enriched classrooms. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 12, 303–20.
- (2003) Perspectives on technology mediated learning in secondary school mathematics classrooms. *Journal of Mathematical Behavior*, 22, 73–89.
- Goos, M., Lincoln, D., Coco, A., Frid, S., Galbraith, P., Horne, M., Jolly, L., Kostogriz, A., Lowrie, T., Short, T. & Gholam, M. (2004). *Home, school and community partnerships to support children's numeracy*. Canberra: Australian Government Department of Education, Science and Training.
- Goos, M. & Mills, M. (2001). Curriculum integration in the middle school: Mathematics meets history. In B. Lee (ed.), *Mathematics shaping Australia* (Proceedings of the 18th Biennial conference of the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers, pp. 65–76). Adelaide: Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers.
- Gough, J. (2001). Algebra demons: Common mistakes in algebra, *Vinculum*, 38(1), 14–15.
- (2006). Assessment in the middle years. *Professional Voice*, 4(2), 27–32.
- Gould, P. (1993). *Cooperative problem solving in the mathematics Grades 5–8*. Sydney: Mathematical Association of NSW.
- (2005). Really broken numbers. *Australian Primary Mathematics Classroom*, 10(3), 4–10.
- Gould, P., Outhred, L. & Mitchelmore, M. (2006). One-third is three-quarters of one-half. In P. Grootenboer, R. Zevenbergen & M. Chinnappan (eds), *Identities, Cultures and Learning Spaces* (Proceedings of the 29th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 262–9). Adelaide: MERGA.
- Gravemeijer, K., van Galen, F. & Keijzer, R. (2005). Designing instruction on proportional reasoning with average speed. In H. Chick & J. Vincent (eds), *Proceedings of the 29th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 1, pp. 103–7). Melbourne: PME.
- Gray, E. & Tall, D. (1994). Duality, ambiguity and flexibility: A proceptual view of simple arithmetic. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 26, 115–41.
- Gronlund, N. & Linn, R. (1990). *Measurement and evaluation in teaching*. New York: Macmillan.
- Grootenboer, P. (2001). How students remember their mathematics teachers. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 57(4), 14–16.
- Gullberg, J. (1997). *Mathematics: From the birth of numbers*. New York: W.W. Norton.
- Gutstein, E. (2003). Teaching and learning mathematics for social justice in an urban, Latino school. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 34, 37–73.
- Gutstein, E. & Peterson, B. (eds) (2006). *Rethinking mathematics: Teaching social justice by the numbers*. Milwaukee, WI: Re-thinking Schools Ltd.

- Haimes, D.H. (1999). Graphics calculators in examinations: a question of equity? Paper presented at the combined annual meeting of the Australian Association for Research in Education and the New Zealand Association for Research in Education, Melbourne. <[www.aare.edu.au/99pap/hai99198.htm](http://www.aare.edu.au/99pap/hai99198.htm)> (12 April 2007).
- Hancock, C., Kaput, J. & Goldsmith, L. (1992). Authentic inquiry into data: Critical barriers to classroom implementation. *Educational Psychologist*, 27(3), 337–64.
- Handal, B., Handal, P. & Herrington, T. (2005). Evaluating online mathematics resources: A practical approach for teachers. In M. Coupland, J. Anderson & T. Spencer (eds), *Making mathematics vital* (Proceedings of the 20th biennial conference of the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers, pp. 153–65). Adelaide: AAMT.
- Harris, C. & Marsh, C. (2005). Analysing curriculum change: Some reconceptualised approaches. In C. Harris & C. Marsh (eds), *Curriculum developments in Australia: Promising initiatives, impasses and dead-ends* (pp. 15–37). Canberra: Australian Curriculum Studies Association.
- Harris, P. (1991). *Mathematics in a cultural context: Aboriginal perspectives on time, space and money*. Geelong: Deakin University.
- Hayes, D., Lingard, B. & Mills, M. (2000). Productive pedagogies. *Education Links*, 60, 10–13.
- Heid, M.K. (1988). Resequencing skills and concepts in applied calculus using the computer as a tool. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 19, 3–25.
- (1995). *Algebra in a technological world*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Hekimoglu, S. (2005). Romance of a mathematician: Celebrating St Valentine's Day in a mathematics class. *Australian Senior Mathematics Journal*, 19(1), 39–43.
- Henningsen, M. & Stein, M.K. (1997). Mathematical tasks and student cognition: Classroom-based factors that support and inhibit high-level mathematical thinking and reasoning. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 28, 524–49.
- Henry, M. & McAuliffe, R. (1994). Drying out. *Mathstralia* (pp. 41–48). Melbourne: AAMT.
- Herbel-Eisenmann, B.A. & Breyfogle, M.L. (2005). Questioning our patterns of questioning. *Mathematics Teaching in the Middle School*, 10(9), 484–9.
- Herbert, S. & Pierce, R. (2005). Potential of technology and a familiar context to enhance students' concept of rate of change. In P. Clarkson, A. Downton, D. Gronn, M. Horne, A. McDonough, R. Pierce & A. Roche (eds), *Building connections: Research, theory and practice* (Proceedings of the 28th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 435–42). Sydney: MERGA.

- Herrera, T. (2001). A valid role for the internet in the mathematics classroom. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 57(1), 24–28.
- Hershkowitz, R. (1998). About reasoning in geometry. In C. Mammana & V. Villani (eds), *Perspectives on the teaching of geometry for the 21st century* (pp. 29–37). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Hershkowitz, R. & Kieran, C. (2001). Algorithmic and meaningful ways of joining together representatives within the same mathematical activity: An experience with graphing calculators. In M. van den Heuvel-Panhuizen (ed.), *Proceedings of the 25th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 1, pp. 96–107). Utrecht: PME.
- Hiebert, J. & Carpenter, T.P. (1992). Learning and teaching with understanding. In D.A. Grouws (ed.), *Handbook of research on mathematics teaching and learning* (pp. 65–97). New York: Macmillan.
- Hodgson, B. & Leigh-Lancaster, D. (1990). Coastal navigation. In B. Hodgson & D. Leigh-Lancaster, *Space and number*. Jacaranda Senior Mathematics Series. Brisbane: Jacaranda.
- Hogan, J. (2002). Mathematics and numeracy: Is there a difference? *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 58(4), 14–15.
- Hollingsworth, H., Lokan, J. & McCrae, B. (2003). *Teaching mathematics in Australia: Results from the TIMSS 1999 Video Study*. Melbourne: Australian Council for Educational Research.
- Holton, D. & Clarke, D.J. (2006). Scaffolding and metacognition. *International Journal of Mathematical Education in Science and Technology*, 37(2), 127–43.
- Holton, D., with Lovitt, C. (1998). *Lighting mathematical fires*. Melbourne: Curriculum Corporation.
- Horne, M. (1998). Linking parents and school mathematics. In N. Ellerton (ed.), *Issues in mathematics education: A contemporary perspective* (pp. 115–35). Perth: Mathematics, Science and Technology Education Centre, Edith Cowan University.
- House, P. & Coxford, A. (eds) (1995). *Connecting mathematics across the curriculum*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Hoyle, C. & Jones, K. (1998). Proof in dynamic geometry contexts. In C. Mammana & V. Villani (eds), *Perspectives on the teaching of geometry for the 21st century* (pp. 121–8). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Huff, D. (1954). *How to lie with statistics*. London: Gollancz.
- Hufferd-Ackles, K., Fuson, K. & Sherin, M. (2004). Describing levels and components of a math-talk learning community. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 35, 81–116.
- Hunting, R., Doig, B., Pearn, C. & Nugent, E. (1995). Initial clinical assessment procedure mathematics tasks—Level B Short Version (upper primary). Unpublished paper, Institute of Mathematics Education, La Trobe University.

- Huntley, M. (1998). Design and implementation of a framework for defining integrated mathematics and science education. *School Science and Mathematics*, 98(6), 320–7.
- Hyde, H. (2004). The measurement of digitised motion. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 60(3), 14–15.
- Improving outcomes in numeracy: The INISSS Project—Improving Numeracy for Indigenous Secondary School Students*. Department of Education, Tasmania, Aboriginal Education Unit. <[www.methodmedia.com.au/whatworks/4\\_3\\_3.htm](http://www.methodmedia.com.au/whatworks/4_3_3.htm)> (12 April 2007).
- Irwin, K.C. (2001). Using everyday knowledge of decimals to enhance understanding. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 32(4), 399–420.
- Ives, B. & Hoy, C. (2003). Graphic organisers applied to higher-level secondary mathematics. *Learning Disabilities Research and Practice*, 18(1), 36–51.
- James, D., Jurich, S. & Estes, S. (2001). *Raising minority academic achievement: A compendium of education programs and practices. Report*. Washington, DC: American Youth Policy Forum. <[www.aypf.org/publicatons/index.html](http://www.aypf.org/publicatons/index.html)> (4 October 2005).
- Johnston-Wilder, S. & Mason, J. (2005). *Developing thinking in geometry*. London: Open University.
- Jones, K. (1998). Deductive and intuitive approaches to solving geometrical problems. In C. Mammana & V. Villani (eds), *Perspectives on the teaching of geometry for the 21st century* (pp. 78–83). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Jordan, C., Ozorco, E. & Averett, A. (2001). *Emerging issues in school, family and community connections. Report*. Austin, TX: Southwest Educational Development Laboratory.
- Joseph, G.G. (1991). *The crest of the peacock: Non-European roots of mathematics*. London: I.B. Tauris.
- Jungwirth, H. (1991). Interaction and gender: Findings of a microethnographical approach to classroom discourse. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 22, 263–84.
- (2003). What is a gender-sensitive mathematics classroom? In L. Burton (ed.), *Which way social justice in mathematics education?* (pp. 3–26). Westport, CT: Praeger.
- Juter, K. (2005). Limits of functions: Traces of students' concept images. *Nordic Studies in Mathematics Education*, 10 (3/4), 65–82.
- Kaiser, G. & Rogers, P. (1995). Introduction: Equity in mathematics education. In P. Rogers & G. Kaiser (eds), *Equity in mathematics education. Influences of feminism and culture* (pp. 1–10). London: Falmer.
- Kaiser, G. & Sriraman, B. (2006). A global survey of international perspectives on modelling in mathematics education. *ZDM*, 38(3), 302–10.

- Kastberg, S. (2003). Using Bloom's Taxonomy as a framework for classroom assessment. *Mathematics Teacher*, 96(6), 402–5.
- Katz, V. (2006). Stages in the history of algebra with implications for teaching *Educational Studies in Mathematics*. <[www.springerlink.com](http://www.springerlink.com)> (13 April 2007).
- Katz, Y. (2000). The parent–school partnership: Shared responsibility for the education of children. *Curriculum and Teaching*, 15(2), 95–102.
- Keith, N. (1999). Whose community schools? New discourses, old patterns. *Theory into Practice*, 38(4), 225–34.
- Kendal, M. (2002). Teaching and learning introductory differential calculus. Unpublished doctoral dissertation, University of Melbourne. <<http://thesis.lib.unimelb.edu.au>> (12 April 2007).
- Kendal, M. & Stacey, K. (1999). Teaching trigonometry. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 54(1), 34–39.
- (2003). Tracing learning of three representations with the differentiation competency framework. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 15(1), 22–41.
- (2004). Algebra: A world of difference. In K. Stacey, H. Chick, & M. Kendal (eds), *The teaching and learning of algebra: The 12th ICMI study* (pp. 329–46). Norwell, MA: Kluwer.
- Kennedy, D. (1983). *Little sparrow: A portrait of Sophia Kovalevsky*. Athens, OH: Ohio University Press.
- Kieran, C. (1992). The learning and teaching of school algebra. In D.A. Grouws (ed.), *Handbook of research on mathematics teaching and learning* (pp. 390–419). New York: Macmillan.
- (2004). The core of algebra: Reflections on its main activities. In K. Stacey, H. Chick & M. Kendal (eds), *The future of the teaching and learning of algebra: The 12th ICMI Study* (pp. 21–33). Norwell, MA: Kluwer.
- (2006). Research on the learning and teaching of algebra. In A. Gutiérrez & P. Boero (eds), *Handbook of research on the psychology of mathematics education: Past, present and future* (pp. 11–49). Rotterdam: Sense Publishers.
- Kieran, C. & Yerushalmy, M. (2004). Research on the role of technological environments in algebra learning and teaching. In K. Stacey, H. Chick & M. Kendal (eds), *The future of the teaching and learning of algebra: The 12th ICMI Study* (pp. 99–152). Norwell, MA: Kluwer.
- Kissane, B. (2001). Algebra and technology: Emerging issues. In B. Lee (ed.), *Mathematics shaping Australia* (Proceedings of the 18th biennial conference of the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers, pp. 120–30). Adelaide: AAMT.

- Kissane, B., Bradley, J. & Kemp, M. (1994). Graphics calculators, equity, and assessment. *Australian Senior Mathematics Journal*, 8(2), 31–43.
- Klaoudatos, N. (1994). Modelling-orientated teaching (a theoretical development for teaching mathematics through the modelling process). *International Journal of Mathematical Education in Science and Technology*, 25(1), 69–79.
- Kline, M. (1979). *Mathematics: An introduction to its spirit and use. Readings from Scientific American* (pp. 46–48). W.H. Freeman and Co.
- Knuth, E.J., Alibali, M.W., McNeil, N.M., Weinberg, A. & Stephens, A.C. (2005). Middle school students' understanding of core algebraic concepts: Equivalence & variable. *ZDM* 37(1), 68–76.
- Knuth, E.J., Stephens, A.C., McNeil, N.M. & Alibali, M.W. (2006). Does understanding the equal sign matter? Evidence from solving equations. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 37(4), 297–312.
- Konold, C. & Pollatsek, A. (2002). Data analysis as the search for signals in noisy processes. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 33(4), 259–89.
- Krainer, K. (2001). Teachers' growth is more than the growth of individual teachers: The case of Gisela. In F. Lin & T. Cooney (eds), *Making sense of mathematics teacher education* (pp. 271–93). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Kroesbergen, E.H. & Van Luit, J.H. (2003). Mathematics interventions for children with special educational needs: A meta-analysis. *Remedial and Special Education*, 24(2), 97–114.
- Küchemann, D. (1978). Children's understanding of numerical variables. *Mathematics in School*, 7(4), 23–26.
- Laborde, C. (1998). Visual phenomena in the teaching/learning of geometry in a computer-based environment. In C. Mammana & V. Villani (eds), *Perspectives on the teaching of geometry for the 21st century* (pp. 113–21). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Ladson-Billings, G. (1995). Toward a theory of culturally relevant pedagogy. *American Educational Research Journal*, 32, 465–91.
- Lajoie, S. (1992). A framework for authentic assessment in mathematics. *National Centre for Research in Mathematical Sciences Education Research Review*, 1(1), 6–12.
- Lampert, M. (2001). Teaching to deliberately connect content across lessons. *Teaching problems and the problems of teaching* (pp. 179–211). New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.
- Landvogt, J., Leder, G. & Abbott, C. (2001). Experiences of learning and teaching in an accelerated program: The view from within. *TalentEd*, 19(2), 1–9.



- Lapointe, A., Mead, N. & Askew, J. (1992). *Learning mathematics*. Princeton, NJ: Educational Testing Service.
- Lave, J. & Wenger, E. (1991). *Situated learning: Legitimate peripheral participation*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Lawson, D.A. & Tabor, J.H. (2001). APs, GPs and vCJD. *Teaching Mathematics and its Applications*, 20(1), 3–9.
- Leder, G.C. (1993). Teacher/student interactions in the mathematics classroom: A different perspective. In E. Fennema & G. Leder (eds), *Mathematics and gender* (pp. 149–68). Brisbane: Queensland University Press.
- (2001). The Victorian Certificate of Education: A gendered affair? *Australian Educational Researcher*, 28(2), 53–66.
- (2006). Catering for individual differences: Lessons learnt from the Australian Mathematics Competition. In P. Grootenboer, R. Zevenbergen & M. Chinnappan (eds), *Identities, cultures and learning spaces* (Proceedings of the 29th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 336–43). Adelaide: MERGA.
- Leder, G., Brew, C. & Rowley, G. (1999). Gender differences in mathematics achievement: Here today and gone tomorrow? In G. Kaiser, E. Luna & I. Huntley (eds), *International comparisons in mathematics education*. Studies in Mathematics series 11 (pp. 213–24). London: Falmer.
- Leder, G.C. & Forgasz, H.J. (2000). Mathematics and gender: Beliefs they are a changin'. In J. Bana & A. Chapman (eds), *Mathematics education beyond 2000* (Proceedings of the 23rd annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 370–6). Sydney: MERGA.
- Lee, K.H. (2005). Mathematically gifted students' geometrical reasoning and informal proof. In H.L. Chick & J.L. Vincent (eds), *Proceedings of the 29th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 3, pp. 241–8). Melbourne: PME.
- Lee, L. (1996). An initiation into algebraic culture through generalisation activities. In N. Bednarz, C. Kieran & L. Lee (eds), *Approaches to algebra: Perspectives for research and teaching* (pp. 87–106). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Lehrer, R. & Schauble, L. (2000). Modeling in mathematics and science. In R. Glaser (ed.), *Advances in instructional psychology: Educational design and cognitive science* (Vol. 5, pp. 101–59). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Leigh-Lancaster, A. (2004). What shape will be unfolded? *Vinculum*, 41(3), 19–20.

- Leigh-Lancaster, A. & Leigh-Lancaster, D. (2002). AEMing for algebra Years 7–10. In C. Vale, J. Roumeliotis & J. Horwood (eds), *Valuing mathematics in society* (pp. 251–62). Melbourne: MAV.
- Leigh-Lancaster, D. (2004). Constructing quadrilaterals, *Vinculum*, 41(3), 15–17.
- Lerman, S. (ed.) (1994). *Cultural perspectives on the mathematics classroom*. Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- (1996). Intersubjectivity in mathematics learning: A challenge to the radical constructivist paradigm? *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 27, 133–50.
- (2001). Cultural, discursive psychology: A sociocultural approach to studying the teaching and learning of mathematics. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 46, 87–113.
- Lesh, R. (2000). Beyond constructivism: Identifying mathematical abilities that are most needed for success beyond school in an age of information. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 12(3), 177–95.
- (2003). How mathematizing reality is different from realizing mathematics. In S. Lamon, W. Parker & S.K. Houston (eds), *Mathematical modelling: A way of life* (pp. 37–69). Chichester: Horwood.
- Lins, R. & Kaput, J. (2004). The early development of algebraic reasoning: The current state of the field. In K. Stacey, H. Chick & M. Kendal (eds), *The future of the teaching and learning of algebra: The 12th ICMI Study* (pp. 47–70). Norwell, MA: Kluwer.
- Little, J.W. (1993). Teachers' professional development in a climate of educational reform. *Educational Evaluation and Policy Analysis*, 15(2), 129–51.
- Lloyd, G.M. & Wilson, M. (1998). Supporting innovation: The impact of a teacher's conceptions of functions on his implementation of a reform curriculum. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 29(3), 248–74.
- Lokan, J., Ford, P. & Greenwood, L. (1996). *Mathematics and science on the line: Australian junior secondary students' performance in the Third International Mathematics and Science Study*. Melbourne: ACER.
- (1997). *Maths & science on the line: Australian middle primary students' performance in the Third International Mathematics and Science Study*. Melbourne: ACER.
- Lokan, J., Greenwood, L. & Cresswell, J. (2001). *15-up and counting, reading, writing, reasoning . . . How literate are Australia's students?* Program for International Student Assessment (PISA). Melbourne: ACER.
- Lopez, G. (2001). The value of hard work: Lessons on parental involvement from an (im)migrant household. *Harvard Educational Review*, 71(3), 416–37.

- Loucks-Horsley, S., Love, N., Stiles, K., Mundry, S. & Hewson, P. (2003). *Designing professional development for teachers of science and mathematics* (2nd edn). Thousand Oaks, CA: Corwin Press.
- Louden, W., Chan, L.K.S., Elkins, J., Greaves, D., House, H., Milton, M., Nichols, S., Rivalland, J., Rohl, M. & van Kraayenoord, C. (eds) (2000). *Mapping the territory: Primary students with learning difficulties—literacy and numeracy*. Canberra: DETYA.
- Lovitt, C. & Clarke, D.M. (1988). *Mathematics curriculum and teaching program: Professional development package. Activity bank (Vols 1 & 2)*. Canberra: Curriculum Development Centre.
- Lovitt, C., Clarke, D.M. & Stephens, M. (1986). Mathematics curriculum and teaching program—an invitation for you to be involved. In K.V. Swinson (ed.), *Proceedings of the 11th biennial conference of the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers* (pp. 4–5). Brisbane: AAMT.
- Lowe, I. (1984). The RIME teacher development project. In P. Costello, S. Ferguson, K. Slinn., M. Stephens, D. Trembath & D. Williams (eds), *Proceedings of the 10th biennial conference of the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers* (pp. 210–17). Blackburn: AAMT.
- (1988). *Mathematics at work: Modelling your world (Vol. 1)*. Canberra: Australian Academy of Science.
- (1991a). *Geometry Everywhere: Examples, worksheets and references for teaching geometry to Years 7–10*. Melbourne: Ministry of Education and Training Victoria.
- (1991b). *Mathematics at work: Modelling your world (Vol. 2)*. Canberra: Australian Academy of Science.
- Maaß, K. (2006). What are modelling competencies? *ZDM*, 38(2), 113–42.
- MacGregor, M. & Moore, R. (1991). *Teaching mathematics in the multicultural classroom: A resource for teachers and teacher educators*. Melbourne: University of Melbourne.
- Mackrell, K. & Johnston-Wilder, P. (2005). Thinking geometrically: Dynamic geometry. In S. Johnston-Wilder & D. Pimm (eds), *Teaching secondary mathematics with ICT* (pp. 81–100). Maidenhead: Open University Press.
- Makar, K. (2004). Developing statistical inquiry: Prospective secondary mathematics and science teachers' investigations into equity and fairness through analysis of accountability data. Doctoral dissertation. School of Education, University of Texas at Austin. <www.stat.auckland.ac.nz/iasedissert> (12 April 2007).
- Makar, K. & Canada, D. (2005). Preservice teachers' conceptions of variation. In H. Chick & J. Vincent (eds), *Proceedings of the 29th annual conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 3, pp. 273–80). Melbourne: PME.

- Malloy, C. (2002). Democratic access to mathematics through democratic education: An introduction. In L.D. English (ed.), *Handbook of international research in mathematics education* (pp. 17–25). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Manoucherhri, A. (1999). Computers and school mathematics reform: Implications for mathematics teacher education. *Journal of Computers in Mathematics and Science Teaching*, 18(1), 31–48.
- Marsh, C. (1994). *Producing a national curriculum: Plans and paranoia*. Sydney: Allen & Unwin.
- Marshall, J., Makar, K. & Kazak, S. (2002). Young urban students' conceptions of data uses, representation, and analysis. In D.S. Mewborn, P. Sztajn, D.Y. White, H.G. Wiegel, R.L. Bryant & K. Nooney (eds), *Proceedings of the 24th annual meeting of the North American Chapter of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education (PME-NA24)* (Vol. 3, pp. 1293–1304). Columbus, OH: ERIC Clearinghouse, Mathematics and Environment Education.
- Mason, J. (1996). Expressing generality and roots of algebra. In N. Bednarz, C. Kieran, & L. Lee (eds), *Approaches to algebra: Perspectives for research and teaching* (pp. 65–86). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- (2004). Doing  $\neq$  construing and doing + discussing  $\neq$  learning: The importance of the structure of attention. *Plenary and regular lectures. Tenth International Congress on Mathematical Education*, Copenhagen, 4–11 July.
- Mason, J., Graham, A. & Johnston-Wilder, S. (2005). *Developing thinking in algebra*. London: Sage.
- Mason, J. & Spence, M. (1998). Towards a psychology of knowing-to. In C. Kanes, M. Goos & E. Warren (eds), *Teaching mathematics in new times* (Proceedings of the 21st annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 342–9). Brisbane: MERGA.
- Masters, G. (2006). *Mathematics as a subject in the school curriculum*. Ken Cunningham Lecture, delivered 1 November 2006 at the Australian Council for Educational Research, Melbourne.
- Mathematical Association of Victoria (2006). *MAV Maths Talent Quest 2006: Information booklet*. <[www.mav.vic.edu.au/studact/mtq2007/MTQ-Information-Booklet-2007.pdf](http://www.mav.vic.edu.au/studact/mtq2007/MTQ-Information-Booklet-2007.pdf)> (12 April 2007).
- Maths300*. Curriculum Corporation. <[www.curriculum.edu.au/maths300](http://www.curriculum.edu.au/maths300)> (23 January 2007).
- Matthews, C., Watego, L., Cooper, T. & Baturo, A. (2005). Does mathematics education in Australia devalue Indigenous culture? Indigenous perspectives and non-Indigenous reflections. In P. Clarkson, A. Downton, D. Gronn, M. Horne, A. McDonough, R. Pierce & A. Roche (eds), *Building connections: Theory, research and practice* (Proceedings of the 28th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 513–20). Sydney: MERGA.

- Matthews, S., Howard, P. & Perry, B. (2003). Working together to enhance Australian Aboriginal students' mathematics learning. In L. Bragg, C. Campbell, G. Herbert & J. Mousley (eds), *Mathematics education research: Innovation, networking, opportunity* (Proceedings of the 26th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 9–28). Sydney: MERGA.
- Maxwell, G. (1997). Future directions for competency based assessment. *Queensland Journal of Educational Research*, 13(3), 71–84.
- McCarthy, J. (2002). Connecting numeracy across the curriculum in the outback. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 58(4), 22–7.
- McClain, K. & Cobb, P. (2001). An analysis of development of sociomathematical norms in one first-grade classroom. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 32, 236–66.
- McGaw, B. (2004). Australian mathematics learning in an international context. Paper presented at the 27th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, Townsville, 27–30 June.
- McGraw, S. (ed.) (2003). *Integrated mathematics: Choices and challenges*. Reston, VA: NCTM.
- MacGregor, M. (1990). Reading and writing in mathematics. In J. Bickmore-Brand (ed.), *Language in maths*. Melbourne: Australian Reading Association.
- McIntosh, A. (2002). Common errors in mental computation of students in Grades 3–10. In B. Barton, K. Irwin, M. Pfannkuch & M. Thomas (eds), *Mathematics Education in the South Pacific* (Proceedings of the 25th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 457–72). Sydney: MERGA.
- McIntosh, A. & Dole, S. (2004). *Mental computation: A strategies approach*. Hobart: Department of Education, Tasmania.
- McIntosh, A., Reys, B. & Reys, R. (1997). *Number SENSE: Simple effective number sense experiences, Grades 6–8*, Parsippany, NJ: Dale Seymour.
- McKimmie, T. (2002). Gender and textbooks. *Vinculum*, 39(4), 18–23.
- McKinlay, J. (2000). Graphics calculators and assessment in mathematics education. In W. Morony & M. Stephens (eds), *Students, mathematics and graphics calculators into the new millennium* (pp. 81–91). Adelaide: Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers.
- McLeod, D.B. (1992). Research on affect in mathematics education: A reconceptualisation. In D.A. Grouws (ed.), *Handbook of research on mathematics teaching and learning* (pp. 575–96). New York: Macmillan.

- McLeod, D.B. & Adams, V.M. (eds) (1989). *Affects and mathematical problem solving*. New York: Springer-Verlag.
- McMillan, J. (2004). *Classroom assessment: Principles and practice for effective instruction* (3rd edn). Boston: Pearson Education.
- McMullin, L. (1999). The scrambler, or a family of vectors at the amusement park. *Mathematics Teacher*, 92(1), 64–9.
- McNamara, O., Hustler, D., Strinach, I., Rodrigo, M., Beresford, E. & Botcherby, S. (2000). Room to manoeuvre: Mobilising the ‘active partner’ in home–school relations. *British Educational Research Journal*, 26(4), 473–90.
- McNeil, N.M. & Alibali, M.W. (2005). Knowledge change as a function of mathematics experience: All contexts are not created equal. *Journal of Cognition and Development*, 6(2), 285–306.
- Meaney, T. & Fairhall, U. (2003). Tensions and possibilities: Indigenous parents doing mathematics curriculum development. In L. Bragg, C. Campbell, G. Herbert & J. Mousley (eds), *Mathematics education research: Innovation, networking, opportunity* (Proceedings of the 26th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 507–14). Sydney: MERGA.
- Mewborn, D. (2003). Teaching, teachers’ knowledge, and their professional development. In J. Kilpatrick, W.G. Martin & D. Schifter (eds), *A research companion to principles and standards for school mathematics* (pp. 45–52). Reston VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Miedel, W. & Reynolds, A. (1999). Parent involvement in early intervention for disadvantaged children: Does it matter? *Journal of School Psychology*, 37(4), 379–402.
- Mills, C. & Gale, T. (2004). Parent participation in disadvantaged schools: Moving beyond attributions of blame. *Australian Journal of Education*, 48, 268–81.
- Milton, M. (2000). Numeracy. In W. Louden, L.K.S. Chan, J. Elkins, D. Greaves, H. House, M. Milton, S. Nichols, J. Rivalland, M. Rohl & C. Van Kraayenoord (eds), *Mapping the territory: Primary students with learning difficulties—Literacy and numeracy* (Vol. 2, pp. 109–33). Canberra, Australia: DETYA.
- Ministerial Council on Education, Employment, Training and Youth Affairs (1999). *The Adelaide declaration on national goals for schooling in the twenty-first century*. Melbourne: MCEETYA Secretariat. <[www.dest.gov.au/schools/adelaide/adelaide.htm](http://www.dest.gov.au/schools/adelaide/adelaide.htm)> (13 December 2005).
- (2003). *National report on schooling in Australia, 2000*. Canberra: Ministerial Committee for Education, Employment, Training and Youth Affairs, Commonwealth of Australia. <<http://online.curriculum.edu.au/anr2000>> (12 April 2007).

- (2006). *National Consistency in Curriculum Outcomes: Statements of Learning and Professional Elaborations for Mathematics*. Canberra: Ministerial Council for Employment, Education, Training and Youth Affairs. <[www.mceetya.edu.au](http://www.mceetya.edu.au)> (12 April 2007).
- Mirra, A. (ed.) (2004). *A family's guide: Fostering your child's success in school mathematics*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Mitchelmore, M. (1995). Number and measurement. In L. Grimison & J. Pegg (eds), *Teaching secondary school mathematics: Theory into practice* (pp. 50–86). Sydney: Harcourt Brace.
- Mitchelmore, M. & White, P. (1998). Development of angle concepts: A framework for research, *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 10(3), 4–27.
- (2000). Development of angle concepts by progressive abstraction and generalisation. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 41, 209–38.
- Moloney, K. & Stacey, K. (1997). Changes with age in students' conceptions of decimal notation. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 9(5), 25–38.
- Monaghan, J. (1991). Problems with the language of limits. *For the Learning of Mathematics*, 11(3), 20–24.
- Morgan, C. & Watson, A. (2002). The interpretative nature of teachers' assessment of students' mathematics: Issues for equity. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 33(2), 78–110.
- Morony, W. & Stephens, M. (eds) (2000). *Students, mathematics and graphics calculators into the new millennium* (pp. 81–91). Adelaide: Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers.
- Moss, M., Merrick, C., Targett, R., Chaffey, G., MacLeod, B. & Bailey, S. (2005). *Gifted education professional development package*. Canberra: Department of Education, Science and Training. <[www.dest.gov.au/sectors/school\\_education/publications\\_resources/profiles/Gifted\\_Education\\_Professional\\_Development\\_Package.htm](http://www.dest.gov.au/sectors/school_education/publications_resources/profiles/Gifted_Education_Professional_Development_Package.htm)> (23 January 2007).
- Mueller, U. & Forster, P. (2000). A comparative analysis of the 1996–1999 Calculus TEE papers. In J. Bana & A. Chapman (eds), *Mathematics education beyond 2000* (Proceedings of the 23rd annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 465–73). Sydney: MERGA.
- Mulligan, J., Papic, M., Prescott, A. & Mitchelmore, M. (2006). Improving early numeracy through a Pattern and Structure Mathematics Awareness Program (PASMAPP). In P. Grootenboer, R. Zevenbergen & M. Chinnappan (eds), *Identities, cultures and learning spaces* (Proceedings of the 29th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 376–83). Adelaide: MERGA.

- Mullis, I.V.S., Martin, M.O., Fierros, E.G., Goldberg, A.L. & Stemler, S.E. (2000). *Gender differences in achievement: IEA's Third International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMSS)*. Chestnut Hill MA: International Association for the Evaluation of Educational Achievement (IEA), TIMSS International Study Center, Boston College. <<http://isc.bc.edu/timss1995i/gender.html>> (12 April 2007).
- Munoz, M. & Mullet, S. (1998). Evolution of the intuitive mastery of the relationship between base, exponent, and number magnitude in high-school students. *Mathematical Cognition*, 4(1), 67–77.
- National Council of Teachers of Mathematics (1980). *An agenda for action: Recommendations for school mathematics of the 1980s*. Reston, VA: NCTM.
- (1989). *Curriculum and evaluation standards for school mathematics*. Reston, VA: NCTM.
- (2000). *Principles and standards for school mathematics*. Reston, VA: NCTM.
- (2007). *Curriculum Focal Points*. <[www.nctm.org/focalpoints](http://www.nctm.org/focalpoints)> (12 April 2007).
- Neiderer, K. & Irwin, K.C. (2001). Using problem solving to identify mathematically gifted children. In M. van den Heuvel-Pranhuizen (ed.), *Proceedings of the 25th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 3, pp. 431–8). Utrecht: PME.
- Neiderer, K., Irwin, K.C. & Reilly, I.I. (2003). Identification of mathematically gifted students in New Zealand. *High Ability Studies*, 14(1), 71–84.
- Nissen, P. (2000). A geometry solution from multiple perspectives. *Mathematics Teacher*, 93(4), 324–7.
- Northcote, N. & McIntosh, A. (1999). What mathematics do adults really do in everyday life? *Australian Primary Mathematics Classroom*, 4(1), 19–21.
- Noss, R. & Hoyles, C. (1996). *Windows on mathematical meanings*. Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Noura, K. (2005). How to teach mathematics using technology. In J. Mousley, L. Bragg & C. Campbell (eds), *Mathematics—Celebrating Achievement* (pp. 256–64). Melbourne: Mathematical Association of Victoria.
- Ocean, J. & Miller-Reilly, B. (1997). Black holes and beginning teachers: A connected approach to teaching mathematics. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 53(4), 17–20.
- Op 't Eynde, P., de Corte, E. & Verschaffel, L. (2002). Framing students' mathematics-related beliefs. In G. Leder, E. Pehkonen, & G. Törner (eds), *Beliefs: A hidden variable in mathematics education?* (pp. 13–37). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) (1999). *Measuring student knowledge and skills: A new framework for assessment*. Paris: OECD.



- (2000). *Programme for International Student Assessment (PISA)*. <[www.pisa.oecd.org](http://www.pisa.oecd.org)> (16 September 2005).
- Padula, J. with Lam, S. & Schmidtke, M. (2001). Syntax and word order: Important aspects of mathematical English. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 57(4), 31–5.
- (2002). Mathematical English: Some insights for teachers and students. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 58(3), 40–4.
- Pagni, D. (1998). Giving meaning to multiplication and division of fractions. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 54(1), 11–15.
- Parliament of the Commonwealth of Australia. (2000). Inquiry into the education of boys. Media release from the Parliament of Australia, House of Representatives Standing Committee on Employment, Education and Workplace Relations, 19 June.
- (2002). *Boys: Getting it right* (Report on the inquiry into the education of boys). House of Representatives Standing Committee on Education and Training. Canberra: Commonwealth of Australia.
- Pearn, C. & Stephens, M. (2004). Why you have to probe to discover what Year 8 students really think about fractions. In I. Putt, R. Faragher & M. McLean (eds), *Mathematics education for the third millennium: Towards 2010* (Proceedings of the 27th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 430–7). Sydney: MERGA.
- Pegg, J. (2003). Assessment in mathematics: A developmental approach. In M. Royer (ed.), *Mathematical cognition* (pp. 227–59). Greenwich, CT: Information Age.
- Pegg, J., Graham, L. & Bellert, A. (2005). The effect of improved automaticity of basic number skills on persistently low-achieving pupils. In H.L. Chick & J.L. Vincent (eds), *Proceedings of the 29th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 4, pp. 49–56). Melbourne: PME.
- Pegg, J. & Panizzon, D. (2004). Addressing changing assessment agendas: Experiences of secondary mathematics teachers in rural NSW. In I. Putt, R. Faragher, & M. McLean (eds), *Mathematics education for the third millennium: Towards 2010* (Proceedings of the 27th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 438–45). Sydney: MERGA.
- Pegg, J., Panizzon, D. & Inglis, M. (2003). Helping teachers incorporate changing agendas in assessment into their primary and secondary classrooms. <[scs.une.edu.au/CF/Papers/pdf/Pegg.pdf](http://scs.une.edu.au/CF/Papers/pdf/Pegg.pdf)> (28 July 2006).

- Pena, D. (2000). Parent involvement: Influencing factors and implications. *The Journal of Educational Research*, 94(1), 42–54.
- Peressini, D. (1997). Parental involvement in the reform of mathematics education. *Mathematics Teacher*, 90(6), 421–7.
- (1998). The portrayal of parents in the school mathematics reform literature: Locating the context for parental involvement. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 29, 555–72.
- Pérez Carreón, G., Drake, C. & Barton, A. (2005). The importance of presence: Immigrant parents' school engagement experiences. *American Educational Research Journal*, 42, 465–98.
- Perry, B. & Howard, P. (2001). Arithmetic thinking strategies and low achieving junior high school students in Australia. In R. Speiser, C.A. Maher & C.N. Walter (eds), *Proceedings of the 23rd annual meeting of the Psychology of Mathematics Education—North America Group* (pp. 273–80). Columbus, OH: ERIC Clearing House.
- (2002). A systematic program for students who are experiencing difficulty with mathematics as they transition from elementary to high school in Australia. In B. Barton, K. Irwin, M. Pfannkuch & M. Thomas (eds), *Mathematics education in the South Pacific* (Proceedings of the 25th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 543–50). Sydney: MERGA.
- Perry, B., Howard, P. & Tracey, D. (1999). Head mathematics teachers' beliefs about the learning and teaching of mathematics. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 11, 39–53.
- Perso, T. (1992). Making the most of errors. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 48(2), 12–14.
- (2003). *Improving Aboriginal numeracy: A book for education systems, school administrators, teachers and teacher educators*. Perth: Mathematics, Science and Technology Education Centre (MASTEC), Edith Cowan University.
- Pfannkuch, M. & Brown, C. (1996). Building on and challenging students' intuitions about probability: Can we improve undergraduate learning? *Journal of Statistics Education*, 4(1) <[www.amstat.org/publications/jse/v4n1/pfannkuch.html](http://www.amstat.org/publications/jse/v4n1/pfannkuch.html)> (12 April 2007).
- Pfannkuch, M., Budgett, S., Parsonage, R. & Horring, J. (2004). *Comparison of data plots: Building a pedagogical framework*. Paper presented at the International Conference on Mathematics Education, Bergen, Norway.
- Piaget, J. (1954). *The construction of reality in the child*. New York: Basic Books.
- Picker, S. & Berry, J. (2001). Investigating pupils' images of mathematicians. In M. van den Heuvel-Panhuizen (ed.), *Proceedings of the 25th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 4, pp. 49–56). Utrecht, The Netherlands: PME.

- Pierce, R. & Stacey, K. (2001). A framework for algebraic insight. In J. Bobis, B. Perry & M. Mitchelmore (eds), *Numeracy and beyond* (Proceedings of the 24th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 418–25). Sydney: MERGA.
- Pierce, R., Stacey, K. & Ball, L. (2005). Mathematics from still and moving images. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 61(3), 26–31.
- Pirie, S.E.B. & Kieren, T. (1994). Growth in mathematical understanding: How can we characterise it and how can we represent it? *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 26, 165–90.
- Pirie, S.E.B. & Martin, S. (2000). The role of collecting in the growth of mathematical understanding. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 12, 127–46.
- Pitman, A. (1989). Mathematics education reform in its social, political and economic contexts. In N. Ellerton & M.A. Clements (eds), *School mathematics: The challenge to change* (pp. 101–19). Geelong: Deakin University Press.
- Plummer, F. (1999). Rich assessment tasks: Exploring quality assessment for the School Certificate. *SCAN*, 18(1), 14–19.
- Pollak, H. (1997). Solving problems in the real world. In L.A. Steen (ed.), *Why numbers count: Quantitative literacy for tomorrow's America*. New York: College Entrance Examination Board.
- Przenioslo, M. (2004). Images of the limit of function formed in the course of mathematical studies at the university. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 22(1), 1–36.
- Pugalee, D., Frykholm, J., Johnson, A., Slovin, H., Malloy, C. & Preston, R. (2002). *Navigating through geometry in Grades 6–8*. Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Puig, L. & Rojano, T. (2004). The history of algebra in mathematics education. In K. Stacey, H. Chick & M. Kendal (eds), *The teaching and learning of algebra: The 12th ICMI study* (pp. 189–224). Norwell, MA: Kluwer.
- Putnam, R. & Borko, H. (1997). Teacher learning: Implication of new views of cognition. In B.J. Biddle, T.L. Good & I.F. Goodson (eds), *The international handbook of teachers and teaching* (pp. 1223–96). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Qualifications and Curriculum Authority (n.d.). *National curriculum in action*. <[www.ncaction.org.uk](http://www.ncaction.org.uk)> (2 February 2007).
- Queensland Board of Senior Secondary School Studies (2001). *Mathematics B Senior Syllabus*. Brisbane: Queensland Board of Senior Secondary School Studies.
- Queensland Board of Teacher Registration (2005). *Numeracy in teacher education: The way forward in the 21st century*. A report of the Numeracy in Preservice Teacher Education Working Party. Brisbane: Queensland Board of Teacher Registration.

- Queensland Studies Authority (2006). *Moderation of achievement in school-based assessment*. <[www.qas.qld.edu.au/yrs11\\_12/qssessment](http://www.qas.qld.edu.au/yrs11_12/qssessment)> (24 August 2006).
- Quinlan, C. (2004). Sparking interest in trigonometry. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 60(3), 17–20.
- Radford, L. (1995). Before the other unknowns were invented: Didactic inquiries on the methods and problems of medieval Italian algebra. *For the Learning of Mathematics*, 15(3), 28–38.
- Radford, L. & Grenier, M. (1996). On the dialectical relationships between symbols and algebraic ideas. In L. Puig & A. Gutierrez (eds), *Proceedings of the 20th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 4, pp. 179–86). Valencia: PME.
- Rasmussen, C. & Nemirovsky, R. (2003). Becoming friends with acceleration: The role of tools and bodily activity in mathematical learning. In N.A. Pateman, B.J. Dougherty & J.T. Zilliox (eds), *Proceedings of the 27th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 1, pp. 127–34). Honolulu, HI: PME.
- Rasmussen, D., Rasmussen, S. & Bennett, D. (eds) (1995). *Teaching geometry with The Geometer's Sketchpad: Teaching notes and sample activities*. Berkeley, CA: Key Curriculum Press.
- Raymond, A. (1997). Inconsistency between a beginning elementary school teacher's mathematical beliefs and teaching practice. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 28, 550–76.
- Reay, D. (1998). *Class work: Mothers' involvement in their children's schooling*. London: University College Press.
- Reese, S. (2004). Teacher portfolios: Displaying the art of teaching. *Techniques: Connecting Education and Careers*, 79(5), 18.
- Reid, A. (2005). The politics of national curriculum collaboration: How can Australia move beyond the railway gauge metaphor? In C. Harris & C. Marsh (eds), *Curriculum developments in Australia: Promising initiatives, impasses and dead-ends* (pp. 39–51). Canberra: Australian Curriculum Studies Association.
- Richards, J. (1991). Mathematical discussions. In E. von Glaserfeld (ed.), *Radical constructivism in mathematics education* (pp. 13–51). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Rittle-Johnson, B. & Alibali, M.W. (1999). Conceptual and procedural knowledge of mathematics: Does one lead to the other? *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 91, 175–89.
- Rogers, E.M. & Shoemaker, F.F. (1971). *Communication of innovations: A cross-cultural approach*. New York: Free Press.
- Rohl, M., Milton, M. & Brady, D. (2000). Survey of schools. In W. Louden, L.K.S. Chan, J. Elkins, D. Greaves, H. House, M. Milton, S. Nichols, J. Rivalland, M. Rohl & C. Van Kraayenoord (eds), *Mapping the territory: Primary students with learning difficulties—literacy and numeracy* (Vol. 2, pp. 7–49). Canberra: Department of Education, Training, and Youth Affairs.

- Romberg, T. (1993). How one comes to know: Models and theories of the learning of mathematics. In M. Niss (ed.), *Investigations into assessment in mathematics education: An ICMI study*. Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Rossmann, A., Chance, B. & Locke, R. (2001). *Workshop statistics: Discovery with data and Fathom*. Emeryville, CA: Key Curriculum Press.
- Rothman, S. (2002). *Achievement in literacy and numeracy by 14 year olds, 1975–1998* (LSAY Research Report No. 29). Melbourne: ACER.
- Ryan, J. (1991). Calculus: With some respect to time. *Australian Senior Mathematics Journal*, 5(2), 88–97.
- Ryan, M. (1992). What is a mathematician? *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 48(4), 36–37.
- Sadler, D.R. (1987). Specifying and promulgating achievement standards. *Oxford Review of Education*, 13(2), 191–209.
- (1996). Criteria and standards in student assessment. *Proceedings HERDSA Conference*, Perth, 7–8 July.
- Sarason, S. (1995). *Parental involvement and the political principle: Why the existing governance structure of schools should be abolished*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass.
- Saxe, J. (2002). Children's developing mathematics in collective practices: A framework for analysis. *The Journal of Learning Sciences*, 11(2–3), 275–300.
- Schliemann, A.D., Carraher, D.W. & Brizuela, B.M. (2007). *Bringing out the algebraic character of arithmetic: From children's ideas to classroom practice*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Schneider, M. (1993). A way to analyse several difficulties the pupils meet with in calculus. In M. Artigue & G. Eryvynck (eds), *Proceedings of Working Group 3 on Students' Difficulties in Calculus, ICME-7*, (pp. 31–4). Québec, Canada.
- Schoenfeld, A.H. (1988). When good teaching leads to bad results: The disasters of 'well-taught' mathematics courses. *Educational Psychologist*, 23, 145–66.
- (1991). On mathematics as sense-making: An informal attack on the unfortunate divorce of formal and informal mathematics. In J. Voss, D. Perkins & J. Segal (eds), *Informal reasoning and education* (pp. 311–43). Hillsdale NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- (1992). Learning to think mathematically: Problem solving, metacognition and sense making in mathematics. In D.A. Grouws (ed.), *Handbook of research on mathematics teaching and learning* (pp. 334–70). New York: Macmillan.
- Schwarz, B.B. & Hershkowitz, R. (1999). Prototypes: Brakes or levers in learning the function concept? The role of computer tools. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 30(4), 362–89.

- Secada, W. & Adajian, L. (1997). Mathematics teachers' change in the context of their professional communities. In E. Fennema & B. Nelson (eds), *Mathematics teachers in transition* (pp. 193–219). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Sfard, A., Forman, E.A. & Kieran, C. (2001). Learning discourse: Sociocultural approaches to research in mathematics education. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 46(1–3), 1–11.
- Shan, S. & Bailey, P. (1994). *Multiple factors: Classroom mathematics for equality and justice*. Oakhill: Trentham Books.
- Shaughnessy, M. & Pfannkuch, M. (2002). How faithful is Old Faithful? *Mathematics Teacher*, 95(4), 252–9.
- Shell Centre for Mathematical Education (1985). *The language of functions and graphs*. Nottingham: Joint Matriculation Board and Shell Centre for Mathematical Education.
- Shephard, L. (2001). The role of classroom assessment in teaching and learning. In V. Richardson (ed.), *Handbook of research on teaching* (pp. 1066–99). Washington, DC: American Educational Research Association.
- Shield, M. & Dole, S. (2002). Investigating textbook presentation of ratio and proportion. In B. Barton, K. Irwin, M. Pfannkuch & M. Thomas (eds), *Mathematics education in the South Pacific* (Proceedings of the 25th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 608–16). Sydney: MERGA.
- Shoaf-Grubbs, M. (1995). Research results on the effect of the graphic calculator on female students' cognitive levels and visual thinking. In L. Burton & B. Jaworski (eds), *Technology in mathematics teaching: A bridge between teaching and learning* (pp. 213–30). Lund, Sweden: Chartwell-Bratt Ltd.
- Shulman, L. (1986). Those who understand: Knowledge growth in teaching. *Educational Researcher*, 15(2), 4–14.
- Shulman, L.S. (1987) Knowledge and teaching: Foundations of the new reform. *Harvard Educational Review*, 57(1), 1–22.
- Siebert, D. (2002). Connecting informal thinking and algorithms: The case of division of fractions. In B. Litwiller & G. Bright (eds), *Making sense of fractions, ratios and proportions: 2002 Year Book* (pp. 247–56). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Simon, D. (2002). Middle Years Numeracy Research Project tasks and rubrics. Personal communication.

- Siemon, D. & Virgona, J. (2002). Reflections on the Middle Years Numeracy Research Project—is it a case of too much too soon, for too many? In B. Barton, K. Irwin, M. Pfannkuch & M. Thomas (eds), *Mathematics education in the South Pacific* (Proceedings of the 25th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 617–24). Sydney: MERGA.
- Siemon, D., Virgona, J. & Corneille, K. (2001). *The middle years numeracy research project: 5–9, final report* (A project commissioned by the Department of Education, Employment and Training, Victoria, Catholic Education Commission of Victoria and Association of Independent Schools of Victoria. RMIT University). <[www.sofweb.vic.edu.au/mys/research/MYNRP/index.htm](http://www.sofweb.vic.edu.au/mys/research/MYNRP/index.htm)> (12 April 2007).
- Simonsen, L.M. & Dick, T.P. (1997). Teachers' perceptions of the impact of graphing calculators in the mathematics classroom. *Journal of Computers in Mathematics and Science Teaching*, 16(2/3), 239–68.
- Sinicrope, R., Mick, H. & Kolb, J. (2002). Fraction division interpretations. In B. Litwiller & G. Bright (eds), *Making sense of fractions, ratios and proportions: 2002 Year Book* (pp. 162–75). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Skemp, R. (1987). *The psychology of learning mathematics*. Hillsdale, NJ: Erlbaum.
- Skovmose, O. & Valero, P. (2002). Democratic access to powerful mathematics in a democratic country. In L. English (ed.), *Handbook of international research in mathematics education* (pp. 383–408). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Spady, W. (1993). *Outcome-based education*. Canberra: Australian Curriculum Studies Association.
- Spady, W. & Marshall, K. (1991). Beyond traditional outcome-based education. *Educational Leadership*, 45(5), 52–6.
- Sriraman, B. (2003). Mathematical giftedness, problem solving, and the ability to formulate generalisations. *The Journal of Secondary Gifted Education*, 14(3), 151–65.
- Stacey, K. (1991). Teaching mathematical modelling. In J. O'Reilly & S. Wettenhall (eds), *Mathematics: Inclusive dynamic exciting active stimulating*, Proceedings of the 28th annual conference of the Mathematical Association of Victoria (pp. 221–7). Melbourne: MAV.
- (2003). The need to increase attention to mathematical reasoning. In H. Hollingsworth, J. Lokan & B. McCrae (eds), *Teaching mathematics in Australia: Results from the TIMSS 1999 Video Study* (pp. 119–22). Melbourne: ACER.
- (2005). The place of problem solving in contemporary mathematics curriculum documents. *Journal of Mathematical Behavior*, 24, 341–50.

- Stacey, K. & Chick, H. (2004). Solving the problem with algebra. In K. Stacey, H. Chick & M. Kendal (eds), *The future of the teaching and learning of algebra: The 12th ICMI Study* (pp. 1–20). Norwell, MA: Kluwer.
- Stacey, K. & Groves, S. (1984). Problem solving: People and projects in Australia. In P. Costello, S. Ferguson, K. Slinn, M. Stephens, D. Trembath & D. Williams (eds), *Proceedings of the 10th biennial conference of the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers* (pp. 205–9). Melbourne: AAMT.
- Stacey, K. & Price, E. (2005). Surds, spirals, dynamic geometry and CAS. In J. Mousley, L. Bragg & C. Campbell (eds), *Mathematics—Celebrating Achievement* (MAV annual conference 2005, pp. 298–306). Melbourne: MAV.
- Steele, M.M. (2004). A review of the literature on mathematics instruction for elementary students with learning disabilities. *Focus on Learning Problems in Mathematics*, 26(2), 62–8.
- Steen, L. (2001). The case for quantitative literacy. In *Mathematics and democracy: The case for quantitative literacy* (pp. 1–22). National Council on Education and the Disciplines. <[www.maa.org/QI/001-22.pdf](http://www.maa.org/QI/001-22.pdf)> (12 April 2007).
- (ed.) (2001) *Mathematics and democracy: The case for quantitative literacy*. The National Council on Education and the Disciplines. <[www.maa.org/QI/mathanddemocracy.html](http://www.maa.org/QI/mathanddemocracy.html)> (12 April 2007).
- Stein, M.K., Silver, E. & Smith, M. (1998). Mathematics reform and teacher development: A community of practice perspective. In J. Greeno & S. Goldman (eds), *Thinking practices: A symposium on mathematics and science learning* (pp. 17–52). Mahwah, NJ: Erlbaum.
- Steinle, V., Stacey, K. & Chambers, D. (2002). *Teaching and learning about decimals* (Version 2.1). Melbourne: University of Melbourne.
- Stenhouse, L. (1975). *An introduction to curriculum research and development*. London: Heinemann.
- Stephens, M. (1990). Discipline review of teacher education in mathematics and science: A response from the Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers. *Australian Senior Mathematics Journal*, 4(1), 40–51.
- (2000). *Identification and evaluation of teaching practices that enhance numeracy achievement*. Canberra: AusInfo.
- Stephens, M., Clarke, D.J. & Wallbridge, M. (1994). Policy to practice: High stakes assessment as a catalyst for classroom change. In G. Bell, B. Wright, N. Lesson & J. Geake (eds), *Challenges in mathematics education: Constraints on construction* (Proceedings of the 17th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 571–80). Lismore: MERGA.



- Stewart, S. (2006). A new elementary function for our curricula? *Australian Senior Mathematics Journal*, 19(2), 8–25.
- Stewart, S. & Thomas, M.O.J. (2006). Student thinking about eigenvalues and eigenvectors: Formal, symbolic and embodied notions. In P. Grootenboer, R. Zevenbergen & M. Chinnappan (eds), *Identities, cultures and learning spaces* (Proceedings of the 29th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 487–95). Adelaide: MERGA.
- Stillman, G. (1998). The emperor's new clothes: Teaching and assessment of mathematical applications at the senior secondary level. In P. Galbraith, W. Blum, G. Booker & I.D. Huntley (eds), *Mathematical modelling: Teaching and assessment in a technology-rich world* (pp. 243–54). Chichester: Horwood.
- (2001). The impact of school-based assessment on the implementation of a modelling/applications-based curriculum: An Australian example. *Teaching Mathematics and Its Applications*, 20(3), 101–7.
- (2002). Assessing higher order mathematical thinking through applications. Unpublished PhD thesis, University of Queensland, Brisbane.
- (2006). The role of challenge in engaging lower secondary students in investigating real world tasks. In E. Barbeau & P. Taylor (eds), *Proceedings of the ICMI Study 16: Mathematical Challenges*, Trondheim, Norway.
- (2007). Implementation case study: Sustaining curriculum change. In W. Blum, P. Galbraith, H.-W. Henn & M. Niss (eds), *Modelling and applications in mathematics education, New ICMI Studies Series no. 10* (pp. 497–502), New York: Springer.
- Stutzman, R. & Race, K. (2004). EMRF: Everyday Rubric Grading. *Mathematics Teacher*, 97(1), 34–9.
- Sullivan, P. & Clarke, D.J. (1991). *Communication in the classroom: The importance of good questioning*. Geelong: Deakin University Press.
- Sullivan, P., Mousley, J. & Zevenbergen, R. (2006). Developing guidelines for teachers helping students experiencing difficulty in learning mathematics. In P. Grootenboer, R. Zevenbergen & M. Chinnappan (eds), *Identities, cultures and learning spaces* (Proceedings of the 29th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 496–503). Adelaide: MERGA.
- Summers, A. (2003). *The end of equality: Work, babies, and women's choices in 21st century Australia*. Sydney: Random House.
- Swan, P. (1997). *Dice dilemmas*. Perth: A-Z Type.

- Swedosh, P., Dowsey, J., Caruso, N., Flynn, P. & Tynan, D. (2006). *MathsWorld: Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2*. Melbourne: Macmillan.
- Tall, D. (1985). Understanding the calculus. *Mathematics Teaching*, 110, 49–53.
- (1992). The transition to advanced mathematical thinking: Functions, limits, infinity and proof. In D.A. Grouws (ed.), *Handbook of research on mathematics teaching and learning* (pp. 495–511). New York: Macmillan.
- (1996). Functions and calculus. In A. Bishop, K. Clements, C. Keitel, J. Kilpatrick & C. Laborde (eds), *International handbook of mathematics education* (Vol. 1, pp. 289–325). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- (2004). Thinking through three worlds of mathematics. In M. Johnsen Hoines & A.B. Fuglestad (eds), *Proceedings of the 28th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 4, pp. 281–8). Bergen, Norway: PME.
- (2006). A theory of mathematical growth through embodiment, symbolism and proof. *Annales de Didactique et de Sciences Cognitives*, 11, 195–215.
- Tall, D. & Vinner, S. (1981). Concept image and concept definition in mathematics with particular reference to limits and continuity. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 12(2), 151–69.
- Tall, D. & Watson, A. (2001). Schemas and processes for sketching the gradient of a graph. <[www.warwick.ac.uk/staff/David.Tall/drafts/dot2001-tall-watson-draft.pdf](http://www.warwick.ac.uk/staff/David.Tall/drafts/dot2001-tall-watson-draft.pdf)> (12 April 2007).
- Tanner, H. & Jones, S. (2000). *Becoming a successful teacher of mathematics*. London: RoutledgeFalmer.
- Tate, W.F. & Rousseau, C. (2002). Access and opportunity: The political and social context of mathematics education. In L. English (ed.), *International handbook of research in mathematics education* (pp. 271–300). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Teese, R. (2000). *Academic success and social power: Examinations and inequality*. Melbourne: Melbourne University Press.
- Texas-Instruments (2006). TI-Nspire (Computer Software). Dallas, TX: Texas-Instruments.
- Thomas, M.O.J., Monaghan, J. & Pierce, R. (2004). Computer algebra systems and algebra: Curriculum, assessment, teaching, and learning. In K. Stacey, H. Chick & M. Kendal (eds), *The teaching and learning of algebra: The 12th ICMI study* (pp. 155–86). Norwell, MA: Kluwer.
- Thomson, S., Cresswell, J. & De Bortoli, L. (2004). *Facing the future*. Melbourne: ACER.
- Thomson, S. & Fleming, N. (2004). *Summing it up: Mathematics achievement in Australian schools in TIMSS 2002 (TIMSS Australia Monograph No. 6)*. Melbourne: ACER.

- Todd Edwards, M. (2004). Fostering mathematical inquiry with explorations of facial symmetry. *Mathematics Teacher*, 97(4), 234–41.
- Tognolini, J. (2000). A standards referenced approach to assessment for the New HSC. <[www.curriculumsupport.education.nsw.gov.au/secondary/hsie/assets/assessstage6/jtpaper2.pdf](http://www.curriculumsupport.education.nsw.gov.au/secondary/hsie/assets/assessstage6/jtpaper2.pdf)> (12 April 2007).
- Tomlinson, C.A. (1999). *The differentiated classroom: Responding to the needs of all learners*. Melbourne: Hawker Brownlow Education.
- (2003). *Differentiation in practice: A resource guide for differentiating curriculum, Grades 5–9*. Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- (2005). *Differentiation in practice: A resource guide for differentiating curriculum, grades 9–12* (electronic resource). Alexandria, VA: Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development.
- Treilibs, V. (ed.) (1980–81). *Mathematics at work* (Vols 1–6). Canberra: Australian Academy of Science.
- Treilibs, V., Burkhardt, H. & Low, E. (1980). *Formulation processes in mathematical modelling*. Nottingham: Shell Centre for Mathematical Education.
- Tukey, J. (1977). *Exploratory data analysis*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.
- Turner, R. (2007). Modelling and applications in PISA. In W. Blum & P. Galbraith (eds), *ICMI Study Series No. 10* (pp. 433–40). New York: Springer.
- UNESCO (2003). Summary Report. *Gender and education for all: The leap to equality*. Paris: UNESCO.
- US College Board (2007). *AP calculator policy*. <[www.collegeboard.com/student/testing/ap/calculus\\_ab/calc.html?calcab](http://www.collegeboard.com/student/testing/ap/calculus_ab/calc.html?calcab)> (23 January 2007).
- Vacher, H.L. & Mylroie, J.E. (2001). Connecting with geology: Where's the end of the cave? *Mathematics Teacher*, 94(8), 640–9.
- Vale, C. (1987) *Up, up and away*, Schools Resource Program: The Participation of Girls in Maths and Science, Participation and Equity Program. Melbourne: Ministry of Education.
- (2002a). Girls back off mathematics again: The views and experiences of girls in computer based mathematics. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 14(3), 52–68.
- (2002b). Numeracy intervention in the middle years. In C. Vale, J. Roumeliotis & J. Horwood (eds), *Valuing mathematics in society* (pp. 284–93). Melbourne: Mathematical Association of Victoria.
- (2003). Computers in mathematics: A super highway to social justice? In L. Burton (ed.), *Which way social justice in mathematics education?* (pp. 277–301). Westport, CT: Praeger.

- (2004). Numeracy intervention in junior secondary mathematics. In I. Putt, R. Faragher & M. McLean (eds), *Mathematics education for the third millennium: Towards 2010* (Proceedings of the 27th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, p. 631). Sydney: MERGA.
- Middle years numeracy intervention interview. Unpublished paper, School of Education, Victoria University, Wellington.
- Vale, C., Forgasz, H. & Horne, M. (2004). Gender and mathematics: Back to the future? In B. Perry, C. Diezmann & G. Anthony (eds), *Review of research in mathematics education in Australasia 2000–2003* (pp. 75–102). Flaxton, Qld: Post Pressed.
- Vale, C. & Leder, G. (2004). Student views of computer based mathematics in the middle years: Does gender make a difference? *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 56(3), 287–312.
- van Ameron, B.A. (2002). *Reinvention of early algebra: Developmental research on the transition from arithmetic to algebra*. Utrecht: CD- B Press.
- van den Akker, J. (2003). Curriculum perspectives: An introduction. In J. van den Akker, W. Kuiper & U. Hameyer (eds), *Curriculum landscapes and trends* (pp. 1–10). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Van Dooren, W., De Bock D., Janssens, D. & Verschaffel, L. (2005). Students' over reliance on linearity: An effect of school-like word problems? In H. Chick & J. Vincent, *Proceedings of the 29th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 4, pp. 265–72). Melbourne: PME.
- Van Hiele, P. (1986). *Structure and insight: A theory of mathematics education*. New York: Academic Press.
- van Kraayenoord, C.E. & Elkins, J. (2004). Learning difficulties in numeracy in Australia. *Journal of Learning Disabilities*, 37(1), 32–41.
- Van Oers, B. (2001). Educational forms of initiation in mathematical culture. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 46, 59–85.
- Van Zoest, L., Jones, G. & Thornton, C. (1994). Beliefs about mathematics teaching held by pre-service teachers involved in a first grade mentorship program. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 6, 37–55.
- Victorian Curriculum and Assessment Authority (2001). *AIM Year 7 English and Mathematics Assessment Program 2001*. <[www.vcaa.vic.edu.au/prep10/aim/index.html](http://www.vcaa.vic.edu.au/prep10/aim/index.html)> (12 April 2007).
- (2004a). *AIM Achievement Improvement Monitor 2004: Statewide Mathematics Test—Year 7*. <[www.vcaa.vic.edu.au/prep10/aim/index.html](http://www.vcaa.vic.edu.au/prep10/aim/index.html)> (12 April 2007).
- (2004b). *Victorian Essential Learning Standards*. <<http://vels.vcaa.vic.edu.au/essential/index.html>> (8 September 2005).

- Vincent, J. (2000). *Computer enriched mathematics for Years 7 and 8 (CSF II Level 5)* (2nd edn). Melbourne: Mathematical Association of Victoria.
- (2005) *From shrine to university: A geometry journey along St Kilda Road and Swanston Street* (2nd edn). Melbourne: Mathematical Association of Victoria.
- Vincent, J. & McCrae, B. (1999). How do you draw an isosceles triangle? *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 55(2), 17–20.
- Vinner, S. (1989). The avoidance of visual considerations in calculus students. *Focus on Learning Problems in Mathematics*, 11(2), 149–56.
- Vinner, S. & Dreyfus, T. (1989). Images and definitions for the concept of function. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 20(4), 356–66.
- Visser, G. (2004). *GridPic* (Version 1.2) (computer software). Melbourne: Gerard Inc. Available to download from RITEMATHS website <<http://extranet.edfac.unimelb.edu.au/DSME/RITEMATHS>> (12 April 2007).
- Vygotsky, L.S. (1978). *Mind in society*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.
- Walden, R. & Walkerdine, V. (1985). *Girls and mathematics: From primary to secondary schooling*, Bedford Way Papers, 24. London: Heinemann.
- Walen, S., Williams, S. & Garner, B. (2003). Pre-service teachers learning mathematics using calculators: A failure to connect current and future practice. *Teaching and Teacher Education*, 19(4), 445–62.
- Walkerdine, V. (1990). *Schoolgirl fictions*. London: Verso.
- Wallace, J., Rennie, L., Malone, J. & Venville, G. (2001). What we know and what we need to know about curriculum integration in science, mathematics and technology. *Curriculum Perspectives*, 21(1), 9–15.
- Walshaw, M. & Anthony, G. (2006). Classroom arrangements that benefit students. In P. Grootenboer, R. Zevenbergen & M. Chinnappan (eds), *Identities, cultures and learning spaces* (Proceedings of the 29th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 527–34). Adelaide: MERGA.
- Walshaw, M. & Siber, E. (2005). Inclusive mathematics: Catering for the ‘learning-difficulties’ student. In H.L. Chick & J.L. Vincent (eds), *Proceedings of the 29th conference of the International Group for the Psychology of Mathematics Education* (Vol. 1, p. 290). Melbourne: PME.
- Warren, E. (2003). The role of arithmetic structure in the transition from arithmetic to algebra. *Mathematics Education Research Journal*, 15(2), 122–37.

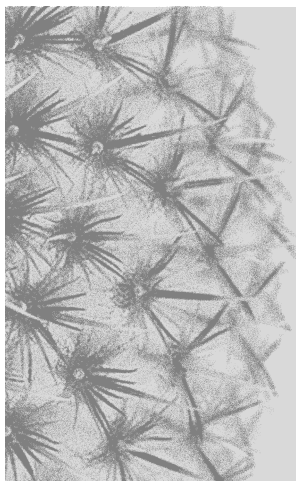
- Watson, A. (2000). Mathematics teachers acting as informal assessors: Practices, problems and recommendations. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 41(1), 69–91.
- (2006). *Raising achievement in secondary education*. Maidenhead: Open University Press.
- Watson, J. (2005a). Is statistical literacy relevant for middle school students? *Vinculum*, 42(1), 3–10.
- (2005b). Variation and expectation as foundations for the chance and data curriculum. In P. Clarkson, A. Downton, D. Gronn, A. McDonough, R. Pierce & A. Roche (eds), *Building connections: Research, theory and practice* (Proceedings of the 28th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 35–42). Sydney: MERGA.
- (2006). *Statistical literacy at school: Growth and goals*. Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Watson, J. & Callingham, R. (2003). Statistical literacy: A complex hierarchical construct. *Statistics Education Research Journal* 2(2), 3–46. <[www.stat.auckland.ac.nz/~iase/serj/SERJ2\(2\)\\_Watson\\_Callingham.pdf](http://www.stat.auckland.ac.nz/~iase/serj/SERJ2(2)_Watson_Callingham.pdf)> (12 April 2007).
- Watson, J. & Moritz, J. (1999). The beginning of statistical inference: Comparing two data sets. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 37, 145–168.
- Watt, H.M.G. (2000). Exploring perceived personal and social gender stereotypes of maths with secondary students: An explanation for continued gender differences in participation? Paper presented at the annual conference of the Australian Association for Research in Education. <[www.aare.edu.au/00pap/wat00302.htm](http://www.aare.edu.au/00pap/wat00302.htm)> (12 April 2007).
- (2005). Attitudes to use of alternative assessment methods in mathematics: A study with secondary mathematics teachers in Sydney, Australia. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 58(1), 21–44.
- Wesslen, M. & Fernanez, S. (2005). Transformation geometry, *Mathematics Teaching*, 191, 27–29.
- Westwood, P. (2003). *Commonsense methods for children with special educational needs: Strategies for the regular classroom* (4th edn). London: RoutledgeFalmer.
- Wettenhall, S. & O'Reilly, J. (1989). *Space to grow*. Melbourne: The Girls and Maths Special Interest Group, Mathematical Association of Victoria.
- White, P. (n.d.). Mathematical modelling and the General Mathematics Syllabus. *NSW HSC Online*. Sydney: Curriculum Support Directorate. <[www.curriculumsupport.education.nsw.gov.au](http://www.curriculumsupport.education.nsw.gov.au)> (25 January 2007).
- White, P. & Mitchelmore, M.C. (1996). Conceptual knowledge in introductory calculus. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 27(1), 79–95.

- (2002). Teaching and learning mathematics by abstraction. In D. Tall & M. Thomas (eds), *Intelligence, learning and understanding in mathematics: A tribute to Richard Skemp* (pp. 235–55). Flaxton, Qld: Post Pressed.
- Wild, C. & Pfannkuch, M. (1999). Statistical thinking in empirical enquiry. *International Statistical Review*, 67(3), 223–65.
- Wilkins, J. & Hicks, D. (2001). A s(t)imulating study of map projections: An exploration integrating mathematics and social studies. *Mathematics Teacher*, 94(8), 660–71.
- Williams, C.G. (1998). Using concept maps to assess conceptual knowledge of function. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 29(4), 414–21.
- Williams, F.E. (1993). The cognitive-affective interaction model for enriching gifted programs. In J.S. Renzulli (ed.), *Systems and models for developing programs for the gifted and talented*. Melbourne: Hawker Brownlow.
- Williams, G. (2000). Collaborative problem solving and discovered complexity. In J. Bana & A. Chapman (eds), *Mathematics education beyond 2000* (Proceedings of the 23rd annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 656–63). Sydney: MERGA.
- (2002). Autonomous access, spontaneous pursuit, and creative execution: Insightful and creative mathematical problem-solving. In C. Vale, J. Roumeliotis & J. Horwood (eds), *Valuing mathematics in society* (Proceedings of the 39th annual conference of the Mathematical Association of Victoria, pp. 331–47). Melbourne: MAV.
- Williams, S. (2001). Predications of the limit concept: An application of repertory grids. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 32(4), 341–67.
- Wilson, S.M. & Berne, J. (1999). Teacher learning and the acquisition of professional knowledge: An examination of research on contemporary professional development. *Review of Research in Education*, 24, 173–209.
- Wong, K.Y. & Veloo, P. (2001). Situated sociocultural mathematics education: Vignettes from southeast Asian practices. In B. Atweh, H. Forgasz & B. Nebres (eds), *Sociocultural research on mathematics education* (pp. 113–34). Mahwah, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Wood, D., Bruner, J. & Ross, G. (1976). The role of tutoring in problem solving. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, 17, 89–100.
- Wood, T., Williams, G. & McNeal, B. (2006). Children's mathematical thinking in different classroom cultures. *Journal for Research in Mathematics Education*, 37, 222–55.

- Woodbury, S. (1998). Rhetoric, reality, and possibilities: Interdisciplinary teaching and secondary mathematics. *School Science and Mathematics*, 98(6), 303–7.
- Wright, R. (1998). An overview of a research-based framework for assessing and teaching early number learning. In C. Kanen, M. Goos & E. Warren (eds), *Teaching mathematics in new times* (Proceedings of the 21st annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research Group of Australasia, pp. 701–708). Brisbane: MERGA.
- Yackel, E. & Hanna, G. (2003). Reasoning and proof. In J. Kilpatrick, W.G. Martin & D. Schifter (eds), *A research companion to principles and standards for school mathematics* (pp. 227–36). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Yerushalmy, M. (2000). Problem solving strategies and mathematical resources: A longitudinal view on problem solving in a function-based approach to algebra. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 43, 125–47.
- Yerushalmy, M. & Gilead, S. (1999). Structures of constant rate word problems: A functional approach analysis. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 39(1–3), 185–203.
- Yerushalmy, M. & Schwartz, J.L. (1993). Seizing the opportunity to make algebra mathematically and pedagogically interesting. In T.A. Romberg, E. Fennema & T.P. Carpenter (eds), *Integrating research on the graphical representation of functions* (pp. 41–68). Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Young-Loveridge, J. (2005). Fostering multiplicative thinking using array-based materials. *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 61(3), 34–9.
- Zagorski, S. (2004). Choosing and working with a mentor. In M. Chappell, J. Choppin & J. Salls (eds), *Empowering the beginning teacher of mathematics in high school* (pp. 6–7). Reston, VA: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics.
- Zaslavsky, O., Chapman, O. & Leiken, R. (2003). Professional development of mathematics educators: Trends and tasks. In A. Bishop, M.A. Clements, C. Keitel, J. Kilpatrick & F. Leung (eds), *Second international handbook of mathematics education, Part 2* (pp. 877–917). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Zaslavsky, O., Sela, H. & Leron, U. (2002). Being sloppy about slope: The effect of changing the scale. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 49(1), 119–40.
- Zazkis, R. (2001). From arithmetic to algebra via big numbers. In H. Chick, K. Stacey, J. Vincent & J. Vincent (eds), *The future of the teaching and learning of algebra: Proceedings of the 12th ICMI Study Conference* (Vol. 2, pp. 676–81). Melbourne: University of Melbourne.



- Zbiek, R. & Conner, A. (2006). Beyond motivation: Exploring mathematical modeling as a context for deepening students' understanding of curricular mathematics. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 63, 89–112.
- Zbiek, R. & Heid, M.K. (2001). Dynamic aspects of function representation. In H. Chick, K. Stacey, J. Vincent & J. Vincent (eds), *The future of the teaching and learning of algebra: Proceedings of the 12th ICMI Study Conference* (Vol. 2, pp. 682–89). Melbourne: University of Melbourne.
- Zevenbergen, R. (2001). Is streaming an equitable practice: Students' experiences of streaming in the middle years of schooling. In J. Bobis, B. Perry & M. Mitchelmore (eds), *Numeracy and beyond* (Proceedings of the 24th annual conference of the Mathematics Education Research group of Australasia, pp. 563–70). Sydney: MERGA.
- (2003a). Grouping by ability: A self-fulfilling prophecy? *The Australian Mathematics Teacher*, 59(4), 2–7.
- (2003b). Teachers' beliefs about teaching mathematics to students from socially disadvantaged backgrounds: Implications for social justice. In L. Burton (ed.), *Which way social justice in mathematics education?* (pp. 133–51). Westport, CT: Praeger.
- (2004). Technologising numeracy: Intergenerational differences in working mathematically in new times. *Educational Studies in Mathematics*, 56, 97–117.



# INDEX

- addition 160
- algebra 110, 111, 230–54
  - activities 232
  - algebraic expressions 242
  - algebraic insight 245
  - approaches to teaching 230–1, 236–40
  - ascendancy of the function concept 245–9
  - Computer Algebra Systems (CAS) 252–3
  - core algebraic ideas 232–5
  - equivalence 232–4
  - expressing generality 242–3
  - families of functions 249–50
  - function-graphing technologies 247–9
  - functions as entities, manipulating 250–1
  - generalisation problem 238
  - generalising from number patterns 243
  - generational activities 242–3
  - primary years 231–2
  - quasi-variable problem 239
  - technology 244–5, 246–9
  - transformational activities 243–5
  - transition to algebraic thinking 236–40
  - translation difficulties 240–2
  - variables 234–5
- area and volume 192–5
- arithmetic 110, 111
- assessment *see* mathematics learning, assessment of
- Australian Association of Mathematics Teachers (AAMT) 76, 105, 108, 423
- Australian Mathematics Competition* 374–5
- calculators 65, 75, 83, 85, 94–5, 251
- calculus 282–315
  - algebraic representations 283, 284
  - anti-differentiation 308–11
  - approaches to teaching 301
  - background required for successful learning 284–94
  - change, study of 286–8
  - cognitive growth and 282–3
  - derivative 283
  - developing rules of differentiation 307–8
  - differential calculus 294–6, 302–11
  - Differentiation Competency Framework 302–5
  - difficulties with limit concept 297–8
  - enactive experiences 283
  - function 283, 284
  - graphical representation 284
  - graphs 287–9, 295–6
  - integral 283, 311–14
  - integration 311–14
  - investigative approach to teaching 301
  - notation confusions 299–300
  - numerical representation 284
  - obstacles to learning 296–300
  - procepts 283
  - rates of change 291–4
  - representational diversity, fluency and versatility 284–6
  - Representational Framework of Knowing Derivative 305–7

- secants, slope of 290–1
- tangents, misconceptions with 298–9
- technology 284–5, 301
- velocity-time graphs 295–6
- visual-enactive approach 283–4
- chance and data 255–80
  - aggregate perspective of data 260
  - challenges in understanding 258–62
  - chance in primary years 257–8
  - consuming statistical information 265–6
  - contexts for teaching 256
  - covariation 268–71
  - creating statistical information 272–3
  - data in primary years 257–8
  - data-logging equipment 82–3
  - graph interpretation 261
  - integrating contextual knowledge 261–2
  - intuition about randomness 258–9
  - primary years 257–8
  - probability 263–5, 271–2
  - procedural knowledge 259
  - secondary curriculum 262–80
  - statistical inference, informal 278–80
  - statistical information, utilising 266
  - statistical investigations 259–60, 274–7
  - statistical literacy 265–6
  - statistical thinking, dispositions for 273–4
  - statistics and mathematics, distinction 255
  - technologies 255
  - topic integration 255–6
  - univariate descriptive statistics 267–8
- classroom environment 38
- classroom practice *see also* mathematics teaching
  - practices
    - impact of mathematical beliefs 4
    - integration of technologies 75
    - technology and 75, 90–4, 98–100
- classroom scenarios 50–8
- cognitive development 28–9, 111, 134, 282–3
- communities *see* parents and communities, working with
- Computer Algebra Systems (CAS) calculators 65, 74, 75, 94–7, 95, 183, 244, 252–3, 284, 285
- congruence 203
- constructivism 28–9, 130
- curriculum concepts 102–4 *see also* mathematics curriculum
- data *see* chance and data
- data-logging equipment 82–3
- decimals 160, 163, 173–5
- derivatives 282, 283, 305–7
- differential calculus *see* calculus
- differentiation 282, 302–5, 307–8
- division 163
- dynamic geometry software 79–81, 211–13, 218
- education in Australia 110, 111, 113, 393
- educational partnerships 390–402
- equations 237, 243, 244, 245
- estimating and measuring 190–1
- Euclidean geometry 110, 111, 201, 202
- exponential thinking 179–82
- focusing 54–8
- fractions 160, 161, 165–8, 173–5
- function
  - calculus 286, 291–4
  - change of 291
  - concept as object of algebra 245–9
  - exponential 83, 249
  - families of 78, 249–50
  - introductory calculus 283
  - linear 78
  - trigonometric 79, 83, 249
- funnelling 51–4
- gender issues 319–37
  - attitudes to mathematics 324–6
  - computer usage 333
  - definitions 320–2
  - differences in performance 203, 375
  - equal opportunity 320
  - equal outcomes 321
  - equal treatment 320–1
  - equitable practice 322
  - gender equity in practice 336–7
  - gender gaps 320, 322–8
  - gender-inclusive curriculum 330–2
  - gender-sensitive curriculum 332–5

- graphical interpretation 324
- intervention programs 330
- mathematical achievement 322–4
- nature of classroom tasks 335
- participation in mathematics 326–8
- spatial visualisation 323
- stereotyping 325–6
- teacher beliefs 335
- technology use 326
- theories of gender equity and practice 328–35
- geometry and spatial concepts 111, 200–28
  - concepts, discussion of 210
  - construction 211–13
  - contexts for student activities 205
  - curriculum 203, 215–17
  - do-talk-record strategy 210
  - dynamic geometry software 79–81, 211–13, 218
  - Euclidean 201
  - gender differences in performance 203
  - geometric reasoning 200
  - geometric tools 201, 211, 221
  - international studies of performance 203
  - invariance 203, 225
  - isometric transformations 220–2
  - language and communicating 209–11
  - lines, planes and angles 215–17
  - location and spatial reasoning 225–7
  - materials for activities 206–7
  - network analysis 226, 227
  - non-isometric transformations 223–4
  - primary years 201–2
  - properties and relationships of figures 217–20
  - reasoning 214–15
  - rich tasks/real problems 219, 222, 225
  - secondary years 202–4
  - terms, understanding of 209, 210
  - transformations 201, 220–4
  - vectors 227–8
  - visual-spatial skills 202, 204–8, 323, 374
- gifted and talented students 373–9
- graphics calculators 65, 75, 76, 78, 81, 88–9, 94–7
- graphing software 248, 249–50
- graphs in calculus 287–9, 295–6
- Indigenous students 341–3, 346, 352–4
- inquiry mathematics 24–7, 39–44
- integers 182, 183
- integrals 282, 283
- integrated curriculum models 121–5 *see also*
  - mathematics curriculum
    - approaches to 121
    - design factors 122
    - implementation factors 122
    - integrated curriculum 121
    - interdisciplinary curriculum 121
    - intradisciplinary curriculum 121
    - issues in curriculum integration 123
    - mathematics and science 122
    - research 123–4
    - school cultures 122
    - teachers and 122–3
    - topics and subject-matter 124–5
- integration 282, 311–14
- internet 75, 80, 82, 84–5
- irrational number 182–5
- isometries 220
- Key Learning Areas (KLAs) 113, 114
- language in learning 343–4
- learning 28–32
  - assessment *see* mathematics learning, assessment
    - of
  - constructivism 28–9, 130
  - outcomes 113
  - practical activities, use of 31–2
  - sociocultural perspectives 29–30, 130
- learning difficulties in mathematics
  - clinical interviews 365–6
  - defining and identifying students with 362–5
  - diagnostic tools 365–7
  - examples of classroom questions 372
  - intervention programs 368–9
  - learning disabilities, distinction 362
  - learning obstacles 364–5
  - primary students 362
  - RAVE CCC mnemonic for problem-solving 371
  - research findings 364
  - structural understanding, importance of 364
  - teaching strategies 370–3

- teaching students with 367–73
- lines, planes and angles 215–17
- location, concepts and skills 200, 225–7
- mathematical application problems 59–64
- mathematical beliefs 4
  - nature of mathematics 4
  - relationship between practices and 4–5
  - student beliefs 8–9, 37–8
  - teaching and learning 6
- mathematical connections 46–73
  - classroom scenario 50–8
  - connecting content across lessons 49
  - curriculum areas, across 48–9
  - focusing 54–8
  - funnelling 51–4
  - making connections in lessons 50
  - mathematical applications, through 59–64
  - mathematical modelling, through 64–72
  - meaning 46
  - measurement 198
  - middle years 47–8
  - over-use of border and wrapper problems 63
  - real world context 65–6
  - teachers and 46
  - technology, use of 78
  - triadic dialogue 50–1
- mathematical language 209
- mathematical literacy 6, 16, 159, 187, 245, 319, 323, 341
- mathematical modelling 64–72
  - contextualised problems 65
  - example of 68
  - formulation skills of students 72
  - meaning of term 64–5
  - measurement 198
  - metacognitive activity 69
  - process of 67–70
  - real-world problems 67, 68
  - solutions to modelling task 71
  - sub-skills 70–2
  - validation 69
- mathematical problems
  - awareness 37
  - definition 36
  - factors contributing to successful
    - problem-solving 37
  - heuristics 37
  - knowledge base 37
  - measurement 198
  - metacognition 37
  - problem-solving component of learning 36–9
  - procedural complexity 12
  - processes for solving 13
  - regulation 37
  - relationship among 12–13
- mathematical reasoning 35–6, 214–5
- mathematical symbols 160, 231
- mathematical talent, students with
  - accelerated programs 377–8
  - assessment tools 374–5
  - defining and identifying 373–4
  - enrichment programs 377
  - teaching 375–9
  - teaching strategies for 378–9
- mathematical thinking
  - categories of student thinking 32–3
  - complexity of 34
  - development in students 33–5
  - open questions 47, 50
  - problem-solving 36–9
  - reasoning 35–6
- mathematics
  - definition 4, 111
  - numeracy 5–7
  - parental and community attitudes towards 387–9
  - school mathematics 24–7
  - student beliefs on nature of 8–9, 37–8
  - understanding of *see* mathematics, understanding of
- mathematics curriculum 16
  - cross-curricular connections 48–9
  - differentiated 381–3
  - mathematical applications 59, 65–6
  - mathematical modelling 64, 65–6
  - models 102–26
  - multicultural 348–50
  - process aspects of mathematics in 35
  - technology, use of 74, 85–90

- mathematics curriculum models
    - attained 103
    - authority-innovation-decision-making model 108
    - classroom level 104
    - content 104–6
    - curriculum choices and orientations 106
    - curriculum concepts 102–4
    - decision-makers 106–9
    - democratic access to powerful mathematical ideas 105–6
    - equal encouragement for success 106
    - equal participation 106
    - essential components 103–4
    - historical overview of development in Australia 110–14
    - implemented 103
    - inclusivity and rights 106
    - integrated 121–5
    - intended 103
    - intent or reality 102–3
    - Key Learning Areas 114, 116
    - national curriculum 112, 113–14, 127
    - 1980s initiatives 112
    - organisation of 114–25
    - outcome-based 116–20
    - problem-solving 106, 112, 115
    - process-driven 115–16
    - stakeholders in development 107–8
    - state and territory determination of 102
    - system-level documents 104
    - teachers' role 108
  - mathematics learning, assessment of 127–54
    - aligning with curriculum and teaching 130–1
    - alternative methods 135, 136
    - approaches 130
    - aspects or 127
    - assessment data, use of 127
    - assessment items for tests 142–3
    - assessment tasks 135
    - authentic performance assessment 130
    - collecting and interpreting evidence of student learning 135–43
    - comparison studies 130
    - competency-based assessment 134
    - consistency of teacher judgments 145–51
    - criterion-referenced judgment models 131–2
    - development of rubric 150–1
    - developmental-based assessment (DBA) 134–5
    - everyday rubric grading 147
    - evidence-based judgment models 131–5
    - exemplars 133
    - flowchart for preparing assessment task for students 146
    - formative assessment 128
    - guidelines for assessment quality and equity 144
    - IMPACT procedure 137
    - moderation of school-based assessment systems 145–7
    - multiple analytic rubrics 149–50
    - national and international achievement testing regimes 129
    - norm-referenced judgment model 131
    - open-ended questions 138
    - performance assessment 139–40
    - performance tasks, examples of 140
    - preparing assessment tasks for students 144–5
    - purposes of assessment 128–30
    - recording students' progress 152–3
    - reporting 153–4
    - rich assessment tasks (RATs) 139
    - rubrics 147–51
    - self-assessment tasks 137–8
    - standards-referenced judgment models 132–4
    - Structure of the Observed Learning Outcome (SOLO) 134
    - summative assessment 129
    - task-specific rubrics 148
    - teacher autonomy 145
    - teacher classroom questions 137
    - tests and exams 135, 140–3
    - Year 12 127
  - mathematics teachers
    - becoming a reflective teacher of mathematics 407–15
    - continuing professional learning 406–26
    - feedback from colleagues 412–13
    - feedback from students 410–12
    - IMPACT procedure 411
    - knowledge needed for teaching 14–15, 74
    - learning and development 416–22

- perceptions of 9–11
- planning for continuing professional learning 422–5
- role in developing students' understanding 39–4
- self-analysis of lessons 407–9
- technologies 74–5, 90, 97–100
- working with parents and communities 387–404
- mathematics teaching
  - current challenges 16–17
  - effectiveness of 410
  - factors influencing technology use in 97–100
  - feedback from students 410–12
  - inquiry mathematics culture 26–7
  - knowledge needed for 14–15
  - school mathematics culture 26–7
- mathematics teaching practices
  - characteristics of best teaching practice 423
  - knowledge needed for teaching mathematics 14–15
  - mismatches in cultural values 391–2
  - perspectives on Year 8 classrooms 12–13
  - sociocultural values 391
  - technology, working with 90–4
- mathematics, understanding of 16–17
  - constructivism 28–9, 130
  - continuing process, as 24
  - definition 21–4
  - developing 21–44
  - evidence of 23
  - framework 23–4
  - levels of, 24
  - Pirie–Kieren theory 24–5
  - role of teachers 39
  - sociocultural perspectives 29–30, 63–4, 130
  - types of 22–3
- matrices 40–4, 203
- measurement 187–99
  - angle, understanding 188, 189
  - area and volume 192–5
  - estimating and measuring 190–1
  - making connections 198
  - modelling 198
  - perimeter and circumference 191–2
  - primary years 188
  - problem-solving 198
  - Pythagoras' Theorem 195–6, 201, 217
  - real-world situations 187
  - secondary years 188–90
  - trigonometry 197–8, 201
- mental computation 169–71
- middle years 47–8, 368
- mixed ability classes 381–3
- modelling *see* mathematical modelling
- multiplication 163
- national assessment program 129
- national benchmarks 129
- National Council of Teachers of Mathematics (NCTM) 76, 105–6, 115, 231
- national curriculum framework 113–14
- network analysis 226, 227
- New Mathematics movement 111–12
- non-isometric transformations 223–4
- number 159–85
  - achievement level range 162
  - addition 160
  - common student misconceptions 162, 165
  - competencies and strategies 159
  - concepts and skills 159
  - decimals 160
  - difficulties 162
  - division by fractions and decimals 174–5
  - division of fraction problem types 175
  - errors in mental computation 169
  - exponential thinking 179–82
  - field laws 170
  - fractions 160, 165–8
  - integers 182
  - irrational number 182–5
  - mental computation 169–71
  - multiplication 163, 172, 173–4
  - multiplicative thinking 171–2, 179
  - percentage 178–9
  - place value 163–5
  - primary years, in 160–1
  - proportional thinking 175–8, 201
  - secondary years, in 161–3
  - subtraction 160
  - surds 182

- whole-number thinking 165, 167
- numeracy 5–7, 16, 47, 129, 322, 393
- outcome-based curriculum models 116–20
- parents and communities, working with
  - collaborating with the community 397
  - communicating 395–6
  - decision-making 397
  - educational partnerships 390–402
  - family and community contribution to mathematics education 402–4
  - family-centred perspectives on partnerships 398–400
  - government policies 393
  - learning at home 396–7
  - parental and community attitudes towards mathematics 387–90
  - parenting 395
  - school-centred perspectives on partnerships 395–8
  - stakeholder perspectives on partnerships 394–402
  - teachers' responsibilities 387
  - volunteering 396
- pedagogical content knowledge 14–15, 100–1
- percentage 178–9
- perimeter and circumference 191–2
- personal digital assistants 75
- place value 163–5
- primary to secondary school transition 47
- probability and statistics 255, 263–5, 271–2
- procedural thinkers 194
- professional development and learning
  - becoming a reflective teacher of mathematics 407–14
  - collaborative professional learning 414–15
  - opportunities and resources 425–6
  - planning for continued professional learning 422–25
  - professional networks and action research 414–15
  - professional practice, dimensions of 406–7
  - teacher learning and development 416–22
  - understanding professional socialisation 416–22
  - working in professional communities 415
- Programme for International Student Assessment (PISA)* 130, 323, 339, 341
- proportional thinking 175–8
- public education systems 102, 127
- Pythagoras' Theorem 195–6, 201, 217
- ratios 175–8
- reasoning 35–6, 214–15
- scaffolding learning 29–30, 38–9, 54, 84
- secants, slope of 290–1
- shapes, properties of 203, 204
- simultaneous equations 24–5
- social and cultural issues
  - approaches to equity and social justice 347–58
  - democratic or critical curriculum 354–8
  - equitable classroom model 359–60
  - equity and social justice 346–7
  - ethnomathematics 351
  - Indigenous students 341–3, 346, 352–4
  - language and language background 343–4
  - mathematical language 350
  - mathematics problems of personal or social relevance 355
  - multicultural curriculum 348–50
  - problem selection 340
  - real-world issues 356–7
  - social capital 340
  - sociocultural norms and teachers' practices 344–5
  - socioeconomic status and mathematics achievement 339–41
  - student involvement in learning 358
- sociocultural perspectives 29–30, 63–4, 130
- spreadsheets 76, 77, 79, 81, 93
- statistical literacy 16, 256, 265–7, 272–80
- streaming 379–80
- students
  - beliefs on nature of mathematics 8–9, 37–8
  - feedback from 410–12
  - perceptions of mathematics teachers 9–11
- students with diverse learning needs
  - accelerated programs 377–8
  - achievement spectrum 361



classroom management problems 361  
 classroom organisation 383  
 defining and identifying students with learning difficulties 362–5  
 defining and identifying students with mathematical talent 373–4  
 diagnostic tools 365–7  
 differentiated heterogeneous mathematics classrooms 381–3  
 enrichment programs 377  
 learning difficulties in mathematics 362–73  
 responding to diverse needs of students 379–83  
 streaming 379–80  
 students with mathematical talent 373–9  
 teaching students with learning difficulties 367–73  
 tiered curriculum 382  
 subtraction 160  
 symmetry 203

teachers *see* mathematics teachers

teaching *see* mathematics teaching

teaching practices *see* mathematics teaching practices

technologies

access to resources 98

algebra 244

assessment and 94–7

benefits of learning mathematics with 75–85

calculators *see* calculators

chance and data 255

classroom practices and 98–100

curriculum and 85–90

dependence on 90

drawbacks 89–90

dynamic images, working with 79–81

effect on curriculum 87–8

effective use of 74–101

extension of curriculum through 88

functions and variables 246–9

goal of learning and use of 74

graphing software 248–50

impact of 65–6

instant feedback, learning from 76–7

integration into classroom practice 75

interactive whiteboards 75

internet 75, 84–5

mathematics-specific hardware 75

mathematics-specific software 75

multiple representations, making connections between 78

observing patterns 77–8

online mathematical resources 84–5

partner in teaching, as 92–3

pedagogy and 90–4

personal digital assistants 75

sequencing or treatment of topics, effect on 88–90

simulated or authentic data, exploring 81–3

sources of assistance 98

spreadsheets 76–7, 81, 79, 81, 93

teaching context 98

technology-rich learning environments 97–100

types of 75

visualisation 83–4, 203

working with 90–4

tests and exams 140–3

tiling patterns and tessellation 222

transformations 203, 220–4, 227–8, 243–5

Trends in International Mathematics and Science

Study (TIMSS) 12–13, 130, 163, 190, 203, 322–3

trigonometry 197–8, 201, 223

understanding of mathematics *see* mathematics, understanding of

variables, concept of 234–5

vectors 227–8

visual reasoning 84, 203, 204–8

Year 11 mathematics lesson 40–4

zone of proximal development (ZPD) 29–30